



This is a digital copy of a book that was preserved for generations on library shelves before it was carefully scanned by Google as part of a project to make the world's books discoverable online.

It has survived long enough for the copyright to expire and the book to enter the public domain. A public domain book is one that was never subject to copyright or whose legal copyright term has expired. Whether a book is in the public domain may vary country to country. Public domain books are our gateways to the past, representing a wealth of history, culture and knowledge that's often difficult to discover.

Marks, notations and other marginalia present in the original volume will appear in this file - a reminder of this book's long journey from the publisher to a library and finally to you.

Usage guidelines

Google is proud to partner with libraries to digitize public domain materials and make them widely accessible. Public domain books belong to the public and we are merely their custodians. Nevertheless, this work is expensive, so in order to keep providing this resource, we have taken steps to prevent abuse by commercial parties, including placing technical restrictions on automated querying.

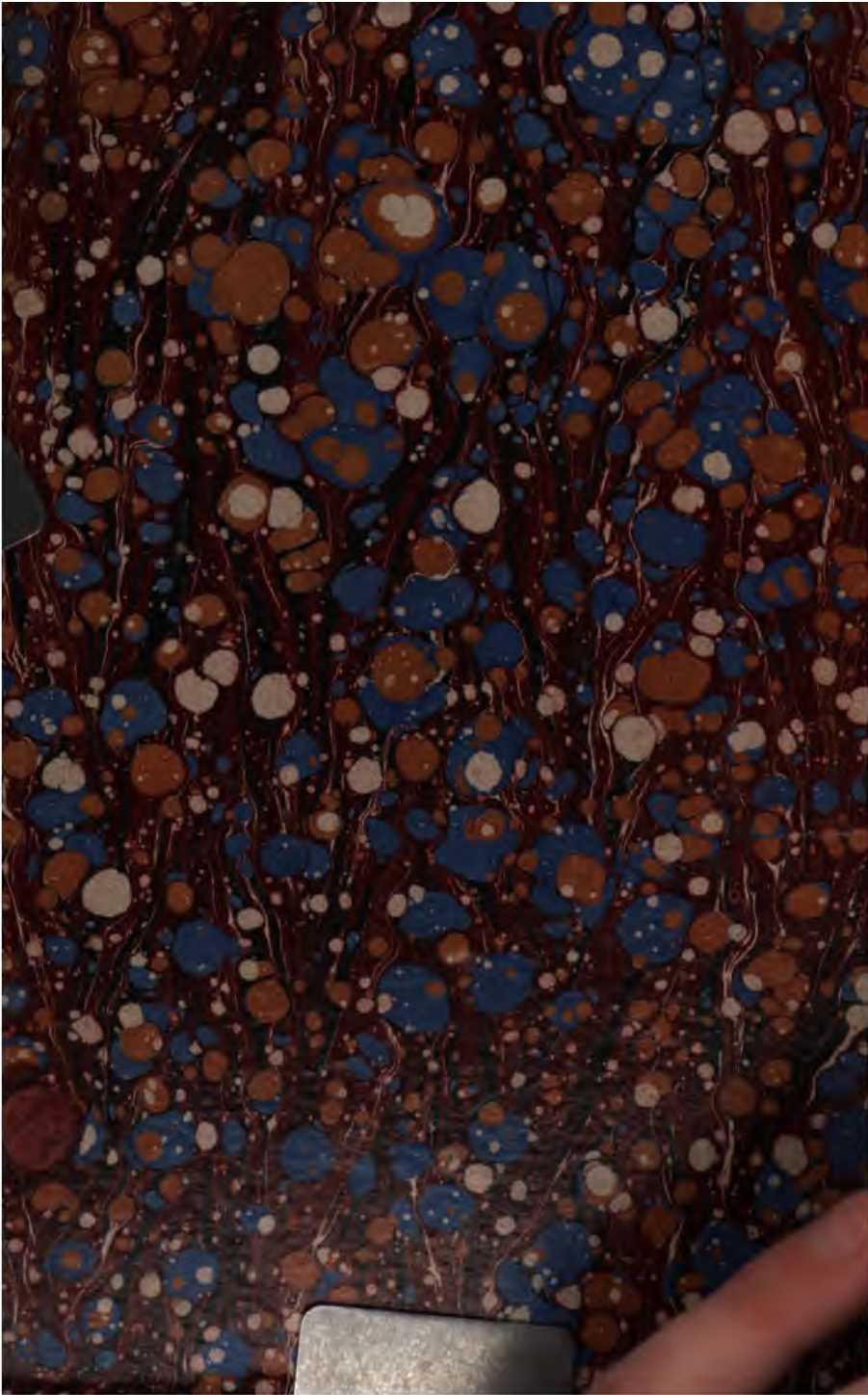
We also ask that you:

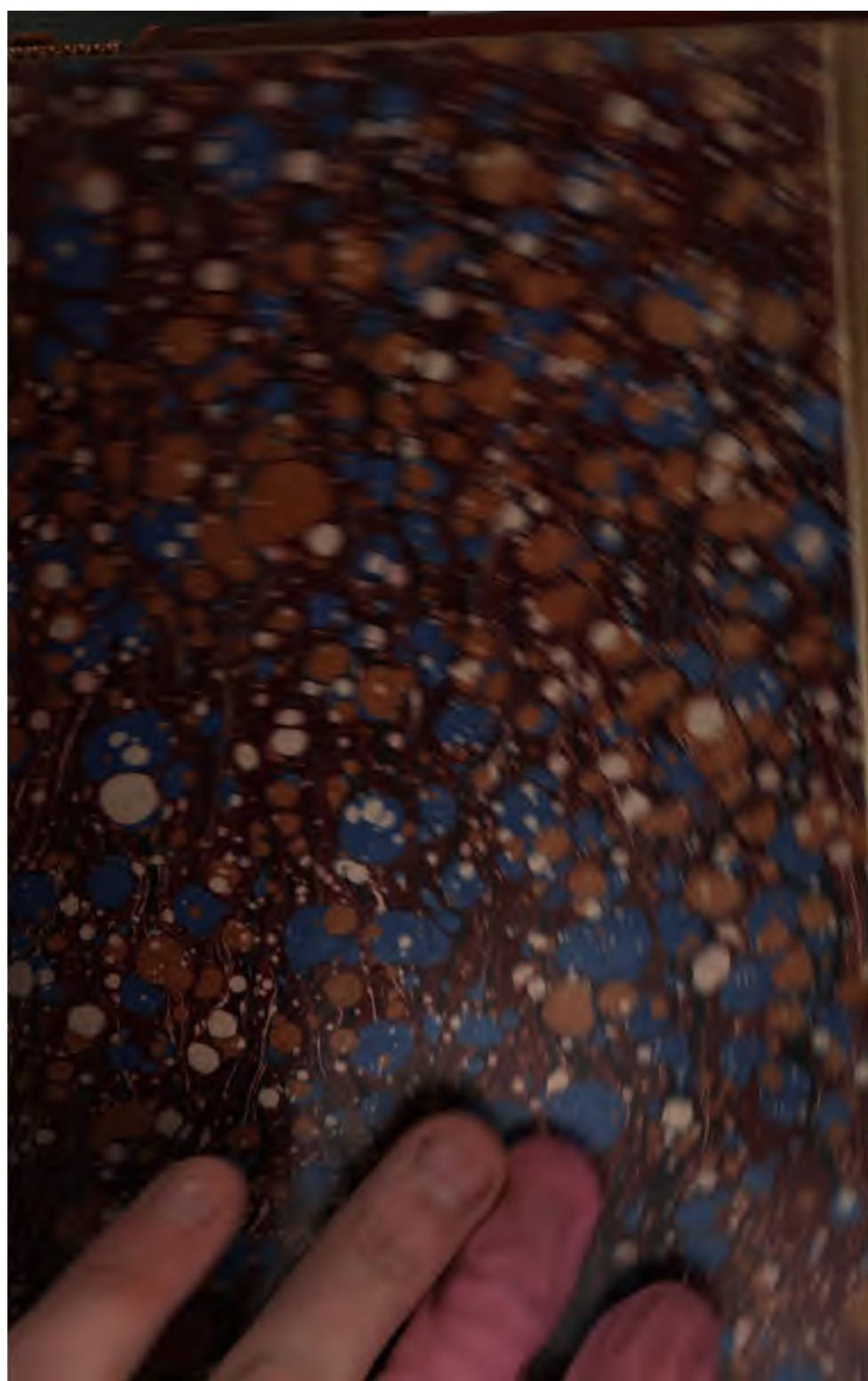
- + *Make non-commercial use of the files* We designed Google Book Search for use by individuals, and we request that you use these files for personal, non-commercial purposes.
- + *Refrain from automated querying* Do not send automated queries of any sort to Google's system: If you are conducting research on machine translation, optical character recognition or other areas where access to a large amount of text is helpful, please contact us. We encourage the use of public domain materials for these purposes and may be able to help.
- + *Maintain attribution* The Google "watermark" you see on each file is essential for informing people about this project and helping them find additional materials through Google Book Search. Please do not remove it.
- + *Keep it legal* Whatever your use, remember that you are responsible for ensuring that what you are doing is legal. Do not assume that just because we believe a book is in the public domain for users in the United States, that the work is also in the public domain for users in other countries. Whether a book is still in copyright varies from country to country, and we can't offer guidance on whether any specific use of any specific book is allowed. Please do not assume that a book's appearance in Google Book Search means it can be used in any manner anywhere in the world. Copyright infringement liability can be quite severe.

About Google Book Search

Google's mission is to organize the world's information and to make it universally accessible and useful. Google Book Search helps readers discover the world's books while helping authors and publishers reach new audiences. You can search through the full text of this book on the web at <http://books.google.com/>







820.6
E12

9

39870

Lanfranco

Lanfrank's "Science of Chirurgie."

Early English Text Society.

Original Series, 102.

1894.

G.

*LIBRARY OF THE
LELAND STANFORD JR. UNIVERSITY.*

BERLIN: ASHER & CO., 18, UNTER DEN LINDEN.

NEW YORK: C. SCRIBNER & CO.; LEYPOLDT & HOLT.

PHILADELPHIA: J. B. LIPPINCOTT & CO.

A 38634

FEB 19 1900

CORRECTIONS.

Page 18, line 17, *for vndir oon of þese iij entenciouns read vndir þese iij entenciouns* (note : both MSS. insert *oon of*)

- „ 19, „ 18, *for vp on read vpon*
- „ 25, „ 1, *for white oute read white* (note : MS. inserts *oute*)
- „ 25, „ 12, put a semicolon after *lungis*
- „ 27, „ 13, cancel *to þe maris*
- „ 29, „ 7, cancel the comma between *brayn* and *& þe nucha*, and put a comma after *þe nucha* and after *þe lymes*
- „ 30, note 3, *for fila read villi*
- „ 31, line 7, *for vunnus read vulnus*
- „ 34, „ 8, put a full stop after *seneve*, and transfer note 2 to the preceding *þat*
- „ 38, „ 10, *for humourer read humoures*
- „ 39, „ 14 and 33, cancel the semicolon after *lyme*
- „ 43, „ 10, put a comma after *drie*
- „ 46, „ 17, cancel the inverted commas
- „ 49, „ 6, put a comma after *myzt*
- „ 52, „ 16, *for eills read ellis*
- „ 55, „ 18, cancel the inverted commas
- „ 77, „ 1, put an asterisk and ellipsis after *condicioun*
- „ 77, „ 19, put an asterisk after *askyth*
- „ 83, „ 1, cancel note 1
- „ 89, „ 6, p. 90, l. 16, p. 99, l. 6, *for compouned read compouned*
- „ 108, „ 19, cancel the comma after *clepid*
- „ 110, sidenote line 1, *for Tassillus read Passillus*

CONTENTS.

Ashmole MS. 1396.

¹The firste tretis of surgerie halt wipinne him general ruelis & [leaf 1]
 4 canones, & hap .iiij. techingis / þe firste techinge of þe firste tretis,
 hap þre chapitlis. ¶ Cap. j. of þe first tretis of þe firste techyng page 7
 is of definicionis & of parties þat ben sugettis to surgerie / Cap. ij. page 8
 is of þe qualite, foorme & maners of a surgien / ¶ Cap. iij. is of page 18
 8 intencioun of a surgien / The secunde techyng of þe first tretis page 20
 is on summe & oon chapitle of anotomie, & þat is to seie: þe
 knouleche of þe foorme, & þe complexciouns, & þe helpingis of
 alle þe senews, veines, grustlis, brawnys, guttis, bladdre, lyuere,
 12 milte, & alle opere synguler lymes, & of þe engendringe of þe child
 in þe modir wombe / The first² techinge of þe first tretis hap page 31
 .xv. chapitlis /

¶ Cap. j. of þe þridde techinge of þe .j.³ tretis ⁴is of a comoun [leaf 1, bk.]
 16 word of woundis, & olde woundis / p. 31

² first, mistake for *þridde*, as below. ³ Chafed: not room for *first*.

Addit. MS. Brit. Mus. 12,056.

⁵Assit Principio Sancta Maria meo

[fol. 31 a]

þe firste tretys of surgerie halt with inne hym generall Rulys
 20 & Canons, & hath þre techynges. þe ffurste techyng of þe furste
 tretys hap þre Chapyttes. Cap. j. of þe furste techyng of the firste
 tretys of dyffinicionis & of parties þat beþ suggettys to surgerye.
 Cap. ij. is of qualite, fforme & Maners of a Surgien.
 24 ¶ Cap. iij. ys of Intencioun of a Surgien. þe secunde techyng
 of þe ffurste tretys ys O summe & on Chapitell of a notamye, þat is
 to sugge þe knowlechyng of þe forme, & þe complexion, & þe
 helpynges of alle þe synwes, veyne, grustlys, brawnys, guttis,
 28 bleddre, lyuere, Mylte, & alle opere senglere lymes, & of þe engend-
 ryng of þe child in þe modir wombe. The þridde techyng of þe
 firste tretys hath xv. Chapyttes. Cap. j. on of þe þridde techyng,
 of þe þridde tretys, ys a comyn worde of woundes & olde woundes.
 SURGERY.

B

Ashmole 1396.	¶ Cap. ij. of heelynge of a wounde I-maad in fleisch /	p. 33
	¶ Cap. iij. of heelynge of a wounde maad in senewe /	p. 39
	¶ Cap. iiij. of a wounde in þe boon /	p. 47
	¶ Cap. v. of a wounde maad wiþ smytynge /	p. 50 4
	¶ Cap. vj. of a wounde bollid and out of kynde, to hoot or to coold /	p. 54
	¶ Cap. vij. of a wounde of a wode hound or of a uenymous beest /	p. 59 8
	¶ Cap. viij. of a wounde þat is out of ioynthe and to-broken /	p. 62
	¶ Cap. ix. of to miche flux of blood of a wounde /	p. 64
	¶ Cap. x. of dietyng of men þat ben woundid /	p. 72
	¶ Capitulum xi ^m of olde woundis /	p. 77 12
	¶ Capitulum xij ^m of a festre ¹ /	p. 89
	¶ Cap. xij. of a canker I-woundid /	p. 92
	¶ Cap. xiiij. of causis þat letten helynge of woundis and of olde woundis /	p. 97 16
	¶ Cap. xv. of crampe þat cometh in a wounde /	p. 99

The secunde tretis is of particuler woundis of alle lymes of office
from þe heed to the foot, techinge þe anotomie of alle lymes
from þe heed to þe foot, þat happiþ to be woundid; & þou haddist 20
tofore þe anotomie ²of veynes & senewia, & opere smale lymes.

¹ After *festre* in a later hand is written *festula*.

Add. MS. 12,056.	¶ Cap. ij. off helynge of a wounde y-makyde in flesch.	
	¶ Cap. iij. off helynge of a wonde y-makyde in þe synwe.	
	¶ Cap. iiij. of a wounde in þe bon.	24
	¶ Cap. v. of a wounde y-makyd with smytyng.	
	¶ Cap. vj. of a wounde to bolled & out of kynde, to hote opere to colde	
	¶ Cap. vij. of a wounde of a wod hound, opere a venymouse 28 beste.	
	¶ Cap. viij. of a wounde þat is out of Ioynte & to-broken.	
	¶ Cap. ix. of to myche flux of blod of wounde.	
	¶ Cap. x. of dyotyng of men þat beþ y-woundyde.	32
	¶ Cap. xj. of olde woundes	
	¶ Cap. xij. off a festre	
	¶ Cap. xiiij. of a cancre y-woundyd	
	¶ Cap. xiiij off causes þat lettyde helynge of woundes & olde 36 woundes	
	¶ Cap. xv. of crampe þat comyth to wounde	

¶ **þe secunde tretis** is of particulers woundes of alle lymes of
office from þe hed to þe ³ffot, & techyng þe Anotamye of alle lymes 40
from þe hed to þe fote, þat happyde to be woundyde; & þou haddist

And so whanne þis tretis is ful eendid, þou hast anotamie of alle lymes of þi bodi, & þis tretis vndir oon summe conteyneþ x. chapitlis. Ashmole 1396.

- 4 ¶ Cap. j. of þe secunde tretis is of woundis of þe heed and is anotamie / p. 106
 ¶ Cap. ij. is of woundis of þe face, and of anotamie of þe same face / p. 141
 8 ¶ Cap. iij. is of anotamie of þe necke, and of woundis of þe same / p. 145
 ¶ Cap. iiij. of woundis of schuldris, armes and hondis, & anotamie of þe same / p. 155
 12 ¶ Cap. v.¹ of woundis of þe brest, & lymes þat ben wipinne þe brest, & anotamie of þe same. p. 161
 ¶ Cap. vj. of woundis of þe rigboon & of whirlebones of þe rigge, & of anotamie of þe same / p. 166
 16 ¶ Cap. vij. of woundis of þe wesounde þat goþ to þe stomak, & of þe stomak, and of þe guttis, and þe wombe anotamie / p. 167
 ¶ Cap. viij. of woundis of þe lyuere & splene. p. 171
 ¶ Cap. ix. of woundis of þe ȝerde, þat is, in þi pintil, and
 20 anotamie / p. 173

¹ v. above line.

to forþ þe Anotamye of veynes & synwes, & opere smale lymes, & so whanne þis tretys is fully endyde þou hast anotamye of alle lymes of thy body. And þis tretys under summe conteynde x. Add. MS. 12,056.

- 24 Chapyttles.
 ¶ Cap. j. of þe secunde tretys is of woundys of þe hed, and hys Anotamye.
 ¶ Cap. ij. is of woundes of þe face, & anotamye of þe same
 28 vysage.
 ¶ Cap. iij. of Anotamie of þe nekke, and of þe woundes of þe same.
 ¶ Cap. iiij. of woundys of schuldre. Armys & hondys, &
 32 Anotamie of þe same.
 ¶ Cap. v. of woundes of þe brest, and lymes þat betwixt ynnre the brest, & Anotamye of þe same.
 ¶ Cap. vj. of woundes of þe ruggebone & of whirele bonys of
 36 þe rugge, & Anotamye of þe same.
 ¶ Cap. vij. of woundes off the wesand þat goth to the stomak, & of þe stomak, & þe guttes, & þe wombe, & Anotamie of the same.
 40 ¶ Cap. viij. of woundes of þe lyffere & the splene.
 ¶ Cap. ix. of woundes of þe ȝerde, þat ys thyn pyntel, & Anotamie.

Ashmole 1396. ¶ Cap. x. of woundis of þe haunche, þies & feet, and anotamie of þe same / p. 176

sign. ij. *The Ashmole MS. breaks off here.*

Add. MS. 12,056. ¶. Cap. x. of woundes of the hanche, thyes, ffet, and Anotamye. 4

¶ þe þridde tretis is of cures of opere seknesse, þat beþ noȝt woundes þat mowen falle to dyuers lymes from þe hed to þe fote, þat comyn to be helyde off a surgien, & haþ þre techynges :
 þe furste techynge of þe þridde tretys hath viij Chapyttilles : 8
 ¶ Cap. j of the furste techynge of þe þridde tretys ys off Ornamentys of heer. p. 178
 ¶ Cap. ij ys of ffallynge off heer & of scabbe. p. 180
 ¶ Cap. iiij of whelkys in þe vysage, & scalys and crustlys p. 188 12
 [fol. 22 a] ¶ Cap. iiij of Morfu, ffrakles, ¹Goute, rosed of þe vysage, & Cicatrices of woundes p. 189
 ¶ Cap. v of ȝycchyng & scabbe p. 191
 ¶ Cap. vi of drye scabbe & wete scabbe p. 193 16
 ¶ Cap. vii of lepre, & of knowlechyng of leprys Man p. 196
 ¶ Cap. viii of fastnyng a lene lyme, & to lenen a fat lyme p. 199
 ¶ þe secunde techynge of þe þridde tretys is of apostemes, & hath xviij Chapyttilles 20
 ¶ Cap. j of þe secunde techynge of þe þridde techynge, of generaciones of humour & here lyknesse p. 201
 ¶ Cap. ij of vniuersel word of enpostemes p. 204
 ¶ Cap. iiij of enposteme of the hed & watire congregated in 24 children hedys. p. 214
 ¶ Cap. iiij of emposteme undire þe rote of þe ere. p. 216
 ¶ Cap. v of aposteme of þe nekke & þe þrote. p. 217
 ¶ Cap. vj of Aposteme undire þe Arme hole. p. 222 28
 ¶ Cap. vii of Aposteme þat comeþ in the arme from þe schuldre to þe Elbowe. p. 223
 ¶ Cap. viij off Aposteme þat comyþ on þe sydes. p. 224
 ¶ [Cap.] ix of Aposteme þat comeþ aboute þe Mouth of þe 32 stomak. p. 226
 ¶ Cap. x of apostem that comyþ in þe grynde p. 226
 ¶ Cap. xj of aposteme þat comyþ in þe hanche & þe thyes. p. 227
 ¶ Cap. xij of Aposteme off þe pyntel & þe ballokes p. 228 36
 ¶ Cap. xiii of scrofules & glandeles, þat buþ Curnellys þat comyþ in þe fflesch p. 229
 ¶ Cap. xiiij of Cancre þat is nouȝt to-broke, & is cure p. 231
 ¶ Cap. xv of bocche þat hongyþ as swynes babbe undire here 40 nekkys p. 232
 ¶ Cap. xvj of Akþe of Ioyntes p. 233

	¶ The bridde techynge of þe bridde tretys haþ xviij Chapittles	Add. MS.
	¶ Cap. I of seknesse of eyȝen, & Anotamye of þe same	p. 240 12.056.
	¶ Cap. ij of seknesse of þe eren	p. 254
4	¶ Cap. iij of seknesse of þe nose	p. 258
	¶ Cap. iiij of seknesse of þe mouth	p. 260
	¶ Cap. v of seknesse of a wommans tetys . to grete, to fatte, ¹ opere to lena.	p. 265 [fol. 32 b]
8	¶ Cap. vi of ciphac þat is to-broke, opere that is to lose	p. 268
	¶ Cap. vij of brokyn ballok	p. 269
	¶ Cap. viij of stone in þe bleddre	p. 273
	¶ Cap. ix of hermafrodite, þat is to seye, þat hath þe schappe of	
12	Man & womman, & opere of wommen þat haþ scyne withynne here schape / þat sche ne may nouȝt consewwe þe seed of man	
	¶ Cap. x of water of men þat beþ in þe dropsye	p. 281
	¶ Cap. xj of fycus, þat is, a waxynge up on þe hed of þe ȝerde	
16	cancere fleynge, bocche in þe pyntel & olde wounde.	p. 287
	¶ Cap. xij of emeroydes, festre & rogadyes, þat beþ slyttes in þe Erse	p. 289
	¶ [Cap.] xiiij of cancrefis & malo mortuo, þat buþ olde sores & olde scabbys on þe schyne.	p. 293
20	¶ Cap. xiiij of veynes þat buþ to grete in þe legges, & of þe leggys þat buþ to grete out off kynde of flessch	p. 295
	¶ Cap. xv of wryncles, & chynes of handes, & kybis on þe ffete,	
24	& wertys, & oper schyn lyke flessch	p. 296
	¶ Cap. xvj of helpynges þat buþ in blod letynge	p. 298
	¶ Cap. xvij of helpys þat buþ in brennynges with yren opere with gold	p. 305
28	¶ Cap. xvij of helpe þat is with brennynges of fyre, hote watyr & oyle	p. 312
	¶ þe iiij tretys is of wrenchyngis of lymes, & haþ tweye tech- yngeas, opere tweye summes.	
32	¶ þe firste techynge of þe furþe tretys haþ vij Chapytles	
	¶ Chap. j of broken bonys an vniuersel word	[missing]
	¶ Cap. ij of bonys þat buþ broken of þe face	p. 313
	¶ Cap. iij of bonys þat buþ broken of þe breste	p. 316
36	¶ Cap. iiij of bonys þat buþ brokyn of þe rybbes, & þe rugge bon.	p. 317
	¶ Cap. v of Armys þat buþ broken	p. 318
	¶ Cap. vi of bonys þat buþ bende withouten brekynges	p. 321
40	¶ þe ² Secunde techynge off þe furþe Tretys haþ v Chapytells	[fol. 33 a]
	¶ þe firste chapyttle of þe secunde techynge a comyn word off wrenchynges out of Ioynte	[missing]
	¶ Cap. ij of dislocacioun of þe cheke bon.	p. 314
44	¶ Cap. iij of dislocacioun of þe rugge bon.	p. 322
	¶ Cap. iiij of dislocacioun of þe schuldre & about þe schuldre	p. 323
	¶ Cap. v of dialocacioun of þe ȝyȝe bon & withynne	p. 326

Add. MS. 12,056.	¶ The ffyfe tretys is Antidotarie, & hath wylkynne hym vij chaitells	
	¶ Cap. j of castynge abache, & þe manere how þou schalt caste abacch	p. 328 4
	¶ Cap. ij of resolueres & manere of vndoyng & makynge nessesche	p. 333
	¶ Cap. iij of Maturatiuis, þat buþ Ripers	p. 336
	¶ Cap. iiij of Mundificatiuis, þat bep clanseres	p. 339 8
	¶ Cap. v of glutinatiuis & consolidatiuis, þat buþ closeres & consouderes, & þe difference of hem	p. 342
	¶ Cap. vj of hem þat maken nessesche hardnesse	p. 353
	¶ Cap. vij of Cauterisinge, that is to sugge brennyng, & 12 opnyng þe extremities	p. 349

Ashmole MS. 1396.

SCIENCE OF CIRURGIE.

- ¹Now þese chapitles of þis book ben y-ordeyned, I wole fulfille [? 11. 2, bk.]
 my purpos pursuynge ech chapitle bi ordre, & confermynge my
 wordis aftir þe auctorite of myn auctouris and wiþ experiment þat
 4 I haue longe tyme vsed wiþ þe help of god. // // //
A l þing¹ þat we wolde knowe, bi oon of .iiij. maners þat² we Capm. jm
 moun knowe, eiþir bi his name, or by his worchinge, or bi
 his verri beyng schewynge propriete of him-silf / In þis
 8 þre maner we moun knoweurgerie bi expownynge of his name;
 for siurge cometh of siros, þat is a word of gru, & in englich siros
 is an hand, & gyros gru, þat is worchinge in englich / For þe ende
 & þe profite of syurgie is * [of hand-wyrchyng. Of þe Name of
 12 a thyng Galyen seyth: he þat wyl knowe] soþfastnes of a þing,
 bisie him nouȝt to knowe þe name of a þing, but þe worchinge & þe
 effete of þe same þing / Therefore he þat wole knowe what siurgie is,
 he moot vndirstonde, þat it is a medicinal science, which techiþ us
 16 to worche wiþ handis in mannes bodi, wiþ kuttinge or openynge þe

Surgery is
 from Greek
cheir a hand,
 and *ergon*
 work.

It is a medi-
 cinal science:

Addit. MS. Brit. Mus. 12,056.

- 20 **N**OW the Chapitelles of þis bok buþ y-ordeynde, y wyl fulfille
 my purpos, pursuynge every chapytell by orders, & conferm-
 ynge my wordys after þe Autorite of myn Autores, & wiþ experyment
 þat y haue longe tyme y-vsyde with help of god.
 24 **A** l thyng þat we wolde knowe, by on of þre maneres we mowe
 knowe, opere by hys name ore by hys worchyng, opere by hys
 verrey beyng schewynge propriete of hym self. In þis þre manere
 we mowe knoweurgerie by expownynge of hys name; ffor syrugie
 cometh of syros, þat ys a word of grewȝ, & in englyssche syros ys
 28 an hand, & gyros grewȝ, þat ys worchyng an Englyssche; for þe ende
 & þe prophete of surgerie ys* of hand wyrchyng. Of þe Name
 of a thyng Galyen seyth: he þat wyl knowe* soþfastnesse of a
 thyng, besye hym nouȝt to knowe þe name² of a thyng, bute þe
 32 worchyng & þe Effecte of þe same thyng; where fore he þat wyl
 knoweurgerie ys, he mote vndirstonde, þat yt is a medycineal
 sciense, whyche techiþ vs to worche with handes in Mannes body, in

[? fol. 33 v]

cutting, heal-
ing, and
removing
excrescences.
[leaf 3]

parties þat ben hole & in helynge þo þat ben broken, or kutt, as þei were toforn, ¹or ellis as nyȝ as a man may, & also in doynge away þat is to myche skyn : as wertis or wennys, or þe fleisch to hiȝe //

¶ þe secunde chapitle of þe firste tretis is of þe 4 qualitees, maners, and kunnyng of a surgian //

¶ Cap. ij.

A surgeon must be a temperate and well made man. An ugly man can't have good manners.

He must know Philosophy, Logic, Grammar, and Rhetoric.

He must not be a glutton or a niggard, but pleasant with his patients, sign. ij.
[⁶ ff. 2, bk.]

NEdeful it is þat a surgian be of a complexioun wel proporcioun, and þat his complexioun be temperat / Races seiþ, who-so is nouȝt semelich, is ympossible to haue good maners * [& Aui- 8 cenne: euyle maners] but folowen þe lijkes of an yuele complexioun / A surgian muste haue handis weel schape, longe smale fyngris, and his body not quakyng, & al must ben of sutil witt, for al þing þat longiþ to siurgie may not wiþ lettris ben writen. He muste studie 12 in alle þe parties of filosofie & in logik, þat he mowe vndirstonde scripturis; in gramer, þat he speke congruliche; in ²arte, þat techiþ him to proue his proporciouns wiþ good resoun; in retorik þat techiþ him to speke semelich. Be he no glotoun, ne noon enuyous, ne a 16 negard; be he trewe, vnbeliche, ³& plesyngliche bere he him-silf to hise pacientis; speke he noon ribawdrie in þe sike mannys ⁴hous /

² Lat.: quod docet dialectica

³ Awmbilly in margin, in smaller hand.

Add. MS.
12,056.

kuttyng ore opnyng þo partyes þat ben hol, & in helynge þo that ben tobroken opere kutte, as þey were to fore, opere ellys as nyȝ as 20 a Man may, and al so in doynge aweye þat ys to myche above þe schyn : as wertys, opere wennys, oper flesch to hyȝh.

¶ The secunde Chapitell of þe ffurste Tretys is of þe 24 qualites, maners and cunnyng of a surgien.

Nedfful ys þat a surgien be of a Complexioun wel proporcyonede, & þat is complexioun be temperat. **Rasy** seiþ, whose face ys nouȝt semlye, ys inpossible to hauen gode maners; * & **Auicenne** : euyle maners* beþ folwyng þe lyknesse of an yuele complexioun. 28 A surgien moste han handys wel schape, longe smale fyngres, and hys body nought quakyng, & alle hys lymes able to fulfyllen gode werkynge of hys soule. He most ben of sotyl wytt, ffor alle þing þat longyȝ to surgerie may nought wiþ lettres ben wryten. He 32 moste stodyen in alle þe partyes of naturell ffylosophye & in logyk, þat he mowe vndirstonde scriptures; in gramere, þat he speke congruliche; in art, þat techyȝ hym to preven ys proposiciones with gode resoun; in retoryk, þat techith hym to speke semlyche; be he 36 non glotoun, non spowsbrekere, ne Envyous, ne no nygarde; be he trewe, vmbelyche ⁵& plesyngliche bere he hym-self to hys pacientis; speke he non Rybaudy in þe seke mannys house, ne in þe seke

[⁵ fol. 34. a]

- 3eue he no counseil, but if he be axid ; ne speke he wip no womman
 in folie in þe sik mannes hous ; ne chide not wip þe sike man ne
 wip noon of hise meyne, but curteisli speke to þe sijk man, and in
 4 almaner sijknese bihote him heele, þouȝ þou be of him dispeirid ;
 but neuer þe lattere seie to hise freendis þe caas as it stant / Loue
 he noon harde curis, & entermete he nouȝt of þo þat ben in dispeir.
 Pore men helpe he bi his myȝt, and of þe riche men axe he good
 8 reward / Preise he nouȝt him-silf wip his owne moup, ne blame he
 nouȝt scharpliche opere lechis ; loue he alle lechis & clerkis, & bi
 his myȝt¹ make he no leche his enemye. So cloþe he him wip
 vertues, þat of him mai arise good fame & name ; & þis techiþ etik.
 12 So lerne he fisik, þat he mowe wip good rulis his surgerie defende
 & þat techiþ fisik / Neþeles it is nessessarie a surgian to knowe alle
 þe parties and ech sengle partie of a medicyn. For if a surgian ne
 knewe nouȝt þe science of elementis, whiche þat ben firstmoost force
 16 of natural pingis & of dyuers lymes, he mai not ²knowe science of
 coniunctions, þat is to seie, medlyngis & complexiouns þat ben
 nessessarie to his craft / A surgian muste knowe þat alle bodies þat
 ben medlid vndir þe sercle of þe moone, ben engendrid of foure

and must in
desperate
cases even
promise
recovery,
but tell the
truth to the
patient's
friends.

He should
make the rich
pay for the
poor.

He shall not
praise himself
or blame
other
physicians.

He must
know
Physic,
Medicine,

[³ leaf 3^o]
and the
science of
mixtures.

¹ myȝt in margin.

- 20 Mannes house gif non counseyle bote he be y-askyde, ne speke he with Add. MS.
 non womman in no³ folye in þe seke Mannes howse, ne chyde nought 12,056.
 with þe seke Man ne with none of hys meyne ; but curteslye speke
 to þe syke man, & in alle manere syknesse behote hym heele, þowȝ
 24 þou be of hym dyspeyred ; but neuere þe lattere seye to hys frendys,
 þe cas as yt stant. Loue he non harde curys, & entyremete he
 nought of þo þat bep in dyspeyre. Pore men helpe he be hys myght,
 & of ryche men aske he gode rewarde. Preyse he nought hymself
 28 with hys owne mouth, ne blame he nought scharplye opere lechys ;
 loue he alle lechys & Clerkys, & by hys myght make he non leche
 hys enemye. So cloþe he hym with vertues, þat of hym mowe
 a-rysen gode fame & name, & þis techyth Etyk. So lerne he ffysik,
 32 þat he mowe with gode rulys hys Surgerye deffende, & þat techith
 ffysik. Neþeles yt ys necessarye a surgien to knowe alle þe partyes
 in eche sengle partye of a medycine, ffor ȝif a surgien knowe noȝt
 þe sciens of Elementis, whiche þat buȝ furst Meveryes of naturel
 36 þynges & of dyuerse lymes, he may noȝt knowe sciense of con-
 iunctiounes, þat ys to seie, medlynges & complexiouns þat bep
 necessarye to hys crafte. A surgien most knowe þat alle bodyes
 þat ben medlyde, þat ben vndire þe cercele of þe Mone, ben engen-

³ no above the line.

There are
four ele-
ments: fire,
water, earth,
and air.

By mixture
of their
qualities new
forms arise
capable of
being en-
dowed with
life.

The noblest
of all these is
the human
spirit.

sign. liij.
[¹ l. 3°, bk.]

There are 4
qualities and
complexions,

symple bodies, her lijknes ech in opere medlynge; þat is to seie: fier & watir, erþe & eir: þese¹ elementis for þe vttermeste eende, & þe vttermeste contrariouste of here qualitees were fer drawn from bodilich lijf; but whanne her qualitees, þat is to seie, maner of 4 beyng, comen into medlynge, so þat þe leeste partie of þat oon entre into þe leeste partie of þat oper partie, medlynge brekiþ her contrariouste; & þerof comen a newe foorme, & a newe complexioun of þe medlynge of her substaunce / Also þe medlynge of 8 qualitees & þe quantitees is fer drawn from þe contrariouste of þe same elementis, & so complexioun is nyȝ brouȝt to a mele; & so þat þat is medlid is more able to resceiue þe noble foorme of lijf, þe which nobilite aboue alle bodies I-medlid is founden in mannes 12 spirit. But for þat þe qualitees þat wiȝ þo bodies of elementis 2 comen into medlynge, & it is vnpossible to departe þo qualitees from bodies þat ben foure: hoot, coold, moist & drie, & complexiouns ben bi hem, it is nessessarie to fynde in bodies þat ben 16 medlid foure complexiouns / Complexioun is no þing ellis but a maner qualite medlid in worching & suffrynge of contrarious qualitees þat ben founden in elementis, so þat þe leeste partie of ech element entre into þe leeste partie of þe opere. & for þat ilke 20

¹ *ben* above line.

Add. MS.
12 056.

[² fol. 34 v]

dryd of foure symple bodyes, here lyknesse eche in opere medlyng; þat ys to sugge, fyr & eyre, erþe & water. þese elementys, for þe outemast ende & outemast contraryousite of here qualites, weren fer drawn from bodily lyffe; but whanne here 3qualytes, þat is to 24 sugge manere of beyng, comyn in to medlynge, so þat þe leste partye of þat on entre in to þe leste partye of þat opere partye, medlynge brekyth here contrariosite, & þere of comme a newe forme & a newe complexioun of þe medlynge of here substaunce. Al so 28 þe medlynge of þe qualitees & þe quantites ys fer drawyn from þe contraryousite of þe same elementes, & so complexioun is nyȝ brought to a mene, & so þat þat ys medlyde ys more able to resseyuen þe noble forme of lyff, þe whiche noblete abouȝe alle bodyes y-medlyde 32 ys y-founden in Mannys spiryt. But for þat þe qualites, þat with þo bodyes of Elementes comyth in to Medlynge—& yt ys vnpossible to departe þo qualites from bodyes—ben foure: hot, colde, moyst, & drye, & complexiouns ben by ham, yt ys necessarie to fynden in 36 bodyes þat ben medlyde, foure complexiouns; Complexioun ys nopynge ellys but a manere qualite medlyde in worchyng, & suffrynge of contrariouse qualites þat buȝ founden in Elementis, so þat þe leste partye of eche elemente entre in to þe leste partye of þe 40 opere partye. And for þat þilke foure complexiouns: hot, colde,

- .iiij. complexiouns, hoot, moist, coold & drie, sumtyme ben y-com-
 poned, þat is to seie, medlid, þer comen in hem .viiij. as: hoot &
 drie, hoot & moist, & coold & drie, and coold & moist / Foure of
 4 þese ben symple, and foure componed; & for þilke .viiij. sumtyme
 ben wiþ mater, & sumtyme wiþoute mater / þer ben .xviij.; & for þilke
 xviij. aftir sum consideracioun moun be naturel to summan, & summan
 vnatural / þer moun be .xxxij. Neuereþelatter among alle þe com-
 8 plexiouns þat man mai fynde, þat is componed of dyuers qualitees, þere
 ne is noon so temperat, as is mannes complexioun; & hauynge reward
 to mannes complexioun, alle opere þingis * [ys] I-clepid, hoot, coold,
 moist, ¹ eiþer drie. / Whanne ² þat a mete or a medicyn haþ suffrid
 12 kyndely heete þat is in man, þat heetiþ him nouȝt, ne driep him
 nouȝt, ne moistiþ hym nouȝt, so þat mannes complexioun may not
 conseyue wheþer it coldiþ him, heetiþ or driep or moistiþ him: it is
 clepid temperat / & þilke þing þat we seie is hoot in þe firste
 16 degree, þat is I-heet of kyndely heete þat is in oure bodies, & heetiþ
 oure bodies wiþouten greuauncis / & þilke we seien to be hoot in þe
 secunde degree, which þat is het of oure kyndely heete, so heetiþ
 oure bodi þat he ne myȝte heete us no more wiþoute greuaunce /
² A mistranslation from the Latin: Illam namque rem . . . dicimus esse
 temperatam, quæ cum *passa fuerit* a calore naturali, qui est in nobis, non
 calefit, etc.

hot, moist,
cold, and dry.
By mixing
them we
get 8;

and as these
may be either
with or with-
out matter,
16;

and as they
are either
natural or
unnatural in
some men, 32.

Compared
with men's
complexion,
[1 leaf 4]

other things
are hot, cold,
moist, or dry.

A medicine
which does
not affect a
man's com-
plexion is
called tem-
perate.

A hot meat
or medicine
may be hot,
in 1 gradu,

in 2 gradu,

- 20 moiste & drye, sumtyme ben y-componyd, þat ys to sugge medlyde, Add. MS.
 þere comen of hem VIII, as hote & drye, hote & moist, colde & 12,056.
 drye, colde & moiste; ffoure of þese ben symple, & foure ben com-
 ponyd. And for þilke VIII sumtyme ben with mater, sumtyme
 24 withoute mater, þere ben XVI; & for þilke XVI, after sum con-
 sideracioun mowe ben natureh to sum Man, ³ & to sum man vn
 natureh, þere mowe ben XXXII. Nevere þe lattere amonge alle
 þe complexiouns þat man may fynden, þat is componyd of dyuerse
 28 qualites, þere nys non so temperat as ys mannes complexioun;
 havynge rewarde to mannes complexioun, alle opere þynge ys*
 clepyde colde, hote, moyste, opere drye. Whanne þat a mete, opere
 a medycine, hath y-suffryde kendlye hete þat ys in Man, & hetyth
 32 hym noȝt & colyth hym nauȝt, ne dryeþ hym noȝt, ne moysted hym
 noȝt, so þat mannes complexioun may noȝt conseyven wheþer yt
 colde hym, ore hete, dryȝe, opere moyste, yt is clepyde temperat; &
 þilke thyng we sigge is hot in þe firste degre, þat ys y-hatte of
 36 kendlye hete, þat ys in oure bodyes & hetyth oure bodyes withouten
 greuaunce, & þilke we siggen be hote in þe secunde degre, whiche
 þat ys y-hette of oure kendlye hete, so hetyth oure body, þat he ne
 myȝte hete vs namore withouten greuaunce; hot in þe þridde degre:

[3 fol. 35 a]

in $\frac{3}{4}$ gradu. pilke we seie to be hoot in þe þridde degree, which þat is het of
 in $\frac{4}{4}$ gradu. ¹kyndely heete bryngiþ to oure bodi sensible greuauunce. & pilke
 is in þe fourþe degree, þat is hot of ²vñkyndely heete, distroieþ þe
 bodi openliche / & in þis same maner 3e moun knowe degrees þat 4
 ben colde / I mai preue in þis maner, þat it is nessessarie a surgian
 .Nota. to knowe complexiouns of bodies, lymes, & of medicyns. Take .ij.
 men þat ben of oon age, & lete hem ben I-woundid wiþ a swerd or
 a knyfe³ þwert ouer þe arm in oon hour & in oon place; oon of 8
 [¶ If. 4. bk.] þe men is of an ⁴hoot complexioun & a moist, þat oper of a cold
 complexioun & a drie. þe comoun seiynge of lewid men is þat þei
 schulden boþe ben helid on o maner; but resonableurgerie I-preued
 techiþ us, þat þei ne schulde not boþe be helid aftir oon maner / For 12
 he þat hap an hoot complexioun, & a moist, may listly haue an hoot
 enpostym—þat is an hoot swellynge—& þat may be cause of an
 hoot feure. What schalt þou þanne do? þou must loke, wheþer he
 hap bled myche blood at his wounde, and þanne it is weel; ellis 16
 lete him blood of þe contrarious arme, or ellis⁵—of þe oon same side,
 if strenkþe & age acorde; or ventose⁶ him on þe two buttokkis, if
 þat he be feble. & if he may not schite⁶ oones a day, helpe him
¹ *en* above line. ² *en* in different hand. ³ *ouer* above line.
⁴ Lat. ventosare. Kersey, *Dict.* Ventose, a Cupping Glass.
⁵ Lat. ascellare. Add. MS. translates accurately: *go to sege*. See below.

Add. MS. pilke we sigge to be hot in þe þridde degre, whiche þat ys y-hatte of 20
 12,056. kendllye hete, bryngeþ to oure bodye sencyble greuauunce; hot in þe
 fourþ degre: and pilke in þe fourþ gre þat is y-hat of kendllye hete,
 dystroyeþ þe body opynlyche; & in þis same manere 3e may knowe
 degrees þat ben colde, & y may preue in þis manere þat yt is 24
 necessarye a surgyne to knowe complexiouns of bodyes, lymes, & of
 medycynes. ¶ Take two men þat ben off one age, & lete hem ben
 y-woundyde with a swerd opere a knyffe twarte offere þe arme, in
 [¶ fol. 35 b] one oure & in ⁷one place. One of þo men ys of an hote complexioun 28
 & a moyste, þe opere of a colde & a drye; þe comyne siggyng of
 lewyde men ys, þat þey scholde boþe by helyde aftere o manere.
 But resonable surgye wel y-proved, techith vs þat þey ne schulle
 noȝt boþe ben y-helyde aftere on manere; for he þat hap an hot 32
 complexioun & a moyst, may lyztliche haue an hote enposteme, þat
 ys an hote swellynge, & þat may be cause of an⁸ hote fleuyre. What
 schaltou þanne do? þou moste loke wheþer he haue y-bled myche
 blod at hys wounde, & þenne it ys wel, ellys lete hym blod of þe 36
 contraryose arme, opere ellys⁸ on þe fot on þe same syde; ȝif strengþe
 & age acorde, opere ventuse hym on þe tweye buttokkys; gif þat he
 be feble, ȝif he may noȝt go to sege onys a day, helpe hym þereto

⁸ *an* above the line.

perto, or with clisterie, or wiþ suppositoria. & brynge þou þe parties of þe wounde togidere þoruþ sowynge, or wiþ plumaciols—þat ben smale pelewis—or wiþ byndynge, if þat sewynge be nouzt nessesarie, & þanne worche aboute þe wounde, as it is told aftir in þe book. But aboute þe wounde leie a medicyn defensif, of bole armonyac¹, oile of rosis, & a litil vynegre; so þat ²þe medicyn touche þe brynkis of þe wounde, þat humouris moun not haue her cours to renne to þe wounde; & we forbeden him wiyn, mylk & eiren & fisch þat engendriþ myche blood / But he schal ete for his mete growel maad of otemele, eipir of barli mele wiþ almaundis; & generaliche he schal vse a streit dietynge, til þat he be sikir þat he schal haue noon hote enpostym. & if þat we kunne fende him fro a feuere & apostym, þe science of his complexioun techiþ us, þat he may of his sijknes soone be hool / þe opere of þe cold complexioun schal not be leten blood ne ventusid, for blood schulde be kept in him, as for tresour / Forbede hem neipir wiyn ne fleisch, for þe stomak þat is so feble ne myzte nouzt engendre nessesarie mater of blood þat longiþ to þe wounde / Ne we drede nouzt in him þe feuere, for his complexioun is nouzt able to resceyue þe feuere / We moun

Close his wound with compresses or with bandages, and apply an unguentum defensivum. [2 leaf 5]
He must keep a strict diet.
2. Keep the blood in a patient of cold complexion; give him wine and meat.

Compare: *a Sege of a Privay*; gumfus. *Cathol. Angl.*, p. 328. Compare the French: aller à la selle.

¹ *Bole Armoniack.* See N. E. Dict.

20 opere wit clysterye, opere with suppositorye; & brynge þou þe parties of þe wounde to-gedire, opere with sowynge, opere wiþ plumaciolus—þat bep smale pelewys—opere with byndynge, zif þat sowynge be nozt necessarie. And þenne worche aboute þe wounde, as it ys tolde afters in þe boke; but aboute þe wounde leye a Medycine defensiu, of bol Armonyac, oyle of rosys, & a litel vynegre, so þat þe medycine touche þe sydes of þe woundes, þat humours mowe nozt haue here cours to renne to þe wounde. And we forbyde hym wyn, Milke, & eyren, & fysch, þat engendriþ myche blod; but he schal ete for his Mete grueþ y-made of ote Mele, opere barly mele with Almaundes, & generaliche he schal vse a streyt doynge, tyl þou be sykere þat he schal haue non enposteme. And zif þat we kunne dyffenden hym from a ffevyre & aposteme, þe science of hys complexioun techyth vs þat he may of hys seknesse sone be hol. ¶ þe opere of þe colde complexioun ne schal nozt be leten blod ne ventusyde, ffor blod scholde be kepte in hem as for tresoure; forbyde hym neipere wyn ne flesch; for þe stomak þat ys so feble, ne myzte nouzt engendre necessarie mater of blod þat longyth to þe wounde; ne we dredyth nozt in hym þe ffevyre, for his complexioun ys nozt able to resceyuen þe ffevyra. We mowe

Add. MS. 12,056.
[fol. 36 a]

14 *Different Effects of Vitriol on different Complexions.* [I. i. 2.]

fynde a medicyn maad in oon maner þat worchip dyuers effectis, & he be I-leid to dyuers complexiouns / Grene vitriol, & he be do to a man of a drie complexioun engendrith fleisch¹; & if þou leie ²him on moist compleccioun, he greueþ nouȝt oonliche, but corrodith 4 it; and neþeles vitriol haþ but oon maner worchinge, þouȝ þat he worche dyuersliche in dyuers complexiouns / Riȝt as þe worchinge of þe sunne is dyuers, nouȝt for þe sunne, but for þe worchinge of dyuers bodies into whom he worchip / Vitriol driep wondirfulliche 8 myche: in drie bodies he defendiþ³ þe smale lymes myȝt⁴ to aȝenstonde his miȝt, wherfore he may nouȝt but drie þe superfluytees þat he fyndiþ in þe wounde; & whanne þo ben y-dried, kynde engendriþ fleisch. In moiste bodies, for þat þe smale lymes ben feble 12 & moun not wiþstonde þe strenkþe of þe vitriol, þe fleisch meltiþ vndir it, & so bi vitriol þe fleisch rotiþ. & þat is seid of dyuers complexiouns, is y-seid of dyuers lymes / Galioun seiþ: If þat tweye woundis ben euene I-quytturid, & þe oon be a drie lyme, & 16 þe oþer a moist lyme, þat þat is þe drie lyme nedip þe moister medicyn / And if þat .ij. lymes leue⁵ ben I-woundid þat ben lich

vitriol
has a differ-
ent effect on
different com-
plexions.
[³ If. 5, bk.]

Galen
Limbs of
different
complexions
must be
treated
differently.

¹ fleisch in margin. ³ defendiþ, mistake for fyndiþ; see below.
⁴ myȝt for myȝty; see below. ⁵ leue for leche?

Add. MS. 12,056. fynden a Medycine made in o manere þat wirchith dyuerse effectis, & he be y-leyde to dyuerse complexiouns. Grene vytreole, & he be 20 done to a Man of dryȝe complexioun, engendrith flessch; & ȝif þou leggen hym on a moyste complexioun, he greuyth noȝt onlyche, but corodup yt. And napeles vitreole haþ but one manere wyrchinge, þouȝ he wirche dyuerslyche in dyuerse complexiouns, ryȝte as þe 24 wirchyng of þe sonne ys dyuerse—noȝt for þe sonne, but for þe wyrchyng of dyuerse bodyes in whom he wyrchyth. Vitreole dryep wonderlyche muche, & in dryȝe bodyes he fyndeþ þe smale lymes myȝhty to ageyne stonden hys strengþe. Wherefore he may 28 nought but drye þe superfluytes þat he fynte in þe⁶ wounde; & whenne þo ben y-dreyede, kynde engendryth flessch. In moyste bodyes, ffor þat þe smale lymes beþ feble, & mowe noȝt wiȝstande þe strengthe off þe vytreole, þe flessch meltiþ vndire yt, & so be þe 32 vitreole þe flessch rotyth; & þat þat ys seyde of dyuerse complexiouns, ys y-seyde of dyuerse lymes. Galyen: ȝif þat tweye woundes⁷ ben evyne i quyter, & þe on be in a dryȝe lyme, & þe oþere in a moyste lyme, þat þat is in þe dryore lyme nedip þe dryore 36 medycine. And ȝif þat two lymes ben y-wounded þat ben lyche in

[⁷ fol. 36 b]

⁶ wound, cancelled because blotted after in þe and re-written.

in complexioun, & þe oon haþ myche quytture & þe toþer litil, he þat haþ þe myche quytture, nedip to han þe drier medicyn /

- ¹ **I**ohannes damascenus seiþ, Medicyns & enplastris schulden ben [1f. 6]
 4 acordynge to þe lymes þat þei ben leid on / Galienus : a kyndly Galienus
 þing' schal be kept wiþ a þing' þat is kyndly þerto / And þat is aȝen
 kynde schal be doon awei with þing' þat is contrarie þerto / If þat
 a surgian knew not complexiouns of lymes & of bodies, he schal
 8 nouȝt conne to schewynge hiſe medicyns aftir þat kynde askiþ. A nota
 surgian must knowe generacioun of humouris, if he wolde knowe A Surgeon must know the genera-
tion of the
Humours,
and the
different
offices of the
Limbs.
 þe science & þe helynge of apostymes, as it schal be declarid in þe
 tretis of apostymes. He muste knowe þe dyuersitees & þe profitis
 12 & þe officis of lymes, þat he mowe knowe, what lymes han a greet
 worchinge in mannes body, & whiche ben of greet felynge, & whiche
 moun bere a strong' medicyn / & þe vertues of lymes þou must
 knowe, þat he se, whanne þe worchinge of ony vartu failiþ in ony
 16 lyme, þat he mowe helpe þe vertu & þe same lyme failynge. & if
 he haue þe science of knowynge of vertues, þe science of spiritis
 schal nouȝt be hid fro him. Alle þese þingis bifore seid ben but
 natureles, & þei ²ben but techinge of medicyns speculatyf / [1f. 6, bk.]
 20 Also he muste haue knouelechinge of þingis þat ben not natureles, He must also
know the
things which
are not
 þat he kunne chese good eir to him þat is woundid or ellis haþ

-
- complexioun, & þat on haþ myche quytter and þe oþere lyte, he þat Add. MS.
12,056.
 haþ myche quytter nedyth to haven þe dryere medycine. **Iohannes**
 24 **damascenus** : Medycines & enplastres scholde ben acordynge to þe
 lymes þat þey ben y-leyde on. **Galienus** : a kendlye thyng schal
 be kepte with þynge þat ys kendlye þere to ; and þat þat is aȝeyne
 kynde schal be done away with þynge þat is contrarye þere to. Ȝif
 28 þat a surgien knowith nouȝt complexiouns of lymes & of bodies, he
 schal nouȝt kunne to chaungen hys medycines aftere þat kynde
 askep. A surgien moste knowe generacioun of humours, Ȝif he
 wolde knowen þe sciense & þe helynge of Apostemys, as yt schal ben
 32 declared in þe tretys of apostemes ; he moste knowyn þe dyuersite,
 & þe profytes, & þe offices of lymes, þat he mowe knowen what
 lymes han grete wyrchyng in mannys body, & whiche ben of grete
 felynge, & whiche mowe bere a stronge Medycine ; & þe vertues of
 36 lymes he moste knowe, þat he se whanne þat þe worchyng of enye
 vertue fayleþ in enye lyme, þat he mowe helpe þe vertue in þe same
 lyme faylinge. And Ȝif he haue þe science of knowynge of vertues,
 þe sciense of spiritus ne schult nouȝt ben y-hud from hym. Alle þese
 40 þynges before seyde beþ natureles, & þey beþ techynge of medycine
 speculatyff. Also he moste han knowynge of thynges þat beþ nouȝt
 natureles, þat he kunne chesen gode eyre to hym þat is y-woundyde,

natural, as
the effect of
the air on a
wound.

note

He must
know how to
prescribe
moving or
rest.

[N. 7.]

Notes

He must
regulate the
patient's
sleep.

a boch¹ / Woundis moun not be² dried in a moist eir & a vapouris, but þei þat ben woundid musten ben chaungid fro þat moist eir to a swete clear eyr & a drie / In wyntir he muste kepe him fro cold; for no þing greueþ so myche boones & senewis as cold³ þat ben⁴ I-woundid / & in somer he muste haue temperable eir. It is nessessarie þat he kunne dietyn his pacient, as I schal telle in þe same chapitle of dietinge / also he muste ordeyne meuyng & reste,⁴ as it nedip to þe same sijk man / for if þat he be woundid in þe heed eiper haue ony puncture of ony senewe, it is nessessarie þat he reste & dwelle in stillenes & haue an esy bed & a soft; lest he suffre ony traueile of his lymes / But if þat olde woundis wipout akyng were in his armes, it were good to him, þat is sijk, to walke on his feet, & lete his arme be bounde to his necke; & if þat þe wounde be in hise schynes & in hise feet, it were good þat he lay & traueilide wip hise hondis / Also a⁵ surgian, in al þat he myȝte, he muste tempere a sijk mannes slepyng; for to myche slepyng engenderip superfluyte & febliþ his vertewes, & coldip & lesip al his bodi / To myche wakyng dissolueþ & confoormeþ⁶ hise spiritis &

¹ *boch*, Latin *apostema*; M. E. *botch*. See N. E. Dict.

² *keelid* cancelled.

³ as *cold* misplaced; see below.

⁴ *to* cancelled after *reste*.

⁶ *confoormeþ*, erroneously for *consumeþ*, as below. Lat. Orig.: *dissolvunt et consumunt*.

Add. MS. opere ellys haþ a bocche. Woundes mowe noȝt ben y-dryzed in a 12,056. 7moyste eyre & a vaporose, but þey þat ben y-woundyde most bene 20
[7 fol. 37 a] y-chaungyde from þat moyste eyre to a swote cler eyre & a dryȝe. In wyntere he moste kepe hym from colde, ffor noþinge grevyth so myche bonys & synwes þat buþ y-woundyde as colde. And in somere he moste han a temperable eyre; hit ys necessarye þat he 24 kunne dyoten hys pacient, as y schal tellen in þe same Chapytell of dyotyng. Also he moste ordeyne moffyng & reste, as yt nedep to þe same syke man; ffor ȝif þat he be woundyde in þe hed, opere haue eny puncture off enye synwe, it ys necessarye þat he reste: 28 dwelle he in styllenesse, & haue an euene bed & a softe, leste he suffren enye trauaylle of hys lemys; but ȝif þat olde woundes, wipouten akyng, weren in hys Armes, hit were gode to hym þat ys seke to walken on hys fete, & bere hys arme y-bounden to hys 32 nekke; & ȝif þat þe wounde be in hys schynys & in hys ffete, hit were gode þat he leyȝe & traueillyde with hys handes. Also a surgien, in alle þat he myȝhte, he moste atempre a syke Mannes slepyng, ffor to myche slepyng engendreþ superfluyte, & feblyth 36 his vertues, & coldyth & losyth alle hys bodye; to myche wakyng dyssolip & consumeþ hys spirites, & makyth echarpe hys humores,

makip scharpe hise humouris ; it bryngip vnkindly drowpe to woundis, & is cause of akyng / Also he muste kunne evacuener him free the patient from evil humours þat is ful of yuel humouris & fulfille him þat is waastid, þat he
 4 brynge sike men to good temperaunce ; ellis a wounde mai not be heelid / Entempre he þe herte of him þat is sijk, for to greet wrappe. and take care that the heart is temperate. makip þe spiritis reanne to myche to þe wounde & þat is caus of swellynge ; to greet drede, ouþir vttereste¹ of heelp of his wounde,
 8 holdip þe spiritis wipinne his bodi, þat mater mai not come to heele his wounde / þese .vj. þingis ben clepid vnnaturel,² which techip a man speculatijf of leche craft.

He muste knowe þe sijkes : as olde wounde, festre, cankre & He must know the different kinds of wounds.
 12 alle opere soris, þat he traueile not in veyn & brynge þe sike man to his deef / For ech dyuers soor nedip dyuers helpingis. He muste knowe þe cause of þe wounde / ffor a wounde, þat is ³maad wip a swerd eiper a knyf, must operwise be heelid, þan he þat is Nota [? l. 7, bk.]
 16 maad wip stoon eiper fallinge / And a wounde þat is biten wip an hound schal operwise be heelid, þan he þat is biten with a wood hound ; as þou schalt fynde soone told in þe booke hereafter / & he muste knowe þe accidentis þat ben aboute a wounde / for þe wounde
 20 schal neuere heele, til þe accidentis be remeued away / accidentis is and the accidentis which befall a wound.

¹ *utteste*, only known as an adj. : *extremus*, erroneously for *untrust*. See below.

² Lat. *quæ sunt secundum membrum theoricæ medicinæ*.

& hit bryngeþ vnkyndly drowpe to woundes, & ys cause of akyng ; Add. MS. also he moste kunne evacuen hym þat ys ful of euele humores, & 12,056.
 fulfille hym þat ys wastyde, þat he brynge seke men to gode
 24 temperaunce ; ellys a wounde may nozt ben helyd ; entempre he þe hert of hym þat ys seke, ffor to gret wratthe makyp þe spirites renne to myche to þe wounde, & þat ys cause of swellynge ; ⁴to grete drede, [? fol. 37 b]
 opere vntryst of helpe of hys wounde holdip spyrites withynne hys
 28 body, þat mater may nouzt come to hele þe wounde. þese sixe thynges ben y-clepyde vnnaturell, whiche techith a Man speculatyff of leche craft. He mot knowen þe seknesse, as olde wounde, festre, cancre, & alle opere sores, þat he traveylle nozt in deveyne, & brynge
 32 þe seke man to hys deþ : ffor ech dyverse sore nedith dyverse nelpynges. He mote knowe þe cause of þe wounde ; ffor a wounde þat is mad with a swerd opere a knyff mote opere weys ben helyde þen he þat is y-makyde with ston, opere with fallynge, & a wounde
 36 þat is byten with an hounde schal opere weys ben helyde þen he þat ys y-byten with a wod hound, as þou schalt fynde tolde in þe booke hereafter. And he mot knowe þe Accidentes þat buþ aboute a wounde, ffor the wounde schal neuere hele tyl þe Accidentes ben
 40 remevyde away. Accidentis ys a þynge þat fallip to þe wounde out
 SURGERY. c

He must know how to prescribe appropriate diet.

.Galen.

a þing¹ þat falliþ to a wounde out of kynde as hoot, cold, drie, eiþer to myche moistnes, crampe & opere þinges aȝens kynde / A surgian muste ordeyne dietyng in dyuers maner, as it is told in þe chapitle of dietyng; & whanne it is nedeful, he muste ȝeue dyuers drinkis / 4 Galien: Laxatiues & vometis ben nedeful to hem, þat han olde rotid woundis & stynkyng / For whanne þe bodi is purgid fro wickide humouris, þe wickidnes of þe mater renneþ fro þe wounde & so þe wounde is sunner helid / He þat biholdiþ alle þe parties of 8 a medicyn, he may weel so þat it is nessessarie a surgian to knowe phisik, & oper dyuers science, as I haue told tofore in þe book.

¶ þe .iiij c^o of þe firste techinge is of intencioun of a surgian /

12

[1. 16. 8]
¶ Chap. 3^m.
1.
2.
3.

¹ A l þe entencioun of a surgian, how diuers þat it be, it is on* [of] pre maners / þe first is vndoynge of þat, þat is hool / þe secunde to hele þat, þat is broke / þe .iiij. is remeuynge of þat, þat is to myche; so þat it be don with hand craft / ffor al entencioun of 16 a surgian is vndir oon of þese .iiij. entenciouns, or ellis vnder oon of hem. A surgian vndoip þat þat is hool, whanne he letiþ blood, eiþer garsiþ,² eiþer brenneþ, eiþer settiþ on watirlechiis, for þis is a ² garsiþ] Lat. scarificat; Fr. gerçer; med. Lat. gersa, garsa. See *Cathol. Angl.*, p. 150.

A surgeon
1. either
undoes what
is whole,

Add. MS.
12,056.

of kynde, as hete, colde, drowþe opere to gret moistnesse, crampe, & 20 opere þynges aȝeyne kynde. A surgien mot ordeyne dyetyng in dyverse manere, as it is tolde in þe ChapiteH of dyetyng. Whenne þat it is nedful, he mote ȝyve dyverse drynkes. Galien: laxativis & vomytes buþ necessarie to hem þat han olde, rotyde, stynkynde 24 woundes; ffor whanne þat þe body is purgyde from evyle humours, þe wykkednesse of þe matere renneþ from þe wounde, & so þe wounde is sonnere y-helyde. He þat byholdeþ alle þe partyes of a 28 medycine, he may wel se ³that it is necessarie a surgyne to knowen ffysyk and opere dyverse science, as hit is tolde tofore in þis boke.

[1 fol. 28 a]

¶ The pridde Chapitele of þe furste techyng is of Intencioun off a Surgyne.

Alle þe entencioun of surgerye, how dyverse þat it be, yt is on 32 *of pre maneres: þe ffurste ys undoyng þat þat is hol; secunde ys helpynge of þat þat is tobroke; þe pridde ys remevynge of þat þat is to myche, so þat it be do with hande crafte; ffor alle þe entencioun of a surgien ys vndire one of þis pre entensiouns, opere ellys 36 vndire one of hem. A surgyne vndop þat þat ys hol, whanne he letyth blod ore garsyth opere brenneþ, opere setteþ on waterlechys,

- surgiens craft; þouȝ we for oure pride haue left it to barbouris & to wymmen / for Galion & Rasis didnen it *with* her hondis, as her bookis tellen. And we vndoon þat, þat is hool, whanne þat we
- 4 kutten þe veynes, þat ben in þe templis & þe forheed & maken cauterizaciouns for þe sijknis of þe yȝen / And whanne þat we maken cauteries in þe heed & in dyuers placis of þe bodi, as I schal telle in þe chapitle of cauterisyng / þe secunde entencioun is to
- 8 hele þat, þat is broken as woundis, olde woundis, festrīs, cankris & in bringyng¹ to her placis ioyntis þat ben oute & in helynge boones þat ben to broken / þe .iiij. intencioun is to remeue þat, þat is to myche, as ¹scrofulus of þe heed & þe necke & opere parties of þe
- 12 bodie / cataractis²—is a watir þat cometh hitwene þe white of þe iȝen & þe appil; sebel—þat ben veynes þat ben in þe whiȝt of þe iȝen & beþ ful of blood / vngula—is a þing, þat bigynneþ bi þe nose & goiþ ouer þe iȝe til he keuere al þe iȝe—& knottis, þat ben in þe
- 16 iȝe & opere siknes of þe iȝe; & in doynge away polippis, þat is fleisch þat growiþ wipinne þe nose; wertis & wennys; ficus, þat is superfluyte þat growen vp on þe skyn of þe pintils hede wipoute, emeraudis³ & a skyn þat enclosiþ a wommans priuy membre, þe

Nota.
G. R.

as when he bleeds, scarifies or cauterizes;

or 2. he heals wounds, &c.,

or 3. he removes excrescences, sign. 2] [1 lf. 8, bk.] as cataracts,

polypuses, and wens.

² cataract, sebel and ungula. See Notes.

³ The Latin text has: superfluitatem hermaphroditis.

- 20 ffor þis ys a surgyns craft, þawȝ we for oure pride haue y-lefte yt to laborers & to wommen, for Galien & Rasys dyden it wip here handes as here bokys tellyþ. And we vndop þat þat is hol, whenne þat we kutteþ þe veynes þat ben in þe templys & þe forhed, &
- 24 makyth cauterisaciones from þe seknesse of þe eyȝen, & whenne þat we maken Cauteries in þe hed & in dyverse places of þe body as y schal telle in þe chapitell of Cauterysyng. þe secunde entencioun ys to hele þat þat is tobroke as: woundes, olde woundes, flestres,
- 28 Cancres, and in bringynge to here place Ioyntes þat bene oute, & in helynge bonys þat ben tobroke. þe priddyde entencioun is to remevyn þat þat ys to myche as scurffyls of þe hed & þe nekke, & opere partyes of þe body, & Cataractis þat ys a water þat comyth
- 32 hitwene þe whyte of þe eyȝe & þe Appul. Sebel þat beþ veynes þat buþ in þe whyte of þe eyȝe, & beþ ful of blod. Vngula, þat ys a thyng þat bygynneþ by þe nese & goth ouere þe eyȝe, tyl he keffere alle þe eyȝe & knottes þat ben in þe eyȝe, & opere seknesse
- 36 of þe eyȝe, & in doynge away polippes þat is flesch þat growiþ wip ynn þe nese, wertys & wennys, ficus þat is a superfluyte þat growiþ vp on þe skyn off þe pyntellys hed withouten, emeraudes & a schyn

Add. MS.
12,056.

[4 fol. 38 v]

sixte fingre of þe hond & manye superfluytees þat beþ nouȝt semelich to a mannys body

¶ þe firste chapitle of þe secunde tretis is an vniuersal word of smale lymes & her helpingis, & of gener- 4
acioun of embrioun, þat is þe child, in þe modir wombe // / /¹

de anothe-
[m]ia.
A Surgeon
must know
Anatomy.

Auicen.
[² ff. 9]

†The Embryo

.G.
is engendered
of the seed of
man and
woman.†

G Alienus seip, þat it is nessessarie a surgian to knowe anotamic ;
ne leue we nouȝt þat ech brood ligament is a skyn, & ech 8
round ligament to be a senewe, so bi his opinyoun he myȝte falle
into errour / þerfore I þenke to ordeyne a chapitle of þe kynde &
of the ²foorme & helpinge of alle smale lymes / Auicen seip /
knoulechinge of a þing, þat haþ cause, mai nouȝt be knowen, but 12
bi his cause. þerfore we moten knowe þe cause, *membrorum
consimilium*, þat is to seie, smale lymes. & I wole telle þe genera-
cioun of embrioun : þat is to seie, how a child is I-gete in þe modir
wombe / Galien & auicen tellen, þat of boþe þe spermes of man & 16
of womman, worchinge & suffrynge togideris, so þat ech of hem
worche in opir & suffre in opir, embrioun is bigete / But the
worchinge of mannes kynde is more myȝtiere, & wommans kynde

¹ See *Vicary*, ed. Furnivall, p. 78.

Add. MS. 12,056. þat enclosyþ a wommans priue membre, þe sixte fynger of þe hand, 20
and manye superfluytes þat beþ nought semlye to mannys body.

¶ The ffurste Chapiteþ of þe secunde tretys ys an
universel word off smale lymes, & here helpynges
of generacioun of enbrion þat is child in þe moder 24
wombe.

G Alien seith þat it ys necessarie a Surgien to knowe Anotomye,
ne leffe henȝt þat iche brode ligament þat ys a schyn, & iche
rounde ligament to ben a synwe, & so be hys opynioun he myȝte 28
fallen in erreure. þerfore i þynke to ordeyne a Chapiteþ of þe
kynde & of þe fforme & þe helpyng of alle smale lymes. Avycene
seith, knowlechyng of a þyng þat haþ cause may noȝt be knowe
but by hys cause, þerfore we mote knowe þe cause *membrorum* 32
consimilium : þat ys to sigge smale lymes. Y wyl telle þe generacioun
of embrion, þat ys to sigge, how a childe ys bygete in þe modire
wombe. Galien and Avycene tellen þat of boþe þe spermes of Man
& womman—wirchyng & sofferyng togedires, so þat iche of hem 36
wirche in opere & suffren in opere—embrion ys bygete. But þe
[² fol. 39 a] worchyng of Mannes kynde is more myȝtyere, & wommans ³kynde

more febler / For ryzt as þe roundeles¹ of chese hap bi him-silf wei
 of worching & þe mylk bi wey of suffrynge, so to þe generacioun
 of embrion mannes sperme hap him² bi wei of worching & wommans
 4 sperme bi wey of suffrynge / & ryzt as þe rundelis¹ & þe mylk
 maken a chese, so boþe þe spermes of man & womman maken
 generacioun of embrion. þow3 þat alle þe smale lymes of a child
 ben I-geten of boþe two spermes, nepeles, to cloþe hem with fleisch
 8 & wip fatnes, comeþ to hem menstrue³ blood / þe maris⁴ of womman
 hap an able complexioun to conseiuen; & of hir kynde he castip
 þe spermes to þe deppest place of hir; & of hir nature he closip hir
 mouþ, þat þer myzte not entre the poynt of a nedle / & þanne þe
 12 foormal vertu which almyzty god hap ȝeue to þe maris ordeyneþ &
 diuidid euery partie of þese spermes in her kynde, til þat þe child
 be born / Vndirstonde þat þe fleisch & þe fatnes is mad of menstrue
 blood, þe boones & gristlis, ligamentis & senewis, cordis, arteries,
 16 veynes, panniclis—þat ben smale cloþis—& þe skyn beþ engendrid
 of boþe þe spermes, as auicen & opere auctouris tellen / If þat ony of
 þe lymes þat ben engendrid of þe spermes ben doon away *[he] moun
 neuere verliche be restorid, for þe mater of hem is þe sperme of þe

†And as ren-
 net curdles
 milk and the
 two make
 cheese,
 so does the
 seed of man
 and woman
 make the
 Embryo.†
 sign. 31.
 [p. 17, 9, bk.]
 The flesh
 and the fat
 are formed
 from the
 menstrual
 blood.
 The Matrix
 closes itself
 after having
 conceived.
 The whole
 body is
 developed in
 the Matrix
 (except the
 flesh and fat)
 from the seed
 of the man
 and woman.
 Auicen

¹ *roundeles, rundelis.* Add. MS. *rendelys*, coagulum. See *Prompt. Parv.*, p. 429, *renlys*, or *rendlys*. Comp. O. Du. *rinsel*, *runsel*.

² *mannes sperme hap him*, Lat. *ita sperma viri se habet*. ⁴ *maris*, matrix.

20 ys more feblere. Ffor ryzt as þe rendelys of chese hap hym by Add. MS.
 weye of worchyng, & þe Mylk be weye off suffrynge, so to þe 12,056.
 generacioun of embrion, Mannes sperme⁶ hath hym be weye of
 worchyng, & wommans sperme⁶ be weye of suffrynge, & ryzt as þe
 24 rendles & þe mylk makyth a⁵ chese, so boþe þe spermes⁶ of man &
 womman makyþ þe generacioun of embrion. þow3 þat alle þe smale
 lymes of a childe be y-geten of boþe two spermes,⁶ napeles to cloþe
 hem with flesch & with fatnesse comeþ to hem menstrewe blod. þe
 28 marys of a womman hap an able complexioun to conseyyen, & of
 here kynde sche castyþ þe spermes to þe deppeste place off here,
 and of here nature sche closyþ hire mouth þat þere myzte nouzt
 entre þe poynt of an nedle. And þenne þe formal virtue whiche
 32 þat almyghty god hap ȝeuen to the marys, ordeyneþ & deff[e]ndep
 every party of þese spermes in here kynde, tyl þat þe childe ben
 ybore. Understande þat þe flesch & þe fatnesse ys y-mad of men-
 strewe blod, the bonys & þe grustlys, ligamentes, synwes, cordes,
 36 Arteries, veynes, pannycles, þat buþ smale cloþes & þe schyn buþ
 engendred of boþe þe spermes, as Avicene & opere Autores tellyn.
 Ȝif þat enye of þe lymes þat buþ engendrede off the spermes be don
 away, *he may neuere verrellyche ben restoride, ffor þe matere of

⁵ Above line.

⁶ MS. *spernes*.

fadir & of þe modir; but þe fleisch the which mater is blood, þat is aldai engendrid in us, may weel & verriliche be restorid / þese smale lymes han dyuers foormes, complexciouns & helpingis aftir þe dyuersitees of þe proporciouns of þe mater, which þat þei ben maad of / for þow3 þat alle þe lymes ben maad of oon mater I-medlid, neþeles in ech of þe smale ly¹mes þer is a dyuers proporcioun of mater, for þe which mater þei taken dyuers foormes & dyuers helpingis. Almy3ti god zeueþ to ech þing² of his foorme after þat his mater is * proporciound disserueþ /

consimile
membris,**
1st Member
The Bone.
Its functions:
to move
limbs,
protect them,
support the
body,
and fill the
hollows of
joints.

þe boon is þe first of þe consimile membris—þat is oon of þe smale lymes; þe which ben² cold & drie & he haþ dyuers foormes in mannes bodi: for he helpiþ dyuerslich / þe cause whi þer ben manye dyuers boones in mannes bodi is, for sumtyme it is nede to meeue oon lyme withouten anopir & þat were impossible, if þat al þe bodi were but oon boon / Anoper cause whi þer ben manye boones: for summe defenden þe principal lymes from harm, as þe brayn scolle from³ þe brayn of þe heed / summe ben fundamentis, as þe boones of þe rigge & of þe schenes & of þe armes / summe ben as additamentis þat ben in þe side of þe rigge boon, & summe to fulfille the holownes of summe ioyntis, as þe handis & þe feet; 20

² ben for it, see below. ³ from, erroneously inserted.

Add. MS. 12,056. hym ys þe sperme of þe fadire & þe modere. But þe flesch whose matere ys blod þat is al day engendred in vs may wel & verrelliche be restoryde. þese smale lymes han dyverse formes, complexioun, & helpynges after the dyversite of þe proportiouns of þe mater whiche þat þey ben ⁴mad of; ffor þow3 þat alle the lymes be mad of on matere y-medlyde, napeles in eche of þe smale lymes þere is a dyverse propositioun⁵ of matere, for the whiche matere þey taken dyverse forme & dyverse helpe. Almyghty god gevyth to effrye þynge of hys forme after þat hys matere *proporcioned deservyt.

þe bon is furst of consimile membris þat is on off smale lymes, þe whiche ys colde & drye, & he haþ dyverse formes in mannes bodye, for he helpiþ dyversliche; þe cause why þere ben many dyverse bonys in mannys body is,⁶ ffor sum tyme it ys nede to meffyn o lyme without an opere, & þat were impossible, 3if in alle þe body were but on hol bon. An opere cause is why þere ys many bonys; for sum diffenden þe principal lymes from harme, as þe brayn scolle þe brayn of þe hed; somme ben ffundamentys, as þe bonys of þe rugge, & of þe schynes, & of þe Armes. Some ben as armure, as additamentys, þat ben in þe syde of þe rugge bon, & somme fulfille þe holwenesse of somme Iunttes, as þe handys & þe

⁶ read "porporcioun."
⁶ is above line.

& summe *per* ben *pat* *pe* roundnes of *pe* boon myzte entre into *pe* holownes of *pat* *oper* boon / & non les schulde not lacke his meuyng as *pe* schuldre boones & *pe* hiþe boones. þou maist fynde
 4 how manye boones *per* ben in *pe* .ij. tretis, ¹where schal be told [¹ 17. 10, bk.]
 pleyulier *pe* anotamie of consimile membrs of al *pe* bodi from *pe* heed to *pe* foot.

A gristil is cold & drie, & is neischere þan a boon, & hardere þan
 8 *pe* fleisch, and in *pe* fleisch he haþ sixe helpingis / *pe* firste, *pat* *pat*
 schulde be a meene bitwene *pe* vtir ende of *pe* hard boon & *pe*
 neische fleisch / *pe* .ij. *pat* *pe* harde schulde not hirte *pe* neische,
 nameli in *pe* tyme of compressioun, & in *pe* tyme of smytinge / *pe*
 12 .ij. *pat* *pe* eende of *pe* boones whiche *pat* ben in *pe* ioyntis schulden
 haue a softere confutacioun² in her ioyntis / *pe* fourþe, *pat* he schulde
 fulfille *pe* office of *pe* boon to susteyne a brawne, meuyng a membre
pat haþ noon boon, as *pe* ouer lid of *pe* ize / *pe* fifþe : for it is
 16 nessessarie a gristil to ben in place, *pat* is nouzt ful hard as *pe* prote
 bolle ; for *pe* eende of *pe* prote bolle is gristeli / *pe* .vj. : for it is
 nessessarie summe lymes to han a sustentacioun, and applicacioun,³
pat is foldyng, to be streyned & drawen abrod as *pe* noseþrillis &
 20 *pe* gristile of *pe* eere.

² *confutacioun*, erroneously for *confricacioun*. See below.

³ *applicacioun*. Read a *plicacioun*.

fete, & somme *pere* ben *pat* *pe* roundnesse of on bon myzte entre in
 to *pe* holwenesse of *pe* opere bon & napeles scholde nozt lakken hys
 meffynge, as *pe* schulder bonys, & the hepe bonys. þou maiste fynde
 24 hou many bonys *pere* ben in *pe* secunde tretys where schal be tolde
 plenerliche—*pe* Anotamye of consimile membrys of alle ⁴*pe* body, [⁴ fol. 40 a]
 from *pe* hed to *pe* fot. A grustyþ ys cold & drye, & is nesschere
 þenne a bon, & hardere þanne *pe* flesch, & in *pe* flesch hath vi
 28 helpynges. ¶ Helpyng *pe* grustel. The ffurste *pat* *pero* scholde be
 a Mene, bytwene *pe* vtter ende of *pe* hard bon, & *pe* nessch flesch.
 ¶ *pe* secunde, *pat* *pe* harde scholde nozt hurt *pe* nessche, namlyche,
 in *pe* tyme of comprission, & in *pe* tyme of smytinge. ¶ The
 32 pridde, *pat* *pe* ende of *pe* bonys, whiche *pat* ben in *pe* Iunttes
 scholde han a softere *confricacioun* in here Iunttes. ¶ *pe* iiij, *pat*
 he scholde fulfille *pe* office of *pe* bon, to susteyne a brawne meff-
 yng, a membre *pat* haþ non bon, as *pe* ouere lyd of *pe* eyze. ¶ *pe*
 36 v. for his necessarie a grustyþ to be⁵ in a place *pat* ys nozt ful
 hard, as *pe* prote bolle ; ffor *pe* ende of *pe* prote bolle ys grustlye.
 ¶ *pe* vi. for it is necessarie some lymes to han a sustentacioun &
 a plicacioun, *pat* is a foldyng, to be streyned & drawen abrod, as *pe*
 40 use þrylles & *pe* grustle of *pe* ere.

⁵ *nozt* above line.

sign. 21j

[¹ 17. 10, bk.]

2nd Member.
The Gristle ;
the six uses
of Gristle.

.1.

.2.

.3.

.4.

.5.

.6.

Add. MS.
12,056.

[⁴ fol. 40 a]

3rd Member,
Ligamentia.
[I. 11. 11]

The four uses
of Ligament.

1.
It binds the
bones to-
gether,

2.
It joins with
Sinews to
make Cordes,
i.e. Tendons
and Muscles,

3.
It is a resting-
place for
Sinews,

4.
It sustains
the parts
within the
body.
4th Member,
Sinews
(Nerves).
They start
from the
brain or
Spinal Cord.
sign. 21ij
[I. 11. 11, bk.]

Lygament is cold & drie, and goþ out of þe boones & hap þe foorme of a senewe. & he may be bowid, but he felip nouȝt; & he ¹hap foure helpingis / þe firste is, þat he knyttip oon boon wiþ anoþer / it is nessessarie, þat oon boon be knytt wiþ anoþer, þat ⁴many boonys myȝten make oon bodi as oon boon, & neuereþelatter ech membre myȝte meue bi him-silf, & þefore þe ligament is as bowable & incensibile / for if þat it hadde be censibile, þei myȝten nouȝt han I-susteyned þe traueile & þe meuyng of þe ioyntis / & ⁸if þat he hadde be inflexible as a boon, of whom he comeþ of, oon lyme myȝte not han meued wiþouten anoþer / þe secunde help is, þat he is ioyned wiþ senewis to make cordis & brawnes / þe þridde help is þat he schulde be a restyng place to summe senewis / þe ¹²fourþe þat bi him þe membris, þat ben wiþinne þe bodies, schulden ben y-teied, þe whiche þat neden haugyng.

A corde² is cold & drie, & he comeþ from þe brayne, eiþer from þe mucha³; þat is þe marie of þe rigge boones // From þe brayn ¹⁶comen .vij. peire cordes. & þei ben clepid sensible senewis / from þe nucha þer comen xxx peire cordis & oon bi him silf & þei ben mouable / And alle þe cordis þat comen of þe ⁴brayn & nucha, hap

² There is a constant confusion in all the mediæval medical books between nerves and sinews. See further Notes.

³ mucha, an error for nucha; med. Lat. nucha. Dufr.: postera pars colli. Fr. nuque. Littre gives references from the 14th cent. for the signification, marrow. See Notes.

Add. MS. 12,056. Ligamente is colde & drye, & goþ out of þe bonys, & hap þe ²⁰forme of a zenewe, & he may be bowyde, but he felip nouȝt, & he hap iiij helpynges. þe fyrste ys þat he knytte on bon with an opere. It is necessarie þat o bon be knytte with an opere, þat ²⁴many bonys myȝte make on body as on bon, & neuere þe later eche membre myȝte meffyn by hym-selfe, & þere fore þe ligamente was bowable & iusensibile; for ȝif þat yt had y-be sensible, þey myȝte nouȝt have susteynde the travaylle & þe meffynge of þe iuntys; and ȝif þat he hadde be inflexible as a bon, of whom þat he comyþ ²⁸of, ⁵on lyme myȝte nouȝt han meffyde withouten an opere. þe secunde help ys, þat he ys joynede with zenewys to make cordys & brawne. þe þridde helpynge ys, þat he scholde ben a restyng place to summe senewys. þe fourþe, þat be hym þe membris þat ben withynne þe ³²body scholde ben tyede, whiche þat nedyp hongynge.

[I. fol. 40 v]

A corde ys colde & drye, & he comyþ from þe brayn opere fro þe nuca, þat ys þe marie of þe rugge bonys. ¶ From þe brayn comeþ ³⁶vij peire cordys, & þey buþ y-clepyde sensible zenewys, from þe nuca þere comyþ xxx peire cordys, and on by hym selfen & þey buþ mevable; & alle þe cordys þat comyþ of þe brayn, & þe nuca

boþe felynge & meuynge. & þe cordis ben white oute, bowable, strong^r & tow³. & of her kynde þei bryngen meuynge & felynge to lymes. & for þat it is long^r & dyuydiþ¹ alle þe parties of þe senewis
 4 * [in þe secunde tretys y schal ordeyne Anotamye of ȝenewes & here place] as þei ligge; in þe whiche placis þou must be war whanne þou schalt kutte eiþer breñne / whanne þat we schulen ordeyne anotamie of official membris & of her woundis / Official membr
 8 is to seie: a fyngir, a ioynt, an hand, eiþer a foot *[ore] opere lymes of office /

Nerves of Feeling spring from the Brain: those of Motion from the Spinal Cord.

Official membris.

Arteries ben hoot nouȝt of her owne kynde, but for þe hoot blood & lijf þat goiþ in hem from þe herte. Of her kynde þei ben
 12 colde & drie & þei han two clopis, outcept oon þat goiþ to þe lungis þe ynnere corde is stronger & grettere, þat he mowe wiþholde a meuable mater & an hoot. & her bigynnyng is in þe lift^r side of þe herte. & þere bigynnen two arteries; oon goiþ to þe lunge & hap
 16 but oon coote and sprat in þe same lunge, & þere endiþ & bringiþ blood to þe lunge, bi whom he is norischid, & spirit of lijf, and þat he myȝte bryng from þe lunge eir to þe herte for to entempre þe fumosite of hete of þe herte. & þis arterie² is y-clepid venales. & it

5th Member, Arteries spring from the heart, and have two coats,

[17. 12]

¹ & dyuydiþ] a mistake for *to dyvyde*. Latin: De divisione vero membrorum multum longa est doctrina.

² *Arteriu renalis*, Pulmonary vein. It was taken to be an artery, as it carries arterial blood. See *Vicary's Anatomie*, ed. Furnivall, p. 58, note 1.

20 habbeþ boþe felynge & meffynge. & þe corlys ben whyte, bowable, stronge, & tow³; & of here kynde þey bryng meffynge & felynge to lymes. & for þat hit is longe to devydeþ alle þe parties of ȝenewes; * in þe secunde tretys y schal ordeyne Anotamye of
 24 ȝenewes & here place,* as þey ligge; in þe whiche place þou moste be ware, whenne þou schalt kutte opere breñne, whenne þat we schulle ordeyne Anotamye of official membris & of here woundes. Official membre ys to sigge: a ffynger, a Ioynt, an hand, opere a
 28 fote *ore opire lymes of ofyca.

Add. MS. 12,056.

Arteries bep hote, nouȝt for here owne kynde, but for þe hote blod & lyf þat goþ in ham from þe herte. Of here kynde þey ben
 32 longes. þe innore cote⁴ is grettere & strengere, þat he mowe wiþholde a Mevable matere & an hote. & here bygynnyng is of þe lyfte syde of þe herte. & þere bygynneþ tweye Arteries, on goþ to þe longe & hap bot on cote & sprat in þe same longe, & þere endyth
 36 & bryngeþ blod to þe longe, bi whom he ys y-norysschyde, & spirit of lyf, & þat he myȝte bryng from þe longe eire⁵ to þe herte, for to entempren þe fumose hete of þe same herte. & þis Arterie ys clepyde

[4 fol. 41 a]

⁵ MS. *eiþere*.

save *Arteria*
venalis, and
that has but
one.

The uses of
Arteries:

1.
to bring cold
air to the
heart;

2.
to cast out
the fumosity;

3.
to carry life
to the whole
body.

6th Member,
veynes.

[² 1f. 12, bk.]

Veins spring
from the
liver.

is a maner veyne, for as myche as he ne haþ but oon coote, and
perfore he is þe more obedient to be drawe abroad þoruþ out alle þe
lungis; & also þat þe blood þat norischip þe lungis myzte liztly
swete out of þis arterie / þe toþer arterie þat cometh out of þe lift- 4
side of þe herte haþ two cootis, bi cause þat oon myzt not azenstonde
þe strenkþe of þe spiritis; & also þat, þat is wiþinne þe arterie, is
ful derworþe & nedip greet keþinge / þer ben þre helpingis of þe
arteries: oon is þat cold eir myzte bi hem be drawe & I-brouzt to 8
þe herte whanne þe arterie is drawe abroad. þe secunde is, þat þe
fumosite myzte be cast out whanne he is constreyned / þe þridde is,
þat þe spirit of lijf myzte be brouzt bi hem to al þe bodi / þese
arteries ben deuydid many weies; whos dyuysious man mai nouzt¹ 12
conseyue bi his witt, ne þei ben nouzt dredful to¹ surgiens craft,
but whanne þou schalt drede þe arteries I schal telle þee in her
placis /

Veynes bi cause of her bodies ben deemed cold & drie; for þe 16
blood þat is withynne hem þei ben deemed hoot; & alle þe veynes han
her bi²gynnyng at þe lyuere, in þe which lyuere .ij. veynes han prynci-
pal bi²gynnyng / oon veyne bi²gynneþ of þe holow³ side of þe lyuere.
& is clepid porta³—þat is a zate / & her office is to drawe * [Chilum] 20

¹ a erased.

³ *Vena Porta*. See *Vicary*, p. 22, note 1.

Add. MS.
12,056.

venalis, & yt is a manere veyne, ffor as myche as he may haue
but o cote, & þerefore he is þe more obedient to be drawn abroad
þorwe out alle þe longes & also þat þe blod þat noryschith þe
longe myzte liztlokere swete out of þis arterie. þe opere Artery, þat 24
comyth out of þe lefte syde of þe herte, haþ two cotys, because þat
on myzt nozt ageyne stonde þe strengþe of þe spirites, and also þat
þat is wiþinne þe Arterye is ful derwarde & nedip gret keþyng.
þere ben þre helpynges of þe Arteries: on is þat colde eyre by hem 28
myzte be drawe & y-brouzt to þe herte, whenne þe arterye is drawe
abrod; þe secunde ys þat þe fumosite myzt be caste out, whenne
sche is constreynede; þe þridde ys þat þe spirite of lyf myzte be
brozt by hem to alle þe body. þese Arteries beþ deuydyde many 32
weyes, whose divisiones Man may nozt conseyue by hys wyt, ne þey
ne beþ nozt dredful to surgiens crafte; but whenne þou schalt drede
þe arterye i schal tellen þe in here places.

Veynes by cause of here bodies beþ y-demyde colde & drye; but 36
for þe blod þat is withynne hem þey beþ y-demyde hote, & alle þe
veynes han here ⁴bygynnyng of þe lyffere, in þe whiche lyffere two
veynes han pryncipal begynnyng. On veyne bygynneþ of þe holwe
syde of þe lyvere, & ys y-clepyde *Porta*, þat ys a zatte, & here ofyce 40
is to drawe *chilum* from þe stomake & þe guttes by mene of þe

[⁴ fol. 41 b]

fro þe stomak & þe guttis bi mene of þe veynes miseraices¹; & pilke The Mesarale
veins bring
 chilum spredip þoru; al þe lyuere bi mene of veynes capillares /
 Chilum² is þe licour of þe mete, whanne it goip out of þe stomak & Chilum
to the Portal
Vein.
 4 þe guttes / Veynis miserak¹ ben smale veynes þat comen out of þe
 veyne þat is clepid porta & cleueþ on þe stomak & þe guttis / Venes
 capillares, þat ben veynes as it were heers of a mannes heed /

After hem comeþ panniclis—þat is to seie smal cloop, þat is maad 7th Member,
panikelles,
the fleshy
membrane.
The uses of
the Pannicle.
 8 of sutil predis of senewis, veynes & arteries / wherfore þei ben colde
 & drie & censible / & þei han þre helpingis / þe firste is : þat þei
 mouz bynde manye þingis in oon foorme, as þe panicle of þe heed
 byndip seuene boones / þe secunde Iuuament is : þat þei hangen & .1.
 12 bynden summe membris wiþ opere as þe reynes to þe rigge & þe
 maris to þe maris³ to þe rigge / þe þridde helpinge is : þat þe mem- .3.
 4bris þat ben incensible bi her kynde, bi þe panniclis þat wriep hem [* 17. 13]
 velen bi accident : as þe lungis, þe lyuere, & þe splene, & þe reynes.
 16 þes lymes bi her kynde han no felynge, but what þei felen it is bi
 accidens of þe pannicle þat wriep hem.

þe⁵ fleisch is not hoot, but it is moist & hap þre maner lijknis : 8th Member
Flesh.
3 Maner of
Fleisch.**
 oon is a symple fleisch, & his helpinge is to fulfille þe voide placis

¹ *Veynis miserak.* See *Vicary*, p. 66, note 7.

² *Chilum.* See *Vicary*, p. 68, note 2.

³ MS. þe maris to þe maris to þe rigge. The second *maris* is cancelled.

⁵ Latin : Caro vero calida est et humida.

20 veynes miscraykus ; pilke chylum spredeþ þorwe al þe lyffere by Add. MS.
12,056.
 mene of veynes Capillares. Chilum ys þe licoure of mete & of þe
 drynke, whanne yt goþ out of þe stomake & þe guttes. Veynes
 miserayke beþ smale veynes, þat comyþ out of þe veyne þat is
 24 y-clepyde porta, & clevyþ on þe stomake & þe gottys. Veynes
 capillarys þat beþ veynes, as yt were herys of a Mannes hed.

¶ After hem comyþ pannyceles, þat ys to sigge, a smal cloth,
 þat ys mad of sotyþ predys of synwis veynes & arteries, where
 28 fore þey ben colde & dryge & sensible, & þey han þre helpynges.
 þe firste is þat they mowe bynden manye þynges in on forme, as þe
 pannicle of þe heed bynde vii bonys ; þe secunde Iuvament is þat
 þey hongen & bynden somme membrys with opere, as þe reyns to þe
 32 rugge & þe marys to þe rugge bon ; þe þrydde helpynge ys þat some
 membrys þat beþ insensible by here kynde, by þe pannycles þat
 wreyeþ hem fleip by accydent, as þe longes, þe lyliere, & þe splene,
 & þe reynes ; þese lymes by here kynde hap non felynge, but what
 36 þat þey felyn it ys by Accident of þe pannycle þat wreyeþ hem.

þe flesch is noȝt hot, but yt is moist, & hap þre manere lyknesse ;
 on ys symple flesch, & hys helpynge ys to fulfille þe voyde placys

1.
Simple flesh
fills up hol-
lows.

2.
Glandulous
flesh turns

blood into
milk,
and makes
sperm into
spittle.

3.
Brawny or
muscular
flesh.

[* If. 13. bk.]

9th Member,
Skin.
It is temper-
ate.

of smale lymes to brynge hem to a good schap, & þat ech hard lyme schulde nouzt hirte oper wiþ confucacioun¹ togidere / Anoper maner fleisch þer is þat is glandelose, þat is as it were accornis,² & his Iuvament is þat he turne³ humedites, þat is to seie moistnes to her 4 heeste; as þe glandelose fleisch of wommans brestis þe which þat turneþ þe blood þat is drawen from þe maris into mylk; & þe glandelose fleisch of þe ballockis, þat turneþ þe blood into sperme / & þe glandelose fleisch of þe chekis þat engendriþ spotil / þe þridde 8 maner fleisch is a fleisch þat is in brawnys, þat is clepid a brawn fleisch, for he is medlid wiþ sutil þredis of cordis, as I schal telle after þe whiche helpingis schal be told in þe 4anotamie of þe brawn.

At þe laste is þe skyn þat is temperat in al her qualitees; & it 12 is maad of smale þredis of veynes, senewis, & arteries, þat makip him sensible, & zeueþ him lif & worchinge, þat ben gouvernouris of al þe bodi. & þe skyn is maad temperat, for he schulde knowe hoot, coold, moist, & drie, soft, hard, sharp, & smoþe / & if þat þe skyn 16 were as sensible as a senewe, þanne a man myzte not dwelle in erþe ne in hoot eir; ne þe skyn of þe fyngris endis þe whiche þat is more temperat þan ony opir skyn of þe bodi ne schulde nouzt be a

¹ *confucacioun*. Addit. *confricacioun*. See page 23, note 2.

² *accornis*, glandes.

³ Latin: eius iuvamentum est, ut convertat humiditates ad eius colorem. The English translator read: calorein.

Add. MS. 12,056. of smale lymes, to bryngen hem to a gode schappe, & þat iche harde 20 lyme 5ne scholde nouzt hurten opere with *confricacioun* togedire.

[³ fol. 42 a] An opere manere flesch ys þat is glandelose, þat ys as hyt were achcharnes, & hys Iuvamente is þat he turnyth vmydites to here hete: as þe glandelose flesch of wommans brestys, whyche þat 24 turnyth þe blod þat ys drawe from þe marys into þe mylk, þe glandelose flesch of þe ballokes, þat turnyth þe blod into sperme, & þe glandelose flesch off the chekys þat engendreþ spotel. þe þridde manere of flesch ys a flesch þat is in brawnys, þat ys y-clepede a 28 brawny flesch, for he ys medlyde wiþ sotyl þredys of cordys, as y schal tellyn aftere, whose helpynge schal be tolde in þe Anotamye of þe brawne.

At þe laste is þe schyn, þat is temperat in al here qualite, & is 32 y-mad of smale þredys of veynes, synwes, & Arteries, þat makeþ hym sensible, and geveþ hym lyf and norisschyng, þat he be governoure of alle þe body. & þe skyn ys y-mad temperat, for he scholde knowe hot, colde, moyste & drye, softe & hard, scharpe & smeþe; & 36 þe skyn were as sensible as a zenewe, a man myzte not dwellen in colde eyre, ne in hote eyre; ne þe skyn of þe fyngres endys, whiche þat ys more temperat þenne eny opere skyn of þe lody, ne scholde

good demere in knowynge hoot, cold, hard, scharp, soft, eiper neische.

- Brawnes þouȝ þat þei be maad of mater medlid, neþeles þei ben
 4 rekened among^r membris consimiles, for þei comen to þe making^r of
 membris officials / Brawn is maad of fleisch, senewe, & ligamentis,
 & þei ben instrument voluntarie meuyng. þe senewe þat comeþ
 fro þe brayn, & þe nucha & goiþ forþ to meue þe lymes is medlid
 8 wiþ a ligament / & whanne þe senewe & þe ligament ben medlid
 togidere, it is clepid a corda / & þe corde is maad for þre skilis. [17. 14]
 þe firste¹ for a symple sinewe is to cen²sible; þe senewe bi him-silf
 myȝt not suffre gret traueile & meuyng, but þe felowschipe of þe the sinew
alone being
too sensible.
 12 ligament þat is incensibile lettīþ þe felynge of þe senewe, & bringīþ
 him to a profitable temperaunce / þe senewe haþ .ij. opere defaultis :
 neischenesse and litznesse. But þo .ij. defaultis þe medlynge of þe
 ligament fulfillīþ³; for þe neischenes is temperid & strenkpid, & þe too soft,
 16 litilnes is maad more. þe neischnes comeþ of þe brayn for it is
 myche, & þe litilnes comeþ of þe nucha, for it is litil. þat þat is
 maad of þis nerf & þis ligament is clepid a corde; þe which þat and too
small.
cordis.
 meueþ þe lymes to þe wille of þe soule, whanne þat it is schortid

¹ þe firste in margin.

³ fulfillīþ, supplēt. See *Cath. Angl.*, p. 145, to *Fulfulle*, supplere vicem Alterius.

- 20 noȝt ben a gode demere in knowynge hot, cold, hard opere scharpe, Add. MS.
12,056.
 softe opere nessche.

- ¶ Brawnys þowȝ þey ben mad of matere y-medlyde, nevere þe
 latere þey beþ y-reknyde amonge membrys consimiles, for þey comen
 24 to þe makynge off Membrys-officiales. Brawne ys y-mad of flesch,
 3 zenewe, & ligamente, & þey ben Instrument off voluntarie mevyng. [4 fol. 42 b]
 þe zenewe þat comyþ from þe brayn & þe nuca, & goþ forþ to meue
 the lymes, ys y-medlyde wiþ a ligamente, & whenne þe zenewe & þe
 28 ligamente beþ medlyde togedyre, yt ys clepyde a corde, & the corde
 ys y-made for þre skylles: þe ffurste for a symple senewe ys to
 sensible, & þe zenewe by hym-self ne myȝte noȝt suffren to grete
 travaylle & mevyng, but þe felawschipe of þe ligamente, þat ys
 32 insensible, lutlīþ þe felynge of þe synwe, and bryngeþ hym to a
 profitable temperaunce. þe zenewe hadde tweyne opere defautes :
 nesschenesse & litylnesse, but þo tweyne defautes, þe medlynge of
 þe ligament fulfillēþ; for the neschenesse ys entempred & y-strength-
 36 yde, and þe lytelnesse ys y-made more. The nesschenesse comyþ of
 þe brayn, ffor it ys nessche; and þe lytelnesse comeþ of þe Nuca,
 for it ys lytel. þat þat is mad of þis nerff & þis ligamente ys
 clepyde a corde, whiche þat meviþ þe lymes to wyl of þe soule,

Muscles are
made from
cords and
flesh.

.1.

.2.

.3.

[² 12. 14. bk.]

When the
Cords enter
the Muscles,
they are
divided into
many
threads.

ouper drawen after þat þe lyme bouwip. To þis¹ corde, þer is asocied
a symple *[flesch] for to make a brawn for þre profitis / þe firste
profizt þat is in drawyng & wiþdrawyng of þe corde, þe fleisch
schulde be as a pelewe vpon þe which he myzt reste / þe secunde, 4
þat þe fleisch þat is neische & moist schulde kepe þe corde, þat he
drie nouzt in her meuyng / þe þridde, þat þe makynge of lymes
were þe more schaploker. / þe brawn is maad bowyng as a bowe
þat is bent; & for þe kynde wolde kepe þis complexioun, he clopide 8
þe brawn wiþ a pannicle / þe corde whanne he entriþ into þe brawn
is departid into many smale predys, & þei ben clepid villes²—þat is
to seie wrappingis. & þese villes ben of .iij. maner: in lenkþe bi
þe which vertu, þat drawip haþ myzt, in brede, bi þe which vertu 12
þat castide out haþ myzt / in þwert ouer bi þe which vertu *[þat] with
halt haþ myzt / & at þe eendis of þe brawn pilke predys ben gaderid
togidere to make a corde, astir þat it is neessessarie / many cordis
eiper brawnes to ben engendrid. & official membris ben maad of 16
þese consimile membris, þe whiche þat ben instrumentes to resonable
soule. And in þe ij. tretis I wole telle þe anotamie of lymes
of office.

¹ Lat. : Huic autem chordæ—associatur caro simplex. Comp. Add. MS.

² villes. Lat. fila.

Add. MS. 12,056. whenne þat it is schortid opere y-drawe, aftere þat þe lyme bowyth 20
to þis corde. ffor þere ys Asosyed a symple *flesch forto maken a
brawne for þre proffytes: þe furste profyt, þat boþe in drawyng &
wiþdrawyng of þe corde, the flesch scholde be as a pylwe, vp on
whom he myzte reste; þe secunde cause, þat þe flesch þat is nessche 24

[² fol. 43 a]

& moyst schulde kepen þe corde, þat ⁴sche dreyzede nozt in here
meryng; þe þridde, þat þe makynge of lymes were þe more schap-
lokore. þe brawne is made bowyng, as a bowe þat ys y-bent; &
for þat kynde wolde kepe þys composition, he clothyde þe brawne 28
wyþ a pannicle. þe corde whenne he entriþ in to þat brawne, ys
departyde in to many smale predys, & þey ben clepyde vylls, þat
ys to sugge, wrabhynges. & þese villes bene of þre maners, in
lengþe—by whom vertue þat draweþ haþ myzt, in brede—by whom 32
vertu þat castyth out haþ myzt, in twart ofere—by whom vertu
*þat wiþhalt haþ myzt; & at þe ende of þe brawne pilke predys beþ
gadride to gedre to maken a corde, after þat it is necessarie, many
cordys opere brawnys to ben engendride. & official membrys ben 36
y-mad of þese consimile membrys, whiche þat beþ instrument
to resonable soule. And in þe secunde tretys y wyl tellen þe anotamye
of lymes of office.

The firste chapitle //

¶ Capm. jm

¶ þe .iiij. techinge is of difference of woundis & of general *de vulncribus*
 curis / We schulen undrestonde þat wounde, & old wounde, festre
 4 & cankre woundid, & boon out of ioynte, & a boon to-broken, &
 apostyme, alle þese ben clepid vndoyng of þat þat is hool. & alle
 þese sicknessis, & many oon opir as weel, moun falle to *consimile*
membris as to official *membris* / *vunnus* is a newe wounde / *vlcus* is
 8 an old rotid wounde. ¹I schal tellen in her placis þe difference of ^[1 leaf 15]
 festre & cankre & apostyme; plage comounly is taken for an oold
 wounde, & ofte tymes we fynde þat an old wounde is clepid *vulnus*,
 as ypocras seiþ / *vulnera annua necesse est in eis os taliefieri*² & cica- *ypocras*
 12 trices concavas fieri: þat is to seiþ, it is nedful³ þat þe boon in an
 oold wounde to be rotid & þe cicatrices to be holow; / Cicatrice is þe
 place of þe schynboon⁴ þe wounde, whanne þat it is hool / Summe
 woundis ben symple, & summe compound / in two maner he is ^{Wounds are}
 16 clepid a symple wounde / oon maner, for he haþ not lost of fleisch / ^{either}
 anoper maner for he haþ noon opir sickness wip him, ne is nougt ^{woundis}
 distemperid / A wounde compound is clepid contrarie to him þat is ^{sampell}
 symple / but boþe symple & compoundis sumtyme is in þe fleisch or ^{or compound,}

² Read *tabefieri*.³ it is nedful in margin.⁴ *schynboon*, read *schyn* above. See below.

20 The ffurste Chapitle of þe þridde techyng is of differ- Add. MS.
 ence of woundes & olde woundes & off generall 12,056.
 cures.

¶ We schulle vndirstonde þat wounde, olde wounde, ffestre, cancre
 24 y-woundyde, a bon out of loynt, a bon tobroken, Aposteme, alle þese
 ben y-clepyde vndoyng of þat þat ys hol, & alle þese seknesse &
 manye opere as wel mowe fallen to *consimile* *membris*. as to oficial
membris. *Vulnus* is a newe wounde. *Vlcus* ys an olde rotyde
 28 wounde. I schal ⁵tellen in here place þe dyfference of festre & ^[1 fol. 43 b]
 cancre & apostemya. Plage comynliche ys y-taken of an olde wonde;
 and ofte tyme we fynden, þat an olde wounde ys y-clepyde *Vulnus*,
 as Ipocres seiþ: *Vulnera Annua necesse est in eis os tabefieri* &
 32 *cicatrices concavas fieri*. ¶ That is to sugge, it ys ned, þat þe bon
 in an olde wounde to be rotyd, & þe Cicatrices to be holwe. Cica-
 trice ys þe place of þe skyn above the wounde, whenne þat yt is
 hol. Some wounde buþ symple & some ben componyde. In tweye
 36 manere he ys clepyde a symple wounde. On manere, for he haþ
 nozt leste of flesch; an opere maner, for he haþ non opere seknesse
 with hym, ne is nozt distempriede. A wounde componed ys y-clepyde
 contrarye to hym þat is symple. But boþe symple & also com-

and have
different
causes, both
internal

[1. 15, bk.]
and external.

The object of
healing is to
close a
wound, and
to restore
what has
been lost.
Nota

Bones, liga-
ments, and
similar parts
cannot be
restored;

in þe senewe, or in þe boon, or in þe veynes, or in þe arterie / also þese woundis han dyuers cause. Summe comen fro wipinne of þe malice, oþer of to greet multitude of humouris. * [forto gret multitude of humores] oþirwhile tobrekiþ þe membre & wipholdiþ & woundiþ 4 him / Cold matere streyneþ, drie mater kuttiþ, moisture wipoute mater makip no wounde, but selden with ¹mater, but he drawe þe lyme to brode. & also þe cause wipoute² mai be dyuers oþirwhile wip a swerd eipir wip a þing þat kuttiþ along, oþerwhile wip a knyf 8 or wip a spere or an arowe þat prickiþ, & summe ben maad wip a staf or wip a stoon eipir wip fallynge, & summe ben maad wip bitynge of an hound oupir a wood hound; & alle þese ben diuers aftir þe dyuersite of her causis; & also þe maner of helynge is dyuers / Al þe intencioun 12 of helynge of woundis is for to sowden or to helen & to restoren þat, þat is departid, þe which þat mai not oueral be doon / for if þat membris of office ben kutt of, þei moun neuere be restorid, ne noon of þe consimile membris mai be restorid, if he be doon away: 16 as boonis, pelliculis, gristlis, ligamentis & skyn / For þe cause of her generacioun is þe sperme of þe fadir & of þe modir, as I tolde tofore / but in place of þing þat is I-lore, kynde restoriþ þat, þat is moost conuenient to þe place; but fleisch mai be restorid bi cause 20

² The cause wipoute, causa exterior.

Add. MS. 12,056. ponyd some tyme is in þe flesch opere in þe synwe oper in bon, opere in veyne, opere in arterie. Also þese wondes han dyverse causes. Some comen from wipynne of þe malice, opere of to gret multytude of humores; *forto gret multitude of humores opere while 24 tobrekyth þe membre, þat wipholdiþ & woundiþ hym cold matere streyneþ, drye matere kutteþ, moistnesse withouten matere makeþ no wounde, but selden with matere, but he drawiþ þe lyme to brode. And also þe cause wipout may be dyverse, operwhyte with a swerd, 28 ore with a þynge þat kutteþ alonge, operwhile with a knyff, opere a spere, opere an arwe þat ³prykeþ, & somme ben made wip a stafe, opere with a ston, opere with fallynge, & somme ben mad with byt-inge of an hound, opere of a wod hounde; & alle þese ben dyverse, 32 after þe dyverse of here cause; & also þe manere of helynge ys dyverse. Alle þe entensioun of helynge of woundes, ys forto sowdyn & to helyn, & to restoren þat þat is departyde, whiche þat may noȝt overe al be don. Ffor ȝif þat membres of offyce ben kutte of, þey 36 mowe neuere ben restoryd; ne non of þe consimile membres may be restoryde, & he be don away: as bonys, pellicules, grustles, ligamentis & schyn. Ffor þe cause of here generacioun is þe sperme of þe ffadire & þe modere, as y tolde tofore; but in place of thyng 40 þat is lore, kynde restoryth þat þat is most conuenient to þat place; but the flesch may be restoryd, by cause þat þe blod ys engendred

[1. fol. 44 a]

þat þe blood is engendrid al day in us, & þe blood is þe mater of þe ^{flesh, veins, and arteries} fleisch / & summe seien þat veynes, arteries, & senewis myȝt not be ^{can be.} restorid as þei weren tofore; but þei moun ^[leaf 16] ¹ be restorid as boonys
 4 ben / But Galien and Auicen & I þat am expert here seiynge, ² ^{G. A.} we³ seie þat þei moun be restorid wiþ veri consolidacioun, whanne þat her kuttynge is lital, & whanne þat þe senewis þat ben newe kutt & ⁴ soude aȝen; but þei moun not be consoudid, whanne þat
 8 her kuttynge is myche & greet; & resoun grauntip it / Senewis bi kynde ben neische & viscouse; & þefore þei moun ⁵ ben consoudid, & þe veynes & þe arteries moun be consoudid bi resoun of þe blood ^{vaynes & arteries may be consouded but not senewia.} þat is in hem. I þenke to ordeyne ech chapitle bi him-silf after
 12 þe dyuersite of lymes & of placis, þe whiche þat þei ben maad
 yane / & I wole bigynne at a symple wounde maad in fleisch /

þe secunde chapitle of þe pridde techinge /

ij^o. co.

16 **N**ow we wolen trete of a wounde maad in fleisch. We wolen ^{of wounde maad in fleisch.} bigynne at a symple wounde maad wiþ knyft or wiþ swerd, or spere or arowe, or wiþ any opir þing semblable to hem.

² I þat am expert here seiynge. Lat.: ego qui sum expertus eorum dicta.

³ we, added above line.

⁴ þ, mistake for ben.

⁵ not, erroneously added above line.

al day in vs, & þe blod ys þe matere of flesch; & soume suggeren þat ^{Add. MS.} veynes, synwes, & arteries myȝte nouȝt be restoryde as þey were ^{12,056.} tofore; but þey mowe be restoryd as bonys buþ. But Galien & Avycene, & I þat am expert here suggynge, suggeren þat þey mowe be restoryde with verrey consolidacioun, whanne þat here kuttynge ys lytel, & whanne þat þe synwys þat buþ newe kutte beþ so wyde
 24 aȝeyne; but þey mowe nouȝt be consouded, whanne þat here kuttynge ys gret & myche; & resoun grauntyth yt. Synwys by kynde buþ nessche and viscose; & þefore þey mowe ben consouded. þe veynes & þe arteries mowe be consouded by resoun of þe blod þat ys
 28 in hem. I þynke to ordeynen eche Chapitell ⁶ be hym selven, aftere ^[fol. 44 b] þe dyversite of lymes & of placys, whyche þat þey buþ y-made yn; & y wyl begynne at a symple wounde y-mad in flesch.

¶ þe secunde Chapitell off þe thridde techynge off the
 32 ffurst tretis is of cure of a wounde y-mad in flesch.

Now we willen treten of a wounde y-makyd in flesch. We wylle begynne at a symple wounde, y-mad wiþ knyff opere wiþ
 36 swerd ore spere, opere with arwe, opere with enye opere thyng
 SURGERY.

Simple
wounds, if
painless, will
close if only
bandaged.

[1 ff. 16, bk.]

Maracio.

Ego curauy
homo.
as has been
shown in the
case of an old
man.

Treat slight
wounds with
pulsis conse-
lidativus



Bynde togideris pilke wounde with a boond þat closiþ þe wounde togideris, & kepe pilke wounde from swellynge wiþ þe whizt of an ey leid aboute þe wounde, & lete þe wounde be in reste; & þer nedip noon oper cure, namely, ¹whanne þe wounde is wiþoute akyng; but, & þer 4 be in þe wounde greet akyng, þanne it is a tokene, þat þer is a senewe prickid vndir þe wounde, eiþer a pannicle þat is bitwene þe fleisch and þe boon; & þanne þer is anoþer cure, as I schal telle in þe chapitle of puncture of a senewe þat I haue heeld a man þat² was *[sefenty 8 3ere olde þat was] smyte wiþ a spere þoruþ þe fleisch of þe buttoke, bi þe lenkþe of a fote, * [& more] but pilke wounde touchide no senewe, & þat I wiste sikirliche, for he hadde noon akyng / I heeld þe wounde open aldai wiþ a litil smal tent & a schort, þat I myzte 12 wite, if þat he schulde aken on þe morowe, & I comaundide him to reste / & on þe morowe I foond noon inflacioun ne akyng; & þanne I took away þe tent & lete þe wounde closen, & so comaundide I him to reste þe secunde dai / In þe þridde day he was hool. & if a 16 wounde were maad wiþ a swerd or wiþ ony þing þat bitip in lenkþe, anoon þou must loke if þe wounde be so litil þat he nede no sow- yng, & þanne bryng þe parties of þe wounde togideris, þat it may be weel ioyned, & leie aboute þe wounde a poundir maad oon partie 20

² þat, scribal insertion.

Add. MS.
12,056.

[? fol. 45 a]

semblable to hem. Bynde togedyre pilke wounde with a band þat close þe wounde to gedire, & kepe þe wounde from swellynge, with þe whyte of an eyþe y-leyde aboute þe wounde, & lete þat wounde ben in reste, & þere nedyth none opere cure, namlye, whanne þe wounde 24 ys withouten akyng; but and þere be in wounde gret akyng, þanne þere is a tokne þat þere ys a synwe prikyde vndire þe wounde, opere a pannicle þat ys betwene þe flesch & þe bon, & þanne þere ys al an opere cure, as y schal telle in þe chapiteþ of the puncture of a synwe. 28 And y haue helyd a man þat was *sefenty 3ere olde, þat was y-smyten wiþ a spere þorwe þe flesch of þe buttoke by þe lengþe of a fote * & more, but pilke wounde touchide non synwe; & þat y wiste sykerliche, for he had non akyng; y helde the wounde opyn al a day, 32 with a lyte smal tente & a schert þat y myzte wyte, 3if þat he scholde ake on þe morwe & I comaundyde hym to reste, and on þe morwe y fonde non inflacion ne akyng, & þenne y caste aweye þe tente & lete þe wounde closen, & so y comaundide hym to reste, & wiþyrne 36 þe þridde day he was al hol. And 3if þat a wounde were mad wiþ a swerd, opere wiþ eny þyng þat ³kutteþ in lengþe, a man most loke 3if þe wounde be so litel þat he nede non sowyng, & þenne bryng þe parties of þe wounde togedyre, þat it may wel ben y-joynede, & 40 leye aboute þe wounde a poudere y-mad of on partye of franke-En-

of frankencense, & of two parties¹ of sandragoun,² & of þre parties of quyk lym, & lete nouzt þe poudre entre bitwene in þe wounde but above, for þer schal no þing entre in þe wounde, & kepe þe parties of þe wounde þat ben brouzt togidere wip a plumaciol³ .iiij. cornered maad of herdis or of towe in þis maner:  oon bi þe sidis of þe wounde, so þat boþe þilke plumaciols holde þe wounde þus iclosed⁴:  & ioyned togidere as it was ioyned arst, or it were kutt / & bynde þe wounde togidere aboue þe plumaciols wip a rolle þat goiþ ouerþwert aftir þis lettre .X. & take a lynnyn cloof & wete him in two parties of þe white of an ey, in oon partie of oyle of rosis, þei ben togidere medlid, undir þe plumaciols, leid aboue þe wounde þat is brouzt togidere, for to kepe þe⁵ poudre; & do nouzt away þi medicyn til .iiij. daies ben goon, but if þat þe wounde ake or be to-swollen. & þanne bynde þe wounde as it was biforn wip þe white of an ey; oyle, poudre, & plumaciols. But if þe wounde were so myche, þat byndynge wolde nouzt suffice, or were kutt ouerþwert ouer þe lyme, so þat þe parties of þe lyme myzt nouzt wel be⁶ brouzt togideris, þanne sowe þe wounde on þis maner / Ioyne þe lippis of þe wounde, & be war þat noon oyle * [ne dust] ne no þing ellis, þat lettif consolidacioun, falle bitwene þe lippis of þe

[leaf 17]
Way of dressing a wound with compresses.

Nota



Large wounds and those which run athwart the limb are to be stitched [f. 17, bk.]

¹ *Sandragoun*. Sanguis draconis: the gum of the Dragon-tree. Kersey. 1706.

See Notes. ² *Plumaceoli*: Bolsters used by Surgeons. Kersey. 1706.

⁴ *iclosed*, inserted in margin.

⁵ MS. *wounde*, cancelled.

sence, & of two parties of sandragoun & of þre parties of quyke lyme, & lete nozt þe poudre entre wipynne þe wounde but above, for þere schal noþynge entre withynne þe wounde, & kepe þe parties of þe wounde þat þuþ brouzt togedire with a plumacyole þre corneled y-made of hurdes opere towz in þis manere  on be þe sydes of þe wounde, so þat boþe þilke plumacioles holde þe wounde þus y-closyde  & joynde togedire, as yt was joynd ere þenne yt was ykutte; & bynde þe wounde togedire abouen þe plumacioles, with a rolle þat goth twartoffere after þis lettere XX, & take a lynnyn cloth & wete hym in two parties of whyte of an eyze, & in on partie of oyle of roses i-bete togedire, vndire þe plumacioles aboue þe wounde, þat ys y-browzt togedyre, forto kepe þe poudre, & do nozt away þe medycine tyl foure dayes ben ago, but zif þat þe wounde ake, opere ellys be to-swollyn; & þenne bynde þe wounde as yt was toforne, with þe whyte of þe eyze, oyle, poudre, & plumacioles. But zif þe wounde were so myche, þat þe byndynge wolde nozt suffice, opere were kutte twart offere þe lyme, so þat þe parties of þe lyme myzt nozt wel be browzt togedire, þanne sowe þe wounde on þis manere: joyne þe lippes of þe wounde togedire, & ware þat non oyle * ne dust, ne noþynge ellys þat lattyd consolidacioun, falle bytwene

Add. MS.
12,056.

with an
acus trian-
gulum.

Way of stitch-
ing a wound.

Number of
the stitches
and their
distance from
each other.

[1 leaf 15]

The stitches
must be deep
enough

wounde, & haue a nedle þre cornerid, whos iȝe schal be holid on
boþe sidis, so þat þe þred þat is in þe nedle may lie in þe holowȝ
place, & þilke þred schal be twyned, & wipoute knotte, & I-wexid,
& þe lippis of þe wounde schal be sowid togideris; & þe þred schal 4
be knytt wip two knottis in þe firste place, & in þe secunde place
wip oon knotte; & so make as manye poyntis, as it is nessessarie,
& ech poynt schal be from opir bi þe brede of a litil fyngir, &
streyne þe wounde with knottynges & þe sewynges of þe lippis of þe 8
wounde togidere þat he ake sumwhat, but nouȝt to myche. & if þat
þer nede mo poyntis to be þere þan two, euermore þer schal be odde
poyntis. as .iij. v. or .vij. & þe oon poynt schal be first from þe oon
eende of þe wounde, bi þe space of a litil fyngir, & þe toþir poynt 12
schal be at þe opir ende of þe wounde, & þe þridde poynt schal be
in þe myddil of þe wounde / & if it be nede to haue mo poyntis,
þanne schalt þou ¹bigynne at þe myddil poynt, & make as manye
poyntis on boþe sidis as it is nede, til þou come to boþe eendis / For 16
bi þis maner of sowynges neipir partie schal be crokid, & so þe place
mai faire be restorid, & euermore take kepe þat * [3if] þe wounde be
not depe, þi sowynges schal be nouȝt deep / & if þi wounde be deep,
þi sowynges schal be deep, þat alle þe parties of þe wounde moun 20

Add. MS.
12,056.

[2 fol. 45 v.]

þe lippes of þe wounde, & haue an nedle ²þre korneide, whose eyȝe
scholde be holyde on boþe sydes, so þat þe ³þrede þat is in þe nedle
may ligge in þe holwe place, & þilke schal be twynede, & withoute
knotte & ywaxide, & þe lippes of þe wounde schulle ben sowide 24
togedyre, & þe þrede schal be knette with two knottes in þe firste
place; in þe secunde place with on knotte, & so make as manye
punctis as yt is necessarie, & eche puncte schal be from opere by þe
brede of a lytel ffyngere, & streyne þe wounde wip knettynges, & þe 28
sowynges of þe lippes of þe wounde togedire þat he ake sumwhat,
but nouȝt to myche, & 3if þat þere nede mo punctis to be þere þen
two, efire more þere schal be odde punctys, as þre, fyfe, opere seuene;
& þe on puncte schal be fyrst from þe on ende of þe wonde by þe 32
⁴brede of a litil fyngire, & þe opere puncte schal be at þe opere ende
of þe wounde, & þe þridde puncte schal be in þe myddil of þe
wounde; & 3if it be nede to haue mo punctis, þou schalt begynnen
at þe myddel puncte, & make as manye punctes on boþe þe sydes, as 36
yt ys nede, tyl þou come to boþe endys; ffor by þis manere of
sowynges neipere partye schal be crokyde, & so þe place may fairere
ben restoryde. And euermore take hede, * 3if þe wounde be nouȝt
depe, þy sowynges schal be nouȝt depe. And 3if þy wounde be depe 40
þy sowynges schal be depe, þat alle þe parties of þe wounde mowe

³ þridde cancelled before þrede.

⁴ sp. cancelled before brede.

be ioyned / For if þe wounde were deep, & þi sowynge not deep, nede þer muste be in þe deppe of þe wounde a greet holownes, to þe which holownes blood & quyttere schulde be cast; & þilke
 4 quyttere & blood schulde lette þe helynge of þe wounde. & þe poudre þat is seid in þe same chapitle, schal be leid aboue on þe same wounde; & þou schalt kepe þe sewynge & þe parties of þe wounde þat I brouzte togidere wip plumaciols þre cornerid, & wip
 8 alle þe opere þingis þat ben in þis chapitle tofore seid / And if þat a wounde haþ be to longe in þe eir open, which þat is þe cause of quyttere þat lettþ consolidacioun, þanne we musten clense þe wounde wip þis mundificatif þat is maad of flour of wheete & hony & water
 12 & mel roset, ¹I-colat, þat is to seie, clensid from þe rosis, and of barly mele / Of þese mundificatyues þou schalt haue a ful techinge in þe laste tretis /

to leave no hollows in the wound.

To wounds exposed to the air apply a cleansing ointment.

a mundificatif. [1 lf. 18, bk.]

But if þe wounde be compound, a leche muste haue as manye
 16 intenciouns as þer ben accidentis to þe wounde / I sette an ensauple. I suppose þat a wounde be compound wip holownes & lesynge of fleisch & of skyn, & þere be myche quytter, & also þat þer be apostyme, & þer be a greet akyng; al þis is clepid a wounde compound / þanne schulen we nouȝt onliche take hede to consolidacioun of þat wounde: þat is to seie, helynge; but first we schulen aswage

Nota

If pus and pain come on,

be joyned togedire. Ffor ȝif þe wounde were depe, & þy sowynge were noȝt depe, nedys þere moste ben in þe deppe of þe wounde a gret holwenesse, to þe whiche holwenesse blod & quyter scholde be cast; & þilke quyter & blod scholde lette þe helynge of þe wounde. And þe poudre þat ys seyde in þe same chapytell schal be leyde aboue þe same sowynge, & þou schalt kepen þe sowynge & þe parties of þe wounde, þat buþ brouȝt togedyre, wip plumacioles þre cornelyd & wip alle opere þynges þat beþ in þis chapytel forseyde. And ȝif þat a wounde haue be to longe in þe eyre opyne, whiche þat ys cause of quyter þat latteþ consolidacioun, þenne we moste clense þe wounde wip þis mundificatyff, þat is maad of floure, of whete & hony & watyre opere mel rosate, & colat þat ys y-clansed from þe roses, & of barly mele. Of þese mundyficatyfes þou schalt han a ful techynge in þe laste tretys. But ȝif þe wounde be y-componed, a leche
 36 moste han as manye intensionen as þere ben accidentys to þe wounde. Y sette ensauple: y suppose þat a wounde be componed wip holwenesse & lesynge of flesch & of skyn, & þere be myche quyter & al so þere be a posteme & þere be grete akyng, al this ys clepyde a wounde componyde. þanne we schulle noȝt only take hede to consolidacioun of þilke wounde, þat is to sigge helynge, but firste we

Add. MS. 12,056.

[2 fol. 46 a]

³ MS. þat.

deal with the
symptoms
separately,

and first
relieve pain.
nota.

Auicena
[² leaf 19]

G. & A.

A purulent
wound must
be cleansed,
before closing
it or putting
on a "rege-
neratif."

akpe & apostymes, as it schal be teld in þe chapitle of an enpostyme
& of akynges / Aftirward we schulen clense þe quytture, & aftir þat
regenerere fleisch, & at þe laste brynges ouer cicatrice. In alle þe worch-
ingis of medicyns, where þat akpe is, first we schulen aswage akpe, 4
for aboue al opir þing¹ strong¹ akynges ouercomeþ myzt of vertu &
strenkþe / & also resoun tellip; membris¹ þat han akpe, pilke akpe is
cause of drawynges from þe opere placis to þe membre þat akip þe
worste ²þing¹ of þe humours / Auicena seiþ: humours ben drawen 8
to lymes þat aken for .ij. causis: o cause, for kynde *[& Spiritus
and humourer rennyth pedyre; þe secunde cause, for akpe feblyth þe
lyme, & humours] & spiritis rennen to þe feble lyme / þe swellunge
schal eer be heeled þan þe wounde / Galien & Auicena tellen: þat al 12
þing¹ þat consowdiþ þe wounde greueþ þe wounde, if þat þer be
apostyme wiþ þe wounde / & þe quytture schal be clensid or þou leie
ony regeneratijf to holow woundis. Auicena tellip þe cause, whi
þat yuel fleisch growiþ in a wounde / If þat a leche wolde bisie him 16
wiþ a medicyn regeneratijf to regendre fleisch in a wounde, & er þan
þe quytture were clensid / & whanne þat þe wounde is clensid, þanne
we schulen fulfille pilke holownes wiþ fleisch or þat þe wounde be

¹ Lat., Membra quoque dolorem habentia, dolor ipse est causa attra-
hendi aliunde humorum pessimitatem.

Add. MS.
12,056.

[¹ fol. 46 b]

schul aswagen akpe & aposteme, as yt schal be tolde in þe chapitle 20
of aposteme & of akynges; aftirwarde we schullen clanse þe quyter,
& afters þat regenerere flesch, & at þe laste brynges ouere a Cicatrice.
In alle þe werkynge of medicine, where þat akpe ys, firste we
schulle aswagen akynges; ffor abouen alle opere þynge stronge 24
akynges, ouere comeþ myzte of vertu & strengþe, & also resoun
tellyth; membrys þat han akpe, pilke akpe ys cause of drawynges
from opere places to þe membre þat akep ³ þe worste þynge of þe
humours. Avicene seyth humours bep drawen to lymes þat aken 28
for two causes: On cause, for kynde *[& Spiritus and humours
rennyth pedyre; þe secunde cause, for akpe feblyth þe lyme, &
humours * & spiritis renne to þe feble lymme. þe swellunge schal
ere ben y-helyde þen þe wounde. Galien & Avicene tellen þat alle 32
þynge þat consoudeþ þe wounde, grefyþ þe wounde, 3if þat þere be
aposteme wiþ þe wounde, & þe quyter schal ben y-clansyde, ere þenne
þou legge enye generatyff to holwe woundys. Avicenne tellyth a
cause, why þat yuele flesch growith in a wounde, 3if þat a leche 36
wolde besy hym wiþ a medycin regeneratyff to engendre flesch in
a wounde, ere þanne þe quytere were clansede. And whenne þat þe
wounde ys clansyde, þenne we schulle fulfyllen pilke holwnesse wiþ

³ MS. akþr.

heelid, lest *peraenture*¹ þat þer dwelle an holownesse vndir þe
wounde, whanne þat he is helid, in whom þat quytture schulde be
engendrid, þerwith² ech dai schulde augmente þilke holownesse, &
4 so we moten be constreyned to opene anopir tyme þat, þat was
heelid tofore / þou maist fynde in þe chapitle of woundis of senewis,
how þou schalt aswage akþe, & in þe .vj. chapitle of þis techinge [17. 19. bk.]
þou schalt fynde þe cure³ of a wounde þat hæp a swellynge, & is in þe oo. of
8 out of kynde distemperid; & þou schalt haue in þe chapitle of olde olde woundis
woundis, how þou schalt clense quytture & regendre fleisch / in þe ante-
dotaria.

The þridde techinge of þe firste tretis is of heelynge ¶ 30. oo
of a wounde maad in senewe / De vulnerē
incarna.

- 12 Almyȝti god hath ȝeue to senewe greet felyng, & if þat he be
hirt, he suffriþ greet akyng / Galien seiþ: a senewe þat is more Galien
felynge þan anoper *lyme; it is nessessarie þat he haue grettere
akþe / Vndirstonde þat a wounde þat is maad in a senewe, mai not be
16 wiþoute akyng. Ne⁴ woundis þat ben maad in senewis, ouþer þat
ben in lenkþe or in brede / þe woundis þat ben maad in lenkþe of
þe² senewe, ben lesse perilous þan⁵ þo þat ben maad in brede of þe
¹ *peraenture*. See N. E. Dict., adventure, 1. b.
² *þerwiþ*, scribal error for þe *which*.
⁴ *no*, scribal error for þe. ⁵ *þan* erroneously inserted.

A wound cut-
ting the nerve
lengthwise,
a *fissura*, is
less danger-
ous than one
crossing it,
a *siacura*.

- fleisch, ere þanne þat wounde ben y-helyde; leste þat þere dwellen an Add. MS.
20 holwnesse vndire þe wounde whenne þat he ys helyde, in whom þat 12,056.
quyter scholde be engendryde, þe whiche eche day scholde augmente
þilke holwnesse, & so we moste ben constreynede to opyne an opere
tyme þat, þat was helyde tofore. þou mayste fynden aftre in þe
24 chapytell of woundys of synwes how þou schalt aswagen akþe, and
in the sixte Chapytell of þis techyng þou schalt fynde þe cure of a
wounde, þat hath a swellynge, and ys out of kynde dystempryde,
and þou schalt haue in þe chapitle of olde woundys; how thou schalt
28 clense, quytyre, and regendre flessch //

⁶Cap. iii. of the þridde techyng of the ffurst tretis is [fol. 47 a]
of helyng of a wounde y-makyde in synwe.

- Almȝtie god hath ȝife to synwe gret felyng, & ȝif þat he be
32 hurt he suffrede grete akyng. Galien: a synwe that is more
felyng þen anopere *lyme; yt is nessessarie þat he haue gretter
akyng. Vndirstonde þat a wounde þat is y-makyde in a synwe,
may nouȝt ben wiþouten akyng. The woundes þat beþ y-makyde
36 in synwe, oper þey ben in lengthe opere þey beþ in brede. þo
woundes þat beþ y-mad in lengthe of þe synwe beþ lasse perylous,

If the nerve is cut through, the limb becomes insensible;

If the nerve is pricked by a puncture, then there is danger of cramp. Spasmos. [1 leaf 20]

Loss of feeling and cramp happen when a sinew or muscle is cut or pricked.

Senewe, corde & Brawne.

When the nerve is pricked, but the skin whole,

senewe ben moost perilous / Operwhile a senewe is kutt al atwo / & panne pilke lyme, to whom pat senewe serueþ, lesiþ his meuyng & þe felynge, þat pilke senewe brouzte to him from þe brain. & pilke senewe opirwhile is not kutt al atwo, but he is I-preickid, & panne it is perilous lest þe crampe come for to greet akþe / For akþe entriþ into þe part of þe senewe þat is kutt or prickid; & bi þe ¹partie of þe senewe þat is hool, akþe is brouzt to þe brayn. & so þe crampe mai come to þe wounde bi oon of þre weies: þat is to greet akþe, cold, or rotyng. Of þese þre or of oon bi him-silf mai come a drawinge togidere of a senewe þat is cause of a crampe / & þat þat is seid of a wounde of a symple senewe may fallen oft-tymes in a wounde of a corde & a brawn, & nameliche of a corde þat is in bigynnyng of a brawn. þo woundis þat ben in þese þre consimile membris, þat is * [to] seie senewe, corde, & brawn han o. drede in cours of þe crampe, & also o. drede of felynge, lesyng & meuyng / & ² perfore be-war in þe cure of a wounde maad in senewe, wheþer þat it be a prickyng or þat it be kutt ouerþwert, or ellis be kutt only bi his lenkþe. If oonly he be prickid þe wounde of þe skyn is hool, & panne it is clepid a blynde puncture; eiper þe wounde is open, & it is clepid an open puncture / In a blind puncture it is

² &, above line.

Add. MS. 12,056.

& þo þat beþ in brede of þe synwe beþ more perilous. Opere whyle a synwe ys y-kut al atwo, & þenne pilke lyme to whom pilke synwe serfede, lesiþ þe menyng & þe felyng þat pilke synwe brouzt to hym from þe brayn. Opere while þulke synwe is nouzt y-kut a two, but he is y prikyde, and þenne it is perel lest þe crampe come for to gret akþe. For akþe entriþ in to þe part of þe synwe þat is y-kut oper priked, & by þe party of þe synwe þat is hol akþe is brouzt to þe brayn, & so crampe may comen to þe wounde by on of þre weyes, þat is to gret akþe colde oper rotyng. Of þese þre opere ellys of on by hym self, may come a drawyng togedre of a synwe þat is a cause of a crampe; & þat þat is seyde of wounde of a symple synwe, oft-tymes may fallyn in a wounde of a corde & a brawn, & namlyche of a corde þat is in þe bygynnyng of a brawn. þe woundes þat ben in þese þre consimel membris, þat is * to sigge, synwe, corde, & brawn, habben on drede in course of þe crampe, & also on drede of lesyng, felyng, & menyng, & perfor be war in þe cure of a wounde i-makyde in synwe, wheþer þat þere be a prikyng, opere þat þe synwe be y-kut twartofere, oper ellys be y-kut only by his lengthe. 3if only he be y-prikyde þe wonde of þe skyn is hol, & þenne it is clepyde a blynde puncture, oper þe wounde is opene & it is clepide an opene prikyng. In a blynde

- nessessarie to opene þe skyn, & aftirward heelde into þe hoole as
 hoot as he mai suffre, hoot¹ oile of rosis swete smellynge, þat is
 maad of oile de oliue þat is nouzt ripe, til al þe wounde be ful. &
 4 aboute þe wounde leie whijt¹ tere¹bentine² I-drawe abroad bitwene
 two clowtis, & anoynte alle þe membris aboute þe wounde wiþ hoot
 oile of rosis maad þicke with bool armoniak. & aftir þat leie a
 lynnene cloþ I-het¹ aboute, & aftir þat a good quantite of tow I-tosid,
 8 & bynde þe lyme softliche wiþoute streynynge; & if þe akþe wiþ
 þis medicyn wole not ceessen, remeue & chaunge þis medicyn ofte
 tymes in þe dai & in þe nyzt / & if þe prickynge be in þe foot,
 anoynte þe grynde³ wiþ hoot comoun oile; & vndir þe arme holis
 12 & in þe necke pitt, if þat þe prickynge be in þe hand, for þis
 enoynture rarefieh & eueneþ þe placis bi whom akþe goiþ to þe
 brain, & it lettih drawynge togidere of þe senewe / & þou þat þou
 seest¹ nouzt þe akþe ceesse in summen as hastiliche as þou woldist,
 16 neuer-þe-lattere chaunge not þi medicyn, for þer may be no bettere
 medicyn. But if þat akþe dure ouer longe, it is not yuel to putte a
 litil opium to þe oile of þe rosis & þe bole armoniak, þat þou leidist
 aboute þe wounde. þe sike man muste reste & bi no wey he

open the skin
and apply
hot oil.

and dress the
wound.

[1 ff. 20, bk.]

If the pain
endures re-
new the
dressing
frequently.

and add
opium to the
ointment.

¹ *terebentine*, from *Pistacia Terebinthus*, L. The *Alah* of the Old Testa-
ment, and the *ρίπωνος* of Theophrast. : now almost obsolete.

² þe *grynde*, inguina. W. W., p. 589. 39, 15th cent. : inguen, the grynde.

- 20 prikyne hit is necessarie to opyn þe skyn, & afterwarde held in to
 þe hole, as ⁴hot as he may suffren, oyle of roses swote smellynge,
 þat is y-made of oyle de olyffe, þat is nouzt rype tyl þe wounde be
 al ful. & aboute þe wounde leye whyte terbentyne y-drawe abrod
 24 betwene tweye cloutes, & anoynt al þe membris about þe wounde
 wiþ hote oyle of rosys, y-made þikke wiþ bol Armonyak, & after þat
 leye a lynne cloth y-hat aboute, & after þat a gode quantyte of tow
 y-tosyd, & bynde þe lyme⁵ softlyche wiþoute streynynge; & 3if þe
 28 akþe wiþ þis medycine wolde nouzt cese, remeffe & chaunge þis
 same medycine oft tymes in þe day & in þe nyzt, & 3if þe prikyng
 be in þe fot, anoynte þe grynde wiþ hote comyn oyle, & vndire þe
 Arme holys & in þe nekputte, 3if þat þe prikyng be in þe hande.
 32 For þys vuncture rarefieh & efenyþ þe placys bi whom akþe goth to
 þe brayn, & it lattih drawynge togedre of þe synwe, & þow 3 þat
 þou sest nouzt akþe, sese in some men, as hastily as þou woldyst,
 nevere þe later chaunge nouzt þy medycine, for þere may be no
 36 bettere medycine. But 3if þat akþe dure ouere longe yt is nouzt
 efel to putte a lutyl opin to þe oyle of rosys and þe bol armoniak,
 þat þou leydest aboute þe wounde. þe seke man most reste, & by

Add. MS.

12,056.

[¹ fol. 47 b]

⁵ MS. lynne.

- schulde nouzt be wroþ; his bed muste be maad soft, euene, & smope, & þat he ¹myzte haue reste / Whanne þat þe akþe aswagip & þe wounde ȝeneþ sum quytture, þanne þe sike man is saaf from al maner perel, but if he do ony newe errour / Of þis wounde Ypocras ⁴ spekiþ: *in vulneribus malis & fortibus sanie non apparante*—þat is to seie: in yuel woundis and strong woundis, if no quytture appere it is yuel / Strong woundis ben clepid woundis þat sore aken / Yuel woundis ben þo, to whom sharpe humouris rennen ⁸ & ben nouzt obedient to kyndeli heete, to be turned into quit-ture / And þerfore Ypocras seide: þat whanne akyng & quyttur appereþ it is a tokene of heele / þe þridde signe a man muste knowe in þis place, þat lewde men, seyinge akyng & swellunge ¹² in a lyme þat is woundid, leie þerto a potage in maner maad of eerbis & swynes greece & water & wheete flour, corruptyn þe lyme, & þilke corrupcioun is cause of þe crampe / For Galien seiþ: þat a senewe is maad of moist mater & a cold, & þerfore he ¹⁶ rotiþ of heete and moistnes / Also summonen, for to aswage akþe as ² a senewe þat is prickid, puttiþ þe lyme in hoot watir * [oper ellys caste it on þe lyme] þe which mater ³ is þe moost greuance ⁴ to þe senewe / Galien seiþ / Hoot watir, þouȝ it aswage akþe to þe ²⁰
- ² as, error for of; see below. ³ mater, error for watir.

- Add. MS. 12,056. no weye he scholde nouzt be wroþ, hys bed most be made softe euene & smeþe þat he myzte haue rest. Whanne þat þe akþe aswagyth & þe wounde gyueth sum qyter, þan þe syke man ys saf from al manere peryle, but ȝif he do enye newe error. Of þis ²⁴ wounde ypocras spekiþ: *In vulneribus malis & fortibus sanie non aparente malum*, þat is to seye: in evyle woundys & stronge woundes, ȝif no quyter apere, hit is yuele. Stronge woundes ben y-clepyde woundys þat sore aken. Iuel woundes beþ þo, to whom ²⁸ sharpe humores rennyth & beþ nouzt obedyent to kyndlie hete to ben turnyde into quyter & þerfore ypocras seyde, þat whanne þat nkyng se syth & quyter aperith, yt is a tokne of hele. þe þridde signe a man moste ³² knowe in þis place, þat lewyde men seyne akyng & swellunge in a lyme y-woundyde, leggen þereto a maner potage y-mad of erbys & swynes grese, water, & floure of whete, corrupyn þe lyme, & þilke corrupcioun is cause of þe crampe; for Galyen seiþ þat a synwe is mad of a moiste matere & a cold, & he ³⁶ rotyth of hete & moistnesse. Also sum men forto aswage þe akþe of a synwe þat is y-prikyde, putteþ þe lyme in to hote water,* oper ellys caste it on þe lyme hot water,⁶ þe whiche water is most grefes to þe synwe. Galyen: hote water þowȝ it aswage akþe, to the ⁴⁰

⁶ hot water, insertion.

- prickyng of a senewe is most greuaunce / Cold also greueþ sore þe senewe as wel in somer as in wyntir / And Ypocras seiþ in þe .v. Ypocras. part of his aforismus: cold is bitynge & greuous to senewis & and the heat is as dangerous as great cold.
 4 woundis, & also in þe chapitle next folowyng, but it be in a Galion.
 crampe wipoute wounde / Galien seiþ in þe eende of his coment: coold is moost greuous to a senewy lyme þat is woundid & is sore swollen; namely, & he haue þe crampe. It schewiþ¹ þanne þat an
 8 hoot medycyne & a drie is moost acordynge to senewis þat ben woundid; but nouȝt to hoot a medicyne, lest þerauntre þat he make þe lyme to swelle; & if it be drie nouȝt wip stipecte, an aunte if þat he closiþ þe poris of þe skyn / Galien seiþ: þat it is yuele to Galion.
 12 close þe poris of a lyme þat is prickid. þe medicyne þanne muste M.
 be hoot & drie with subtilite as terebentine to moiste bodies; & to The pores of a wounded limb must be kept open.
 drie bodies he muste be medlid wip a litil enforbium, azafetida² is R.
 best medicyne if þou make of him enplastre, serapinum,³ & þe fecis⁴
 16 of a litil wax, & þe filþe of þe vessels of þe heen, alle þei ben gode to a senewe þat is prickid, þouȝ þat þou putt ech of hem bi him-self [17. 22]
 or ellis compound / & þow schalt fynde a ful techinge of þese medicyns in þe antidotarie of þis booke / þou schalt nouȝt close a

¹ *schewiþ* for *sewiþ*; see below.² *Asa fetida*, a sort of gum pressed out of a certain plant, which grows in Persia.³ *Serapinum* = *Sagapenum* . . . A gum resin obtained from the *Ferula Persica*. See *Notes*.⁴ *fecis*, Lat. *fæces*, dregs.

- 20 prikyng of a synwe ys most greuest; colde also gefyȝh sore þe synwes as wel in somere as in wyntere. Ypocras in þe ferthe Add. MS. 12,056.
 partye of his Amforismes: colde is bytinge and grefes to woundys; and also in þe chapitell nexte folwyng, bot it be in a crampe wip
 24 out wounde. Galien seiþ in þe eende of his comente: colde is most grefest, to a synwe lyme þat is y-woundyde & ys toswolle, namly, & he haue þe crampe. Hit sewiþ þenne þat an hote medycine & a drye is most accordynge to synwes þat beþ y-woundyde; bot nouȝt
 28 to hot a medycine, leste þat he make þe lyme toswellyn; & drye nouȝt wip stipecte, lest he close þe pores of þe schyn. Galien seiþ: it is yuel to close þe pores of a lyme þat is y-prikyde. þe medycine þenne most ben hote & drye, wip subtilite as terbentyne to moiste
 32 bodyes; & to drye bodyes, he most be medlyde wip a lytel eufforbium. *Asa fetida* is best medycine, ȝif þou make of hym enplaster, serapinum, & þe feces of wax, & þe fylthes of vesselis of been, alle þei ben gode to a synwe, þat is prikyde, wheþer þou put iche be
 36 hymself oper opyn hem; & þou schalt fynden a ful techyng of þese medicyns in þe Antitodarie of þis booke. þou schalt nouȝt clisen

The nerve must be cleansed and healed before the wound is closed.

.Galion.

relates, how a physician, by not so doing, caused the death of his patient.

wounde where þat þe prickynge of a senewe is, til þat þe senewe be perfiztly clensid & heeled, & til þat þou be sikir þat þe place schal not swelle / Galien telliþ of a man þat was prickid with a poyntel in þe pawme of þe hand, to whom came oon of tisiilies¹ 4 clerkis þe which took hede to heele alle woundis generaliche; & he leide to þilke prickynge a consowdyngne oyneiment þat was more acordynge to a wounde maad in fleisch; & he leide þerto a plastre maturatijf, wherfore al þe hand rotide & he fel into a crampe, & 8 so he diede, or þat þe .vij. daies weren passid / & if þat ilke leche hadde maad þat wounde broddere, & þanne þat he hadde helt into þe wounde hoot oile of rosis, & þanne þat he hadde do² comen out quytture wiþ hoot medicyns sotil & drynge, & nouzt wiþ moist³ 12 medicyns, þat man schulde not haue be deed /

Tederik.

[4 ff. 22, bk.]

The ends of the nerve ought to be sewn at the same time as the skin, and a medicine applied,

If þat a senewe hadde ben I-kutt ouerþwert ouer al atwo þanne, þouþ þat Tedericus³ & summe opere scien þe contrarie, it is good þat þow 4sowe togidere þe eendis of þe senewis þat ben kutt wiþ þe 16 sowinge of þe skyn. & aboue þilke maner of sowinge, þe firste dai leie oile of rosis, in þe which oile, maddockis⁵—þat ben wormes

¹ Lat., unus de secta Thessali. Thessalus lived in Rome at the time of Nero, and enjoys the reputation of being the first great quack.

² Lat., Si . . . saniam . . . subtiliter desiccantibus expectasset. Add. MS. translates literally, abyde. The use of *do* (= faire) is further illustrated by Mätzner. See *don* .6.

³ Theodoricus, an Italian (?) monk of the 13th century, was the author of a *Surgery*.

⁵ maddock, O.E. maðek, Dan. maddik. See Skeat, *Etym. Diet.*, under maggot and mawkish.

Add. MS. 12,056. a wounde, where þat þe prikyng of a synwe is, ere þan þe synwe be perfiltlye clansyde & helyd, & ere þou be sykere þat þe place 20 schal nouzt swelle. Galyen tellyth of a man wiþ a poyntel in þe

[4 fol. 48 a.]

pawme of þe hand, to whom come one of 6Tesiilies clerkys, þe whiche toke hede to helyn alle woundis generalyche, & he leyde to þilke prikyng a consoudynge oygnement þat was more acordynge 24 to a wounde y-makede in flesch, & he leyde þerto a maturatyf plastre, where fore al þe hand rotyd, & he fel into a crampe, & so he dyede ere þe vii dayes were passyde; & 3if þat þilke leche hadde y-made þilke wounde braddere, & þenne & hadde y-helde in þe 28 wounde hote oyle of rosys, and þenne hadde abyde quyter wiþ hote medycines sotyl & dreyng, & nozt wiþ moiste medycines, þilke man ne scholde nouzt haue ben ded. 3if þat a synwe hadde ben kut twart ouer al atwo þenne, þawþ þat tedericus & summe opere sigge 32 þe contrarye, hit is good þat þou sewe togedre þe hedys of þe synwys þat beþ y-kutte, wiþ þe sowynge of þe skyn & abouen þilke maner of sewynge, þe first day leye oyle of roses, in þe whiche oyle

of þe erþe—han be boild, & caste aboute þe wounde þe poudre þat
 kepþ þe sowynge .o. day or two aftirward, & kepe þe sowynge wiþ
 plumaciols .iiij. cornerid, & wiþ byndynge, & kepe þe lyme from
 4 swellynge, for bi sich a maner sowynge of a senewe þou maist con-
 sowde þe senewe aȝen; for þe lyme schulde han be lost in partie or
 in al, þe meuyng þat was brouȝt vnto him fro þe braun, for bi þat
 senewe þe lyme mai rekeuere his felynge, & so þe restoringe of þe then the limb
may regain
its motor
powers.
 8 braun may be fastere & schapliker. þou schalt nouȝt drede of þe
 akyng þat schulde be maad of prickynge¹ of þe senewe, for þe
 akþe schal be doon awei wiþ oo leiyng to eȝer tweyne of þilke
 oile / Ne sich maner akþe may nouȝt make þe crampe, for þe senewe
 12 is al kutt atwo ne no man *[make an] obieccioun wiþ Galion .Galion.
 wordis, þat we schulden be war in ioynynge parties of a wounde
 togidere *[þat non here ne oyle ne scholde nouȝt entre wiþynne þe
 lippes of a wounde, þat beþ y-brought togedre] To þilke abiec- Nothing
should enter
into the
wound.
 16 cioun we answeren: þat þe stipticite² of þe rosis & þe oile þat was [fol. 42]
 nouȝt ripe, & þe glutinosite of þe wormes of þe erþe remeuen þe akþe
 of þe senewis & al þe harm þat schulde come of þe ilke sowynge.

If þat a senewe were woundid in lenkþe, he mai wel & lyȝtliche

¹ prickynge of þe senewe. The Latin, *acus punctura*, is correctly translated in Add. MS. See below.

20 Maddokys, þat beþ wormys of þe erthe, haue ben boyllede; and Add. MS.
12,066.
 caste aboute þe wounde þe poudre þat kepyth þe sowynge a day
 oȝer two afterward, & kepe þe sowynge wiþ plumacioles þre kernel-
 lyde & wiþ³ byndynge, & kepe þe lyme from swellynge, ffor by
 24 swyche a manere sowynge of þe synwe þou maiste consoude þe
 synwe ageyn, for þe lym scholde haue lost in party oȝer in al the
 meuyng, þat was y-browȝt to hym from þe brayn, for by þilke
 synwe þat lyme may rekeuere hys felynge, & so þe restoryng of
 28 þe brayn may be more schaplokere & fastere. Ne þou ne schalt
 nouȝt drede of þe akyng þat scholde be made of þe prekyng of þe
 nelde, for þe akþe schal be don away by one leggyng to oȝere
 tweyne of þilke oyle; ne swyche manere akþe may nouȝt make þe
 32 crampe, for þe synwe ys al kutte atwo. Ne no man *make an
 obieccioun wiþ galyens wordys, þat we scholde be ware in ioynynge
 þe parties of a wounde togedre, *þat non here ne oyle ne scholde
 nouȝt entre wiþynne þe lippes⁴ of a wounde, þat beþ y-brouȝt to- [fol. 42 a]
 36 gedre.* To þilke obieccioun we answeren, þat þe stipticite of þe
 roses & þe oyle þat was nouȝt ripe, & þe glutinosyte of þe wormys
 of þe erthe remywen þe akþe of þe synwes, & al þe harme þat
 scholde comen of þilke sewynge. Ȝif þat a synwe were woundede
 40 in lengþe he may be wel & lyȝtliche y-soudyde togedire, wiþ

³ wiþ above line.

The wounded
limb must be
kept from
swelling.

Nota.

If there is
swelling, and
if the wound
is purulent,
apply a mundificative,
and keep the
wound
tent.

[* II. 23, bk.]
a mundificative
medicyn

be sowdid togidere wip ioynynge of lippis, & wip þe sowynge & wip þe kepyng of þe lyme þat he swelle nouȝt / Vndirstonde here in þis place: þat þer is no þing more worschipful to a leche ne more profitable to a sijk man þan to kepe a lyme woundid fro swellynge, 4 & neþeles it is hard to kepe senewis þat ben woundid from swellynge / Neþeles a leche here schal take heed aftir þe techinge þat schal be geue him in þe chapitle of þe cure of a wounde, whanne þat þer is wip him a swellynge. If þat a wounde were chaungid 8 of þe eyr and made quytture, þat þe sowynge were to-broke and þe puncture were vndir,¹ þanne make a medicyne mundificatif & leie him abrood on a linnen cloop & leie it aboue þe wounde, & putte a litil smal tent in þe eende of þe wounde þat is moost lynyng,² & 12 þilke tent schal touche no senewe ne make noon akþe vndir³ þat, þat ilke wounde be ⁴weel dried. A mundificatif medicyn of senewis woundid is maad in þis maner: Take mel roset colat 3 .iiij. smal flour of barley & medle hem togidere & boile hem sili þat þei 16 brenne nouȝt, & remene hem fro þe fier & bete hem "longe" togidere wip a spatule;⁵ & þanne putte þerto 3 j. of whitt terebentyne; & if þou mowe finde noon whitt terebentyne, þanne waische opere

¹ vndir, mistake for vndo. See below. ² lynyng, for declynyng.

³ vndir þat, donec. ⁵ spatul, spatula.

Add. MS. 12,056. ioynynge of þe lippys & wip sowynge & wip kepyng of þe lym, þat 20 he scholde⁶ nouȝt. Understande here in þis place, þat þere is no þynge more worschipful to a leche ne more profytable to a seke man, þenne to kepe a lyme y-woundyde from swellynge, & napeles it is hard to kepe synwys þat þey woundyde from swellynge. 24 Napeles a leche here schal take hede aftere þe techynge þat schal be geuen to hym in hys chapytelle of þe cure of a wounde, whanne þat þere ys wip hym a swellynge. 3if a wounde were chaungyd of þe eyre and mad quyter, þat þe sowynge were to-broke, & þe 28 punctis weren vndo, þenne make a medycine mundyficatyff, & leye hym abrod on a lynne cloth, & leye it aboue þe wounde, & put a lytel smal tent in þe one ende of þe wounde þat is most declynyng; & þilke tent schal touche non synwe, ne make non 33 akþe, vndire þat þat þilke wounde be wel dryede. A mundificatyff medycine of synwes y-woundyde ys y-made in þis manere: R. mel rosat colat 3 iii smal floure of barley 3, & medle hem togedre & boile hem slyzly þat þey brenne nouȝt, & remywe hem from þe 36 fyre & bete hem togedre longe wip a spator, & þenne put þere to 3. of whyte terbentyne, & 3if þou maiste fynde no whyte terbentyne

⁶ scholde, error for swelle, or it belongs to: scalle, calde, scalled, scab. See W. Wright, and *Cathol. Angl.*

terebentyne with cold watir til it be whigt, & whanne þat be þis
 medicyn þis wounde is almoost drie, þanne putte in þe same medi-
 cyn a litil poudre of frankencense mastik & saundragoun, medlo
 4 hem togidere & leie aboue þe wounde til it be hool / & whanne þat
 it is hool manye daies aftir, leie flex in good strong wiyn het hoot
 til it be perfitli al hool, & if þat þe leue ony hardnes in meuyng, Any remain-
ing stiffness
of the limb
may be re-
moved by a
mollificative
medicine.
 after þat it is hool, þanne þou schalt vse þe techinge þat schal be
 8 ȝouen to þee in þe laste tretis þat schal be antidotarie in þe chapitle
 of medicyns mollificatyues; þere þou schalt fynde þe maner how þou
 schalt helpe best lymes þat ben heelid and moun not riȝt weel meuen /

12 þe firste¹ techinge of þe firste tretis is of heelynge of
 a wounde maad in boon / Om. 4m.
Of wounds
made yn the
bonis

Whanne þat woundis ben so depe þat² ony fleisch is not [¶ 11. 24]
 woundid but þe boon þat is vndir þe fleisch & þe senewe / þanne a
 man muste biholde, wher þat þe boon be kutt al atwo, as ofte-tyme
 16 it may happe in þe boon of þe thie & schene boonys & þe boonys
 of þe armes. And þanne þilke wounde is ful perilous; & nameli if
 þe boonys of þe thie oupir þe boon of þe arme from þe schuldre to It is danger-
ous if the
thigh bone or
the bone of
the upper arm
has been cut
in two.
 þe elbowe be kutt al atwo, so þat þe marie go out. But ofte-tymes

¹ firste, mistake for furþe.

20 wassche it wyth colde watyre, tyl it be whyt; & whenne þat by þis
 medycine þe wounde is almost drye, þenne put in þe same medycine
 a lite smal poudre of franke ensence, mastike, & sank dragoun, &
 medle hem to gedre, & leye aboue þe wounde tyl it be al hol; &
 24 whanne þat it is hol manye dayes astere, leye flax in gode stronge
 hot wyn, tyl yt be al hol perfitlyche. & ȝif þat þere leue enye
 hardnesse³ in mevyng, astere þat it is hol, þenne þou schalt vse [¶ 11. 49 2]
 the techyng þat schal be ȝeuen to þe in þe laste tretys, þat schal
 28 be antitodarye in þe chapitle of medycine, molyficatyffes; þere þou
 schalt fynde þe manere how þou schalt helpyn beste lymes, þat beþ
 y-helyde & mowe noȝt ryȝt wel meffen.

The furþe techyng of þe firste tretys is of helyng of
 32 a wounde y-makyde in bon.

Whenne þat woundes beþ so depe þat only þe flesch is nouȝt
 y-woundyde, but þe bon þat is vndir þe flesch & þe synwe, þenne a
 man most byholde wheþere þat þe bon be kut al atwo, as ofte tymes
 36 yt may happen in þe bon of þe thyȝ & þe schynebonys, & þe bonys
 of þe Arme, & þenne þylke wounde is ful perylouse; and namlye,
 ȝif þe bon of þe thyȝ ore þe bon of þe arme, from þe schuldre to þe
 elbowe, be y-kutte al atwo, so þat þe marie gon out. But ofte tymes

Add. MS.
12,056.

The wound
ought not to
be closed be-
fore the bone
has been re-
paired.

Meta

In the place
of the missing
bone, there
grows either
a hard sub-
stance

[* 11. 24, bk.]

*poris sar-
coides*,

or a soft one:
caro poroides.

oon boon of þe schene or o. boon of þe armes is kutt al atwo ouertwert ouer & neþales afterward may be restorid; ouþer a boon is not kutt al atwo but sum of his substaunce is don away, & þilke substaunce, ouþer he is doon away or ellis he hangip togidere / A 4 general rule is in cure of woundis in whom boonys ben woundid: þat neuere bi a leche fleisch schal ben I-sowdid aboue þe boon, but first pleynerliche bi repeire¹; for þe boon may neuere be² wiþ verri consoladacion be consowdid, for his mater was þe sperme of þe fadir 8 & of þe modir; but in summe children, for þe age³ is toward ofte tyme þat þei were sperme / but þer schal be maad a maner of restorynge in place of þe boon þat was broken eiper lost, þat men clepen ⁴poris sarcoides or ellis caro poroydes, & a⁵ maner þing þat is 12 restorid is hardere þan þe fleisch & neischere þan þe boon / & if þat ilk mater þat is restorid be ny; as hard as is þe boon, it is clepid porus sarcoides / & if þat ilke mater be not hard but sumwhat neische, it is clepid caro poroydes / & if þat a neische fleisch were 16 & a moist nouzt regenerated vpon boonys þat ben sett togidere, a man schulde not haue his purpos to heele & consowde þe wounde. Loke þanne wheþer þe boon be kutt al atwo altogidere ouerþwert ouer, þat

¹ *repeire*, erroneously for *repeired*.

² *be* has to be cancelled.

³ *for þe age is toward ofte tyme*, for, *for þe nyzte of tyme*. See below.

⁵ *a*, above line.

Add. MS. on bon of þe schyne, opere in bon of þe Arme, ys ykutt al atwo 20
12,056. twartofere, & napeles afterward may be restoryde; oper a bon ys nouzt ykut al atwo, but sum of his substaunce ys done aweye, and þilke substaunce opere he ys don al aweye, opere he hongyth to gedre. A general rule ys in cure of woundes in whom bonys ben 24 woundyde, þat neuere by a leche flesch shal be y-sowdyd aboue þe bon, but first þe bon plenerlyche be repeyrede; ffor þe bon may neuere with verrey consoladacyoun ben consoude, for his matere was þe sperme of þe fadire & þe modire, but in somme children for 28 þe nyzte of tyme þat þey were sperme (*sic*); but þere schal be mad a manere restorynge in plas of þe bon þat was broken opere lost. þat men clepen porrus sarcoides opere ellys caro poroydes, & þat manere thyng þat is restoryd is hardere þe flesch & nesschere þen 32 þe bon; & if þat þilke mater þat is restoryde by neye⁶ as hard as yt were a bon, yt is clept porus sarcoides; & if þat þilke mater be nouzt harde, but sumwhat nessche, yt is clepyde caro poroydes; if þat a nesch flesch & a moist were nozt regenerated vpon bonys 36. þat ben set togedre, a man scholde nozt han his purpos to helyn & to consoude þe wounde. Loke þenne wheþere þe bon be kutte a-

[* fol. 50 a]

⁶ MS. *neþe*.

- pou bryngist togidere & bindist þe parties of þe wounde, as it schal be told in þe .viij. chapitle folowyng, where pou schalt haue how a wounde schal be heelid þat is out of ioynthe I-kutt atwo & to-broken / & if a wounde¹ be not kutt atwo al togidere ouerþwert ouer, loke if ony pece of þe boon dwelle sadliche with þe opere partie of þe hool boon / & þanne if pou myzt brynge þilke pece to þe place þat he was yn tofore wiþ pristyng doun þilke pece wiþ sum instrument acordyng þerto, & sowde þilke pece wiþ þe hool boon wiþ þe poudre þat I shal telle aftirward; for so the² schap of þe lyme mai dwelle³ faire & strengere / & if þat ilke pece haue no fastnes to þe hool boon, do þat pece away & regenerere in þe place of þe boon þat þat⁴ was lost a repeirement / For þou þat ypocras & Galien tellen þat it is nessesarie after quantite of þe boon þat is lost, an holow cicatrise to be alwey, nepeles wiþ þis poudre þe generacioun of þese poris may be mendid, not a litil, but rizt myche / þis is þe poudre: take frank-encense, mastik, mirre, dragagantum, gumme arabik, ana. ʒ ij. flour of fenegrek, .ʒ. a' caste þis poudre vpon þe defaute of þe boon þat is lost, til þat þou holde a pleynere repeirement * [& a restauracioun. þenne & nozt ere brynge ouere flesch ouere þe repeyrmēt wiþ] regeneratiuis, mun-

¹ *wounde*, erroneously for *boon*.² *hool*, cancelled after *dwell*.⁴ The second *þat* has to be cancelled.⁵ *incarnatyff* in a later hand.

A portion of the bone can either be refastened,

[? 17. 25]

or it must be removed.

ypocras & Galien.

poudre incarnatyff⁵

- two al togedre twartofere, þat pou brynge togedre, & bynde the parties of þe wounde as yt schal be tolde in þe eyzte chapyteH folwyng, where pou schalt han hou a wonde schal ben helyde þat is out of joynt, y-kutte atwo & tobroke. & ʒif þat a bon be nozt kutte atwo al togedre twartofere, loke ʒif enye pece of þe bon dwelle sadliche to þe on partye of þe hole bon, & þenne ʒif pou myzte brynge þilke pece to þe place þat he was yn tofore with prustynge don þilke pece with sum Instrumentis acordyng þereto, & sowde þilke pece wiþ þe hole bon with þe poudre, þat y schal tellyn afterwarde; for so þe schap of the lyme may dwelle fairere & strengere. & ʒif þat þilke pece haue no fastnesse to þe hole bon; do þat pece away, & þenne regenerere in þe place of þe bon þat was lost a repairment. Ffor þow þat ypocras & Galyen tellyn þat it ys nessesarie after þe quantite of a bon þat is lost, an holwe cicatrice to be alwey, napeles wiþ þis poudre þe generacioun of þese pores may be mendyde nozt a lytel, but ryzt myche. þis is þe poudre: Take frank ensence, Mastyke, Mirre, dragagantum gu. arabyke ana. ʒ. ij., flour of ffenngreke, ʒ, ʒ, cast þis poudre a gode quantite vpon þe defaute of the bon þat was lost, tyl þat þou haue a plenere repeyrmēt * & a restauracioun. þenne & nozt ere brynge ouere flesch ouere þe repeyrmēt with *generatyffes, mun-

Add. MS. 12,056.

SURGERY.

E

dificatiuis & consolidatiuis aftir þe techinge þat þou haddist biforn /
Undirstonde þat al þing þat is seid of boonys in þis chapitle is of
alle þe boonis of þe bodi saff þe heed / I schal make a chapitle by
hym-silf //

4

¶ Cap. vii.
Woundis
made with
contachoun
l. h.

THe fifþe chapitle of þe pridde techinge of þe firste
tretis of woundis þat ben maad wiþ smytinge of
staf or stoon, or fallynge or smytinge of an hors,
or wiþ ony opir þing semblable.

8

[1. 1f. 2b, bk.]

must be at-
tended to in a
different
manner to
incised
wounds.

All the soft
parts are
bruised

with or
without the
skin being
divided.

To hem happen greet difference ¹fro woundis þat ben maad wiþ
kuttinge, as wiþ swerd, knyf, eipir arowe prickynge; & in opere
maner þei schulen ben I-heelid / For þow þat verry consolidacioun
be þe firste & principal entencioun of heelynge of a wounde, to þis 12
chapitle it acordiþ nouȝt, for in smytinge, þe fleisch & þe veynes,
& senewis, & arteries ben brusid, for in þe ynnere part of þe lyme
þe boon azenstondip, & on þe ouer part ²of þe þing þat is smyten
knyttip nouȝt / Wherefore it is nessessarie, if þer schulde be a 16
wounde, þat alle þe smale lymes þat ben bitwene þe boon & þe þing

² The passage is corrupt; the correct version is given by Add. MS.: þe
þynge þat smyten & kuttet nouȝt.

Add. MS.
12,056.

dificatyfes, & consolidatyfes, aftere þe techynge that þou haddyst
tofor. Undirstonde þat alle þynge þat ys seyde of bonys in þis
chapitle, ys of alle þe bonys of þe body saff þe hed; & of þe 20
bonys off the hed y schal make a chapitle by hym-selff.

[1. fol. 50 v.]

þe ffye Chapitle of þe pridde techynge of þe furst
tretis is of woundis ³that beth y-mad with
smytinge.

24

The woundys þat bep mad wiþ brosynge, as wiþ smytinge of a
staf, opere ston, oper fallynge, opere wiþ smytinge of an hors, oper
wiþ enye thyng semblable to hem, habbitiþ gret differens from
woundis þat bep y-made wiþ kuttinge: as wiþ swerde, knyf, ore 28
arwe prikyng, & in opere manere þey schulle ben helyde. For
þow þat verreye consolidacioun be þe first & þe princypal Intencioun
of helynge of a wounde, to þis chapitle it acordyth nouȝt, ffor in
smytinge, þe flesch & þe veynes, synwes & arteries ben y-brusyde; 32
for in þe ynnere part of þe lyme þe bon azeine stonde, & on þe vtter
part þe þynge þat smyteth & kutteþ nouȝt, wherefore it is necessarie,
ȝif þat þere scholde ben a wounde, þat alle þe smale lymes þat bep
bytvene þe bon & þe þynge þat smyteth, scholde be brusyde; & 36

- pat smytij, schulde be brusid, & operwhile þe fleisch & þe opere
 consimile membrs ben brusid wipoute wounde / Wherefore þe curis of
 boþe I wole ordeyne in þis chapitle. If þat a leche wolde enforse Such wounds,
when joined
too soon,
will alough.
 4 him to ioynen togidere wip consolidatiuis þe wounde þat is maad wip
 smytynge, nedis quytture & corrupcioun bi pilke consolidatif muste
 be vnder þe wounde; þe which quytture schulde corrupte pilke lyme
 & brynge him to putrifaccioun, but if þat kynde were so myzty,
 8 þat he myzte eftsoone opene pilke wounde, þat was consowdid bi a
 sori leche¹; or wip² a good leche come & knowe pilke dispo³sicioun [P. II. 26].
 & knowe helpe, wip propre eir⁴ to rectifien þe corrupcioun of pilke
 lyme / What schalt þou þanne do? þou muste loke wheþer þat þe
 12 bodi be ful of wickide humouris, eiper be clene; if þat he be ful If the patient
is plethoric
use blood-
letting;
 late him blood, if alle particuler þingis acorden, as vertu, age, con-
 plexioun & consuetude; & þese þingis moten alwey⁵ taken in
 mynde, þou; alwey þei be not I-nempned & namely vertu; & he be If he is feeble,
cupping and
purgin.
 16 not strong; & alle opere þingis acorden, þou schalt not lete blood, but
 þou maist ventosen, if þat it be nessessarie, or ellis [lose] * þe wombe Nota
 if þat he be costif⁶; & if þat he be feble, & þe brosure were in þe
 ouer parti of þe bodi, voide þe fecis of his wombe bi clisterie. & Clisterie

¹ bi a sori leche, a malo medico. See Halliwell, *Dict.*, sorry Laten.² wip, mistake for þat.⁴ eir, read cur.⁵ be wanted after alwey.⁶ costif, costive, subject to be bound in body.—Kersey.

- 20 operwhile þe fleisch & þe opere consimile membrs bep brusyde Add. MS.
12,056.
 witout wounde, wherefore þe cures of boþe y wyl ordeyne in this
 chapitle. 3if þat a leche wolde enforse hym to lene to gedire
 with consolidatyfes þe wounde þat is maad wip smytynge, nedys⁷
 24 quytter & corrupcioun bi pilke consolidatyff, most be vndire þe
 wounde; þe whiche quytter scholde corumpe þylke lyme & brynge
 hym to putrefaccioun, but 3if þe kynde were so myztye, þat he myzte
 eftsonys opyne þylke wounde, þat was consowded by a sorye leche,
 28 opere þat a gode leche come & knewe pilke dispocisioun, & coupe
 helpe wip propre cure to rettiefen þe corrupcioun off pilke lyme.
 What schaltou þanne do? þou most loke wheþere that þe body be
 ful of yueft humores, oper be clene; 3if þat he be ful, lete hym
 32 blod, 3if alle partikelere þynges acorden: as vertu, Age, complexioun
 & consuetude; & þese þynges þou most alweye taken in þy mynde,
 þow; alwey þey ben nouzt y-nempnyde, & namlye vertue; & he
 be nouzt stronge & alle opere þynges acorden, þou schalt nouzt leten
 36 blod, bot þou *maiste ventosen, 3if þat it be necessarie, oper ellys [P. fol. 11 a]
 lose *þe wombe 3if þat he be costyff; & 3if þat he be feble, & the
 brosure were in þe ouere party of þe body, voyde þe feces of hys

⁷ MS. nedyth.

conuenio
membr ner-
uosi cura
l. h.
elle Ross

[1 lf. 26, bk.]
An antiseptic
powder.

Treatment
of a contu-
sion, if the
wound is
open.

if þou wolt lete blood, þou schalt lete blood on þe contrarie partie
of þe veyne, bryngyng norischinge to þe lyme þat was hirt; & þilke
veyne þou schalt knowe, if þat þou knowist pleynerliche anotamie,
þat I haue tauzt þee in þis same book / & whanne þat þe bodi is
clensid, if þat þe brosur be wiþoute þe wounde, anoynte þe membre
þat is brosid, which bigynneþ to haue an enpostym, with hoot oile
of rosis, & caste aboue a poudre maad of þe seed of mirtilles, &
bynde it softly; ¹for ofte-tymes it nedip noon oper eir² / For þis
medicyn fastneþ þe place, & defendiþ him fro putrefaccioun. &
þow þat þis medicyn mowe not letten al þe mater from rotynge,
neþeles it defendiþ myche of þe same mater fro rotynge / & if al þe
mater mai not be defeudid from putrefaccioun, but sum partie þerof
putrefieþ, opene þe place & exclude þe quytture, & clense al þe place.
& his cure schal be seid in þe chapitle of apostymes³ & of exitours /
But if⁴ þat a brusour were wiþ a wounde, anoynte aboute þe
wounde or eills þe place þat is brusid wiþ þe forseid oile of rosis, & 16
caste aboue þe forseid poudre of mirtilles, for it fastneþ þe place,
ne it lettiþ nouzt þe corrupcioun to spreden eiper to be drawen
abroad; & it castiþ to þe wounde þe corrupt mater þat is in þe

² eir, read cur.

³ Latin, *de apostematibus exituris*, apostems which discharge pus.

⁴ if, above line.

Add. MS. wombe by clisterye. & 3if þou wilt lete blod, þou shalt lete blod 20
12,056. on þe contrarye party of þe veyne, bryngyng norysschyng to þe
lyme þat was hurt; & þilke veyne þou schalt y-knowe, 3if þat þou
knowist plenerlyche Anotamye, þat y haue tauzte þe in þis same
boke. & whenne þat þe body ys y-clansyde, 3if þat þe brosure be 24
wiþout þe wounde, anoynt þe membre þat is y-brusyde, whiche þat
begynneþ to han a postum, wiþ hote oyle of roses, & cast aboue a
poudre y-mad of þe sed of mirtylles & bynde it softlye, for ofte
tymes it nedyth non oper cure. For þis medycyne fastnyth þe 28
place, & defendyth hym from putrefacioun, & þow þis medycine
mowe nozt letten alle þe mater from rotyng, neþeles yt deffendyth
myche of þe same matere fro rotyng; & 3if þat al þe matere may
nouzt be defendyde fro putrefacioun, but sum partye þereof 32
putrefieþ, opene þe place & exclude þe quyter, & clanse al þe place.
& his cure schal be seyde in þe tretys of apostomes & of exitures.
But 3if þat þe brosure were wiþ a wounde, anoynte about þe wonde
opere ellys þe place þat is y-brusyde, wiþ þe forseyd oyle of roses, 36
& caste aboue þe forseyd poudre of mirtillyes, for þis medycine
fastnyth þe place, ne yt ne letteþ nozt corupcioun to spredyn, opere
to be drawe abrod, & it castiþ to þe wounde þe corrupt mater, þat

place þat is brusid / Wiþinne þe wounde leie þe ʒelke of an ey, wiþ
 oile of rosis, with stupis, or ellis wiþ lint.¹ Leid² aboute þe R
 wounde a potage maad of .iiij parties of watir & oon partie of
 4 oile de olyue, & flour of wheete þat sufficiþ to þe medicyn, & leie R
 þis medicyn to þe wounde, til þat þe akþe be aswagid, & til þat þe
 quytture be engendrid; aftirward clense ³þe wounde, aftir þe [17. 27]
 clensynge regenerer, & at þe laste cicatrice. & þou schalt haue a
 8 ful techinge in þe antidotarie of mundificatiuis & cicatrizatiuis /
 But if þe membre þat was brusid be ful of senewis, as þe hand Treatment of
 ouþer þe foot, þou schalt not chaunge þi cure if þat þer be no if the injured
 wounde; but þou þer be a brusour in senewy membre I-woundid, limb is full of
 12 leie not þere þe potage tofore seid, but oonly hoot oile of rosis, & nerves, & p.
 aboute þe oile poudre of mirtillis, & aboute þe wounde leie terebentine hand or foot.
 I-waischen & drawen abroad bitwene two lynnyn cloopis. & make olium
 a plastre of pich & hony & bene flour, & leie aboute þe lyme þat Rosarum
 16 is ful of senewis, as þe hand, þe foot, & speciali whanne þe flux of R plaster
 humouris ceessen not / & þou þat þi cure be drawe along, ne go
 not awei from þis cure / & whanne þat al þe akþe is ceessid and þe
 swellynge is aswagid, for to clense þe wounde, vse þe medicyn of
 20 mel roset colath with barly mele, seid in þe wounde of senewis / R

¹ lint. *Prompt. Parr.*, schauynge of lynnyn clothe.² leid, mistake for leie.

is in þe place þat is brusyde. Wiþynne þe wounde leye þe ʒolke of Add. MS.
 an eye with oyle of roses, with stupes opere ellys wiþ lynte; & leye 12,056.
 aboute þe wounde a potage y-made off foure partyes of water & o
 24 partye of oyle d'Olyve & floure off Whete þat suffyseþ to þe
 medycine, & leye þis medycine to þe wounde, tyl þat þe akþe be
 aswagyde & tyl þat þe quyter be engendryde; afterwarde clanse þe
 wounde, aftre þe clensynge regenerer, & at þe laste cicatryce, & þou
 28 schalt haue a ful techynge in þe Antiodarie of mundificatyfes,
 maturatyfes, & ʒicatrissatifes. ⁴But ʒif þat þe membre þat was [4 fol. 51 b]
 y-brusyde ys ful of synwes, as þe honde oper þe fot, þou schalt noʒt
 chaunge þy cure ʒif þat þere be no wounde; but þaw þat þere be a
 32 brusure in a synwy membre y-woundyde, ne leye noʒt þere þe
 potage forseyd, but only hote oyle of roses, & aboute þe oyle poudre
 of mirtilles, & aboute þe wounde leye terbentyne iwassche & drawe
 abroad betwene tweye cloþes lynnyn. & make enplastre of pych,
 36 hony & bene flour, & leye aboute a lym ful of synwes: as þe fot
 opere þe hand, & specialyche whenne þat þe flux of humours sesep.
 & þaw þat þi cure be drawe along, ne go noʒt away fro þis cure;
 & whenne þat al þe akþe ys y-sesyde, & alle þe swellynge ys aswagyde,
 40 forto clanse þe wounde, vse þe medycine of mel rosat colat with

Galion þis cure is apreued bi *galion*, & I haue preued þis medicyn ofte tymes /

¶ Þe sixte chapitle of þe bridde techinge is of woundis þat han enpostymes & be distempereð // 4

[1 lf. 57, bk.]

Off woundes Impostemedes.

¶ Capm vjm
If the wound
is tumorous
or distem-
pered,
the tumour
and the
"dyscrasie"
must be re-
moved first.

¹ A Wounde þat haþ enpostym or an yuel discrasiam—þat is to seie out of kynde distemperid, eþer to cold eþer to hoot—he mai not be heeled, ne he schal not ben heeled, but first he² be 8 aswagid in þe yuel discuriour be amendid / & as I haue seid in anoþer place, it is profitable to þe sijk man, & worschipe to þe leche, if þat he mowe defende þe lymes þat ben woundid from enpostyme & from an yuel discrasie. For þanne a leche schal kepe þe canoun 13 o³ *galion*, þat is oon of þe .iiij. canouns; oon is to kepe lymes in her owne kyndely complexioun. For woundis moun not ellis be heeled, but if þei be brouȝt first into her owne kynde / & a wounde mai be kept from apostyme & an yuel discrasie if þat þe leche be 16 kunnyng & do his deuer, & þe sike man be obedient to þe leche / þe leche muste loke if þat þer go blood y-nowȝ out at þe wounde; & if þat þe wounde haue not bled blood y-nowȝ, þe pacient muste

Galion.

If necessary

² The correct version is given by Add. MS.

³ a, mistake for of.

Add. MS. barly mele, y-sayd in the wounde of synwes. þis cure ys aprefyde 20
12,056. by galyen, & y haue preffyde þis medycine ofte tymes.

¶ The sixte Chapitle of þe bridde techynge is of Woundes þat han enpostemes, & beþ dystempred.

A wounde þat hath aposteme oþer an yuel discrasie—þat is to 24 sigge, out of kynde distempred, oþere to hote oþere to cold, he may noȝt ben helyd, ne schal nouȝt ben heled, but first þe posteme be aswagyde, & þe yuele discrasie be amendid. & as y haue seyde, in an oþere place, yt is profitable to þe syke man, & worschiful to þe 28 leche, ȝif þat he mowe dyffende þe lymes þat beþ woundyde fro eny postemys, & fro an euyl discrasie. For þenne a leche schal kepe þe canon of galyen, þat is on of foure canones; on is to kepyn lymes in here owne kendlye complexioun. For woundys mowe 33 noȝt ellys ben y-helyd, but ȝif þey ben brouȝt first to here owne kynde, & þe wounde may be kepte from aposteme & an yuel discrasie, ȝif þat þe leche be kunnyng & do hys deffere, & þe syke 36 man be obedynt to þe leche. þe leche mot loke ȝif þat þere haue go blod ynowȝ out of þe wounde; & ȝif þat the wounde haue noȝt bled blod ynowȝ, þe pacyent most ben lete blod, oþere ellys ben

[* fol. 52 a]

- be lete blood or ellis ventusid, takynge reward to alle particuler
 pingis tofore seid / & ordeyne him a couenable dietyng, as schal be
 told in þe chapitle of dietyng; & leie a defensif aboute þe wounde,
 4 3 j. of bole armoniak distemperid wip oile of ¹rosis, & a litil vinegre: <sup>use blood-
letting or
cupping,
prescribe a
proper diet
and a
deffensium.</sup>
 as picke as hony tempere it / & if þat þe tyme of þe 3eer were ^[1 lf. 28]
 hoot, putte to þis medicyn þe ius of sum cold erbe: as morel,²
 penywort,³ virge pastoris. Late not þe lyme hange; but if it be
 8 the arm, hange it aboute þe necke / & if it be þe foot eiper þe <sup>Put the
injured limb
in a proper
position.</sup>
 schene, lete him ligge / & if þat þe lyme ake, aswage þe akþe wip
 an oynement of hoot oile of rosis / For as Galien seiþ: þer is no ^{Galien.}
 þing more noious to a wounde þan is akþe & declinacioun of a
 12 lyme, for þese .ij. maken soone an hoot swellynge, þe which is to þe
 feure as a welle, & to þe bodi as an ouene / þe woundid man
 muste absteine him after þe chapitle of dietyng techip, & boþe þe <sup>The patient
and the
physician
must live
chastely.</sup>
 sike man & þe leche, & alle þat ben aboute þe sike, moten absteine
 16 hem fro fleischly knowynge of a womman, [ne a womman] *in tyme
 of menstrew,⁴ ne loke not on þe sike man / & conys in þe dai þe sike
 man schal go to priuy;⁵ & if he mai not schite "conys" kyndeli in <sup>Regulate
the patient's
stool.</sup>

² morel, Lat. Solathrum. See Notes.³ penywort, Lat. umbilicus Veneris.⁴ See Notes.⁵ priuy. *Prompt. Parv.*, p. 414, Pryvy or gonge (or Kocay), Latrina, cloaca, ypodromium; p. 202, Goo to pryvy, or to shytyng, Acello. *Pryvy* still used in Yorkshira.

- ventusyde, takynge reward to alle partikelere þynges tofore seyde, <sup>Add. MS.
12,056.</sup>
 20 & ordeyne hym a couenable dyotyng, as schal be tolde in þe
 Chapiteil of dyotyng; & leye a defens aboute þe wounde: 3 j. of
 bol Armonyake, distemperid wip oyle of roys & a lytel vynegre, to
 þe piknesse of hony; & 3if þat þe tyme of þe 3ere were hot, put to
 24 þis medycine þe jus of sum colde erbe: as morel, nytschode, peny-
 wort, virge pastoris, opere sum oper colde erbe; & bynde nozt þe
 lyme to harde, ne lete nozt þe lyme hongyn; but 3if it be þe arme,
 honge him aboute þe nekke; & 3if it be þe fot oper þe schyne, lete
 28 hym ligge; & 3if þat þe lyme akþe, aswage þe akþe wip anoyntyng
 of hote oyle of roses. Ffor as Galyen seyth: þere is nobynge more
 grefes, þan ys akyng & declynacioun of a lyme, for þese two makip
 sone an hote swellynge, the whiche is to þe fleuyre as a welle, & to
 32 þe body as an Ovyn. þe woundyde man most absteinen hym,
 afters þat þe chapiteil of dyetyng techith; & boþe þe syke man &
 þe leche, & alle þat ben aboute þe syke, mote absteinen hem from
 fleschly knowlache of a womman, ne a womman *in tyme of
 36 menstrew, ne loke nozt on þe syke man; & onys in þe day þe syke
 man schal schyte, & 3if he may nozt schyte kendly onys in þe day,

a clisterie þe dai after þe quantite of mete þat he takip, make him a clisterie
 If a tumour ouper a suppositorie conys ech day. & if þou myzt not wip alle
 develops, þese þingis defende þe lyme from apostyme, it is an yuel signe, for
 [1 R. 28, bk.] þe lyme is ¹feble, & þe humouris arn wickide; þanne bigynnen² to 4
 use a materen þe swellynge wip potage maad of flour, oile & watir, or
 maturatif, ellis wip þis maturatif / Take malowe leues & leues of violet, & þe
 R rote of holihocke; seþe hem weel in water, & staumpe hem, & take
 a pound of water, þat þei ben soden ynne, & comoun oile; 3 .iiij.; of 8
 wheete flour 3 .iiij.; of flour of lynseed 3 j.; of flour of fenegrek
 dj.³ 3.; of erbis I-staumpid half a pound. & boile alle þese togidere
 in a panne ouer þe fier, & stire it weel wip a spatire; & þis
 and remove maturatif leie on a lynnyn clop, & leie it on þe postyme til þat it 12
 the pus. be maturid / & whanne þat þe postyme is maturid, make þe quytture,
 if þou maist, be cast to þe wounde; & if it mai not be cast to þe
 wounde, opene þe place þat is moost lowist þere, as þe quytture mai
 best goon out; & þanne hele þe wounde, as I schal telle in þe 16
 þridde chapitle of apostymes / Take hede alwey to þis techinge;
 If the tumour & if þe postyme were for þe prickynge of a senewe, ne leie not
 is caused by þerto þis potage maturatif, but wip þe oynement of oile of rosia, &
 the pricking of a nerve use an ointment. of opere þingis, as it is seid in þe woundis of senewis / 20

² bigynnen, mistake for bigynne.

³ dimidium.

Add. MS. after þe quantyte of mete þat he haþ takyn, make hym a clistry, oper
 12,056. a suppositorie onys iche day. & zif þou maiste nozt with alle þese
 þynges defendyn þe lyme from aposteme, yt is an yuele signe, for þe
 lyme ys feble, & þe humores ben wykkede; þen begynne to maturen 24
 þe swellynge, with potage y-made off flour, oyle & water, oper ellys
 maturatyff with þis maturatyff: R malwe leuys, leffys of vyolett, & þe rote
 [4 fol. 52 v] of holy hokke; seþe hem ⁴wel in water, & þanne stampe hem, &
 take a pounce off þe water þat þey be sodyn yn, & of comyn oyle 28
 3 .iiij., of whete flour 3 .iiij., of flour of lynsed .3. j., of flore vynegreke
 3 f, of erbys i-stamped lb.⁵ f; & boille alle þese togidere, in a pan
 ouere þe fyre, & stire yt wel wip a spator; & þis maturatyff leye
 on a lynnyn cloth, & leye on þe posteme, tyl þat yt be maturyd; & 32
 whanne þat þe posteme is matured, make þe quyter, zif þou maist,
 ben y-cast to þe wounde; & zif it may nozt ben y-cast to þe wounde,
 opyne þe place þat ys most lowest þere, as þe quyter may best gone
 out; & þan helyn þe wounde, as y schal tellyn, in þe þridde 36
 chapytel of Apostemys. Take hede alweye to þis techynge, þat
 zif a posteme were for þe prikyng of a synwe, ne leye nozt þerto
 þis potage maturatyff, but wyt þe vncture of oyle of roses & of
 oper þynge, as yt is seyde in þe woundys of synwys. þou schalt 40

⁵ MS. lj

pou schalt knowe þe yuel discrasie of a wounde, ¹if þat pou seest þe skyn þat is aboute þe wounde to reed & to hoot in felynge, þanne þe wounde is discrasie in hete; namely, if þat þer come out 1. A hot dyscrasia, 4 of þe wounde² a sotil quytture, reed; þilke discrasie pou schalt helpe wiþ coldyng þe lyme aboute þe wounde with oile of rosis & vnguentum album, Rasis of ceruse, which pou schalt fynde in þe antidotarie, & with þe ius of þe opere eerbis colde. Nota

8 & pou schalt knowe a cold discrasie bi þe whiztnes eiper þe wannesse of þe place / & whanne þe place is cold in towching, & whanne þat þe quytture is picke; þe which discrasie pou schalt remeue bi þe enoynture of hote oiles, as oile of coste,³ oile of 12 laurine, oile of enforbium, & so opere hote ois / 2. a cold dyscrasia, 1. h.

A moist discracie pou schalt knowe bi þe neischenes of þe place, & bi aboundaunce of whizt liquide rotenes, þe which pou schalt helpe wiþ desiccatiuis: as wiþ waischinge of wiyn & hony 16 togidere, in þe whiche ben soden balaustie,⁴ gallis & þe ryndis of some garnadis, or alle or summe bi hem-silf / 2. a moist dyscrasia, R

þe drie discrasie pou schalt knowe bi þe smalnes of þe lyme, & þe smalnes of þe lippis of þe wounde, & litil quytture, if þat þe quytture be pinne; þe which discrasie pou schalt helpe: with 20 4. a dry dyscrasia. [17. 29, bk.]

² MS. erroneously inserts *quytture* after *wounde*.

³ *oile of coste*, Lat. cum oleo de castoreo.

⁴ *balaustie*. Balaustium, the floure of the wyld Pomgranate. Halle, *Table*, p. 16.—1565. Turner, *Herbal*, II., fol. 49 b., calls it Balaustrum.

y-knowe þe euyth dyscrasie of a wounde, ȝif þat pou sest the schyn þat is aboute þe wounde to reed, & to hot in felynge, þenne þe wounde is discrasyede in hete, namly ȝif þat þere come out of þe 24 wounde a sotyth qyter & a red; & þilke discrasye pou schalt helpen with coldyng þe lyme aboute þe wounde, with oyle of roses, & with vnguentum album—rasis of ceruse—whyche pou schalt fynde in þe Antodarie, & wiþ ius of opere colde erbys. & pou schalt knowe a 28 colde discrasye by þe whitnesse oper þe wannesse of þe place, & whanne þe place ys colde in touchyng, & whanne þat þe quyter is thykke; the whiche discrasye pou schalt remeffen, by þe vncture of hote oyles, as oyle of cost, oyle lauryne, oyle of enforbium, & so 32 oper hote oyles. A moiste discrasie pou schalt knowe by þe neeschenesse of þe place, & by þe Aboundaunce of whit lyquyde rotnesse, þe whiche pou schalt helpyn with defficatyffes: as with wasschyng of wyn & honye togedres, in 36 þe whiche buþ y-sode balaustye, gallys, & þe ryndes off poume garnettys, oper alle oper some by hem-selffen. þe drye dyscrasye pou schalt knowe by þe smalnesse of þe lyme, & þe smalnesse of þe lippes of þe woundes & litel quyter, ȝif þat the quyter be þenne; þe whiche discrasye pou

Add. MS.
12,056.

[17. 29, bk.]

As soon as
the dyscrasia
is removed,
try to heal
the wound
itself.

Anien

castynge on of hoot water til þat þe lyme wexe reed, & wiþ an
eynement þou muste¹ grece, as hennes, goos, & dokis, þe marie boon
of a calf, & wiþ plenteuousnes of good mete þat norischip: as þe
broþis of fleisch, & temperate wiyn, & rere eyren, & smale fischis, 4
& wiþ reste, & softnes of al þe bodi, & of þe lyme þat is hirt; &
alwey to þis techinge take hede þat as soone as a membre is brouȝt
to his kyndeli disposicioun, anon aȝenstondip² wiþ contrarious
medicyns, & turne aȝen to þe principal cure of þe wounde. But 8
þenke nouȝt to heele þe wounde as longe as it is enpostemed, or
ellis haue an yuel discrasie; but first remeue þilke discrasie, or þat
þou heele þe wounde / For whanne two þingis þat schulden ben
heelid ben togidere, & þe oon of hem mowe not be helid wiþoute 12
helynge of þat opere, first we schulen heelen him, þat mai nouȝt
be heelid wiþoute þat oper helyng, as þe apostyme eiþer þe dis-
crasie / þus Auicenne techip in þe laste chapitle of þe firste book.
Neuer-þe-lattere forȝete nouȝt þe principal cure, þat whanne þe 16
accidentis ben asesid turne aȝen to þe principal cure //

¹ þou muste, mistake for of moiste.

² aȝenstondip, mistake for aȝenstonde.

Add. MS. schalt helpen wiþ castynge on of hote water, tyl þat þe lyme wexe
12,056. rede, & with an oyntyng of moiste greys, as hennys, gosys &
dokys, & þe marye bon of a Calff, & with plentefoste of gode mete, 20
þat norysschyth, as þe brothys of flesch, & temperat wyn, & rere
eyren, & smale fyssches, & opere gode þynges, & with reste and with
softnesse of alle þe body & of þe lyme þat is y-hurte; & alwey to
þis techynge take hede, þat as sone as a membre ys y-broȝt to his
kendlye dysposicioun, anon aȝeyne stonde with contraryouse medy- 24
cine, & turne aȝeyne to þe pryncipal cure of þe wounde. But þynke
noȝt to helyn þe wounde, as longe as þe wounde ys apostomyde,
opere ellys haþ an yuele discrasye, but first remywe þilke discrasye
ere þan þou hele þe wounde. For whenne þat tweye þynges þat 28
scholde ben y-helyde, buȝ togedres, & þe on of hem mowe noȝt ben
y-helyde withouten helynge of þe oper, first we schulle helyn hym,
þat may noȝt be helyde withouten helynge of þe opere, as þe
posteme oper þe dyscrasye; & þus Avycene techith in þe last 32
chapitell of þe first bokys. Ne nevere þe latere ne forȝete noȝt þy
pryncipal cure, þat whanne the accidentes ben asesyde, turne aȝeyne
to þe princypale cure.

¶ *De .vij. chapitle of þe .iiij. techinge is a wounde maad with a wood hound, eiper of ony oper venemous beest /*

- 4 ¹ **B**Vt whanne an hound haþ biten a man, loke first if þat þe ^{[1 ff. 30]²} **¶** *Oggen vijm*
 hound be wood ; & if þat þe hound be not wood, heele þe ^{Bite of a dog.}
 wounde as þou doist opere comoun woundis ; & if þat þe hound ^{Ascertain whether the dog was rabid.}
 were wood, þou schalt knowe it bi certeyn cause & disposiciouns /
 8 For a wood hound fleep mete & water ; & he rennep hidirward & pidirward as a drunken man, wiþ open mouþ & his tail bitwene hise leggis ; his tunge hangip out, but he wolde biten alle men ; ne he knowip not þo men þat ben in houshold. He berkip not / & if
 12 þat he opirwhile berke, his vois is ful hors, & opere houndis fleen fro him & berken vpon him. Also þou schalt knowe bi disposicioun of þe same wounde. For if þat þou wetist a crumme of breed in þe blood of þe wounde, & zeuest it to anoper hound to ete, he
 16 wole not ete it ; & if þat he ete it, he wole die / Or ellis take an ote, & staumpe it, & leie it on þe wounde al nyzt, & on þe morowe zeue it to an hen ; & þe hen wole not ete it / & if þe hen ete it, þe hen schal die / ^{Food saturated with blood of the wound kills other animals.}

² Heading to leaf 30, in a later hand, *Off woundes bitten with doges.*

- 20 ¶ The vij Chapitelle of þe þridde techynge is off a wounde y-made of a wod hounde, opere of eny opere venymouse bestys.

- Whenne þat an hounde hath byten a man, ffirste loke zif þat þe ^{Add. MS.}
 24 hounde be wod ; & zif þat þe hounde be nozt wood, hele þe wounde ^{12,056.}
 as þou dost opere comyn woundys ; & zif þat þe hounde were wood, þou schalt y-knowe yt by certeyne causes, & by disposiciouns. Ffor ^[fol. 53 b.]
 28 whenne þat he sep water ; & he rennyth hydirwarde & pidirwarde, as a dronken man, wiþ opyn mouþ & hys taylle bytwene his leggya, hys tunge hongyth out, he wolde byte alle men, ne he ne knowyth nouzt þo men þat ben his housholde, he berkyth nozt ; & zif þat
 32 he operewhyle berke, hys voys ys ful hors, & opere houndys fien from hym & berkyn vpon hym. Also þou schalt y-knowe by dysposicioun of þe same wounde, for zif þat þou wetyst a crumme bred in þe blod of þe wounde & geuyste yt to an oper hounde to
 36 etyn, he wyl nozt etyn yt, & zif þe hounde etyp yt he wyll deyen ; opere ellys take a note & stampe yt, & leye on þe wounde al nyzt, & on þe morwe zif yt to an henne, sche wyl nozt etyn hyt ; & zif sche etyth yt sche wyl deyen. & anone as þou wost þe hounde ys

If the dog
was rabid,
withdraw the
blood from
the wound by
cupping,
cauterization,
[? If 30, bk.]
and attrahent
remedies.

Simple
remedies.
Have it(?)

Compound
remedies.

Another
treatment:

And anon as þou woost þat þe hound was wood, sette a greet ventuse aboue vpon þe wounde, & drawe out þe myche blood out of þe wounde, & aftirward drawe abroad þe wounde; & aboue al opere þing, brennyng of hoot yren to þe ground ¹ of þe wounde is ⁴ moost profitable. & leie aboue þe wounde attractiuis, to drawe out þe venym / Summe of þese attractiuis ben symple, & summe compound / Symple beþ: þe lyuere of þe same wood hound þat boot þe man, garlik stampid, salt fisch, aischis of wiyn lies, apponak ⁸ þat is wondirful, þe leeuens of a gourle,² & þe rote of fenegrek, þe gile³ of fisch, & amptyn I-stampid / þese medicyns ben compound: vreyne of a zongt man wip nitre; ouper mintis stampid⁴ wip salt, & distemperid wip vynegre, & maad an enplaster. Anoper medicyn ¹² compound: take floris eris & salt, of ech .x. parties, & þe fatte of a calf, & of a wolf þat sufficiþ, & make a plastre / Anoper: take schepis talow & buttere, & make a plaster / þis wounde schal be holden open at þe leeste fourty daies, & þis schal be do aboute þe ¹⁶ place. In anoper maner regimen / Vndirstonde þat þe man þat is biten, schal not be lete blood in þe bigynnyng, lest þe venym be drawe abroad bi opere lymes; ne þou schalt zeue him no laxatif, lest it drawe þe venym to þe entrailis wipinne; but þou schalt sette ²⁰

² gourde, cucumber. See *Prompt. Parv.*, 203, Goord, Cucumer, cucurbita, colloquintida.

³ gile, ne. gill. See Mätzner, *Dict.*, p. 268. The Latin has, *gluten*, glue.

⁴ stampid, in margin.

Add. MS. 12,056. wod, sette a gret ventuse aboue þe wounde & drawe out myche blod out of þe wounde, & afterwarde drawe abroad þe wounde; & abouen alle opere thyng brennyng of hote eyren to þe deppe of þe wounde ys most proffitable, & aftere leye aboue þe wounde attractyfes, to ²⁴ drawe out þe venym. Some of þese attractifes beþ symple, & some beþ componyd. Symple ben: þe lyffere of þe same wod hounde þat bote þe man, garlyke y-stampyde, salt fyssch, asschys of vyne, Opopanac ys wondirful, þe leuys of a Gourde, & þe rote of ffyne- ²⁸ greke, þe gele of fyssches, & amptes y-stampyde. þese medycynes ben componyde: vryne of a zonge man, with nytre oper myntes, i-stampyde with salt & distempred with vynegre, & y-mad in em-plastre. An opere medicyne componyd: R floris eris & salt ana ³² ten parties, & þe fat of a calff twelf parties, & make a plastre. An opere: take schepys talwz & buttre, & make emplastre. þis wounde schal ben y-holde opyne at þe leste fourty dayes; al þis ³⁶ schal be do about þe place. ⁵In an opere manere regimen vndir- stande, þat þe man þat is y-bete ne schal nouzt be lete blod in the bygynnyng, lest þe venym be drawe abroad by opere lymes. Ne þou ne schalt gif hym non laxatyff, lest yt drawe þe venym to þe entraylles withynne; but þou schalt setten on þe place a stronge ⁴⁰

[? fol. 54 a]

- vpon þe place a strong ventuse, as it is seid tofore, ¹þat it mowe use first capping, [1. 17. 31]
 drawe miche of þe blood. And whanne þat .iiij. daies ben passid, it then blood-letting and a purgative.
 is not yuele to lete blood & to purge with a litil purgacioun, þat Keep the patient in good spirits.
 4 purgip þe malencolie, as with decoccioun epithimum,² wip gotis whey; & norischip him with dieting, þat fattip & makip him glad & blipe; & waische his heed with decoccioun of water, þat þe feet & þe heed of a weper were soden yune. Ne late him not þirsten
 8 ne hungren, suffren, ne traueilen; & so if þat god wole, þou maist him kepe from perile / & ech dai to a monþis eende he schal take During a month he must take every day a simple or a compound medicine.
 opere symple medicyns or compounned / * — — Take þe ayschis of crabbis I-brent in an ouene .iiij. parties, of frankencense vij.
 12 parties, & make hem into a poudre / þe pacient schal take ech dai of þis poudre .ij. 3. / Anoper medicyn: take þe poudre of crabbis brent vj. parties, gencian .iiij. parties, terre sigillate oon partie, make poudre / If þat þou were not at þe bigynnyng, & it bigynne
 16 to haue yuel accidentis: as yuel þouztis, soruful metynge in his If the patient seems melan-
 sleep, & þat he be wroþ & grucche, & woot not whi; & if men chely,
 aske him ony þing, & 3eueþ no good answer þerto, & fley lith,³ & he hap alle opere signes of malencolie, þanne 3eue to him a [* 17. 31, bk.]

² *Epithemum*. See Notes.

³ *fley lith*, altered to *fleyntlith* with different ink. Read: *fleyth lizt*.

- 20 ventuse, as yt is seyde tofore, þat he mowe drawe myche of þe blode. Add. MS. 12,056.
 & whenne þat þre dayes ben passyde, yt is nouzt yuele to leten blod, & to purge with a lyzt purgacioun, þat purgith þe malyncolye, as with decoccioun of Epytemum, with gotys whey; & norissche
 24 hym with dyetyng, þat fattyth hym & make glad & blipe; & wassche hys hed with decoccioun of water, þat þe fet & þe hed of a wepire ben y-sodyn yn. Ne lete hym nouzt þrustyn, ne suffren hungrye ne traueil, & so 3if þat god wyl, þou maiste kepen hym
 28 from peryle. & euery day to a moneþ ende, he schal taken opere symple medycynes, oper componed. *Symple buþ: Asa fetida. Asa dulsis, potm,⁵ terra sigillata, Wermot, KockuH,⁶ mirre & gencyana. Medycynes componed gode: *R þe assches of crabbys
 32 y-brent in an Offyn .iiij. parties, of frankensens vij. parties, make a poudre; þe pacient schal take iche day of þis poudre 3 .ij. wip wyn. An oper: R þe poudre of crabbys y-brende vj. parties, of gencyane .iiij. parties, terre sigillate oon partie, make poudre. 3if þat þou
 36 were nozt at þe bygynnyng, & he bygynneth to haue yuele Accidentes, as yuele þouztis, schrewyde metynge in his slepe, & þat he be wroth & grucche & wot nozt why, & 3if men aske hym enye þynge he 3euyth no gode answer þere to, & fleyþ lyzt, & he hath
 40 alle opere signes of malencolye, þanne 3if to hym a medycine y-made

⁵ *polium*, Paley.

⁶ *Kockull*, Nigella. See *Prompt. Parv.*, p. 86.

give him
troches com-
posed of
cantarides
and spices,
R

until he
metastases
blood.

Treat bites
from venom-
ous beasts
similarly.

medicyn maad of cantarides / Take old grete cantarides, & do
awei þe heed & þe wyngis, .ij dragmis; lentis¹ I-clensid, .3 j.;
safron, spikenard, clowis, canel, .ana .3 s'; bete hem weel, & make
of hem smale ballis, þat ech bal weize a dragme. & 3eue o. bal at 4
þre tymes, at ech tyme þe weizte of þre cornys of wheete, til þat
he pisse blood; þanne he schal be saaf / For whanne þou art sikir,
heele þe woundis after þat fourti daies ben passid, in þe same
maner. If þat þe wounde were maad of bitinge of an eddre or of 8
ony oper venomous beest, þe leche schal take heede to drawe abrod
þe wounde, & sette aboue a uentuse, & drawe out miche blood; &
it is miche worþ to enuyroune þe place aboute þat is biten wip
brome I-stampid / For if þat þe prickynge be in þe foot or in þe 12
hand, if þou enuyroune þe arme with brome, it lettij þe venym to
go vpward; & 3eue him þe medicyns writen aboue, & also lete þe
wounde be open, til þe venym be excludid /

¶ Cap. viij. **T**He .viij chapitle of þe bridde techinge of þe firste 16
tretis of a wounde maad in a ioynt, & is dislocate /

Whanne þat a wounde is in a lyme, & þe boon of þe same lyme
[¹ l. 82] is to-broke ²atwo & dislocate—þat is to seie out of ioynte, þanne

¹ doo not above *lentis*; meaning?

² Heading to leaf 82 in a later hand: *Off woundes in Jintes.*

Add. MS. of cantarydes. Take *olde* grete kantarydes & do aweye þe hed & 20
12,056. þe wynges 3. ij., lentys I-clansed 3. j., saferen, spikenard, clowys,
canell ana 3. fl.—in opere bokys—ipone hem wel & make of hem
smale ballys þat weyzen j. peny wyzt; & 3if a baft at þre tymes,
at iche tyme þe wyzt of vij cornys of whete, tyl þat he pyasse blod, 24
[¹ fol. 84 b] ⁴wounde after þat fourty dayes ben passyde, in þe same maner.
3if þat a wounde were mad of þe bytinge of an eddre, opere of eny
opere venymouse beste, þe leche schal take hede to drawe abrode þe 28
wounde & setten abouen a ventuse & drawe out myche blod, & yt
is myche worþ to enviroun þe place abouten þat is y-betyn wip
brome y-stampyde. Ffor 3if þat þe prikyng be in þe fot opere in
þe hande, 3if þou enviroun þe arme opere þe legge with brome, yt 32
latteþ þe venym to gone vpwarde; & 3if hym þe medycines y-wryten
aboue, & also tryacle, & lete þe wounde be opyne, tyl al þe venym
be escludyde.

The viij. Chapytelle of þe bridde techynge of the ffirste 36
tretys is of a wounde y-made in a joynt & is dislocat.

defensive

Whenne þat a wounde is in a lyme & þe bon of þe same lyme
ys tobroken atwo & is dislocat—þat is to sigge, out of joynt,

- it is good þat þou putte in þe wounde whanne þe blood is staunchid, & also aboute þe wounde þe zolke of an ey wip oile of rosis, & anointe al þe lyme aboute þe wounde with two parties of oile of
 4 rosis, & half oon partie of vynegre maad picke wip bole armoniak, til þe quytture be engendrid, & þat þou be sikir þat no postyme schal come. Ne take noon hede to brynge togidere þe parties of þe
 8 boon þat is to-broken or dislocate, til viij. daies ben goon in þe wyntir, & v. in þe somer; for þanne it schal make quytture, and be sikir from swellynge; & þanne brynge togidere þe brynkis eiper þe disiuncture after þe techynge þat schal be seid in þe chapitle of algebra. & if þat þe prickynge eiper þe dislocacioun nedip splentis,
 12 make þat þe splentis & byndynge faile aboute þe wounde. þat þou may do if þat þou kutte þe splentis & þe bindynge aboute þe wounde with a knyft or a rasour, & in drawynge abroad þe hoole of þe wounde¹ aboute þe wounde wip a nedle, so þat þou maist bi þat
 16 hole ech day chaunge þi medicyn of þe wounde wipoute choudynge² of þe boond þat þou madist first aboute þe boonys þat weren broken ouper dislocate; þe which boond þou schalt nouȝt remeuen til tyme schal be teld in his place, but þou schalt bynde aboute þilke

If the wound is accom-
panied by
fracture or
dislocation
of a bone,

R
dress the
wound,

and do not
join the bone
before some
time elapsed.

Cut a hole in
the splinte or
bandages,

through
which the
wound can
be dressed.
[s. 11. 22, bk.]

¹ *wounde*, error for *bonde*.² *choudynge*, error for *chaungynge*.

- 20 þanne it is gode þat þou putte in þe wounde, whanne þe blod is y-
 staunchide, & also aboute þe wounde, þe zolke of an eyze, with oyle
 of roses, & anoynt alle þe lyme aboute þe wounde, wip two partyes
 of oyle of rosys, & wip half on party of vynegre, y-made pikke with
 24 bol Armonyake, tyl þat þe quytture be engendered,⁴ & þou be sykere
 þat none Aposteme schalt come. Ne take none hede to brynge to-
 gedere þe parties of þe bon þat is tobroken opere dislocat, tyl viij
 daies ben go in þe wyntire, & fyff in the somere; for þenne yt
 28 schal make quytters, & be sykere from swellynge; & þenne brynge
 togidere þe brekynges opere þe dysynncture aftere þe techynge þat
 schal be seyde in þe Chapytell of Algebra. & zif þat þe brekynges
 opere þe dyslocacioun nedip splyntes, make þat þe splyntes & þe
 32 byndynge faylen aboute þe wounde; & þat þou maiste do, zif þat
 þou kyttest þe splyntes & þe byndinge aboute þe wounde with a knyf
 opere a rasoure, & in drawynge abroad þe hole of þe bonde aboute þe
 wounde³ wip a nedle, so þat þou maiste by þilke hole euery day
 36 chaungen þe medycine of þe wounde wipoute chaungynge of þe
 bonde, þat þou madest firste aboute þe bonys þat were broke opere
 dislocat. þe whiche bonde þou schalt nouȝt remeffen, tyl þe tyme
 þat schal be tolde in hys place; bote you schalt bynde aboute þilke

Add. MS.
12,056.

[fol. 55 a]

⁴ MS. engenderes.

boon a newe boond, which þou schalt remeue as ofte as þou chaungist þi wounde. & whanne þat þou art sikir fro þe enpostemyng, & whanne þat þou hast sett togidere þe boonys þat were sett togidere & dissolate, þanne leie vpon þe wounde bi þe hole 4
 R þat þou madist in þe boond, a mundificatif of mel roset colat, & of barli mele til þe wounde be clensid; & leie on þat a¹ mundificatif, þedis of oolde whigt lynnyn clop, til þat þe wounde be ful clensid; aftirward regendre fleisch, & aftirward consowde with 8 regeneratiuis & consolidatiuis, whiche þat schulen be seid in þe ende of þe book /

¶ Cap^m lxxv

The nynþe chapitle of þe .iiij. techinge of þe firste tretis is of fluxblood of a wounde / 12

Hæmorrhage arises from an injury, corrosion, or weakness of the veins and arteries—

þer ben ij. maner of causis þat makip blood to blede out of a mannys body; þe oon cause is clepid—cause coniuncte; & þe toþer—cause antecedent / þe enchesoun of cause coniuncte is compounned of þe moupis of þe veynes and arteries, or ellis whanne 16 þat þe veynes ben kut atwo, or ellis corrosion of þe bodies of þe 2 same veynes & arteries, or ellis to greet febilnes or to greet losenes / And þer ben manie enchesouns of cause antecedentis: as to

¹ a, erroneously inserted.

² Heading to leaf 83, *Off flux off blode in woundes.*

Add. MS.
12,056.

bonde a newe bonde, þe whyche þou schalt remeffe, as often as þou 20 chaungiste thy wounde. & whanne þou art sykere from empostomyng & þou haue sette togedire þe bonys þat were sette togedire & dislocat, þenne leye vpon þe wonde by þe hole þat þou madyst in þe band a mundifycatyff of mel rosat colat, & of barlye mele, tyl 24 þe wonde be clansyde; & leye on þilke mundifycatyff þedis of olde clene whyte lynne clop, tyl þat þe wounde be ful clansyde; afterward regeneren flesch, & aftereward consoude wiþ regeneratyfes & consolidatyfes, whiche þat schullen ben seyde in þe ende of 28 þe boke.

The ix Chapitle of þe bridde techynge is of flux blod off a wounde.

þere beþ two manere causes þat makyþ blod to bleden out of 32 mannes body; þat on cause is clepyde cause conjuncte, & þat oþer cause antecedent. þe encheson of cause conjuncte ys openynge of þe moupes of þe veynes & þe Arteries, oþer ellys whanne þat the veynes beþ kut atwo, oþer ellys corosion of þe bodies of þe same 36 veynes & arteries, oþer ellys to gret febleness, oþer to gret losness. & þere beþ manie enchesouns & causes antecedente: as to myche

- myche frelenes¹ of blood, or ellis to myche acute of blood, & also
 manye opere causis þer ben þat ben clepid cause of² primitif: as
 smytynge þat woundith, to greet lepyng, cryng; wraþe, chidyng,
 4 & so manye opere; & ech of þese causis tofore seid haþ his maner
 heelyng by him-silf in fisik medicinal. But it is not þe enten-
 cioun of þis book to treten³ of blood þat bledip of wounde, þat is
 maad with wounde, þe which may be restreyned with craft of
 8 ciurgie. In flux of blood þat comeþ of a wounde, þe leche muste
 loke þe disposicioun, þe abitude, age, vertu, & complexioun of him
 þat is woundid; if þat þese acorden, & he be myzty in vertu, he
 schal blede myche blood at þe wounde, þouþ þat þe leche be clepid
 12 at þe bigynnyng, but if it be so þat he be⁴ feble ouer greetliche.
 & if þat nede constreine þe leche to staunche blood, he muste loke
 if þat þe blood go out at þe veynes capillares, þat ben smale veynes
 as heeris of a mannys heed / & þanne oonly þe whizt⁵ of an ey leid
 16 aboue with towþe of flex suffisip / whanne þat þe parties of þe
 wounde ben brouzt togidere; & if þou caste aboue poudre of lym
 aforesaid in þe chapitle of sowynge of woundes, it schal be þe
 better; for þat poudre wipstreyneþ þe blood & consoudip þerparties

from fullness
of blood—
causam ante-
cedentes;
from an acci-
dent—causam
primitiva.

If the patient
is strong, let
him bleed
freely;
if he is weak
use a mild
styptic when
the blood is
lost from the
capillaries;
[* lf. 33, bk.]

¹ *frelenes*, mistake for *fulnesse*. ² *of*, erroneous insertion. See below.

³ *but*, omitted. Latin: Non est huius libri intentio tractare nisi de
fluxu sanguinis. . .

⁴ *be*, added in margin in same hand.

- 20 fulnesse of blod, oper ellys to myche Acuyte of blod & also manye
 opere causes; and þere beþ opere causes þat beþ clepyd causes
 prymytiff; as smytyng þat woundip, to gret lepyng, cryinge,
 wraþe, chydunge, & so many⁶ opere & iche of þese causes tofore
 24 seyde haþ hys manere helyng by hym-selfen in fesyke medecynal.
 Bot it ys nozt þe entencyoun of þis boke, to tretyn but of blod, þat
 bledip of wounde, þat is y-mad wip wounde, the⁷ whiche may be
 restreynde by crafte of surgerye. In flux of blod, that comyth of
 28 a wounde, þe leche most loke þe disposicioun, þe Abytude, Age,
 vertu & complexioun of hym þat is y-woundyde; & 3if þat þese
 acorden, & he be myztye in vertue, he schal blede myche blod at
 hys wounde, þowþ þat þe leche be clepyde at þe bygynnyng, bot 3if
 32 it so be þat he feble ouere gretlyche. & 3if nede constreine þe leche
 to staunche þe blode, he most loke 3if þat þe blod go out of þe
 Veynes capyllares, þat beþ smale veynes as herys of mannys hed;
 & þanne only þe whyte of an eyþe, y-leyde aboue wip towþ of flex
 36 suffiseþ, whenne þat þe parties of þe wounde beþ brouzt togidere;
 & 3if þou cast aboue þe poudre of lyme, tofore seyde in the chapy-
 tell of sowynge of woundes, yt schal be þe betyre; for þe poudre
 wipstreyneþ þe blod & consoudeþ þe partyes of þe wounde, togedire.

Add. MS.
12,056.

[7 fol. 55 b]

⁶ MS. may.

when it is
lost from a
larger vein
use a stronger
styptic;

when it is
lost from an
artery press
the artery
until a clot is
formed,

and apply a
styptic

R

[11. 24]

Renew the
remedy care-
fully.

of þe wounde togidere. & if þe blood come fro grete veynes he
mai nouȝt so sumtyme be constreynd, but it nedip a stronger
medicyn & also a more cautele / & if þat þe blood go out of
arterie, þou schalt knowe it bi construccion & dilatacion of þe 4
saame arterie—þat is to seie, þat þe blood go out wiþ lepyng &
operwhile wiþ wiþdrawinge¹; & þanne sette þi fyngir vpon þe moup
of þe grete veyne or ellis ou þe arterie, & holde þi fyngir þeron bi
a greet hour; for þanne by grace sum greet drope of blood may be 8
congelid togidere & þere-bi vertu may be myche comfortid; aftir-
ward leie plenteuousliche of þis medicyn vpon þe veyne eiper þe
arterie þat is kutt atwo / Take frankencense, whizt gummis, &
fatt .ij. 3., aloes .3. j., make poudre & distempere with þe white of 12
an ey as picke as hony / after take heeris of an hare smal kutt,
medle alle þese togidere, & þer is no medicyn so good as þis medi-
cyn is in streynynge of blood & consowdynge of þe veyne / But
whanne þat þou comest to chaunge þat medicyn of þe wounde, do 16
nouȝt þe medicyn away wiþ strenkþe, but leie aboue of þe same
medicyn² moist, to neische þe firste medicyn, þat it myȝte
falle away bi him-silf / Neþeles it is possible þat a medicyn
caustik, þat is to seie, a medicyn þat brenneþ, sunner staunchiþ 20

¹ Lat. : quod sanguis exit cum saltu secundum constrictionem et dilata-
tionem ipsius arterie.

² MS. *medicyn*, repeated.

Add. MS. 12,056. & zif þe blod come from gret Veynes, he may nouȝt so sumtyme be
constreynde, but it nedip a strengere medycyne & also a more
cautele; & zif þat þe blod go out of an arterye, þou schalt y-knowe yt
be constructioun & dilatacioun, of þe same arterye—þat is to sigge, 24
þat þe blod goþ out with lepyng, & oper while with wiþdrawinge,
& þenne sette þy fyngere vpon þe moup of þe gret veyne, opere ellis
þe Artarye, & holde þy fyngere þere on by a grete oure; for þenne
by hap sum grete drope of blod may be congelyde togedre, & þereby 28
vertu may be myche y-comfortyde. Afterwarde leye plentyfullyche
of þis medycine vpon þe⁴ Veyne opere þe arterye þat is kut atwo.
R ffirancencens, whyzt gommous & fat 3. ii., Aloes 3. i., make
poudre & distempre with þe whyzt of an eyse as þykke as hony; 32
after take herys of an hare smale & kutte, medle al þis þynge to-
gedire, & þere ys no medycine so gode as þis medycine is, in streyn-
ynge of blod & consoudynge þe Veyne. Bot whanne þat þou comyst
to chaunge þe medycine of þy wonde, do nouȝt away þe medycine 36
wiþ strengþe, but leye aboue of þe same medycine moist, to neasche
þe firste medycine, þat yt myȝte fallyne away by yt-selff. Neþeles
yt is possible, þat a medycine caustyke, þat ys to sigge a medycine

⁴ *wounde*, cancelled before *veyne*.

blood þan þis medicyn of frank encense ; & þou schalt haue greet
 plente of medicyne caustik in þe antidotarie, but we ben nouȝt
 sikir þat þe blood of þe veyne eȝer arterie anopir tyme wole goon
 4 out, whanne þat þe schorft of þilke caustik Medicine¹ is remeued
 away / but þis medicyn of encense with þe heeris of an hare not
 oonliche staunchiþ þe blood, but also sowdiþ² þe veyne & þe
 arterie, as I haue preued it ofte tymes / And for to ȝeue autorite I
 8 sette a saumple þat come sumtyme to myn hondis : A child of þre
 ȝeer old hadde a litil knyf in his hond, & he fel on þat knyf in þe
 former partie of þe þrote persched þe veyne organise ; þer cowde no
 man it staunche, & þanne I was clepid, & I cam to þe child in
 12³ greet haaste, & he hadde almost lost his siȝt ; for hise ȝen in his
 heed weren turned vp so down ;⁴ & þe blood come out at þe wounde
 whiȝt as whey, vnnep̃ he hadde no pouste⁵ / & þanne I leide my
 fyngir on þe heed of þe veyne, & I heeld it faste þat þer myȝte no
 16 þing go out ; & so I heeld þe veyne a greet hour, & þanne vertu of
 his bodi þat was almost lost quykenede aȝen, & þe pouste bigan to
 appere febiliche as it were a smal þred / þanne I sente to þe spiceris

The styptic
is a surer
remedy than
a caustic.

Nota bene

1st Example.
A child hav-
ing cut its
throat with
a knife,

[2d. 34, bk.]
the loss of
blood caused
collapse.

The vein was
pressed,

¹ *medicina*, added in margin.

² MS. *sowdyngē*.

⁴ *up so down*. See Mätzner, *Dict.*, s. v. "down." Latin: *oculos habebat in capite revolutos*.

⁵ *vnnep̃ he hadde no pouste*. This passage is corrupt ; for the correct version see below.

þat brennyth, sennore staunchyth blod, þenne þis medicine of encense ;
 20 & þou schalt haue gret plente of medycine caustyke in þe antito-
 darye, but we beþ nouȝt sykere þat þe blod of þe Veyne, op̃ere þe
 arterye an op̃er tyme wyl gon out, whanne þat þe serche of þylke
 caustyke medycine ys remywed away. But þy medycine of ensence,
 24 with þe herys of an hare, nouȝt only staunchiþ þe blod, but also *con-*
soudeþ þe Veyne, & þe Arterye, as y haue preuyde yt ofte tymes.
 And forto ȝif Autorite, I sette an saumple, þat come sum tyme to
 myn handys : A childe of þre ȝere olde, hadde a lyte knyf in hys
 28 hande, & he fel on þat knyf, & þe poynt of þe knyf, in þe fore
 partye of þe þrote, persayde þe Veyne organys ; ne þere ne couþe no
 man yt staunche, & þanne y was y-clepyde & y come to þe child in
 gret haste, & he hadde almoste loste hys syȝht ; for hys eyȝen in
 32 hys hed were turnyde vp so down, & þe blode come out of þe
 wounde, whyte as wheyȝe, ne he ne hadde no pous, & þenne y
 leyde my fyngere on þe hed of þe veyne, & y helde faste þat
 nopynge myȝte go out, & so y helde þe veyne by a grete houre, &
 36 þe vertue of hys body þat was almost lost quyknede aȝeyne, & þe
 pous bygan to apere fleblyche as yt were a smal þreed. þanne y

Add. MS.
12,056.

schoppe þat was a greet weye fro me / ne I remeuede not away my
 fyngir fro þe place, til þat þe messenger cam azen, and þe child
 bigan þanne to opene hise iȝen; & þanne I ordeynede þis medicyn
 to be maad, & plenteuousliche I leide it aboue þe wounde, & I 4
 boond þe wounde wiþ plumaciols & with stupis¹ I-leid in whit of
 an ey, & with a boond I boonde it streitly, and comaundide hem to
 ȝeue him crummys of breed leil in water; & on þe morowe I come
 azen, & þanne I foond þe child comfortid / & neuere þe lattere I 8
 nolde nouȝt vndo þe medicyn / þe fader preiede me wiþ greet in-
 staunce to vndo þe medicyn, ²but I wolde not; & so I lete it lie
 stille, til iiij. daies weren passid withouten remeuynge / & nepales
 I visitide him ech day; & þe .iiij. day I vndide þe wounde, & þe 13
 medicyn was drie aboue þe wounde, so þat I myȝte not han re-
 meued it wiþoute greet violence. & þanne I leide aboue þe whiȝt
 of an ey wiþ a litil oile of rosis, & so I lefte it lie oon day til on þe
 morowe I turnede azen; & þanne I remeuede away þe medicyn 16
 wiþoute violence, & I foond þanne þe wounde & þe veyne al hool.
 & of þis heelyng³ his fadir & alle hise neizeboris hadden greet
 wondir / And if þat wiþ þis medicyn þou maist not sowde þe
 arterie ne þe veyne, ne þow maist not constreyne þe blood for sum 20

¹ "Stupes (in Surgery), Pledgets of Tow, Cotton, etc., dipt in scalding
 hot Liquors and apply'd to the diseased Part."—Phillips.

Add. MS. 12,056. sente to þe spysers schoppe, þat was a grete weye from me, ne y ne
 remywede noȝt away my fyngere from þe place tyl þat þe messagere
 come aȝeyne, & þe childe þenue bygan to opene hys eyȝen; and
 þanne y ordeynede þilke medycine to be maad, & plentyffuliche y 24
 leyde it abouen þe wounde, and y bonde þe wounde with plumaceoles
 & with stupes y-leyde in whiȝt of an eyȝe, & with a bande y bonde
 yt streytly, & y comaundede hem to gyuen hym crommys of brede,
 y-leyde in water; and on þe morwene y come aȝeyne, & þenne y 28
 fonde þe childe y-cunffortede & neuere þe latere y wolde nouȝt vndo
 þe medycine; þe ffadire ³preyde me wiþ grete instaunce to se þe
 wounde, but y wolde nouȝt; & so y lete yt be, tyl foure dayes were
 passyd, withouten remeffyng & napeles y vysitede hym every day; 32
 in þe fourþe day y vndyde þe bande, & þe medycine was drye aboue
 þe wounde, so þat y myȝte noȝt haue remywede hyt withouten grete
 Vyolence. & þenne y leyde aboue þe whyte of an eyȝe, with a lytel
 oyle of roses, & so y lafte yt by on day. On þe morwen y turnyde 36
 aȝeyne, & þenne y remeffyde away þe medycine withouten Vyolence,
 & þenne y fonde þe wounde & þe Veyne al hol. And of þis helyng
 þe fadire & alle his neyȝhboures hadden gret wondire. And ȝif þat
 with þis medycyne þou maiste noȝt soude þe Arterye, ne þe Veyne, ne 40
 þou ne maiste noȝt constreyne þe blod for sum opere Impedement,

- oper inpediment: þanne þou must ouþer bynde þe veyne, or drawe
 hir out of hir place, & bynde þe heed of þe veyne or arterie, ouþer
 þou must brenne hir wiþ hoot iren, & make on hir heed a greet
 4 cruste & a depe. ¶ Anoper ensauple: þer was a child of .xv.
 3eer oold þat smoot him-silf with a smal knyf, & pilke knyf per-
 side o. senewe of þe arm & prickide a ueyne þat lay vnder pilke
 senewe. & for þe prickynge of þat senewe ¹he hadde greet
 8 akyng, & blood drewe down to þe wounde & nouȝt aȝenstood ²for
 alle þe staunchis of medicyns þat me myȝte do þerto, it wolde not
 staunche, þe blood ran out at þe wounde. & colde medicyns ben
 greuous to senewis þat is prickid, for þei stoppen þat lyme, & þat
 12 is contrarious aȝens senewis; & þanne I demede nessessarie to
 drawe out al þe veyne out of her place & to bynde hir & to helpe
 pilke senewis wiþ oile of rosis / But þe modir of þat child sente for
 a lewde leche which þat repreuede foule my doom, & he bihiȝte to
 16 heele safly þe child. He dwellide on þe cure, & I wente my wey /
 þe which leche took hede to him .x. daies, þat neipir þe akyng
 ceesside ne þe blood was not staunchid, & so þe sijk man was nyȝ
 deed / & at þe laste I was clepid, & I wolde not come to þe pacient /
 20 þanne a fisician þat was frend to þe freendis of þe pacient blamede
 þe modir & hir freendis þat þei hadden left counsel for pilke idiotis
² aȝenstood, for aȝenstondyng.

use a ligature
 or torsion or
 cauterization
 of the bleed-
 ing artery or
 vein.

Notes
 2nd Example
 Case of a
 child which
 had pricked
 a nerve and a
 vein in its
 arm.
 [1 ff. 35, bk.]

Lanfranc
 suggested ty-
 ing the vein
 and applying
 oil of roses to
 the nerve.

A lay phy-
 sician at-
 tempted an-
 other treat-
 ment,

but for ten
 days the child
 suffered acute
 agony and
 bleeding;

- þan þou moste opere bynde þe Veyne, opere drawyne here out of
 here place, & wynde þe hed of þe Veyne oper Arterye, oper þou most
 24 brenne here wiþ hote yren, & maken on here hed a grete croste & a
 depe. An opere exauple: þere was a childe of xv ȝere olde, þat
 smot hym-self with a smal knyff, & pilke knyff persyde on Veyn of
 þe Arme, & prikyde a Veyne þat lay vndire pilke synwe. & for þe
 28 prikyng of pilke synwe he hadde grete akyng, & blod ran to þe
 wounde & nouȝt aȝeynestondyng medycines þe blod ran out at þe
 wounde. Kolde medycines weren profitable to bledyng of wounde,
 and colde medycines beȝ greffes to prikyng of synwes; for þey
 32 stoppyn þat lyme & þat ys contraryus aȝeyns þe synwys; and
 þenne y demyde necessarye to drawe out alle þe Veyne out of here
 place & to bynde here & to helpen pilke synwe with oyle of roses.
 But þe modire of pilke childe sende for a lewyde leche, whyche þat
 36 reprevyde foulliche my doom, & he behyȝte to helyn saflyche þe
 childe. He dwellyde on þe cure, & y went my weye. þe whyche
 leche toke hede to hym be ten dayes, þat neipere þe akyng sesyde
 ne þe blod was nouȝt y-staunchyde, & so þe syke man was ³nyȝh ded.
 40 And at þe laste y was clepyde & y wolde nouȝt come to þe pacient.
 But þenne a ffysisyen þat was frende to þe man of þe pacyent,
 blamyde þe modire & here frendys, þat þey hadde lefte my consaylle

Add. MS.
 12,056.

[fol. 57 a]

biheeste; & pilke fisician purposide, after þat he hadde herd my counseil, þat þer was noon oper wey þat myzte saue þe sike man from deep, & he axide of þe sirurgian wheþer he coude do as I hadde seid bifore. & ¹ he seide, þat he coude so doon, & so he 4 dide / He kutte þe skyn aboue þe veyne & twynede þe veyne in hise handis, & boond þe eende of þe veyne with a þred; & after he helde on þe senewe hoot oile of rosis, & so bi þis counseil he was restorid aȝen to heelpen / But who so wolde aske how þat he 8 myzte so manye daies be kept from þe crampe for þat he suffride so greet akþe / I answerde & seie: þat þe cause was, for þat he bledde at þe wounde ech day, so þat þe senewe ² mizt not be to myche replete eiper ful of blood / Alle þese þingis I haue told, þat he þat 12 redip hem mai þe visiloker in semblable causis worchen. & if bi þis medicyn he myzte nouȝt sikirliche be restorid or restreyned þat fallip riȝt seelde whane ³ / þanne we moten brenne þe heed of þe veyne eiper of senewe ⁴ wiþ hoot iren, & pilke hoot iren myzte 16 make an hard crusta. & be war þat þou touche not þe lippis of þe wounde ne þe senewe, ne noon oper þing but oonly þe veyne wiþ hoot iren. & if al þis craft wole not helpen, we musten drawe

[11. 36]

finally a surgeon tied the vein and saved the child.

Nota
The bleeding of the wound prevented cramp.

When styptics fail, use cauterization;

Nota

² *senewe*, error for *wounde*. Add MS. has the same mistake.

³ *riȝt seelde whane*. *Polychron*, i. 133, wel alide whanne. *Stratm.*, seldhwonne.

⁴ *senewe*, error for *arterie*. The same mistake in Add. MS.

Add. MS. 12,056. for þe byhestys of þylke ydyote; & pilke flisisyens proposyde, 20 afters þat he had herde my counseylle, þat þere was non opere wey þat myzte saue þe syke man from þe dep, & þenne he askyde a surgyne, wheþere he couþe don as y hadde seyde byfore; & he seyde þat he couþe so don, & so he dyde. He kutte þe skyn aboue 24 þe Veyne, & twynede þe veyne in his handys, & boude þe ende of þe Veyne wiþ a þrede, & afterwarde he hylde on þe synwe hote oyle of rosys, & so by þis counseyle he was restoryde aȝeyne to hele. But ho so þat wolde aske how þat he myzte so manye dayes be 28 kepyde from þe crampe, for þat he suffryde so grete akþe, I answerde & sigge: þat þe cause was, for he bledde at þe wounde eche day, so þat þe synwe ne myzte noȝt be to myche replet opere fulfyllede of blode. Alle þese thynges y haue tolde, þat he þat redyȝh hem may 32 þe wyslocor in semblable causes wyrchen. And ȝif be þis medycyne he myzte noȝt sykerliche be restreynede, þat fallyȝh ryȝte seldom, þanne me moste brenne þe hed of þe Veyne opere of þe synwe wiþ hote yren, þat pilke hote yren myzte maken an harde croste. And 36 be war þat þou touche noȝt þe lippes of þe wounde, ne þe synwe, ne non opere thyng, bot only þe veyn with hote yren. And ȝif al þis craft wole noȝt helpyn me, men most drawn out þe Veyne, &

out þe veyne & fle þe fleisch aboue here, & wynde þe veyne sadliche
 & bynde hir heed wiþ þin han¹dis.—Bi² my witt I³ trowe amene
 þat a bodi schulde make þeron a knotte I-knytt of him-silf or ellis
 4 knytt wiþ a þred. I woot neuere wheþer he meneþ; for he seiþ in
 anoper place tofore þat I schulde knytte it wiþ a þred, & þefore I
 suppose bi my witt þat I schulde make a knotte þeron of his owne
 silf bi my witt.—& sumtyme it happiþ þat an arterie is broken
 8 ouþer kutt & þe fleisch þat is aboue is hool & nouȝt to-broke neþir
 I-kutt, or ellis þe fleisch þat is aboue þe arterie is helid tofore & not
 þe arterie; & vndir þe fleisch þer is a swellynge of blood þat is
 clepid aperisma⁴ ouþer mater sanguinis, & þerof þe pacient hap
 12 greet drede, lest þat þe skyn to-breke & þe blood go out, þe which
 blood is hard to restreyne / for of þis maner sijknes spekiþ galien
 & seiþ þat a seruau^t of sich a disposicioun was helid of a lewde
 man þat tauȝte him þat he schulde leie snow on his siknes. Wher-
 16 fore a man may vndirstonde þat to siche enpostymes colde medicyns
 & drie ben nessessarie. // // // // // //

¹ An insertion of the scribe.

² *I trowe a mene*, "I believe to mean."

⁴ *aperisma*, Lat. ophorisma seu mater sanguinis. Dufr. Glosa. med. Lat.:
 Aporisma—collectio sanguinis in aliquo membro extra venas non putrefacti
 maxime sanguinis arterialis.

flene þe flesch aboue here & wynde þe Veyne sadlyche & bynde here
 hed wiþ þyn handys. And sum tyme yt happyth, þat an Arterye
 20 is y-broke opere y-kutte, & þe flesch þat is abouen ys hol & noȝt to-
 broke ne y-kutte, opere ellys þe flessch þat is aboue þe Arterye ys
 y-helyde & noȝt þe Arterye, & vndire þilke flessch þere is a swellynge
 of blode⁵ that is y-clepyde **Aporisma** opere matere **Sanguis** &
 24 þere of þe pacient hath grete drede, lest þat þe skyn tobreke & þe
 blod gone out, þe whiche blod is hard to restreyne. Of þis manere
 seknesse spekyth **Galyen**, & seiþ þat a seruau^t of swyche a dys-
 28 positioun was y-helyde of a lewyde man, þat tauȝte hym þat he
 scholde legge snow vpon þat seknesse, wherfore a man may vndir-
 stande, þat to swyche empostemys colde medicynes & drye beth
 necessarye.

Add. MS.
 12,056.

[⁵ fol. 57 b]

¶ Cap. x.

[² lf. 37]

The .x. chapitle of þe þridde techinge of þe firste tretis¹ is of gouernaunce & diete¹ of men þat ben woun²did /

off dietynge
for woundes.
Some phy-
sicians give
nourishing
food and
wine,

pretending
that water is
harmful;

others allow
only bread
and water
and sodden
apples.

Both are
dogmatic.

þer ben manye men þat discorden of dietynge of men þat ben⁴ woundid, for sum men zeuen to alle men þat ben woundid, wheþir þat it be in þe heed or in any opere place, good wiyn & strong fleisch of capouns & of hennes; & þei affermen þat bi sich a maner wey sike woundid men ben sunnere heelid / for þei seien þat⁸ water putrifieþ lymes þat ben woundid & engendriþ enpostymes & corruppiþ & febliþ complexiouns & makip manye harmys / & summe opere men gouernen alle maner of sike men þat ben woundid wiþ breed & watir & applis soden til ten daies ben goon / And¹² if god wole eende þis book, it schal be remenyng errouris & declarynge & openyng doutis / I seie þat þese boþe sectis erren in her opynyouns, for þei taken hede oonly to her experimentis not consideryng reson of complexioun of him þat is woundid / þe firste¹⁶ secte of þese two * [seyth] þat summen oonly eten breed & watir in so myche þei ben feblid þat blood & mater in her bodies may nougt be restorid; þe³ which were sufficient to hele wiþ her woundis,

1-1 added in margin.

³ þe cancelled in MS.

Add. MS.
12,066.

¶ The x Chapitle of þe þridde techynge of þe firste²⁰ tretys is of men that beth y-woundyde.

Many men discorden of dietynge of men þat ben woundyde, for sum men zeuen to alle men þat ben woundyde, wheþer þat it be in þe hed oper in enye opere place, gode wyn & stronge flesch of²⁴ capouns & of hennys; and þey affermen þat by swyche a manere weye seke woundyde men sonnere ben y-helyde, ffor þey siggen þat watyre putrefyþ lymes, þat beþ woundyde, & engendriþ Apostemys & corruppyth & feblyth complexiouns, & makyth many harmys.²⁸ Sum opere men gouernen alle manere of syke men þat beþ woundyde wiþ brede & water & Applys y-sodyn, tyl x dayes ben passyde, & ȝif þat god wyl ende þis bok, yt schal be remeffynge away Errores, & declaryng & opnyng Doutous. Y sigge, þat boþe þese sectes³² erryn in here opyniouns, ffor þey taken hede onlyche to here experymentys, not consideryng reson of þe complexioun of hym þat is y-woundyde. The firste secte of þese *seyth þat some men, only etynge bred & watere, in so myche ben y-feblyde, þat blode &³⁶ matere in here bodies may nougt be restoryde; þe whiche were suffi-

but¹ þei ben so feble þat² þei ¹dien, or ellis þei languren² longe [¹ 11. 37, bk.]
 tyme; ne þe lymes may not³ receyue resonable vertu as þei schulde;
 & þese maner men ben of cold complexioun & drie & her bodies
 4 weren feble or þei weren woundid, & her stomak & her entrailis
 wipinne weren feble / þe secunde secte seiþ: þat⁴ summe þat⁵
 drinken wiyn & eten fleisch hadde in þe membre þat⁶ was woundid
 a greet enpostyme & a febre—& þo ben zonge men þat⁷ ben of an
 8 hoot⁸ complexioun & a moist—wherefore þei comaundide to alle
 maner opere of complexioun þat⁹ þei schulden drynke no wiyn ne
 ete no fleisch / 3e schulen vndirstonde þat¹⁰ boþe þese sectis ben
 nouzt¹¹; & þefore I folowyng þe doctryne of rasis, auicen, & galion
 12 & of opere doctouris, & also experimentis þat¹² I haue longe preued,
 I seiþ þat¹³ it is nedeful þat¹⁴ a woundid man in þe bigynnyng ab-
 steyne him fro wiyn, & namely if þat¹⁵ þe wounde be in þe heed
 eipir in ony partie of a senewe. for þer is no ping¹⁶ þat¹⁷ so soone
 16 smytþ greuaunce in þe heed or þe senewis as wiyn; for he is soone
 conuertid of kyndely heete & for he is so sotil, he persip swiþe into
 þe senewis, & he assendiþ soone into þe heed, bryngyng wip him
 humouris & spiritis. It¹⁸ troublþ a mannys witt, & wiyn greueþ
 20 alle men þat¹⁹ han a foble heed / & þefore in alle maner woundis of

The patient
ought, ac-
cording to
Rasis, & A.
Galien.

to abstain
from wine at
the begin-
ning.

Nota

if he is
wounded in
his head or
in a nerve,

[¹ 11. 38]

¹ languren, languent. See *Prompt. Parv.*, p. 286, *Languryn yn scho-
neste* langueo. And *ibid.* note 5.

saunt to hele with here woundys, bot þey ben so feble þat þey dyzen, Add. MS.
 opere ellys þey langoren longe tyme; ne þe lyne may nozt resseyuen 12,056.
 resonable vertue, as he scholde; & þese manere of men ben of a
 24 colde complexioun & a drye, & here bodies weryn feble.—*The
 secunde secte seyþ þat some þat dronken⁴ wyn & etyn flesch hadde [¹ fol. 56 a.]
 in þe membre þat was y-woundyde a gret enposteme & a fleuyre—
 and þo beþ zonge men þat beþ of an hot complexioun & a moist—
 28 wherefore þey comaundyde to alle opere manere complexiouns, þat
 þey scholde nozt drynken no wyn, ne eten non flesch. þe vnder-
 standyng of boþe þese sectes nys nozt comendable and þefore y
 folwyng þe doctryne of rasis, Avice, galien, & of oper doctoris,
 32 & also expymentis, þat y haue longe y-preuyde, sigge þat it is
 nedeful in þe bygynnyng þat a woundyde man Absteyne hym
 from wyn & namlye 3if þat þe wounde be in þe hed, opere in eny
 partye of a synwe. For þere nys nobyng þat so sone smyteþ with
 36 greuaunce þe hed opere þe synwe as wyn; for he ys sone conuertide
 of kendlye hete, and for he ys so sotyþ, he persyþ swiþe into þe
 synwes & he assendyþ sone into þe hed, bryngyng with hym
 humores and spiritis. Yt trublyþ a mannys wyt, & wyn greuyff
 40 alle men that haþ a feble hed; & þere fore in alle manere woundys

If his complexion is hot and moist;

If he has a cold complexion he may have a little wine, but in general a specially prepared beverage.

R

[11 ff. 28, bk.]

þe heed & of senewis he schal be forbode in þe bigynnynges namely to þo þingis¹ þat han hoot complexiouns & moist into þe tyme þat þe cure be ful endid / & to þo þat ben of a cold complexioun, whanne .iiij. daies ben passid, þou maist ȝeue to drynke smal temperat² wyn, & afterward a litil strengere, aftir þat þou art sikir þat þer schal nouȝt³ come to þe membre noon enpostyme. But þis⁴ drinke schal be watir of barlich, eiper water of crummes of breed bene soden in whit⁵ wyn,⁶ or ellis lete þe breed lie in cold watir⁸ rapere þan þou faile þat he schal drynke / but he may tende weel to heete it, & nameliche in somer / & to þat ben woundid⁹ to drynke watir, or ellis with þe x. partie of wyn of pome garnates or ellis with þe sixte partie of wyn agrestis þat is smal bruske¹⁰ 12 wyn, or ellis þis is a perfizt¹¹ drynke to woundis of þe heed & to senewis : / Take a potel of water & of barly clensid .iiij. ȝ., juiube,¹² sebesten¹³ ana. 3. fl., of drie prunis of damascenes ȝ j, sucre of rosis .ȝ ij., sepe hem¹⁴ to .iiij. parties ben consumed, & þanne lete him 16

¹ þingis, inserted. ² þis, error for *his*. ³ whit, error for *with*.
⁴ wyn, inserted. ⁵ woundid, error for *wonid*. Lat. homini assueto.
⁶ bruske, Roman brusco (Lat. rusticus?), harsh. See later reference in *N. E. Dict.*
⁷ Juiube, a kind of prune growing in Italy. Kersey—1721.
⁸ Sebesten, Arab. sebesten. Name for *Cordia mysa* vel *sebastena*.
⁹ Corrupt passage. Lat. : donec consumetur tertia pars.
¹⁰ softly, error for *sofly*.

Add. MS. 12,056. of þe hed & off^r synwes, he schal be forebode in þe bygynnynges, & namlye to þo þat han hot complexiouns & moiste, into þe tyme þat 20 þe cure be ful endyde; & to þo þat beþ of colde complexioun, whenne þre dayes ben passyde, þou maiste ȝeuen to drynke a smal temperat wyn, & afterwarde a lyte strengore; afters þat þou art sykere, þat þere schal noȝt comen to þe membre non Apostema. But 24 his drynke schal be watyre of barlyche opere watire þat crommes of brede ben sodyn yn, wiþ opere colde watyr & namlye in sommere, & to þo þat beþ woundyde drynke watyre, opere ellys wiþ tenþe partye of wyn of pome garnettys, opere ellys wyth sixte partye of 28 wyn agreste þat is smal broske wyn, opere ellys þis is a perfyte drynke to wondys of þe hed & of synwys : Take a potell of watyr & of barlyche y-meynde ȝ. iiij, juiube, sebesten, ana .3 fl., of drye prunes of damacynes ȝ j., sucre of rosis ȝ ij, sethe hem to þre 32 partyes ben consumed, & þenne lete hym drynken yt. Sothlye þis drynke ys alteratyff^r : þat ys to sigge chaungynge, ne hyt ne swellyth noȝt. & yt latteþ fumosites to ariysen to þe brayn. 12 Of mete

[12 fol. 28 b.]

- to þe brayn. Of mete I seie: to him þat is of a moist¹ com-
 plexicioun & hoot / bi no maner wey schulde not be ȝouen fleisch,
 fisch, mylk, eiren, ne no comfortable mete, but if þei weren ouer-
 4 comen wiþ to greet febilnes; but he muste holde him content wiþ
 ius of barli or ellis of ootis wiþ almaunde mylk; outake¹ wounde
 of þe heed, were² I ne apreue nouȝt almaundis ne noon oper
 vaperous fruyt: as notis eipir walnotis eiper avellanes; for þei han
 8 a maner fumose *properte* greuyng þe heed / he may eten amidoun,
 betis, letuse, & breed I-waische wiþ sugre if þat he were feble. &
 if þat he myȝte not abstayne him fro fleisch, ȝeue him fleisch of
 smale chickenes & of smale briddis & kidis & lambis & calues
 12 I-sauered with *agresta* eiper wiþ wyn of pome garnatis; & pilke
 dietyng he schal vse til he be sikir fro swellynge & þat þou schalt
 knowe whanne þat akyng swellynge & extencioun of þe lyme ben
 ceessid & þe wounde almoost consowdid. If þat it was a wounde
 16³ þat was sowid eiper brouȝt togidere with byndinge, in whom
 quytture was nouȝt engendrid, & if þat it was a wounde maad
 wiþ smytyng or ellis chaungid wiþ þe eyr, in whom it is nedeful
 engendryng of quytture, þanne it is siker þat it schal not enpos-

A patient of
a hot and
moist com-
plexion
should eat
vegetables
only;

Nota

If he cannot
abstain from
meat,
chickens or
veal may be
given him.

[11. 30]

¹ outake, except. See *Catholicon Angl.*, p. 264, Oute take, note.

² were, error for where.

- 20 y sigge: þat to hym þat is of an hot & moiste complexioun, be
 non manere weye ne scholde noȝt be ȝeffen flesch, ffysch, Mylke,
 eyren, ne no manere *conuertible* mete, bot ȝif þey weryn ouere come
 with to gret febylnesse; but he mos'e holde hym content with Iuse
 24 of barlyche, opere ellys of otys wiþ almaunde mylke; out take
 wounde of þe hed, where y ne Apreue noȝt Almaundys, ne non opere
 vaporose frutys, as notys oper walnottys oper Avelanes, for þey
 hauen a manere fumose *proprete* greuyng þe hed; he may etyn
 28 Amidoun, betes, letuse & bred y-wassche wiþ succe, ȝif þat he were
 feble. And ȝif þat myȝte noȝt Abstynen hym from flesch, ȝif hym
 flesch of smale chyknes, & of smale briddys; as larkys & opere
 sengle briddys, & kyddes & lambres, & kalffes I-saveryde with
 32 *agresta*, oper with wyn of pom garnett; & þis dyetyng he schalt
 vse, tyl he be sykere from swellynge, & þat þou schalt y-knowe,
 whenne þat Akyng, swellynge & extencioun of þe lyme ben secyde
 & þe wounde is almost consouded. ȝif þat it was a wounde þat
 36 was sowyde opere brouȝt togedyre with byndyng, in whom quytter
 was noȝt engendryde, and ȝif þat it was a wounde y-mad wyth
 smytyng—opere ellys y-chaungyde with þe eyre, in whom yt is ned-
 ful engendryng of quytter, þenne yt is sykere þat yt schal nouȝt

Add. MS.
12,056.

tyme, whanne þat he makip quytture plenteuousliche; & whanne
Improve this diet when he gets better. þat þe lyme is weel disposid & not to swolle ne drawe abroad & is
 wipoute akyng; þanne chaunge a litil & a litil his dietyng til þat
If he has a cold and dry complexion, þou come to his dietyng þat he was wont to vse tofore / & if þat 4
 þe pacient were of a cold complexioun & a drie & þat he hadde bi
 nature eiper bi custum a feble stomak, þanne it were nessessarie to
he should take meat from the beginning. zeue him at þe bigynnyng fleisch a litil sauerid with swete spicerie :
 as canel, gynger & opere semblable to hem, & to zeue him in þe 8
 bigynnyng Julep¹—þat is a sirup maad oonly of water & of sugre
 —& aftir iij. daies ben passid, wiyn, & boþe in þe oon complexioun
 & in þe opere complexioun. If þat a boon were broke wip a
 wounde or wipoute a wounde aboute þe eende of þe cure, þat is to 12
 seye, whanne þou art siker from apostyme & swellinge, it is good to
[12. 30. bk.] zeue norischaunt metis þat it² myzte make a good & a strong re-
Nota peirement of þe boon þat was to-broke : as furmente soden in,³
If a bone has been broken, prescribe food which will repair the bones and ligaments. potage of flour weel soden & wip þe extremytees of beestis feet & 16
 swyne groynes & oxen wombe weel soden & bi siche opere þingis bi
 whom a good ligament & a strong may weel be engendrid / Where-
 fore it is nessessarie to a surgian to knowe his dietyng, vertues of
 coplexciouns, agis, regiouns, consuetudes & þe tymes of þe 3er þat 20
¹ Julep, med. Lat. julapium, Fr. julep, Pers. goulāb. See Skeat, *Et. Dict.*
² in, erroneously inserted.

Add. MS. 12,056. enposteme, whenne þat he makyp quyter plentyuouslyche; &
 whenne þat þe lyme ys wel dysposyde & nozt toswolle, ne y-drawen
 abroad. & ys wipouten akyng, & þanne chaunge a lytel & a lytel
 hys dyetyng, tyl þat þou come to hys dyetyng, þat he was wont 24
 to vse tofore. And 3if þat þe pacient were of a colde complexioun
 & a drye & þat he hadde by nature opere by costeme a feble stomak,
[12. 30. a.] þanne yt were necessarye to zeuen hym at þe bygynnyng flesch a
 lytel y-saueryde with swote spysorye : as kanett gyngeffre & opere 28
 semblable to hem & to zeuen hym in þe bygynnyng Julep—þat is a
 syripe y-mad only of watyre & of sucre—& aftere þre dayes ben
 passyde, wiyn, and boþe in þe on complexioun & in þe opere com-
 plexioun. 3if þat a bon were y-broke, wip a wounde ore wipouten 32
 a wounde, aboute þe ende of þe cure, þat is to sigge, whenne þou art
 sykere from a posteme & swellyng, yt is gode to 3if norysschande
 mete, þat it myzte make a gode & a stronge repayrment of þe bone
 þat was to-broke : as with ffurmente y-sode, & potage of floure wel 36
 y-sode, & with þe extremetes of bestys, as fette & swynes groynes &
 oxe wombys wel y-soden, & with swiche opere þynges by whom a
 gode ligamente & a stronge may wel be engendrede. Where fore
 yt is necessarye to a surgyne to knowe in hys dyetyng, vertues of 40
 complexiouns, Ages, regeouns consuetudes & þe tymes of þe 3ere, þat

he mowe chaunge his dietynghe aftir þat dyuerse condicioun. Ne
he schal not aftir o maner of counseil procede in his dietynghe.

THe .xj. chapitle of þe bridde techinge of þe firste ¶ Capm. xjm.
4 tretis.

is of olde woundis þat ben maad of kuttinge or of open- off olde vane-
lent woundes
ynghe of a postyme, or ellis of a wounde þat is not heelid in
his tyme, or ellis of sum maner fleinge, or of brennynghe, or Various
causes of
ulcers.
8 of to greet heete, or of to greet drouthe, or of to greet cold
constreynynge, or of to greet aboundaunce of mater corruppynghe /
For euery olde wounde hauynge rotnes or wire¹ þat is þinne
venymous quyttir or ony opir þing þan good quytture is not clepid
12 a wounde, but it is clepid vlcus / Rowland & Rogerine & þe Rowland &
Rogerine
[? 11. 40]
moste² partie of men þat ben now, clepen it a festre³ or a cankre,
but it is neipir festre ne cankre, but festre & cankre han difference
fro þis / þis vlcus as a propre þing haþ difference from a þing þat Ulcer is a
more general
term than
fistula or
cancer.
16 is comoun / for ech festre & ech cankre þat is woundid, is clepid
vlcus, but it ne schewiþ not þat ech vlcus is clepid cankre or festre

¹ wire, Lat. virus.

² festre, fester in Mätzner Dict.; O.Fr. flestre, festre; Lat. fistula.
Comp. N. E. fester vb.

he mowe chaungen his dyetynghe, aftere þat dyverse condycioun Add. MS.
askyth. Ne he ne schal noȝt aftere on manere of counseyll proceden 12,056.
20 in hys dyetynghe.

¶ The xi. Chapitle of þe bridde techynghe of þe firste
tretis is of olde woundes.

¶ Olde woundes ben mad of kuttinge oper of openynghe of a
24 posteme, opere ellys of a wounde þat is noȝt helyde in his tyme, oper
ellys of sum manere fleynge oper of brennynghe, oper of to grete hete,
oper of to grete drovþe, oper to gret colde constreynynge, opere of to
grete Aboundaunce of moist mater corruppynghe. For euery olde
28 wounde, hauynge rotnesse opere virus þat is þenne venemy quytter,
oper eny oper þynge þenne gode quytter nys noȝt y-clepyde wounde,
but is y-clepyde vlcus þat is an olde wounde. And of þis Vlcus,
Rowland & Rogerine, & þe most partye of men þat ben now, clepyde
32 it festre, opere cancre. But it is neipere festre ne cancre, but festre &
cankre habbe dyfference from þis. ⁴ Vlcus, as a propre þynge hath [? fol. 50 b]
dyfference, from a þynge, þat is comyn; for euerye festre & euerye
cankre, þat is y-woundyde, ys y-clepyde Vlcus, but yt ne syweth
36 noȝt þat euerye Vlcus, ys clepyde cankre opere festre, as y schal

Auces
distinguishes
six kinds of
ulcers.

as I schal telle openliche in ech chapitle bi him-silf / Auicen seiþ,
þat þer ben .vj. maner of þis vlcus : summe þat ben venemous,
summe hore, summe depe, summe cauernose eiper hid, summe
corosif, summe rotin, summe ambulatif þat is spredynge abroad, & 4
summe hard to consowde / Of þese maners tofore seid, summe¹
han acordynge with festris in tokenes & in foormes as venemous &
holow; & summe han acordynge with cankris as spredynge abroad
& fretynge him-silf & nepeles þei han difference, as it is conteyned 8
in þe chapitle of cankris I-woundid & of festre. & alle þese tofore
seid han difference fro wounde / for in a wounde þer is whijt
quytture & euene in alle hise parties & hole and nouȝt departid &
wipoute stanche. Þis maner of quytture is engendrid of goodnes 12
& kyndely heete, & is perfiztly delied / But venym rotynes² & a
cruste, & al opere superfluyte of olde woundis ben engendrid of a
strong vnkynndly heete.

vlcus viru-
lentum

A uenym vlcus is in whom aboundiþ venym sutil & liquid. If 16
þat it be reed or ȝelu, or oon partie redisch and scharp bytynge þe
lyme, it signifieþ lordschipe of a strong heete.

vlcus
sordidum

An hori elde wounde þat haþ summe greete crustis, or ellis a
wroting, sum gret proud fleisch to hiȝe.³ 20

¹ MS. *summen*.

² *proud fleisch to hiȝe*. Lat.: *carnem superfluum grossam*. Proud flesh,
Fungosity. Dunglison.

Add. MS. 12,056. tellen opynlyche in euerye chapyteH be hym-self. Auesene seyth
þat þere ben sixe manere of þese Vlcus, for sum ben Venemy, sum
hory, some depe, some cauernouse opere y-hud, sum corosyff, sum
rotyne, some Ambulatoryff—þat is spredynge abroad, & some hard 24
to consouden. Of þese manerys tofore seyde, some hath acordynge
with festres in toknes & in fourmes : as Venemy & holwy, & sum
han acordynge with cancre : as spredynge abroad & fretynge hym
self. And napeles þey habbe difference as yt is conteynede in þe 28
chapytelles of cancre y-woundyde & of festre. & alle þese tofore
seyde habbitH difference from a wounde, for in a wounde þere ys
whyte quyter & euene in al his partyes & hol & noȝt departyde,
—& withouten stynke. Þis manere of quyter is engendrede, of 32
godnesse of kendlye hete & is perfiltye deffiede. But vemyn,
rottenesse, & croste, & alle opere superfluyte of olde woundes ben
engendred of a straunge vnkendlye hete. A venemy Vlcus is, in
whom habundeþ venym sotyl & liquydy. ȝif þat yt be red opere 36
ȝolwe, opere a partye redysche, & scharpe bytynge þe lyme, hit
synifieþ lordschipe of straunge hete. An hory olde wounde ys
y-clepyd, þat haþ sum grete crostes, opere ellys sum grete awrotynge

A deep *vlcus* is þat, þat hæþ a greet depnes & an holow; & *vlcus profundum*
 þerauenture crokinge.

A wroting *vlcus* is þat of his malice fretiþ bi cause þat þe *vlcus*
 4 blood is sent to him so scharpe / Galien seiþ: þat scharp blood not *corrosivum*
 onli corrodip [nozt]*—fleisch in woundis, but also hool fleisch / *Galion.*

A rotid *vlcus* is stynkyng, hauynge a strong heete in his *vlcus*
 ground, & out of him passiþ a stynkyng smel, eiper smoke, as *putridum*
 8 doip out of fleisch þat is rotid / þilke¹ word 'stynk' I vndirstonde
 it bi my maner witt: sich breeþ þat comeþ out of a bodies ende,
 whanne a bodi breeþ wiþ þe moup in frosty wedir, þat men taken
 a saumple, bifor to sle her lac dre / þanne whanne þou myzt se þe
 12 breeþ of þin owne ende comynge out at þi moup in þe eir.

A walkynge / *vlcus* is þat walkiþ hidirward & þidirward, & *vlcus ambulativum*
 neþeles he profoundiþ nouzt depe into þe ground. [² 1f. 41]

An *vlcus* þat is hard to helin is he þat for his yuel propirte þat *vlcus difficilis.*
 16 is sent to him fro þe bodi lettij him to heele.

& for to heelen ech maner of þese *vlcus*, þer ben manye dyuers *Cura vlcus*
 rulis / þe firste rule is þat þei moun not be heelid, but þe super- .1.
 fluytees þat ben in hem ben I-dried / þe secunde rule / but if þat .2.
 20 bodi ouþer þe membre be oute of his naturel complexioun, or þan
 þou þenke to heele þilke *vlcus* þou muste brynge aȝen to his diete

¹ This curious explanation of the word *stynk* is an insertion of the scribe.
 Read: *ste her laddre*. One letter half erased in *laddre*. *Ste*, see *Stratm.*
Dict., O.E. stigan.

proud flesch to hyȝe. A depe *Vlcus* is þat þat hæþ a gret depnesse Add. MS.
 & an holwe, & þeraunter crokyng. A wrotyng *vlcus* is þat of 12,056.
 24 hys malyce wroteþ, bycause þat þe blod þat is sent to hym, is to
 scharpe. *Galien*: scharpe blod nozt onlyche cordyth nozt *flesch in
 woundes, but also hol flesch. A rotyde *vlcus* is stynkyng, hab-
 bynge a straunge hete in his grounde, & out of hym passith out a
 28 stynkyng smel opere smoke, as þere doþ out of flesch þat is [² fol. 60 a]
 y-rotyde. A walkynge *Vlcus* is þat walkeþ hyderwarde & þedir-
 warde & napeles he profundeþ nozt depe into þe grounde. An
Vlcus þat is hard to helyn, is he þat for his yuele proprete, þat is
 32 sende to hym fro al þe body, latteþ hym to hele. & forto helyn
 euery manere of þese hulkes, þere ben manye dyverse rulya. þe
 firste rule ys þat þey mowe nozt ben helyde, but þe superfluytes
 þat ben in hem ben dried. þe secunde rule ys þat ȝif þat þe body
 36 opere membre be out of hys naturell complexioun, ere þan þou
 þynke to hele þilke *Vlcus*, þou moste bryngen aȝeyne to hys due

3. complexioun distemprid pilke bodi oupir membre. þe þridde rule is : þat if þe lyuere eipir þe splene ben I-greued, as it happiþ ofte
4. tymes in olde woundis, þou muste rectifien hem / þe .iiij rule is : þat þe qualitees & þe quantitees of humouris schulden be temperid 4 wiþ blood-letyng & purgaciouns & with good gouernaile / & if þat þe eir be yuel, þe sike man schal be chaungid into good eyr / & whanne þat þe leche haþ tofore seen alle þese þingis, þanne he may go to his cure / 8
- If the ulcer is virulent, wash the wound with a washinge, Meta¹ [1f. 41, bk.] & if þe vlcus be virulent, þat is to seie venemi, loke if þat þe venym þat goiþ out be redisch or zelowisch, & if þat þe lyme haue ony maner heete; þanne waische it wiþ water of rosis & barlich. alim² & balaustia & lentiles with hony³ symple eipir compounned 13 ben soden yn, & lete þis watir peersen to þe depþe of þe wounde; & if þe virus be wiþoute heete & þe membre haue noon heete, waische it wiþ watir or with wiyn þat mirre wormode,⁴ horhone,⁵ sauge,⁶ pimperlle⁷ hony symple or compounned ben soden yn / Clense þe 16 wounde perfiztliche & engendre fleisch & afterward consowde it wiþ þis propre oynement þat þi⁸ olde foule venym woundis, eipir
- and apply an vnguentum

¹ MS. *Nona*.² *alim*, Latin : *aluminis*.⁴ *wormode*, *absinthium*. O.E. wormod, M.E. wormwood.⁵ *horhone*, *Marrubium vulgare*. See Britten, *Dict.* ⁶ *sauge*, *salvia*.⁷ *pimperlle*, *Pimpinella*.⁸ *þi*, error for *in*.

Add. MS. 12,056. complexioun distempride⁹ pilke body oper membre. þe þridde rule ys, þat 3if þat þe lyfere opere splene ben y-greuyde, as yt happyth 30 ofte tymes in olde woundes, þou most retyfien hem. The fourth rule ys : þat þe qualites & quantytes of humours scholde be tempride with blodletyng, & purgatiouns & with gode governaylle; and 3if þat þe eyre be yuel, þe syke man schal be chaungyde into gode 24 eire. And whanne þat þe leche haþ tofore seye alle þese þynges, þenne he may go to hys cure. & 3if þat þe Vlcus be Virulente, þat is to sigge Venemy, loke 3if þat þe Venym þat goþ out be redyssch opere 3olwe, & 3if þat the lyme haue enye manere hete; & þenne 28 wassche it wiþ water þat rosys & barlyche Alum & balaustia & lentilis with honye symple opere componed ben sodyn In. And lete þis watere persen to þe depthe of þe wounde. And 3if þe Virus be withouten hete & þe membre haue non hete, wassche it with water 32 opere wyþ wyn, þat Mirre, wermot, horhowne, sauge, pypirnel, honye symple oper componed ben sodyn In. Clanse þe wounde perfitlye & engendre flesch & afterwarde consoud it with þis propre oynement, þat in olde foule venemy woundys oper Vlcs engend- 36

⁹ At the margin.

vlcus, engendriþ fleisch, clensiþ & heeliþ as auicen & rasis witnessen / ^{Auicen & Rasis}
 recipe litargium¹ as myche as þou wolt & stampe it in a morter² &
 putte wiþ him good oile of rosis & vynegre now on & now þe opere,
 4 alwey stiringt, til it be perfiztly an oynement & come into þe foorme
 of an oynement. & þis oynement is clepid litargirum nutritum, ^{litargirum nutritum}
 þat is to sai litarge nurschid, þat is profitable in manye causis /
 afterward take of þilke litarge norischid .viij. parties & of alim,
 8 & of balaustie or ellis in þe stide of balaustie wormes of þe erþe
 brent, bras brent, leed, gallis, sandragoun chathinie³ argenti .ana.
 as myche as is xij parties of al þe oynement; medle alle togidere ^[4 lf. 42]
 and 'make an oynement / þis oynement schal be leid wiþinne þe ^{vnguentum nutritum.}
 12 wounde & al aboue þe wounde; for it driþ þe wounde & engendriþ
 good fleisch & consowdiþ / Take hede to þis rule, þat in heelynge ^{Nota.}
 of alle olde woundis after þat þei ben clensyd, aboue þe oynement
 it is good to leie a linnen cloþ, to distende abroad on of þe ^{Put a "mundificatif" on a linen cloth upon the wound,}
 16 mundificatiuis of ony which þat schal be told in þe antidotarie, &
 leie aboue aboute þilke vlcus specialy from þe ouer partie fro whens ^{and add a defensif dressing.}
 humouris fleen, a defensif of bole armonyak & terra sigillata; þat

¹ "*Lithangyros*, Litharge or Silver-glet, the frothy Dross, or Scum that arises in the purifying of Silver with Lead."—Phillips.
² MS. & putte it in a morter, scribal insertion.
³ "*Cathima* est minera de qua elicetur aurum vel argentum."—Sinonoma Barth. p. 14. *Cathimia*: argenti spuma, Cartelli Diet. ⁴ a sign like *Nota*.

reth flesch, clansyth & helyth as Auecene & Rases wytnessith, ^{Add. MS. 12,056.}
 20 litargium nutritum. R litarge as myche as þou wylt & stampe it
 & put it in a mortere & putte wiþ hym gode oyle of roses &
 vynegre, now þe on now þe opere, alwey sterynge, tyl it be perfityche
 augmentyd & come to þe fourme of an oynement. & þis
 24 oynement—litargirum nutritum—þat is to sigge litarge y-noryssched,
 þat is profitable in many casis. Afterwarde take of þilke litarge
 viij partyes, & of alym, & of balaustie opere ellys, in þe stede of
 balaustye, wormys of þe erþe y-brend, brend bras, brent led, gallys,
 28 sanke dragoun, cathimie, Argenti ana as mychel as ys .xij partyes
 of alle þe oynement, and medle al togedre, & make an Oygne-
 ment. þis oynement schal be leyde withynne þe woundes & aboue
 þe wounde, for yt dryeth þe wounde, & engendriþ gode flesch &
 32 consoud. Take hede to þis rule, þat in helynge of alle olde
 woundes, afters þat þey ben clansyde, aboue þe oynement yt is
 gode of one a linnen cloþ, forto dystende abroad on of þe mundyfi-
 catyfes of hony which þat schulle be tolde in þe antidotarye. And
 36 leye aboue aboute þilke vlcus, & specialiche from þe ouere partye,
 fro whom humores flotyn, a⁷ defensif of bol Armonyake & terra

⁷ MS. f.

T is maad on þis maner / take bole armoniak .3 j. terra sigillata. 3 ß
R oile of rosis & vynegre þat suffisiþ, I-now3 do in þe oon now in þe
Nota. oper til þe oynement be ful maad & liquide I-nou3 / so þat of þe
 oile of rosis be double as myche as of vynegre / þis defensip a 4
 membre fro corrupcioun & also vlcus þat he sprede nouzt abroad /
 In a (3) sordid ulcer remove the scurf. An hory wounde shal be heelid, in remeuynge away þe crust
 eipere filþe þat is in him wiþ poudre of affodill, þat schal be said in
 þe eende of þis book, ouþer wiþ sum oper mundificatiuis ; aftir 8
 [12. 42, bk.] consowde it wiþ consolidaciouns /
 In a (3) deep ulcer cleanse the wound, A deep wounde is heelid ¹wiþ castynge into þe deppe of þe
 wounde with an instrument maad to þe lijkenesse of a clisterie, ony
 of þe waischingis þat ben seid in þe venemy wounde aboue, aftir 12
 þat þe disposicioun of þe membre askip of heete or of cold. &
 aftir þat, he is clensid in castynge in watre ouþir wiyn þat mastik
 or frank encense is soden ynne & in leggyng wiþouten oon of þe
 mundificatiuis of hony þat schal be seid aftir. & also it is good to 16
 and make the pus discharge itself freely. ordeyne þe lyme so þat þe mouþ of þe wounde hange dounward, &
 streyne þi ligature at þe ground of þi wounde, & bynde it losely at
 þe mouþ of þe wounde ; also it were good, if þat it myzte be, þat
 þer were maad a newe wounde in þe place þat is moost hangynge, 20
 þat þe rotynes & þe quytture myzte þe bettere goon out ; for so
 þilke vlcus myzte þe sunnere be heelid /

Add. MS. sigillata þat is mad on þys manere : R bol armoneake 3 j terre
 12,056. sigillate 3 ß., oyle of rosis & vynegre, þat suffyseþ, now do in þe on, 24
 now þe oper, tyl þe oynement be ful mad & lyquyde ynow3 ; so
 þat of þe oyle of roses be duble as myche as of þe vynegre. þis
 diffensiff defendip a membre fro corrupcioun, & also Vlcus þat he
 sprede nozt abrode. An hory wonde ys y-helyde, in remeffynge 28
 away þe croste opere þe fylthe þat is in hym with poudre of affodylles
 schal be sayde in þe ende, opere with sum opere mundificatyfes ;
 afterwarde consoude yt with consolydatyfes. A depe wounde ys
 [fol. 61 a] y-helyde in castynge in to þe ²deppe of þe wounde with an instrument 32
 y-mad to þe lyknesse of a clisteyre, any of þe wasschynges þat bep
 seyde in þe Venemy wounde aboue, after þat þe disposicioun of þe
 membre askep of hete oper of cold. And afters þat he is y-clansyde,
 in castynge in water opere in wyn þat mastyke opere frankensence 36
 ys y-soden yn, & in leggyng without, on of þe mundificatyfes of
 hony, þat schal be sayde afters. & also it is gode to ordeyne þe
 lyme, so þat þe mouth of þe wounde honge dunward, & streyne þi
 ligature at þe grounde of þy wounde & bynde it looslye at þe mouþ 40
 of þe wounde. And also yt were gode, 3if þat it myzte be, þat þere
 were made a newe wounde in þe place þat is most hongynge þat þe

I. iii. 11.] *Treatment of a Corroding, Stinking and Walking Ulcer.* 83

A wroting¹ vlcus is heelid in leggyng specialiche aboute him colde pingis whiche þat ben² obtunden or casten bach þe scharpnes of þe same vlcus; & also with amendinge, as with metis & drynkis, þe scharpnes of þe same blood, & in purgyng þe reed colere; & wip anoyntyng wip colde oynementis & consolidatiuis. & þerto is miche worþ vnguentum album rasis þat schal be told in þe antidotarie /

(4) In a corroding ulcer, use an obtundens, an appropriate diet, purging, and the vnguentum album rasis [? 1f. 48]

A stynkyng wounde is heelid in remeuyng away þe stinche & þe rotnes; & þerto is myche worþ a waischinge of ydromel: þat is hony & watir soden togidere wip mirre, & a mundificatif maad wip ius of wormod & barly mele & hony & mirre, þat is maad on þis maner / take ius of wormod. ʒ iij. of hony. ʒ iij. barli mele ʒ ij. of mirre ana. ʒ j. & compounne hem togidere & fille þe wounde wip anneforþ with lynnet of lynnen clop. & if þat wormes ben engendrid in þe wounde, sle hem wip þe ius of calamynte ouþer wip þe ius of þe leues of pechis, or ellis persicarie,³ eiper wip decoccioun of elebre. & whanne þat a perfizt mundificatif is maad, engendre fleisch & consowde as it is seid tofore /

(5) In a stinking ulcer use a lotion of ydromel, and a mundificatif.

A walkyng vlcus is heelid wip flebotomie & formacie⁴ þat is

(6) In a walking ulcer use phlebotomy and purging,

¹ *wrotyng*, error for *fretyng*.

² *ben*, erroneously inserted.

³ *persicarie* glossed *colorag*. See Notes.

⁴ O.Fr. *farmacie* = purgation. See Littré, *Dict*.

rotnesse & þe quytere myzte þe betyre gone out, for so þilke Vlcus myzte sunnere be helyde. A ffretyng vlcus ys y-helyde, in leggyng specialiche aboute hym colde þynges, whiche þat obtunden oþer castyn bach þe scharpnesse of þe same Vlcus, & also in amendinge with metys & with drynkes the scharpnesse of þe same blod, & in purgyng þe rede colere & with anoyntyng wip colde oynementes & consolidatifes, & þerto is myche worþ vnguentum album Rasis, þat schal be told in þe antidotarie. A stynkyng wounde ys y-helyde in remeuyng away þe stenche & þe rotnesse, & þerto ys myche worth a wasschyng of ydromel þat is hony & water y-sode togidre wip mirre, & a mundyficatiff y-mad with ius of wormot & barly mele & hony & mirre, þat is made on þis manere: take jus of wormot. ʒ. iij, of hony ʒ iij, of barly mele .ʒ. ij, off mirre ʒ .j., compone hem togidre, & fulle þe wounde, wipynne forth wip lynete of lynnen clop. & ʒif þat wormys ben engendride in þe wounde, sle hem wip jus of calamynte, oþer with þe juse of þe leuys of pechys, oþer ellys persicarie, oþer with decoccion of ellebre. And whanne þat a perfyte mundyficioun is mad engendre fleisch & consoude, as yt is seyde tofore. A walkyng Vlcus ys y-helyde with flebotomye & ffarmasye þat is laxatyfes purgyng þe colere &

Add. MS. 12,056.

[? fol. 61 b]

laxatiuis purgyng þe colere & brent humouris, & in leggyng aboute a defensif of bole & terra sigillata þat is seid tofore in þis chapitle; & with oon of þe cold mundificatiuis, & sumtyme þou muste cauterise þe vlcus aboue with an instrument of gold. For þilke maner of breunnyng rectifieþ weel þe membre /

[1 lf. 43, bk.] þe cause whi þat summe vlcus ¹ is hard to consowde is, for an yuel disposicioun þat is hid in þe bodi, & þerfore it nedip to rectifen þe membre & þe bodi as I haue seid tofore. & if þe cause be vpon, ² oon oper manye, do awei þilke cause or ellis þe manye causis, or þat

þou go to þis principal cure / þese ben þe causis þat letten consowdyng of olde woundis: an yuel disposicioun of al þe bodi as ydropisie; or ellis an yuel disposicioun of þe lyuere as if þat he be ¹² to feble, as to hoot or to cold, to moist or to drie, wip mater or

wipoute mater, as wip to greet hardenes; or ellis þe splene is to feble to purge þe malancolient blood; or ellis to myche blood or ellis to litil blood; or ellis þe veynes ben to fulle of blood þat goon ¹⁶

doun to þe vlcus; or elles þat glandeles þat ben kirkelis þat ben in þe ground ³ þat senden doun mater to the vlcus þat is in þe pies & in þe leggis; or ellis þe lippis of þe vlcus ben to grete; or ellis myche fleisch; or ellis mys-ordynance of dietyng or ellis an ²⁰

² vpon, error for open. ³ ground. See grynd, page 41, note 3.

Add. MS. 12,056. brende humoures, & in leggyng aboute a defensif of bol & terra sigillata þat is seide tofore in þe same Chapytile, & with on of þe colde mundycatyfes & sum tyme men most cauterise þe Vlcus aboue with an instrument of gold. for þilke manere of breunnyng ²⁴ rectefieþ wel þe membre. þe cause why þat sum Vlcus is hard to consoude is, for an yuel disposicion ys y-hydde in þe bodye, & þerfore it nedyth to retyfien þe membre & þe body as y haue seide tofore. And zif þe cause be opene, on opere manye, do aweye þilke ²⁸ causes oper ellys þe manye causes, ere þanne þou go to þe pryncipal cure. þese ben þe causes þat lettyn consowdyng of olde woundes, an yuele disposicioun of alle þe body: as dropsye, opere ellys an iuele disposicioun of þe lyuere: as zif þat he be to feble, as to hot opere ³² to colde, to moiste opere to drye, with mater ore withouten matere, as wip to grete hardnesse; opere ellys þe spleen is to feble to purge þe malancolyent blod; opere ellys to myche blod, opere ellys to acute blod; opere ellys þe veynes bep to ful of blod, þat goþ doun ³⁶ to þe Vlcus; opere ellys curnellys þat glandeles, þat bep kurnellys þat bep in þe grynde, þat sendip doun matere to þe Vlcus þat is in þe thyges & þe legges, opere ellys þe lippes of þe Vlcus bep to grete & hard, opere ellys to myche flesch, opere ellys mysordeyninge of ⁴⁰

inconuenient^t medicyn to þat membre or ellis þe lyme þat is hirt
 hap an yuel discrasie; or ellis pilke vlcus is in an yuel place as in
 þe eende of þe ¹elbowe; or ellis þe vlcus is al round; or ellis þe [¹ 12. 44]
 4 boon þat is vnder þe vlcus is corrupt / Alle þese tofore seid letten
 vlcus to be heeled / wherefore it nedip þe, to take kepe to alle þese
 þingis tofore seid, to amende al þe bodi & namely þo lymes þat han
 principalte in mannes body, & kepen alle þe lymes þat ben in her
 8 naturel disposicion: with þingis þat ben acordinge to her naturel
 disposicion, þo / & if þei ben discrasid, remeue pilke discrasie wip
 þat, þat is contrarie to þe discrasie / also tempre þe qualite & þe
 quantite of þe blood & streyne þe veyne if þat þou brynge pidir
 12 blood, or ellis if þat it be possible latt þe blood away; vndo þe
 glandeles þat ben kirkels þat sendin pider mater, & remeue deed
 fleesch, smale þe lippis of woundis þat ben greete & kutte hem
 away if þat þou myzt do noon oþerwise; amende his dietynge; &
 16 brynge aȝen þe rondnes of pilke vlcus into a long forme aftir þe
 lenkþe of þe membre with a knyf hoot brennyng / but if a veyne
 or a senewe lette. & þou schalt remoue þe boon þat is corrupt on
 þis maner: in kuttinge away al þe fleisch & þe boon þat is corrupt
 20 with an hoot ²iren, or wip a medicyn þat schal be seid in þe laste
 eende of þis booke, or ellis it is bettere to don it away wip hoot

or if the condition of the wound is bad.

Remedial measures—

remove the dyscrasia, regulate the patient's blood,

give an oblong shape to a round ulcer,

remove any rotten bone by means of a hot iron—

[¹ 12. 44, bk.]

dyetyng, oþer ellys an vncouenable medycine to pilke membre, Add. MS.
 oþer ellis þe lyme þat ys y-hurt hap an yuele discrasie, oþere ellys 12,056.
 24 pilke Vlcus is an yuele place—as in þe ende of þe elbowe, oþere ellys [¹ fol. 44 a]
 þe Vlcus ys al rounde, oþere ellys þe bon þat is vndire ³ þe vlcus is
 corrupte. Alle þese tofore seide letteþ Vlcus to by helyde, where-
 fore yt nedip þe, to take kepe to alle þese thynges tofore seyde, &
 28 to amendyn alle þe body, & namlye þe lymes þat habbiþ principalte
 in mannes body, & kepe alle þe lymes þat bep in here naturet
 disposicion wip þynges þat bep acordynge to here naturel disposi-
 32 þat is contrarie to pilke discrasie. Also tempre þe qualyte & þe
 quantyte of þe blod, & streyne þe veynes ȝif þat þey brynge þedire
 blod. Oþer ellys ȝif it is possible, lete þe blod aweye. Vndo
 glandeles, þat bep kurnett þat sendeþ þedire mater, & remywe ded
 36 fleesch, smale lippes of þe woundes þat bep grete, & kytte hem away,
 ȝif þou maiste do non oþere weys; amende his dyetyng, & brynge
 ȝeyne þe roundnesse of pilke Vlcus in to a longe fourme, aftre þe
 lengþe of þe membre, wip a knyf hot brennyng, but ȝif þat a
 40 synwe oþere a Veyne latte. And þou schalt remywe þe bon, þat is
 corupe on þis manere: unwrey al þe bon, in kuttinge away al þe
 fleesch,*—þe bon þat is corupte with an yren, oþer wip a medycine
 þat schal be seyde in þe laste ende of þis booke. Oþer ellys it is

Nota.
scraping and
scratching
generally give
rise to fistulae.

iren. & whanne þat þe boon þat is corrupt¹ is vnkeuerid, schauē it not as manye men doon, but touche harde þat boon with hoot iren; & aftirward heelde on pilke boon hoot oile of rosis, & leie on oon of þe mundificatiuis þat ben in þe antidotarie whiche þat wolen⁴ remoue þe rotid boon wipoute violence / For vndirstonde weel þou þat þou clense þe rotid boon wip schauynge or wip flynge with violence, neuere þe lattere kynde wole afterward don away a schelle of pilke same boon, nouȝt aȝenstondynge þi schauynge & þi rasyng / ⁸ wherfore in remeuynge pilke boon þou multipliēst þi traueile & makist newe² mundificaciō to þe fulle³ & þerof may come ofte tymes an yuel festre. An inconuenient medicyn is amendid in considerynge þe complexioun of al þe body & þe complexioun of þe¹² lyme & þe gre of þe medicyn; for if þat þe membre be drie as þe eeris & al bony & gristly lymes, & þei han greet putride & rotschipe, þanne þou nedist a ful drie medicyn / & if þat þe bodi or þe lymes¹⁶ ben mene bitwene fatnes & lenenes þat is neiþer to fatt ne to leene, þanne þou nedist a medicyn þat is in kynde mesurabiliche drynge / & if þat þe bodi or þe membre be naturelliche moist, & if þat he haue a litil putrede or rotschipe, þanne þou nedist a medicyn

¹ MS. *corrupt*.

² *newe*, error for *no*.

³ *to be fulle*. Lat.: ad plenum. See *Polychr.*, iii. 443, he forgaf him the trepas at the fulle.

Add. MS. 12,056. bettere to don it away with hot yren & whanne þat þe bon þat is 20 corrupte is vnkeueryde, schauē yt noȝt as many men don, but touche harde pilke bon with hot yren & afterwarde helde on pilke bon hot oyle of rosys, & leye on one of þe mundificatyfes þat beþ in þe

antidotarye, whiche þat wylle remywe þe rotyde bon withoute violence. Ffor vndirstond wel, þawȝ þat þou clanse þe rotyde bon with schavyng opere wip vylyng with vyolence, neuere þe latere kynde wyl afterwarde don awaye a schelle of pilke same bon, noȝt aȝenstondynge þy schauynge & þy rasyng; wherfore in remefyng²⁸ pilke bon, þou multipliest þy traueil, & þou makyste no mundificacioun to þe folle; & þerof may come ofte tymes, an yuele festre. And inconuenient medycine ys amendyd, in consyderynge þe³² complexioun of alle þe bodye, & þe complexioun of þe lyme, & þe gree of þe medycine; for ȝif þat þe membre be drye as þe erys, noseþrylles & alle bony & grestly lemes, & þey han grete putrede & rotschippe, þenne þou nedyste a ful drye medycyne; & ȝif þat þe body opere þe membre be naturelliche moist, ȝif þat he haue a lyte³⁶ putrede opere rotschippe, þanne thou nedyste a medycine þat ys lyte dryng. And ȝif þat the body opere þe lymes ben mene betwene fatnesse and lenesse—þat nys neiþere to fatte ne to lene, þenne þou nedyst a medycine þat is in kynde, mesurablyche dryngs. 40

[³ fol. 62 b]

- pat is litil drynge / & if pat .ij. membris ben in complexioun appropriate, change it according to the patient's complexion.
- I-liche euene, & þe toon haue myche quytture, & þe toþer litil quytture, he þat haþ þe more quytture nedip þe driere medicyn / &
- 4 *he þat haþ but litil quytture, him nedip his medicyn I-maad nouzt fulliche so drie / þerfore it nedip bi mesure þat þou kepe naturel þing wiþ þing þat is acordinge to þe same naturel þing / & also remene with mesurable contrariouste þing þat is azens kynde / But
- 8 þe quantite of medicyns þat schulden be leid to þe soor as galien *Galien.* witnessip mai not wiþ lettris be writen / neþeles it sufficiþ þat a man diuise þe medicyn after¹ þe complexioun mai bere / For kynde þat is wondirful, fullillip þing þat is absent, & þat. þat is to myche,
- 12 castip away, but if þat it be to myche azen kynde; & þanne kynde muste nede faile in his kyndely worchinge / A medicyn mundificatif² & exsiccatif þat is nessessarie in ech old holowe wounde,—³ [² If. 45, bk.]
- & þat may be knowe bi þis maner / if þat þe medicyn make
- 16 þinne quytture & blodli & make þe wounde holower, þanne he *A thin pus, a discoloured skin, a burning sensation show that the medicine was too dry.* schulde be, þanne is medicyn to scharpe / & if þe quytture be picke & towz, þanne is þe medicyn to liþe / & also anoþer signe þat þe

¹ N. E. Dict. s. v., "after C. 2. o" gives later references for the use of *after* conj. = according as, without relative particle.

² Both MSS. omit the end of the passage. Lat. "Medicina vero mundificativa & exsiccativa — aut est fortior, quam conuenit, aut debilior competenti." Then, as a heading to the next passage: "Significatio si medicina est magis sicca quam oportet." The *pat* in *þat may be knowe*, refers to this omitted heading.

- And 3if þat two membrys ben in complexioun i-lyche euene, & þe *Add. MS. 12,046.*
- 20 on haue myche quyter & þe opere lyte quyter, he þat haþ þe more quyter nedyth þe dreyere medycine,*—afterwarde it nedip by mesure þat þou kepe naturel þynge, with þynge þat is acordinge to þe same nature, and also to remeffe with mesurable contraryouste
- 24 þynge þat is azeys kynda. But þe quantite of medicynes þat scholde⁴ be leyde to þe sore, as Galien witnessip, ne may nozt with lettres ben wryten. Neuer þe latere it suffisith, þat a man defye þe medycine, aftere þe complexioun may bere; ffor kynde þat is
- 28 wondirfull fulfilleþ þynge þat is absent & þat þat is to myche castyth aweye, but 3if þat it be to myche azeys kynde; & þanne kynde most nedys faylen in his kendlye wirchyng. A medycine mundificatyff & exsiccatif þat is nessessarie in eche olde holwe,
- 32 vlcere,*—may be knowe by þis manere: 3if þat þe medycine make þenne quyter & blodly & make þe wounde holwere þan he scholde be, þenne ys þe medycine to acute; & 3if þe quyter be pikke & towz, þenne ys þe medycine to lythe; and also an opere⁵ signe þat

⁴ MS. *þat scholde*, twice.

⁵ *medycine*, cancelled before *signe*.

medicyn is to scharp, þat þe place aboute þe wounde is to grene, blak, reed, eiper ȝelow; & þanne þe sike man schal fele to greet heete & brennyng, also þe venym of þe wounde multipliþ / and whanne þe vnkunnyng leche seþ þese accidentis tofore seid, he 4 ordeyneþ a drie medicyn; & so ech day þe wounde apeiriþ.¹

A livid pus,
or paleness
and coldness
of the limb,
show that
the medicine
was not suf-
ficiently dry.

& þe signe þat þe medicyn is of feble dryng is, þat þe quittance & þe rotynes þat goiþ out þerof is greet in substaunce, ponderous & vneuene, wan oupir pale & þe membre is cold & is whiȝt oupir 8 wan, oupir cleer in colour ouper soft; & þe sike man felip cold in his membre / & whanne þat þou knowist þese þingis in þe firste cause make not þi medicyn so drie, & in þe secunde cause make þi medicyn more drie, & also chaunge þi worching as condicioun of 12

[¶ 11. 46]

An ignorant
physician
may make a
dangerous
wound out of
a slight one.
A mild
stomatif.

kynde askith ²boþe of bodi & membre as weel symple as compound medicyns / He þat knowiþ not þes canones. wel yuele schal he heele woundis / wherfore manye lechis bryngen listliche woundis with her yuel worching into þe worste olde woundis þe whiche moun not 16 aftir ben I-heelid bi a good leche / þese ben list medicyns whiche þat drien olde woundis þat neden a litil dryng: mastik, frank encense, barli mele. & þese medicyns ben sumwhat more driere: yrios,³ aristologie rotunda, orabum⁴ þat is wilde tare, lupines, 20

A stronger
stomatif.

¹ *apeiriþ* intr. See Prompt. Parv. *Apperyn*, or make wors. Pejoro, deterioro. ³ *yrios*. Lat. Iris. See Prior, *Dict.*, p. 123.

⁴ "*Orobis*, gall. uesche, anglie thare uel mousespese."—Alphita, p. 131.

Add. MS. 12,056. [¶ fol. 63 a.] þy medycine is to scharpe, þat þe place about þe wounde ys to grene, blake, red opere to ȝelwe & þe syke man felip to grette hete & brennyng, & also þe Venym of þe wounde multiplyeth, and whanne þe vnkunnyng leche seþ þese Accidentes tofore seyde, he ordeyneþ 24 a dryere medycine; & so ech day þe wounde apeirith. And þe signe þat þe medycine is of feble dreyinge is þat þe quyter & þe rotnesse, þat goþ out þere of, ys gret in substaunce, ponderose & vneuene, wan oper pale; þe membre is colde whyte oper wan, oper 28 clere in colour, oper softe, & þe syke man felyth colde in his membre, & whenne þat þou knowist þese þynges in þe firste cas, make noȝt þy medycine so drye. In þe secunde cas make þy medycine more drye, & so chaunge þy wirkyng, as condyciouns of kynde 32 askyth, boþe of body & of membre, as wel symple as componede medycines. He þat knowiþ noȝt þese kanones wel⁵—schal helen olde woundes; wherfore manye lechys brynge lyȝte woundes wiþ here iuele wirchyng, into þe worste olde woundes, þe whiche mowe 36 noȝt afters be helyde by a gode leche. þese ben lyȝte medycines, whiche þat drye olde wondys þat neden a lytel dryyng; mastyke, ffrankensence, barlymele. þese medicynes bep sumwhat dreycere: yreos. Aristologia. Orobum þat is wilde Tare, lupines, þe rotnesse 40

þe rotynes eip̃er þe drie poudre of trees; & þese medicyns ben strongere: balaustie, psidie,¹ rose, notts of cipris *et cetera* / & þese ben lizt mundificatiuis: sugre, hony, water of barlich, gotis whay, ^{A mild mundificatif.} watir of þe see, watir of brimstoon þat clensip̃ & hetep̃, water of alym þat clensip̃ & coldip̃. & þou schalt haue greet plente of enplastris, mundificatiuis, oyntmentis compouned in þe antidotarie of þis booke /

The .xij. chapitle of þe iij. techinge of þe firste tretis ^{¶ Cap. xij.} is of festre /

Festre is a deep old wounde, & þe mouþ of him is streyt, & þe ^{A fistula} ground is brood, & he hap̃ wip̃inne him a calose² hardnesse al ^[¶ If. 46, bk.] aboute as it were a goos penne or ellis a kane / & a festre hap̃ ^{is distin- guishable from a deep ulcer by its hardness,} difference from a deep vlcus & a cauernose / for a deep vlcus & cauernose of whom it is toold in þe chapitle tofore seid, þouȝ þat þei acorden togidere in depnes & in streitnesse of þe mouþ, þe vlcus hap̃ not wip̃inne him a calose hardnes / Wherefore a festre mai not be clensid wip̃ waischinge with which a cauernose vlcus mai be clensid / but it is nessessarie aftir þat þou hast waischen it to

¹ "*Psidia cortex eat mali granati.*"—*Synonoma Barthol.*, p. 35.

² O. Fr. calus, (Godefroy). See later references in *N. E. Dict.*

which must be removed by cauterization.

oper þe dryze poudre of trees. þese medycines ben strengere: ^{Add. MS.} balaustie, prosidye, rose, notys off Cipresse et. cet. And þese⁴ ben ^{12,056.} lyzte mundificatyfes in cure,⁵ hony, watire of barlye, gotyswheyȝ, water of þe see, water of brymston þat clansith & hetyp̃, water of Alym þat clansyth & coldyth. þou schalt haue grete plente of enplastres, mundificatyfes, and oygnementys componede in þe antitodarye of þis ilke booke.

¶ Cap. xii of þe bridde techynge of þe firste tretis is of a⁶ festre.

ffestre⁷ is a depe olde wounde and⁸ þe mouth is streyt of hym & þe grounde is brod, & he hap̃ wip̃ ynne hym a callose hardnesse alle aboute, as yt were a gose penne oper ellys a kane, & a ffestre hap̃ ^[¶ fol. 43 b] diffence from a depe Vlcus & a cauernose; for a depe Vlcus & a Cauernose, of whom yt ys tolde in þe chapitle toforeseyde, þowȝ þat þey acorden togedire in depnesse & in streytnesse of þe mouþ, þe Vlcus hap̃ noȝt wip̃yn hym a callose hardnesse, wherefore a festre may noȝt be clensyde with wasschynges, with þe whiche a¹⁰ cauernose Vlcus may be clansyde, but it is necessarye, afters þat

⁴ MS. þese, twice. ⁵ in cure, a scribal mistake from sugre.

⁶ of a, above line. ⁷ MS. ffestre.

⁸ in, cancelled; and, above line. ¹⁰ a, above line.

remeue pilke calose hardnesse wip a cauterie eiper with a medycyn cauterizinge þat is brennyng, þe which cauterie ouþir brennyng schulde make þe deppe of þe vlcus holowere þan he was / Wherefore it is nessessarie to a surgian to knowe þe difference of þis science, 4 þat he mowe knowe to heele boþe þe vlcus & þe festre wip medycyns different þat longen to hem boþe /

Nota. & if þat a festre be in þe fleisch or ellis bitwene senewe & senewe, so þat þe substaunce of þe senewe be not corrupt ne þe 8
If the fistula is in fleshy parts, use cleansing medicines. boon, it is no nede to take noon opere medycyn but egrymoine & staumpe it with salt as þou woldist make sause, & drawe out þe
 [12. 47] ius of pilke egrymoine, & do it into þe hole of þe festre wip a penne & leie þe substaunce of þe same eerbe pere-vpon til he haue 12 alayn pilke festre & clensid it; & þou schalt knowe bi reednes & sadnesse of fleisch þat is wipinne þe festre al aboute; & aftirward haue þis sirup of hony wip þe whiche þou schalt waische þe festre þat is now vlcus I-compouned in þis maner / Take a pound water, 16
R vynegre half a pound, of hony dispumed 3 .iiij., of leues of olyue-tre bounden togidere wip a þred / 3 j., of galingale² 3 j., boile alle þese to þe perfytnesse of a sirup, & lete it colden, & do away þe

² *galingale*, na. *galangale*, for *sagittelle*.

Add. MS. þou hast y-wasschyde yt, to remeffyn pilke callose hardnesse with a 20
 12,056. cauterye, opere wip a medycine cauterysyng þat ys brennyng, þe whiche cauterye oper brennyng schulde make þe deppe of þe Vlcus holwere þanne he was. Wherefore it is necessarie to a surgiane to knowe þe difference of þis scyence, þat he mowe conne hele boþe þe 24 Vlcus & þe festre with medycines different þat longyth to hem boþe. And 3if þat a festre be in þe flesch, oper ellys bytwene synwe & synwe, so þat þe Substaunce of þe synwe be not corrupt ne þe bon, yt nys non nede to take non opere medycine but egremoyne, & 28 stampe hym wip salt, as þou woldest maken sause, & drawe out þe jus of pilke egremoyne, & do yt into þe hole of þe festre with a penne, & leye þe substaunce of þe same erbe pere-vpon, tyl he haue slaw³ alle pilke festre & y-clansyde yt; & þat þou schalt knowen 32 by þe rednesse & sadnesse of flesch þat is withynne þe festre al aboute, & aftirwarde haue þis surype off honye, with þe whiche þou schalt wassche þe festre, þat ys now Vlcus componed, in þis manere: ⁴ R water ii j., of vynegre ii. ß, of hony despumed 3 .iiij, 36 off leuys of olyue-tre, y-bounde togedre with a þrede, 3 j., of
 [12. 64 a] ⁵ *sagittelle* 3 j., boyle al þis to þe perfytnesse of a sirupe, & let yt

³ At the end of the line. One letter wanting.

⁴ Confection of *syrup mallyne*, in margin.

leues of þe olyue, & kepe al þe remenaunt of þe sirup with þe
 leues of sagittel & waische þe vlcus þat was festred tofore wiþ þis
 licour twies on þe day þat þe licour may go to þe ground, & aftir-
 4 ward drie it weel & fille it ful of drie leues of sagittelle & leie a
 sagittel-leef aboue; & þis medicyn þou schalt contynuen til it be
 hool / Euery festre þat is in fleisch is heeled wiþ þis medicyn
 I-preued, but if þat substaunce of þe senewe & of þe boon be
 8 apeirid in þe ground, & specialiche if þat þe festre be not old, & if
 þat þe calosite be nouȝt to hard. In þese two causis þe medicyn
 of egrimoyn^e ne suffisþ nouȝt, but it is nessessarie to haue If parts of a
bone or sinew
are rotten,
 a cauterie of fier eiper a medicyn caustik / & of þese medicyns þou use cauteriza-
tion, or a
caustic medi-
cine,
and remove
the morbid
bone.
 12 schalt haue a ful techinge folowyng in þe booke / & if þat þe boone
 were corrupt in þe deppe of þe festre, do it awei aftir þe techinge
 tauȝt in þe chapitle tofore / & herof take hede, if þat a festre
 perse bi þe weyes of þe vryne so þat þe vryne go out bi pilke weie,
 16 as we han seen ofte tymes, or ellis þat it go bi crokid placis & hid
 placis of þe face² persinge into deppe, it is³ an vnperfizt cure, but
 þou maist pale⁴ it, & do it away þe stinche with hony waischinge,
 enplastre, & hony mundificatiuis, & with defensiuis aboute þe place

² Lat. per tortuosas aut occultas partes faciei. ³ it is, above line.

⁴ pale, Lat. palliare. Dufr., Gloss.: 1. tegere; 2. simulare.

20 coldyn & do aweye þe leffys of þe olyfe, & kepe alle þe remnaunt of þe surype with þe leffys of sagytelle, & wassche þe Vlcus þat was
 festre tofore with þis licoure twyes a day, þat þe lycoure may go to
 þe grounde, & afterwarde dreye it wel & fyl yt ful of drye leffys of
 24 sagytelle, & leye a sagittelle leff aboue, and þis medycine þou schalt
 conteynen tyl þat it be hol. Every festre þat is in flesch ys helyde
 with þis medycine y-prefed, but ȝif þe substaunce of þe synwe & of
 þe bon be apeyred in þe grounde, & specialyche ȝif þe festre be
 28 nouȝt old & ȝif þat þe callosite be nouȝt to hard. In þese tweye
 cases þe medycyne of egrimoyn^e ne suffisþ nouȝt, but it ys neces-
 sarye a kauterye of fyre oper a medycine caustyke; & of þese medy-
 cins þou schalt han a ful techyng, folwyng in þe boke. And ȝif
 32 þat þe bon were corrupte in þe deppe of þe festre, do yt aweye after
 þe techyng, þat y haue tauȝte þe in þe chapittel tofore. And
 hereof take hede: ȝif þat a festere perse be þe weyȝes of þe vryne,
 so þat þe vryne go out bi pilke weye, as we haue seyne ofte tymes,
 36 oper ellis þat he go by crokyde placys and hudel⁴ places of þe face,
 persyng into þe depnesse of þe hed whose grounde þou maiste nouȝt
 perseyue, hit ys bettyre nouȝt for to cure with a perfyte cure, but þou
 maiste pale it & don away þe stynke, with hony & wasschynges of
 40 emplastre in mundificatyfes & with defensifis aboute þe place, þat

⁴ hudel, adj. See Mätzner, *Diet.*, hudels, sb. O.E. *hýdels*, hiding-place.

Add. MS.
12,056.

cauteriza-
cioun of þe
senew þat
is hurt.

[F. 1r. 48]

þat his malice mowe¹ þen lasse greue. For a festre þat is in ioynturis as þe feet eiper þe knee, eiper þe hand, eiper þe elbowe, is hard for to heele, & sumtyme impossible / & if þat he be in anoþer place, & he haue corrodid eiper rotid sumwhat of þe senewe, þow þat it⁴ be greuours for to cure it, þer is noon oþer wey, but a list cauterizacioun of þe senewe þat is hurt / For cauterizacioun wiþ hoot iren eiper wiþ gold, þat is bettere, it clensiþ & drieþ þe senewe þat is corrupt & rectifieth þe complexioun of al þe membre & ²a medecyn⁸ caustik worchip þe contrarie / Brennynge medicyns, boþe þe symple & þe compound þou schalt haue to þe fulle³ in ⁴antidotarie of þis book, & þou schalt fynde þe maner of cauterisyng to þe fulle in þe þridde tretis folowyng. & whanne þou hast maad a perfiȝt mundi-¹²ficacioun of þilke colosse fleisch, regendre fleisch & consowde with medicyns regeneratiuis & consolidatiuis þe whiche þou schalt fynde in þe antidotarie //

¶ Cap.
xiiij^m
cancer
viciat

The xiiij chapitle of þe þridde techinge of þe firste¹⁶ tretis is of a cankre /

Cankre I-woundid cometh of openyng, eiper of kuttinge, eiper of brekyng of a cankre not I-woundid, whos techinge þou schalt

¹ MS. moore.

³ See page 86, note 3.

⁴ þe þridde tretis folowyng / & whanne þou hast maad a perfiȝt mundi-
ficacioun struck through in red. after to þe fulle in.

Add. MS. 12,056. his malyce mowe þe lasse greff. A festre þat is in juncturis as²⁰ þe fote oþer þe kne, oþer þe hand, oþere þe elbowe, is hard for to hele & sumtyme vnpossible. And ȝif þat he be in an oþere place

& he haue coroded oþer rotyd sumwhat of þe synwe, þow þat it be greffes for to cure it, þere nys none oþere weye bote a lyȝt cauterys-²⁴acioun of þe synwe, þat is y-hurt: ffor cauterysacioun wiþ hote yren, oþer wiþ gold þat is betyre clansyth & dryeth⁵ þe synwe þat ys corrupte, & rectefyeth þe complexioun of al þe membre, and a medicine caustyke worcheth þe contrarye. Brennyng medicynes,²⁸ boþe symple & componed, þou schalt han to þe fulle in þe antitodarye of þis boke, & þou schalt fynde þe manere of cauterysinge to þe fulle in þe þridde tretys folwyng; & whanne þou hast made a perfyte mundyficacioun of þilke callose flesch, regenerere flesch & con-³²soude with medicynes regeneratyfes & consolidatyfes, þe whyche þou schalte fynde in þe antitodarye.

¶ Cap. xiii off þe þridde techyng off þe firste tretys³ is Off a Canker.

¶ Cankre y-woundyde comyth of opnyng, oþere of kuttyng, oþere of brekyng of a cancre noȝt y-woundyde, whose techyng þou

- haue in þe chapitle of þe apostymes in þe þridde techinge / & he
 comeþ of a wounde yuel heelid, to whom comeþ a malancolient<sup>arises from a
 badly healed
 or purulent
 wound.</sup>
 mater rotid; or for þe mater þat comeþ to þe wounde is þere cor-
 4 rumpid & chaungip þe vlcus into a cankre /
 & þese ben þe tokenes of þe cankre / þe vlcus is foul & stynk-<sup>Its signs are:
 the peculiar
 condition of
 the wound,
 [1 lf. 48, bk.]</sup>
 ynge, þe lippis ben grete, wan, or blak, hard, & wipinne kirnely,
 & ouer al aboute arerid and ¹holowe / & þis is þe difference bitwene
 8 a cankre & a foul vlcus & an hori of whom I haue maad mencioun
 aboue, þat if þat þou waische hem boþe wiþ liþe, þe cankre schal ^{Nota}
 be palere & foulere þan he was bifore, & þere schal falle out of him <sup>the effect of a
 lye lotion,</sup>
 pecis gobetmele.² & þe vlcus is clensid wiþ þilke liþe, & þe fleisch
 12 is maad fairer þan it was tofore, ne þe vlcus stynkiþ not bi þe same
 stinche as þe cankre doiþ; for þe cankre haþ a propre sauour, þe
 which mai not be write wiþ lettre; but þilke sauour is best knowe <sup>and the smell
 of the cancer.</sup>
 of men whiche þat best han seiþe cankreis.³
 16 A general rule in þe cure of a cankre is, þat a cankre mai not
 be heelid, but if þat he be do away wiþ alle hise rotis / þe secunde
 rule is, þat he schal not be touchid wiþ hoot iren ne wiþ hoot
 medicyn caustik, þat is to seiþe brennynge, but he be in place <sup>A cancer
 must either
 be left un-
 touched or
 entirely re-
 moved.</sup>

² *gobetmele*, piecemeal. *Polychron.*, iv. 103: membratim. See further,
 Mäxner, *Dict.*

³ MS. *cankre is*.

- 20 schalt habbyn in þe Chapitle of enpostemes in þe þridde techynge Add. MS.
 & he comyþ of a wounde yuele y-helyde, to whom comyþ a maly- 12,056.
 colient rotyde matere, oper for þat þe matere comeþ to þe wounde is
 þere coruppyd, & chaungyþ þe Ulcus into a Cankere. And þese bep
 24 þe toknys of þe cankere: þe Ulcus ys foule & stynkyng, þe lippes
 bep grete, wanne, opere blake, harde, and wipinne kernelly, & ouere
 alle aboute areryde & holwy, & þis is þe dyfference bytwene cancre
 & a foule Ulcus & an hory, of whom y haue made mensioun aboue,
 28 þat zif þat þou wassche hem boþe⁴ wiþ leyþe, þe cancre schal ben
 pale & foulere þenne he was tofore, & þere schal fallen out of hym
 pecys, gobetmele. And þe Ulcus ys y-clansede wiþ þilke leyþe, &
 þe fleisch ys made fayrere þenne yt was tofore, ne þe Ulcus stynkeþ
 32 nozt by þe same stenche as þe cancre doiþ; for þe cankre hath a
 propre saffoure, þe which may nozt be wryten wiþ lettres, but þilke
 saffoure ys best knowyn to of men, whiche þat beste han seye
 cankrya. A ⁵generall rule in þe cure of cankre ys, þat a cankyre ^[3 fol. 65 a]
 36 may nozt ben helyde bot zif þat he be done away wiþ alle hys
 rotya. The secunde rule ys, þat he schal nozt ben touchyde wiþ
 hot yren ne wiþ hot medycyne caustyk—þat is to sigge, brennyng

⁴ MS. *opere*.

Nota where he may al be doon away / for þe more þat þou touchist him
 wip a violent þing eiper medicyn, þe more his malice is encreessid /
 If possible, Take þanne good heede if he be in a fleischi place, where þat he
 out away and may be don al wey, & þanne kutte him al away wip alle hise rotis / 4
 [1 ff. 40] & þanne priste out al þe malancolient¹ blood þat is wipinne þe
 burn the can- veynes þat ben aboute þe cankre. & aftirward brenne al aboute in
 cer, and apply a cleansing
 poultice. þe place þere as þe cankre was with hoot iren / aftirward leie on þis
 confectioun maad of flour of wheete & hony & ius of smalache,² til 8
 þat he be perfytliche clensid. After regendre fleisch & cicatrice.
Nota To þis rule / take hede as ofte as þou wilt wip sirurgie heelen a
 the counsel cancre: first euacue þe malancolient mater, for þat is ypocras
 off ypocras: techinge; & if þat he be growen in sich a place þere as he may not 12
 If the cancer cannot be removed, try no cure at all. be doon al away, as in þe necke or in þe tetis, or in þe face, or in þe
 arshole, or in þe mareis; & also for schortere conclusioun, & he be
 entrid in ony place þere as ony senewis, arteries, veynes, ben—as
 ypocras. ypocras seiþ—it is bettere nouȝt to cure þe cankre þan to cure. For 16
 & he be curid, þat is to seië kutt or I-brent, þei perischen þe
 sunnere; & if þei ben not curid, þei lyuen þe lengere tyme—libro
 vj^o. *afforismorum*: *Canceri absconditi multum tempus perfuciant*
² *smallage*, Halle Table, p. 12. “Smalache, Marche, or Marshe Persley.”
 See Prior, *Dist.*, p. 217.

Add. MS. —but he be in place, þere he may al be don away; ffor þe more 20
 12,066. þat þou touchiste hym with a vyolent thyng eiper medycine, þe
 more hys malys is encressyde. Take þenne gode hede zif he be in
 a fleschlye place, where þat he may be don al aweye, & þenne kutte
 hym al aweye wip alle hys rotys, & priste out þe malencolyent blod 24
 þat ys withynne þe Veynes, þat bep aboute þe cancre, & afterwarde
 brenne alle aboute in þe place, þere as þe cankre was, wip hote
 yren. Afterward leye on þis confectioun y-mad of floure of whete
 hony, jus of smallache, tyl þat he be perfytly y-clansyde. After 28
 regenerere flesch & cycatrice. To þis rule take hede as ofte as þou
 wilt wip surgerie helyn a cancre: furst evacue þe malencolyent
 matere, ffor þat is ypocras techynge, & zif he be growen in swyche
 a place, þere as he may noȝt be done alle aweye, as in þe nekke ore 32
 in þe tetys, opere in þe face, ore in þe ers hole, oper in þe marys,
 and also for the schortere conclusioun, & he be entrede in enye
 place, þere as enye Veynes, synwes, & arteries buþ, as ypocras
 seiþ, yt ys betyre noȝt to cure þe cancre, þen to cure; ffor he be 36
 curyde, þat is to sigge, y-kutte opere y-brent, þey perysschen
 sonnere; & zif þey be noȝt curyde þey lyuen longe tyme—libro
sexto afforismorum *Canceri absconditi multum tempus per ficiunt*

Regula, in margin.

curati vero cicius pereunt / But defende þe lyme þat is hool aboute
 with defensiff of bole þat I haue ofte tymes seid & waische þe
 wounde of þe cankre wip gotis whey, & drie it softly, ¹& anoynte Use a lotion R
 4 þe wounde wipinne & wipoute with þis oynement of rasis & ²tutie ³/ [1 lf. 49, bk.]
 take ceruse, ⁴tutie I-waische & medle hem wip oile of rosis & wip
 ius of purcelane ⁵ or of sum opere cold eerbe, putte ynne sum of þe
 toon, & now sum of þat oper, til þe oynement be weel I-maad /
 8 þis oynement is myche worþ for to defende þat þe malice of þe
 cancre schal not wexen, & also þat þe pacient vse a good gouern-
 aile: as drinke good wyyn & cleer & lithe, & he muste leue reed the diet for
þe canker:
 wyyn & troublid & picke wyyn, & he may ete good fleisch, as the patient
shall only
take white
wine and
digestible
food.
 12 motoun ⁶ of a weper, kide fleisch sowkyng, capouns, hennys,
 chikenes, partrichis, ⁷fesauntis, & smale briddis, & he muste leue:
 beeuys fleisch ⁸ & gotis fleisch, hertis fleisch & harys fleisch, goos,
 dokis, & alle greete briddis þat lyuen in watry placis, & al salt
 16 þing & acute þing: as garleek, oynonys & vynegre *et cetera* [þat]*

¹ *f.*, erroneously for *of*.

² *tutie*, Matth. Sylvat. "Tuchia . . Lat. Cadimia & pomfolix." Arab. *tūtiā*. Fr. *tutie*. See Wr. Wü., p. 559, 13. "Tucia, i. *tutie*" (xiiith cent.). It is: Oxidum Zinci impurum.

³ *ceruse*, white lead. See *N. E. Dict.* s. v. Ceruse.

⁴ *purcelane*, Lat. *portulaca*. Halle Table, p. 90. "Another herbe there is also called *Portulaca marina*, only of the likenes that the leaves therof haue with porcelaine." See "*Purslane*," Prior, *Popular Names*, p. 193.

⁵ *motoun*, carnes ovine, Wr. Wü., 741, 89, xvth cent.

⁶ *partrichis*, *Cathol. Ang.*, p. 270, a Partryke, perdrix. See further Skeat, *Et. Dict.* ⁷ *bef*, added above line, in different hand.

curati vero cicius pereunt. ¶ But diffende þe lyme þat is hol Add. MS.
 aboute with defensiff of bol, þat y haue ofte tymes seyde, & wassche 12,056.
 þe wounde of þe cancre with gotys whey, & drye yt softlyche &
 20 anoynt þe wounde *withinne & without*, with þis oynement of rasys
 of tutye, R ceruse, tuthye, y-wasschyn and medle hem wip oyle of
 roses & wip jus of poslane, ⁹opere of sum opere colde erbe, now [1 fol. 65 b]
 puttyng in sum of þe on & now sum of þe opere, tyl þe oynement
 24 be ful mad. þis oynement ys myche worth forto diffende; þat þe
 malys of þe cancre þat is y-woundyde schal not waxen, and also
 þat þe pacient vse a gode gouernaylle: as drynkinge gode wyn &
 clere & lyzt, & he mote leuen red wyn and troblyde & þykke wyn;
 28 & he may eten gode flesch, as motoun of a wepire, kyde flesch
 sokkyng, Capouns, hennys, Chykenys, partryches, fesauntes, &
 smale briddes, & he moste leuyn beffys flesch, gotys flesch, hertys
 flesch, harys flesch, gooses, dokys, & alle grete briddys, þat lyuen
 32 in watrye places, & alle salt þyng & acute þyng: as garlyke,
 Oynouns, vynegre, &c., þat* þe syke men mowe lyuen þe lengere vpon

þe sike man may lyue þe lengere vpon erþe / Neþeles if vlcus be ryȝt
foul & haue nouȝt so greet malice as a cankre, of þe which vlcus I
haue told tofore may be curid wiȝ poudre of affadillis, and aftirward
weel be clensid ; & for þat þis vlcus ¹þat was so foul may be heelid / 4
[¹ lf. 80]
Rogeryn and Rowlond & manye opere settide in her bokis þe cure
of a cankre, þowȝ þat he be in a senewey place, & þei seien þat þei
han heelid him / But vndirstonde weel for certeyn, þat an olde
cankre mai not be heelid bi noon oper wey, but bi þe same wey þat 8
I haue seid in þe bigynnyng of þis chapitle / & if þat þou dredist
wheper þat it be a symple vlcus or a cankre & a foul, for þe signes
& þe tokenes tofore seid beȝ doutis, bigynne to mortifie it wiȝ sum
maner of poudre : as wiȝ poudre of affadillis, & bi my witt poudre 12
of erbe robert² / & loke aftirward þe prosis of þi worchinge seiȝ
þis boke³ / For if þat he be a uerry cankre, þou schalt se þe more
þou woldist clense him, þe more his malice schal waxen / & if he
be not a cankre, he schal be clensid ryȝt as an vlcus / Whanne þat 16
þou seest þe waxynge of a cankre & his malice agmenten, ceesse
from þe verry cure & turne aȝen to þe forseid cure of þe oynement
of tutie, þe which þat palȝ þe cankre. For & þou bisie þee to

Rogeryn
and Rowland
pretended to
have healed
old cancers.

In doubtful
cases rub
with a pow-
der ;

In the case of
cancer the
patient will
grow worse.

² *erbe robert*, insertion of the scribe. *Geranium Robertianum*. See
Prior, p. 118. *Cronenburg*. *De Compositione Medicamentorum*, a. 1555,
fol. 106, A. *Ruprechtskraut* : *Roberti herba* (*Geranii* species).

³ *seiȝ þis boke*, erroneously inserted.

Add. MS. 12,066. erthe. Neþeles ȝif vlcus be ryȝt foul & hath nouȝt so gret malys as 20
a cancre, off þe whyche Vlcus y haue tolde tofore, may ben y-curyde
wiȝ poudre of affedylle, and afterwarde wel be clansyde, & for þat
þis Vlcus þat was so foul may be helyde. Rogeryne & Rouland
& manye opere settyde in here bokys þe cure of þe cancre, þowȝ 24
þat he be in a synwy place, & þey siggen þat þey haue helyde hym.
But vndirstande wel for certeyn, þat an olde cancre may noȝt ben
helyde by none opere wey, bote by þe same wey, whiche þat y haue
seyde in þe bygynnyng of þys chapytte. & ȝif þat þou dredyst, 28
wheper þat yt be a cancre opere a symple Vlcus & a foul, for þe
signes & þe toknys tofore seyde beȝ doutes, begynne to mortefye
yt wiȝ sum maner poudre as wiȝ poudre of affodylles, & loke after-
warde þe processe of þy worchyng; ffor ȝif þat he be a verrey 32
cankre þou schalt se, þe more þou woldyste clansen hym þe more
hys malys schal waxen, and ȝif he be noȝt a cancre, he schal be
clansyde ryȝt as an Vlcus. Whanne þat þou seste þe waxynge 4 of
þe cancre & hys malys augmenten, sese fro þe verreye cure & turne 36
ageyne to þe forseide cure of þe oynement of tuteye, whiche þat
palyth þe cancre. ffor & þou bysy þe to cure þe cancre, & þou pro-

[¹ fol. 86 a]

cure þe cankre, & þou procede in þi cure, þou schortist þe pacientis lijf / & if þou palist, þou lenkþist his lijf /

The .xiiij chapitle of þe þridde techinge of þe firste tretis is for to remeue causis þat letten þe cure of olde woundis /

[1f. 50, bk.]
¶ Capm
xiiijm

I tolde þee aboue in þe general chapitle of olde woundis cause whiche þat letten olde woundis to be heelid / & also I tolde þe techinge plenerliche þat ben nessessarie to remeue ech sengle cause þat is nessessarie, how þat alle maner causis þat letten mai be don away bi a good surgien & a wijs; so þat þou ioynest þis chapitle wiþ þe opere chapitle tofore seid, þou schalt han a pleyner techinge.

12 If þat þe bodi be ful of olde humouris eþer in þe idropisie, loke þat he may be heelid of þilke disposicioun, & þanne heele him if þat þou canst / &¹ if þat he be not ful of olde humouris whiche þat neden no curyng of olde disposicioun. Ne traueile not in deueyn²

If a patient is hydroptic or cachectic, his condition must first be improved,

16 þe sike man neþir wiþ medicyns corosiuus, ne wiþ kuttynge, ne wiþ puttyng into þe woundis greete tentis; but do aboue þe vlcus list

¹ The translator, perhaps intentionally, altered his original: si non (scis), pete physicum qui curationem illius dispositionis faciat.

² in *deueyn* = in veyn.

cede in thy cure, þou schortest þe pacientes lyff. And 3if þou palest þou lengthiste hys lyff.

Add. MS.
12,056.

20 ¶ Cap. xiiij of þe þridde techyng of þe furste tretys, is forto remefe causes þat latten þe cure of olde woundys.

¶ I tolde þe aboue in þe general Chapytile of olde Woundes, causes whiche þat latteþ olde woundys to by helyde. And also y telde þe techynges plenerlyche þat beþ necessarye to remywe eche sengle cause, þat is necessarye to be done away. And now y schal in þis specyall chapytile teche, how þat alle manere cause þat lettyth may be done away by a gode surgyne & a wyse, so þat 3if þou joynest þis chapitele wiþ þe opere chapyteþ to fore seyde, þou schalt han a plener techyng. 3if þat þe body be ful of elde humores, opere in þe dropseye; loke 3if þat he may be helyde of þilke disposicioun, & þanne hele hym 3if þat þou canst, and 3if þat he be noȝt ful of elde humorys; whiche þat nedyth to curyng of olde disposicioun. Ne traueyle noȝt in deueyne þe syke man, nowþere wiþ medycines corosifes, ne wiþ kuttynges, ne wiþ puttynges into þe wounde grete tentys; but do aboffe þe Vlcus lyȝte mundyfiatyfes & swote

SURGERY.

II

and in the
mean time
only mild
mundificatio
applied.

[1 ff. 51^a]

The same
must be done
if the liver or
the spleen is
bad.

If the patient
has too much
blood,

use phlebot-
omy.

mundificatiuis & swete smellynge, þat kepþ þe membre listliche
clene þat it stynke not / & whanne þat he is keuerid from an yuel
disposicioun, thanne turne azen to þe principal cure / & þis same
þing¹ I saye of yuel disposicioun of þe lyuere of what maner cause
þat he be enfeblid; þe same I saye of þe splene / But if þese
tweyne ben in her kyndely disposicioun, olde woundis moun not be
heelid. If² þat greet multitude of blood lettþ, þat may be knowen
bi ful replecioun of þe veines of al þe bodi, bi reednesse & exten-
cioun of þe face, bi swetnes of þe mouþ, bi flating³ / Whanne þat a
man is fastyng, bi heuynes of þe browis, & bi 3onge age, & his
complexioun is hoot & moist, & þat he hap vsid in his dietyng
wryn and fleisch; & make him þanne be lete blood of þe veyne þe
which þat bryngþ norischinge to þe lyme, & aftirward of þe veyne
þat mai best voiden þe membre þat is hurt / & if þat þe blood
trespace only in qualite, amende him as if þat he be to hoot, voide
him a litil & diete him with colde metis & stiþtik. & aftirward
procede forþ in alle maner opir causis as it is told in þe general
chapitle, takynge hede þat þer ben summe maner medicyns whiche
þat ben drynge & clensynge, & han a priuy⁴ propirte to consowde

¹ if above line.

² flating, Add. MS. *wlattyng*. See Wright Wü. O.E. *wlutung*.

³ priuy. See *Cathol. Angl.*, *pryuy*, *occultus*.

⁴ Heading to this page: *Causis þat lettes þe cure off old woundes*.

Add. MS. 12,056. smellynge þat kepyth the membre lyztlyche clene, þat he stynke
nozt. And whanne þat he is curyde from an yuele disposicioun,
turne azeine to þe princypal cure; & þis same þyng y sugge of
yuele disposicioun of þe lyfere, of what manere cause þat þe
enfebyde; þe same y sigge of the spleen, ffor but 3if þese tweyne
ben in here kendlye dysposicioun, olde woundes mowe nozt ben
helyde. 3if þat grete multitude off blode lette þe, þat may be
knowe by ful replecioun of þe veynes of alle þe body, by rednesse
& extension of þe face, be swetnesse of þe mouth, be wlattyng,
[fol. 56 b] whanne þat a man ys fastyng, by⁵ heuynesse of þe browys, & by
3onge age, & þat hys complexoun ys hot & moyst, and þat he hath
y-vsyde in hys dyotyng wryn & flesch, and þenne make hym be
lete blode on þe veyne, whiche þat bryngeth norysschyng to þe
lyme, & afterwarde of the Veyne þat may beste voyden þe membre
þat ys y-hurt. And 3if þat þe blode trepasse onlye in qualyte,
amende hym as 3if þat he be to hot, voyde hym a lytel & dyote
hym wip colde metys & styptyke. And afterwarde procede forth in
alle opere manere cases as it ys tolde in þe generall chapytel, takynge
hede þat þere ben sum manere modycines, whiche þat bep dryzinge
& clansynge, & haue a prefe proprete to consoude olde woundys,

olde woundis whiche þat ben difficult to be consowdid; of þe whiche medicyns summe ben symple & summe ¹ben compouned / [1 H. 51, bk.]
 Symple ben: limature of iren, flour of bras brent, vitriol leed Simple con-
 4 brent, & alle sharpe corosiuis if þat þei ben brent; for þat þei solidatif.
 han vertu more to consowden, & also her corisoun is lessid / þis is
 a medicyn compouned: take floris² eris, limature of bras ana. 3 j. a compound
 litarge of gold, litarge of siluir, 3 .viij. gumme of cipresse, 3 .iiij. consolidatif
 8 sal gemme,³ 3 .ij. aristologia I-brent smal to poudre of franken-
 cense, ana. 3 .v. wax & oile of mirtill þat suffisip // //

The .xv. chapitle of þe bridde techinge of þe firste ¶ Capm. xviii.
 tretis is of a crampe þat cometh to a wounde /

- 12 Nessessarie þing is to a surgian to knowe þe causis of a crampe,
 þe which þat cometh to a wounde þat schulde be heeled, & also þat
 he knowe þe disposicioun of him þat hath þe crampe, & also what
 þing þat þe crampe is, þat he mowe resonabliche hele þe crampe /
 16 þe crampe is a sijknese cordous eijer neruous, in þe which sijknese Cramp is a
 cordis & þe senewis weren drawn to her bigynnyng; of þe whiche contraction
 drawyng þat ben .ij. causis coniunct: þe toon is repleccioun of þe of the tendons
or nerves
 arising from

² Lat. flor. æris.

³ sal gemme. A Salt so named, from its Transparent and Crystalline Brightness.—Kersey.

- whiche þat beþ deffikel to be consoudyde, of þe whyche medicines Add. MS.
 20 some beþ symple & some beþ componed. Symple beþ: lymature 12,056.
 of bras, lymature of Iren, floure of bras brent; vytreol rede y-brent,
 and alle sharpe corosifes, 3if þat þey ben y-brent. ffor þat þey han
 þe more vertue to consouden, and al so here corosion ys y-lassyde.
 24 þis ys a medycine componyde: R. floris eris, lymature of bras ana
 .3. j., litarge of gold, litarge of syluere ana. 3. viij., gumme of cypresse
 .3. iiij, sal gemme .3. ij, Aristologie I-brende, smal poudre of frank
 Ensence ana. 3. v., wax & oyle of myrtyne þat suffyseþ.

- 28 ¶ Cap. XV. off the bridde techyng of þe firste tretys
 is off a Crampe, that comyth to a Wounde.

- Necessarie thyng ys a surgyne, to knowe þe causys of þe
 32 crampe whiche þat comyth to a wounde þat scholde ben y-helyde,
 and also þat he knowe þe dysposicioun of hym þat hath þe crampe.
 And also what þyng þe crampe ys, þat he mowe resonablyche hele
 þe crampe. The crampe ys a seknesse cordouse, opere ellys neruose,
 in the whiche syknesse þe cordes & þe synwes were drawyne to
 36 here bygynnyng; of þe whiche drawyng þere beþ tweye causes

repletion or inanition. [2 12. 22] senewe, þe opere of þe corde, þe oper is inanisioun.¹ He þat is of in-anisioun,² ofte tymes he haþ a cause goynge tofore as to myche euacuacioun of blood eiper of sum oper þing, as to longe afflictcioun for long akþe, or ellis for þe appetite of þe sike man haþ ben longe tyme enfeblid; & þis comeþ litil & litil, & þe crampe þat comeþ of boþe þese causis may not be heelid. & he þat comeþ of replecioun haþ oon of þe .iiij. causis goynge tofore / þe firste cause is to greet akþe / þe .ij. cause is cold / & þe .iiij. cause is putrifaccioun eiper rotynge / & þouȝ þat oon sengle cause sumtyme suffice to make a crampe, ofte tymes alle þese causis happen to come togidres / And þis crampe may be heelid or þat he be confermed, & aftir þat he is confermed seelden or neuere / A surgian muste þanne be hisy in al þat he myȝte, þat a crampe ne wexe not in þe wounde þat schulde be heelid, wiþ obuacioun³ defendinge þe lyme, þat noon of þe .iiij. causis tofore seid ne come nouȝt into þe wounde: þe oon is in defendynge þe lyme from putrifaccioun / þe toþere is for kepyng þe lyme fro rotynge / þe þridde is to gouerne him from a greet akyng / for it is more sikir to defende þat a crampe ne come not, þanne aftir þat he is come with medicyns þat is douteful or dredeful to

Repletion occurs after
1. great pain,
2. cold,
3. putrefaction.

Cramp must be prevented in three ways:
1.
2.
3.

[2 12. 22, bk.] as it is difficult to heal.

¹ inanisioun, Lat. inanitio. Vigo. Interpretation. "Inanition, emptyng."
² obuacioun, Lat. cum obuacione defensiuorum.

Add. MS. 12,056. [2 fol. 67 a] conjuncte: þe on ys repletion of þe synwe, opere of þe corde, þe opere is Inanysion. He þat ys in⁵ auision ofte tymes haþ a cause goynge to fore, as to myche euacuacioun of blod, opere of sum othire thyng; as to longe afflictcioun for longe akþe, opere ellys, for þe Appetite of the syke man hath be longe tyme enfeiblyde; & þis comyþ lytel & lytel, and þe crampe þat comyþ of boþe þese causys may noȝt ben helyde. And he þat comyþ of repletion hath on of þre causys goynge tofore: þe firste cause ys to grete akþe, þe secunde cause ys colde, þe þridde ys putrefaccioun oper rotynge; and þowȝ þat one sengle cause sumtyme suffiseth to maken a crampe, ofte tymes alle þese causes happe to come togedres. And þis crampe may ben y-helyde ere þat he be comfermyde, & after þat he ys comfermyde selden opere neffere. A surgyne moste þenne be busy; in alle þat he myȝte, þat a crampe ne wexe noȝt in þe wounde þat scholde be helyde, wiþ obuacion dyffendynge þat none of þe þre causes tofore seyde ne come noȝte to þe wounde; þe one ys in defendynge þe lyme from putrefaccioun, þe opere is in kepyng þe lyme from rotenesse, þe þridde is to gouerne hym from gret akyng; ffor it is more sykere to dyffende, þat a crampe ne come noȝt, þenne aftir þat he ys come with medycine þat is doutes opere dredful to

⁵ Scribal mistake.

do away / For if a feure come to an heed or to a senewe þat
is woundid, & if þe crampe folowe, euermore it is deedliche.

- Take hede þanne to aswage þe akþe wiþ anyntyng of oile of
4 rosis, in doynge as I haue seid afore in þe chapitle of senewis þat Treatment of
cramp.
Alay the suf-
fering with
an ointment,
ben woundid; for ofte tymes þe crampe cometh fro woundis þat
ben *maad* in þe heed or ellis in þe senewe / & if þat akþe were so
greet, þat makith þe crampe for þe prickynge of a senewe or ellis of
8 a corde / & if þat þou myztist nouzt defende þe crampe neiþir wiþ
blood letynge, neiþer wiþ ventusynge, ne wiþ clisterie, ne wiþ sup-
positorie, ne wiþ defensif in anyntyng þe necke, ne þe grynde,
ne þe arm hoolis, þanne it is nessessarie þat þou kutte al atwo pilke
12 senewe or pilke corde þat is prickid, þowþ þat þe felynge or þe if necessary,
cut the in-
jured nerve
or tendon.
meuynge of þe lyme to whom pilke senewe or pilke corde serueþ in
parti or in al be lost / For it is bettere þat a man lese þe felynge &
þe meuynge of a lyme, þan for to deie. But it is bettere, if þat
16 þou cowdist, to kepe a man þer-fro with opere ¹medicyns þan þat þe [1 li. 53]
senewe or þe corde be kutt al atwo. & if ²þat þou were not at
þe bigynnyng, & þou fyndist a man hauynge þe crampe for a
wounde, do þou as I dide at melain. þer was a scoler of myn þat
20 was a surgian þat was clepid Olyuer, which þat curide a schepere Nota.

² if, above line.

- don aweye, Ffor ȝif þat a ffeuyre come to an hed opere to a synwe Add. MS.
12,056.
þat ys y-woundyde, & þe crampe folwe euyre more, yt ys dedlyche.
Take hede þenne to aswage þe akþe with anyngtyng of oyle of
24 rosys, and in doynge as y haue seyde tofore in þe chapitle of synwes
þat beþ y-woundyde; ffor ofte tymes þe crampe comyth for woundys,
þat beþ made in þe hed opere ellis³ in þe synwe: And ȝif þat akþe
were so grete, þat makyth a crampe for þe prikyng off a synwe oper
28 ellys of a corde, and ȝif þou myztest nozt deffende þe crampe, newhere
wiþ blode letynge, ne wiþ ventosynge, ne wiþ clysterye, ne wiþ sup-
positorie, ne with defensif in anyntyng þe nekke, ne þe grynde, ne þe
arme holys, þenne yt is necessarie þat þou kytte alle atwo pilke synwe
32 opere corde þat is y-prikyde, þowþ þat þe ffelynge opere þe meffynge
of þe lyme, to whom pilke synwe opere corde servyde, in party oper
in al be loste. Ffor yt is bettyre ⁴þat a man lese þe felynge & þe [1 fol. 67 b]
meffynge of a lyme þenne þawþ þat he deyze. But yt is bettyre ȝif
36 þat þou coupeþ kepen a man with opere manere medycines, þenne
þat þe synwe opere corde be y-kutte al atwo. And ȝif þat þou were
nozt at þe bygynninge, and þou fyndest a man hauynge a crampe
for a wounde, do þou as y dyde at Melan. þere was a Scolere of
40 myne þat was a Surgyne þat was y-clepyde Olyfere, whyche þat

³ ellis, above line.

Case of a
shepherd who
had hurt his
head.

The wound
was closed
too soon, and
cramp en-
sued.

Lanfranc
found the
patient
dying.

[+ 11. 53, bk.]
He reopened
the wound,

anointed

of a wounde þat he hadde in þe heed; & bi þilke wounde þe pannicle
oupir þe skyn þat keueriþ þe brayn panne þat is vnder þe fleisch
was hurt, & neuer-þe-lattere þe brayn panne was not hurt. &
þilke leche, or þanne he hadde perfytlich purified þilke pannicle, 4
sowdide þe wounde wiþoutforþ¹; & whanne þilke wounde was
sowdid, þe pannicle þat was not weel heeled hadde a dedein² &
was cause of gendrynge of a crampe in þilke wounde. & at þe
laste I was clepid to þe sike man, & I foond him hauynge þe 8
crampe, & wiþ þe crampe he hadde manye smale enpostymes aboute
his face—& þat is an yuele tokene in þe woundis of þe heed—&
þanne I demede him for deed / Nepeles at þe instaunce of hise
freendis I wolde asaie þe worchinge of kynde vpon resoun; I made 12
his heed to be schaue,³ & I kutte aȝen þe wounde þat was 4con-
sowdid wiþ a rasour to þe deppe of þe same wounde, & aftirward I
fulfillide þe wounde with hoot oile of rosis, & I anoyntide al þe
heed with þe same oile of rosis & a litil vynegre medlid togidere, & 16
I anoyntide þe nolle & þe necke oonly wiþ oile of rosis, & I dide
on þe wounde þe ȝelke of an ey wiþ oile of rosis, and I boond al

¹ *wiþoutforþ*, extrinsecus, from without.

² *dedein*, Lat. *panniculus indignatus* causa fuit spasmi. The translator misunderstood *indignatus*, and gives us an "indignant pannicle." *indignatus*, Med. Lat. damaged, hurt. See Thomas. a. v. indegnare 3.—Compare þe *ludyh lorde*—*hade dedayn of þat dede*.—Allit. Poems, B. 74.

³ *I made his hed to be schaue*, abradi caput feci.

Add. MS.
12,056.

curyde a schepere of a wounde þat he hadde in the hed; & by þilke
wounde þe pannycle opere þe skyn þat keueryth þe breyne panne, 20
þat is vndire þe flesch, was y-hurt, & nere þe latere þe breyn panne
was noȝt y-hurt. & þilke leche, ere þanne he hadde perfytliche
y-purifiede þylke pannycle, soudyde þe wounde wiþouten forth; &
whanne þat þilke wounde was y-sowdyde, þe pannycle þat was noȝt 24
wel helyde hadde a dedeyne, & was cause of engendrynge of a
crampe in þilke wounde. And at þe laste y was clepyde to þilke
syke man, & y fonde hym habbynge þe crampe, & wiþ þe crampe
he hadde manye smale enpostemes aboute hys face, & þat ys an 28
yuele tokne in þe woundys of þe hed, and þenne y demyde hym for
ded. Napeles at þe instaunce of hys frendys y þat wolde assaye þe
worchyng of kynde vpon resoun, I made hys hed *ben* y-schaue, and
y kutte aȝeyne þe wounde, þat was *consowdid*, with a rasoure to þe 32
deppe of þe same wounde, & afterewarde y fulfylde þilke wounde
with hote oyle of rosys, & y anoyntede alle þe hed with þe same
oyle of roses & a lyteȝ vynegre y-medlyde togedre, & y anoyntede þe
nolle & þe nekke onlye wiþ oyle of rosys, and y dyde on þe wounde 36
þe ȝolke of an eye with oyle of rosys, and y bonde alle þe hed wiþ a

- þe heed wiþ a boond leiynge þer vndir herdis¹ or towȝ smal I tosid, and band-
and I openede his moup & putte into his moup þe broþ maad of a head,
chiken, wiþ comyn & also wiþ cleer wiyn medlid wiþ myche water; on
4 þe morowe I turnede aȝen & I foond þe sike of bettere disposicioun, gave
& I openede bettere his moup, & he spak bettere; neþeles I foond strengthen-
þe wounde drie, & þanne I dide ofte tymes þe same medicyn & þe ing nourish-
same oynture. In þe þridde dai þe skyn of þe heed was maad
8 moist, þe which was bifore as drie as þe skyn hadde be rostid at þe
fier, & in so miche² þe skyn was maad þinne, þat þer was no þing
bitwene þe skyn & þe brayn þanne. & at þe laste þe wounde quyt-
turide wiþ contynuaunce of þe same cure tofore seid, & in þis³ maner [2 ff. 54]
- 12 þe ȝonge man was heelid boþe of þe crampe & also of þe wounde / and so cured
But þilke crampe was wiþoute feure; for I may not þenke þat I the patient.
haue seen a feure in þe woundes of þe heed, or ellis of þe senewis If fever occurs
prickid a crampe, þat nouȝt aȝenstondynge remedie eiþer medicyns death ensues.
- 16 þe pacient þat hadde þe crampe diede / My beste counseil is to lete Bleed the
him blood in þe bigynnyng þat haþ þe crampe, namely, & he be patient,
strong & replete, & if þat he haue not bled ynouȝ at his woundis; use oint-
& anoynte his nolle & his necke wiþ hote oynementis as wiþ oile ments,

¹ *herdis*. See Wright Wü. 614. 2. "Stupa, herdes." ² *þat*, inserted.

- 20 bonde leggyng þere undyre hurdys opere towȝ smal tosyde, and Add. MS.
y opnyde hys mouth & put into hys mouth þe broth of a chyken 12,056.
y-made with comyn, and also clere wyn y-medlyde with myche
watyre. On þe morwe y turnyde aȝeyne & y fonde þe syke of
24 bettyre dysposicioun, & he opnyde bettyre hys mouth, & he spak
bettyre; & neþeles⁴ y fonde þe wounde drye, & þenne y dede ofte [2 fol. 55 a]
sonys þe same medycine & þe same vnture. In þe þridde day þe
skyn of þe hed was y-mad moyst, whyche þat was to forne as drye
28 as a skyn hadde be rostyde to þe fyre, and in so myche þe skyn was
y-made þanne, þat þere was noþynge betwene þe skyn & þe breyne
þanne. & at þe laste þe wounde quytteride wiþ contynewaunce of þe
same cure tofore seyde, & in þis manere þe ȝonge man was helyde
32 boþe of þe crampe & eke of þe wounde. But þilke crampe was with-
outen feuyre; for y ne may nouȝt þynke þat y haue seyn⁵ a ffeuyre
in þe woundes of synwes, opere ellys of þe hed precede a crampe, þat
nouȝt aȝeyne stondynge remedye / opere medycyns þe pacient þat
36 hadde þe crampe ne deyede. My beste conseyle is to letyn hym blod
in the bygynnyng þat haþ þe crampe, namly, & he be stronge &
replete, and ȝif þat he haue nouȝt bled ynouȝ at hys wounde; and
anoynte hys nolle & hys nekke wiþ hote oynementys, as with oyle of

⁵ *a wounde* struck through after *seyn*.

Nota. of nardine, euforbine, oile of rue,¹ lilijs *et cetera* / & also to make
small cau- smale cauteries punctale, þat is to seie as smal as þe eende of a
teries, pricke, bitwene ech whirlebon of þe necke, so neuere þe lattere þat
bandages. þe cauterie go not ouer depe / Afterward bynde long wolles to his
 heed bihynde & to his necke & to his schuldris, & do þeron hoot
 oile, & leie him in a soft bed & lete him be in reste & in pees /
 But þer ben summe þat setten in her bookis medicyns þat pro-
 uoken þe feueris; for þat ypocras techip in .iiijth afforismoris: a 8
ypocras. **[3 M. 54, bk.]** **spasmo² vel tetano habito febre⁴ superveniente soluit egritudi-**
ne⁵ / þat is to seie: if þat a man haue a crampe or ellis a tetane
 þat is a sijknis þat halt þe membre lich streit on boþe sidis as a
 crampe halt þe oon side of þe membre & þe feure come on þilke 12
 crampe eiþir þilke tetane, he distriep þe crampe eiþir þe sijknis; &
 also þei anoynte wiþ to hoot an oynement to prouoke þe feueres, þe
 which þing I ne apreue not in þe crampe of a wounde þowþ þat
 þilke oynement myzte be profitable in a crampe wiþoute wounde, & 16
 where þat humouris abounde, namely, if it be fleume.

he is wrong,
 if the cramp
 comes from a
 wound.

Signs (symp-
 toms) of
 cramp.
 General signs.

Summe ben general tokenes & summe ben special of schewynge
 of þe crampe / General tokenes ben þese: to greet akþe, crokidnes⁵

¹ rue, ruta. Turner, *Herbal*, ii. 122 b. Ruta is named in Greke Pega-
 mon, in English Rue or herbe grace, in French rue de gardin, in Dutch
 Weinraut. ² Cramp and Tetanus. See Notes.

⁴ febre superveniente, error for febris superveniens.

⁵ crokidness, Lat. obliquitas.

Add. MS. nardyne, enforbine, Oyle rewe, lylies &c., and also to make smale 20
 12,056. cauteries punctales, þat is to sigge as smale as þe ende of a prykke,
 bytwene euery whirlebone of þe nekke, so neuere þe latere þat þe
 cauterye go nouzt ouere depe. Afterwarde bynde longe wolles to
 hys hed be hynde, & to his nekke, & to his schuldres, & do þere 24
 on hote oyle, & leye hym in a soft bed, & lete hym ben in reste &
 in pees. But þere be summe þat setten in here bokys medycines,
 þat provocen þe feueris; for þat ypocras techyth in quarto afforismorum:
 a spasmo vel tetano habito febre superveniente soluit 28
 egritudinem þat ys to sigge; 3if þat a man haff þe crampe, opere
 ellys a tetane, þat is a syknesse þat halt the membre y-lyche streyt
 on boþe þe sydes, as a crampe halte þe on syde of þe membre, & þe
 feure come on þilke crampe opere þilke tetane, he distroyeth þe 32
 crampe opere þe seknesse, and also þey anoynte wiþ to hote oynement
 to prouoke þe feueris, þe whyche þynge y ne apreff nouzt in
 þe crampe of a wounde, þowþ þat þilke oynement myzte be profitable
 in a crampe withouten ⁶wounde, & where þat humores habounde, 36
 namlye, 3if yt be flewme. Somme ben general toknys, & some be
 special of schewynge of a crampe. General toknys ben þese: to

[⁶ fol. 68 b.]

of ȝen, & crokidnes of schewynge, & crokidnes of eeris, of þe nose
 þrillis, & of þe lippis, & whanne þat a man may not speke, & þe
 cheke be constreyned & difficulte of meuyng, and namely, of
 4 þe necke, & ofte constreynynge togidere, & a sodeyn schakyng
 togidere. Special signes maken oon of þre maner of crampis: þe ^{Special signs.}
 toon is clepid amprostonos¹, þe toþer empistenos², þe .iiij. tetanus /
 In þis maner of crampe þat is clepid amprostonos, þe senewis tofore
 8 ben drawe togidere / þe fore partie of þe heed is crokid, þe sike
 man may not heuen it vp, he berij his chyn as it lijþ on his brest,
 & his mouþ is streit & he may not opene it, & þe fyngris of his
 hand ben folden into his fist / & in empistonies þe necke is crokid, ^{Empistonos.}
 12 his mouþ is open, hise chekis ben open, & þe fyngris of his hand
 ben streyned backward / & þe tetane halt þe boþe parties of þe ^{Tetanus.}
 body, so þat he may not turne his necke to no partie but al þe
 bodi is stif & streyned, as a staf were putt yn at his necke & out
 16 at his ers / Alle þese tokenes or ellis summe of hem schewij þe
 disposicioun of him þat haþ þe crampe / And whanne þat þese
 tokenes fallen in þe wounde of þe heed, or ellis of a senewe þei
 techen bettere þe leche to fle from þe sike man þan on him to abide
 20 & cure /

¹ Latin, *Emprosthotonos*.² Latin, *Opisthotonos*.

gret akþe, crokydnesse of eyȝen, & crokydnesse of erys of nose þreth ^{Add. MS.}
 & of lyppes, & whanne þat a man may not speke, & þe chekys ben ^{12,056.}
 constreynde, & dyfult of swolwynge, & diffyult of mevyng,
 24 namlye of þe nekke, & ofte constreynynge togedre, & sodeyne
 schakyng togedire. Special signes maken one of þre manere of
 crampes: þe on ys y-clepyde **Emprostonos**, þe oþere **Empistonos**, þe
 þridde **tetanus**. In þese manere of crampe þat is clepyde Empros-
 28 tonos þe synwes tofore be drawen togedire, þe fore party of þe hed
 ys crokyde, ne þe syke man ne may not heffyn it vp, he berith hys
 chyn as yt leye on hys brest; hys mouþ is streyte, ne he ne may
 not opyne yt, and þe fyngres of hys hande ben foldyde into hys
 32 fust. And in Empistonos þe nekke ys crokyde, his mouþ is opyne,
 his chekes beþ opyne, & þe fyngres of hys handys ben streyned
 bakwarde, and þe tetane halt boþe þe partye of þe body, so þat he
 may nouȝt turne hys nekke to non partie, but alle þe body is styffe
 36 & streyned, as a staf were put in at hys hed & out at his ers. Alle
 þese toknys oþere ellys sum of hem schewith þe disposicioun of hym
 þat haþ þe crampe. And whanne þat þese toknys fallyn in þe
 wounde of an hed oþere ellys of⁴ a synwe, þey techen bettere þe leche
 40 to fle from þe syke man, þenne on hym to abyde & cure. The firste

⁴ of, above line.

¶ The firste tretis is eendid wip þe help of almyȝty god. Now with þe help of þe same, go to þe secunde /

¶ Cap. j. Now bigynneþ þe secunde tretis of particuler 4 woundis of membris of office from þe heed to þe foot / and first bigynne at anotamie of þe heed /

[¹ ff. 55, bk.]^a Al þing¹ breffly ordeyned aftir my symple wilþ diuysynge, which þat longiþ to þe firste tretis of þis booke which þat holdiþ certeyn 8 rulis & techinge of surgerie vnder general chapitlis as we han bihiȝt / now we wolen bigynne to treten of curis aftir þat þe lymes ben in mannes bodi. & first I wole bigynne at þe heed & at his anotamie, & so procede forþ to ech membre dyuysynge þe anotamie of ech 12 membre, & in ordeynynge þe curis of woundis þat ben maad in ech sengle membre. I seie þat þe heed is maad of þre parties: of a fleischi partie, of a bony partie, & a brawni partie. þe fleischi partie is aboue þe brayn panne, þe which þat is maad of an hery 16 skyn; & þilke skyn is fulfillid wip braynes in euery partie /

The heed
consists of
three parte.

² Heading to this page: *Anotomy off þe hed & woundes off the same.* / Compare Vicary's *Anotomie*, ch. iii. p. 24.

Add. MS. 12,056. tretys ys y-edyde wip helpe of almyȝtie god, now with þe helpe of þe same y go to þe secunde.

¶ Now begynneþ þe secunde tretys off particuler 20 woundes of membris of office from þe hede to þe ffoot, and ffirste y begynne at the Anotamye off the hed.

[¹ fol. 69 a] Al thyng breffliche y-orleynde, afters þe devysinge of my 24 symple wytt, whiche þat longith to þe firste tretys of this 4 booke whiche þat holdyth certeyne rulys & techynges off surgerye vndire general chapitelis, as we han byleyȝt. Now we wylle begynne to tretyn of certeyne cures, afters þat þe lymes ben in mannys body. 28 & firste y wyl begynne at þe hed & at hys anotamye, & so þe processe forþ to eueryche membre devysinge þe Anotamye of euery membre, & in ordeynynge þe cures of woundys þat beþ made in eche sengle membre, I sigge þat þe hed ys made of þre parties: of a 32 fleschy partye, a bony partye, and a braynie partye. þe flesch partye is aboue þe brayn panne, whiche þat is made of an herye skyn; & þilke skyn ys fulfylde with brawnys in euery place. þe

³ MS. of twice.

þe heeris of þe heed weren for greet profite ordeyned þat neiþer cold ne hoot, ne schulde not sodeynli entre þe poris of the skyn, & neuere þe lattere þat þe fumosite of þe heed myȝte go out bi þe poris þere as þe heer growiþ; & þe heed myȝte be þe more ſemeloker, & þat þe colouris of þe heeris of dyuers men myȝte ſchewen þe complecciouns of þe heedis //

The hair protects the brain, and adorns the head.

[1. 11. 56]

þe skyn þat is¹ aboue þe brayn panne is lacertose, & ful of picke fleisch, þat he myȝte wrie þe brayn panne, þat he schulde not fele sodeynliche to greet heete ne to greet cold. þe which skyn is maad of sutil þedis of ſenewis þat comen fro þe brayn, & of veynes & of arteries sotilliche I-maad; & so þe skyn of þe heed is sotilliche ioyned wiþ þe skyn of al þe bodi / & also þe skyn of þe heed is more pickere þan þe brain ſculle, þat it ſchulde ben more rare² & more porose, þat is to ſeie, more ful of hoolis / þe lacertis of þe skyn proceden aftir þat þe goynge procediþ of þe heeris /

16 þe brayn panne is maad of manye boonys / þe fiſte ſumme,³ þe whiche þat holdiþ þe prouitis þat longen to þe brayn panne, haþ .ij. helpingis; oon helpinge is: þouȝ þat an hurtynge come to oon boon, neuere þe lattere he ſchulde not falle to alle þe boonys / þe ſecunde help is, oon boon þat is to hard in oon partie ne ſchulde not be so

skyn.

is muscular, is made of fibrous cords and veins,

is thick and porous.

The skull consists of many bones for different reasons, as touching the skull itself.

² rare. Lat. rarus.

³ Lat. Prima nanque summa . .

herys off þe hed were for grete proffyte y-ordeynde, þat neiþere colde ne hete ne ſcholde noȝt sodeynliche entre þe pores of þe skyn, & neuere þe lattere þat þe fumosite of þe hed myȝte go out be þe pores þere as þe here growyþ, and þat þe hed myȝte be þe more ſemlykere, and þat þe coloure of þe herys myȝte ſchewe þe complexiouns of þe hed. þe skyn þat is aboue þe breyne panne ys lacertos & ful of pykke fleſch, þat he myȝte wryen þe breyn panne, þat he ſcholde noȝt fele to sodeynliche neiþere to grete hete ne to cold. þe whiche skyn ys made of sotyȝ þedis of synwes þat comeþ from þe brayn & of veynis & of arteryes sotyȝliche y-mad; and so þe skyn of þe hed ys sotyȝliche y-ioyned wiþ þe skyn off alle þe bodye, and also þe skyn of þe hed ys more pykkere þanne þe brayne ſcolle, þat it ſcholde be more rare & more porose þat is to ſigge more ful of hoolys. þe lacertes of þe skyn proceden aftir þat þe goynge procedyþ of þe herys, þe brayn panne ys mad of manye bonys. þe fyrſte ſumme, whiche þat wiþholdyþ þe profites þat longyþ to þe brayn panne, haþ tweye helpynges; on helpynge ys, þowȝ þat an hurtynge come to on bon, neuere þe latere he ſcholde noȝt fallen to alle þe bonys; þe ſecunde helpe is þat on bon þat is to harde in on partye, ne ſcholde noȝt be so⁴ hard in an opere

Add. MS. 12,056.

[1. 11. 56]

.2.
the organs
under the
skull.
[1 If. 56, bk.]
The sutures
of the skull
a.
form the
ways for the
veins,
b.
let the nerves
go out
c.
and the
fumes,
d.
support the
dura mater
and pia
mater.
The brain
pan is formed
of two tables,

hard in anopir partie. / þe secunde summe, þe which þat wiphalt þe helpingis þat ben vndir þe brayn panne, haþ wipinne him. iiij. helpingis; þe whiche helpingis ben ful maad by þe ¹semis þat ben of þe brayn panne; ne þe helpingis myzte not be maad, but if þat ⁴ þer were manye boonys / þe first help is, þat þe veynes myzten go doun bi þe semis of þe brayn panne berynge² norischinge to þe same brayn³ / þe secunde help is, þat þe senewis þat comen out of þe brayn myzte haue wey in goynge out / þe þridde help is, þat þe ⁸ fumes of þe brayn myzten haue wey of smokyng out / þe fourþe is, þat neiþer dura mater, ne pia mater, þat as þei ben hangid, ne myzte not greue þe brayn.

So þat þe brayn panne is maad of ij. smeþe lizt tablis, þat oon ¹² is aboue, þe toþir is lyneþe / & þei ben sumwhat spongiouse in þe myddis, & rare þat þe smoke of þe heete myzte bettere passe out & þei ben smeþe þat þei myzten not greue þe brayn / Dyuers men þat maken dyuers anotamie dyuyden þe brayn panne diuerslych / sum- ¹⁶ men noumbren mo boonys þan summe opir speken of / but soþenes is, þat þer ben .vj. & oon which þat susteyneþ þe sixte. þe firste boon is clepid, þe boon of þe forheed or ellis coronale, & he higynneþ from þe browis & lastiþ to þe seem þat departiþ þe heed quarter. ²⁰

has seven
bones.
I. Coronale.

² MS. inserts *þ*.

³ *panne* after *brayn* cancelled.

Add. MS. 12,056. partye. Secunde summe, whiche þat withhalt helpynges, þat bep vnder þe brayn panne, haþ with hym iiij helpynges; þe whiche helpynges bep ful mad be þe semys þat bep of þe breyn panne. Ne þo helpynges ne myzte nozt be mad, but 3if þat þere were manye ²⁴ bonys. þe firste helpe ys, þat þe veynes myzte go doun by the semys of⁴ þe brayn panne, berynge norosschyng to þe same brayn.

Secunde helpe ys þat þe synwes, þat comyth out of þe brayn, myzte habbe wey in goynge out. þe þridde helpe ys, þat þe fumes ²⁸ of þe brayn myzte habbe wey of smokyng out. þe ffourþe ys, þat neiþere dura mater ne pia mater, þere as þey ben y-hongyde, ne myzte nozt greue þe brayn. Syttle þat þe breyne panne ys made of two smeþe lyzte tablis, þat one ys aboue & þe opere byneþe, & ³² þey be sumwhat spongyouse in þe myddel & rare, þat þe smokys of þe hed myzte þe bettyre passen out, & þey be smeþe þat þey myzte nozt greue þe brayn. Dyuerse men þat makyth dyuerse Anotamye deuydeþ þe breyn panne dyuerslyche. Somme nowmbryth mo ³⁶ bonys, þenne summe opere spekyn of; but soþenesse ys that þere ben sixe; & one whyche þat susteyneþ þo sixe. þe ffyrste bon ys clepyde þe bon of þe⁵ fforhed opere ellys coronale, & he bygynneþ from þe browys, & lastyth vnto þe seme þat departyth þe hed ⁴⁰

⁴ of above line.

⁵ þe above line.

- ¹ & pilke is clepid coronale / þis boon hap in sum maner of men a [1 lf. 57]
 smal seem in foldyng of þe forheed, & þerfore sum men seyn
 þat þer ben .ij. boonis. ij opir boonys ben ioyned with pilke boon
 coronable in þe myddis of þe heed ouerþwert ouer; þat² þei ben
 4 bounde togidere bi oon ioynture, þe which þat strecchiþ from bifore
 to bihynde to þe lenkþe of þe heed, þe which is clepid sagittales,
 by as myche as he is schape lijk an arowe / & þese .ij. boonys ben
 clepid nerualia bi-cause þat þe figure of þe seem þat is with þe
 8 coronable is þe figure of a senewe eþer of a corde / þese boonys ben
 in þe hizeste coppe of þe heed & byhynde in þe nolle þer is a boon
 þe which is clepid alauda.³ & it is maad in þe symilitude of þis : Λ ;
 which þat is ioyned wiþ þe boones nerualibus tofore seid bi þe mene
 12 of oon þan I-made to þe lijknes of þe boon tofore seid. & þese þre
 semes whiche þat ioynen togidere þe .iiij. boonys tofore seid, ben
 maad as it were two sawis, þe whiche teep ben ioyned, ech of hem
 in opir in þis maner $\wedge \wedge \wedge \wedge$ / & þis ioynynge togidere of oon
 16 boon wiþ anopir was maad bi-cause of iuvamentis þat I haue told
 tofore; þer is no boon ioyned with anoper as þese boonys ben. [1 lf. 57, bk.]

² þat insertion.

³ Latin : "Quantum os est ex parte posteriori in puppi; et conjungitur cum prædictis nervalibus mediante una commissura ad modum literæ laudæ grecæ." The word *lauda* is a corruption of *lambda*.

⁴ *augrim*. See *N. E. Dict.*, s.v. *algorism*.

- twarte offere. And þylke bon is y-clepyde coronale: þis bon hath Add. MS.
 in some manere of men a smal seme in þe ffoldyng of þe fforhed, 12,056.
 20 & þere fore sum men siggeþ þat þere beþ tweye bonys. Tweye
 opere bonys beþ y-ioyned wiþ þylke bon coronale in þe myden of
 þe hed twarte offere, & þey ben y-bounde togedyre by one lucture,
 þe whiche þat strecchiþ from tofore to byhynde, by the lengthe
 24 of þe hed, þe whiche ys y-clepyde **sagyttalis** by as myche as he
 ys schapyde lyke an arwe. And þese tweye bonys beþ y-clepyde
Nerualia, by cause of þe ffigure of the seme þat ys wiþ þe coronale,
⁶ ys þe ffigure of a synwe opere of a corde. And þese bonys ben in [1 fol. 70 a]
 28 þe heyest coppe of the hed, and behynde in þe nolle þere ys a bon
 whyche þat is y-clepyde **Alauda**, & ys y-made to þe Symilitude of
 þis cyffre of Augrym Λ , whiche þat ys Ioynede with þe bonys
 nerualibus tofore seyde, by þe mene of on 3em y-mad to þe lyknesse
 32 of þe bon tofore seyde. & þese þre 3emes whiche þat Ioyned to-
 gedyre þe foure bonys to fore seyde, ben y-made as yt were tweye⁷
 jawes, whos teth joyned eche of hem in opere in thys manere /
WIDOW & þis ioynynge togedire of on bon with an oper was y-made
 36 by-cause iuvamentes þat y haue tolde befor; þere nys no bon
 y-ioynede with an opere as þese bonys ben. Undire þe bon þat ya

⁷ MS. *tweye* twice.

The sagittal
suture unites
the nerval
bones (side
bones), II,
III.

IV. Occipital
bone with
the lambdoi-
dal suture.
figure in
augrim⁴

V. *Tasellus*
(Basilar bone)
supports all
the other
bones.

VI, VII.
Temporal
bones (men-
dosa); one
portion is
called os
petrosum.

The skull has
seven bones.

three true
sutures,
[^a 11. 58]

Vndir þe boon þat is clepid alauda, þer is a ful hard boon & holid in þe myddil, þe which boon susteyneþ alle þe boonys of þe heed. þe which boon is clepid passillus, & he is ioyned byneþe wiþ þe firste boon of þe nake. þe schap of þe coniunccioun of þe .v. boonis of þe heed is in þis maner *ΕΓΜ*. Boþe on þe riȝt side & on þe lift side of þe forseid boonys, whiche þat ben clepid nerualia * [whiche þat bep in lengthe in þe heyest place of þe hed, þere ben twey bonys on eiþere syde.] & þo boonys þat vndir setten ben clepid ossa mendosa. & þese 8 boonys in oon partie ben ful hard þere as þe hole of þe eere passip þoruȝ, & þei ben clepid petrosa; & summen seien þat þer ben .iiij. boonys ij. on eiþir side / & whanne þat alle þe boonys of þe heed ben ioyned togidere, þou schalt fynde in soþfastnes þat þer ben but vj. boonyas, 12 whanne þat þou rekenest os¹ coronale for oon boon, & .ij. boonyas þat ben clepid mendose, ij. & oon þat ben .iiij. & o boon þat is clepid alauda. & ij. boonyas þat ben clepid nerualia þat ben .vij.; & þe .vij. boon is clepid passillare, þe which is not of þe boones of þe 16 heed, but he susteyneþ alle þe opere boonys of þe heed.² & ij. maner of semes³ makip coniunccioun of alle þe boonyas in þis maner

38


¹ MS. as.




² Add. MS. 10,440, fol. 2: "*þ he is enterberyng in þe hynder partie al þe bones of þe heed, & þerfore he is clepid þe berere vp, or passillus.*"

Add. MS. 12,056. y-clepyde Alauda, þere ys a ful harde bon & y-holyde in þe myddle, þe whyche bone susteyneth alle þe bonys of þe hed. þe which 20 bon ys y-clepyde *Passilus*, & he ys ioynede byneþe wiþ þe fyrste bon of þe nekke. þe schappe of þe coniunccioun of þe fife bonys of þe hed ys in þis manere *ΕΓΜ*. Bothe on þe ryȝte syde & on þe lefte syde of þe forseide bonys whiche þat bep y-clepyde nerualia,* 24 whiche þat bep in lengthe in þe heyest place of þe hed, þere ben twey bonys on eiþere syde*; þe whiche þat bep vndiresetterys to þo bonys þat bep y-clepyde nerualia; & þo bonys þat vndire setten, ben y-clept ossa mendosa. And þese bonys in one partye ben ful 28 harde, þere as þe hole of þe ere passyþ þoruȝ, & þey ben y-clepede⁴ petrosa & sum men siggen þat þere ben foure bonys, two on eythere syde. & whanne þat alle bonys of þe hed be ioynede togidere þou schalt fynde in soþfastnesse, þat þere ben but sixe bonys whanne 32 þat þou reknyste os⁵ coronale ffor on bon, & tweye bonys þat bep y-clepyde mendose tweyne þat bep þre, and o bon þat ys y-clepyde Alauda, & tweye bonys þat is y-clepyde nerualia—þat bep sixe, and þe vij bon ys y-clepyde passillare, þe whiche ys nought of þe 36 bonys of þe hed, but he susteyneth alle þe opere bonys of þe hed. And þre maner of semys makyþ coniunccioun of alle þe bonys on þis

⁴ MS. petotra.

⁵ MS. as.

- & wip .ij. semes mendose in þis maner 220. & whanne þat þe crounne of þe heed is perfyzt, þe heed is maad in þis maner 110 / þis is þe foorme of an heed weel propossound, round  þat he myzte more wipholde, & þat he myzte lasse be hurt, & þat he be longe warpid¹, hauynge tofore & bilynde eminence: þat is to seie apeiryng, þat þe senewis þat comen out of þe brayn myzten haue a porose place of goynge out. & neþeles as ypocras & galion, whiche 9 þat expowneþ ypocras, tellip², it is possible to fynde opir in maner of makynge of heedis. Oon maner is, if eminence be not in partie of þe heed tofore, for if þat he be pleyn in partie tofore, bi þat pleynes þe seem is lost, þat is clepid coronalis / þe secunde is, if 12 þat þe heed haue noon eminence bihynde, but þat þe hyndere partie be pleyn, & bi þat pleynes þe seeme is lost þat is clepid alauda / þe þridde is, if þat þe be noon eminence bifore ne bihynde in þe heed, but al þe heed is round as a sercle, & þanne þe is but oon 16 seem in þe myddil of þe brayn þanne: for it is vnpossible þe heed to haue ony oper schap wipoute lesynge of sum partie of þe brayn, & were contrarious azens þe lijf / Bi þe myddil seem which þat is in þe heed, þere descendip a ueyne comynge fro þe lyuero bi þe
- two false sutures (mendose).
A well-proportioned head is oblong with openings for the nerves,
ypocras. & Galion
enumerate peculiar forms:
1. front part flat,
2. back part flat,
3. without any prominence.
Nota.
[16. 58, bk.]
A vein and artery come through the basilar bone,
- ¹ *Longe warpid*, Lat. oblongus. Comp. Langwyrpe bôc, *Indices Monast.*
12, ed. Kluge. ² *tellip*, error for *tellen*.

- 20 manere , & with tweye semys mendose in þis manere . Add. MS. 12,056.
And whanne þat þe corone of þe hed ys perfyt, þe hed 4ye mad in þis manere  þis ys þe forme of an hed wel proporcionede, þat he be runde because þat he myghte þe more withholde, & þat he 24 myzte þe lasse be y-hurt, and þat he be longewarped hauynge tofore & behynde eminence þat is to sigge aperyng, þat þe synwes þat comyth out of þe brayn, myghte haue a porose place of goynge out. And napelese as ypocras & galyen, whiche þat exponeþ ypocras, 28 tellyn: it is possible to fynden þre opere manere makynge of hedys. On manere is, 3if eminence be nozt in þe partye of þe hed tofore; for 3if þat he be pleyn in þe partye tofore, by þat pleynnesse þe seme is y-lost þat is y-clepyde coronalis. Secunde ys 3if þe hed 32 haff non eminence behynde, but þat þe hyndore party be playn, and by þat playnesse þe seme ys y-lost þat ys y-clepyde Alauda.⁵ þe þridde ys 3if þere be non eminence tofore ne behynde in þe hed, but alle þe hed ys runde as a cercle. And þenne þere nys 36 but on sem in þe myddel of þe breyn þanne, ffor it is vnpossible þe hed to habben enye opere schappe wipouten lesyng of some party of þe brayn; & þat were contrariouse azeine lyf. By þe myddele seme, whiche þat is in þe hed, þere dissendyth a ueyne comynge

⁵ MS. *Alauda*.

and make the
dura mater.

The blood
flows up-
wards in the
artery,

downwards
in the vein.

The veins
from the
pia mater

[16. 50]
bring the
vital spirit to
the brain,
and turn it
into under-
standing.

iiij. cellis of
þe brayn

brayn panne of a boon which þat is holid þat is clepid passillarus.
& bi þe same weye þer risiþ an arterie comynge from þe herte, &
þei ben ioyned togidere, & of þe weuingge of þe tweyne þer is
maad an hard pannicle þat is to seie a cloof þat is vndir þe brayn 4
panne; & he is hangid with summe smale ligamentis to þe brayn
panne in summe of þe semes. þe which pannicle byndiþ þe boonys
togidere, & it is clepid dura mater. & it is riȝtful þat an arterie
schulde arise vpward from byneþe, for þe blood þat is in him is 8
sutil, & his meuyng is pulsatif; & he hadde discendid from aboue
dounward, he schulde haue discendid wiþ to greet an hastynes, but
þilke ascendynge temperiþ þilke flux. & it is couenable þat þe veyne
discende bicause þat þe blood þat is in þe veynes is more þickere, 12
& þe blood þat is in þe veynes goiþ doun sotilli. & boþe þese veynes
þat ben pulsatif & not pulsatif ben ioyned wiþ dura mater / Also
þe 1 veyne strecchiþ more lower, & of hem is engendrid pia mater /
Aftir þei discenden doun to þe brayn, & þei bryngen lijf & dewe 16
norischinge & cordialle² spiritis, þe which is in þe brayn & þere
is defied, & þere resseyueþ naturel foorme of vnderstondynge. Pia
mater enuyrouneþ al þe brayn, & departiþ him into iiij. celoles þat

² MS. inserts þe.

Add. MS. 12,056. from þe lyffere, by þe breyn ponne, of a bon whiche þat is y-holyde. 20
þat is y-clepyde pasillaris. And by þe same weye þere arysith an
Arterye comynge fro þe herte, and þey ben ioyned togidere, & of
þe weffynge of þe tweyne þere is y-mad an hard pannycle þat is to
sigge a cloth þat is vndir þe brayn panne, and he is hongyde wiþ 24
sum smale ligamentys to þe brayn panne in some of þe semys, þe
whych pannycle byndeþ þe bonys togidere, & it is clepyde **dura
mater**. And yt is ryȝtful þat an Arterye scholde arysen vpwarde
from byneþyne, for þe blod þat ys in hym þat is sotyH, & hys 28
meffynge þat ys pulsatyff³; and he hadde discendyde from aboue
dunwarde, he scholde han discendyde wiþ to gret 4 an hastynesse,
but þe ascendynge temprith þulke flux. And yt is couenable þat
þe veyne discende, bycause þat þe blod þat ys in þe veynes ys more 32
þykkore, & þe blod þat is in þe veyne geþ doun softliche. & boþe
þese veynes þat buþ⁵ pulsatyf & nouȝt pulsatyf beþ y-ioynede wiþ
dura matre. And also þow; þe veyne streche more lowere, & of
hem ys engendryde pia mater. Afterward þey descenden doun to 36
þe brayn. & þey bryngen lyf & dywe noryschyng & cordyal
spirites, þe whiche is in þe brayn and þere is diffyede, & þere
resseyueþ naturel forme of vnderstondynge. Pia mater environeþ
al þe brayn, & departyth hym into þe þre celoles⁶ þat beþ chaumbres : 40

³ MS. *pulsatyff*.

⁵ *buþ*, above line.

⁶ MS. *celoles*.

ben chaumbris: þe firste, þe myddile, & þe laste. & þou; þat alle þese ben dyuydid syngulerly bi hem-siluen, it semeþ þat þe celole¹ þat is tofore in þe brayn is departid in two parties; & bi þat cause
 4 summen seien þat þer ben .iiij. ventriclis of þe brayn. þe forþere partie The foremost cell or Ventricle is the largest one, and contains
 of þe brayn is greet & brood, bicause þat he schulde resceyue manye spiritis þat ben sent to him; for þat place is propre instrument of ymagynacioun þe which resceyueþ þingis þat comprehendþ of
 8 fantasie;² & þo þingis kunnen vndirstonde resceyueþ³ bi propre instrumentis þat longiþ. & þou; þat al þe brayn, in comparisoun of þe herte & of alle opere membris of þe body, be deemed cold & moist, þis celule hauynge comparisoun to opere celules is deemed
 12 hoot & drie. & þe myddil part of þe brayn is lasse⁴ þan ony opere [4 ff. 59, bk.]
 of þe opere two parties, & her foorme is punat⁵ brood twoward þe The middle Ventricle has a pineal form,
 forþere side of þe heed, & scharpere twoward þe hyndere syde, þat he myzte be þe more able to resceyue ymagynatif þingis, & þo
 16 þingis to zeue to þe ynnere partie, & þo þingis þat ben zeue to wiþ- holdes between two addi-
 holde / þis ventricle is sett bitwene two addiamētis of þe brayn; tementis of the
 þe whiche addiamētis ben lijk to tweie buttokkis of a man þat ben brain (optical lobes),
 ioynede togidere, & þei ben [to]* þis ventricle as it were a sittynge

¹ MS. *celose*.² Lat.: *res a phantasia comprehensas*.³ Read, þo þingis comyn vndirstondynge resceyueþ. Lat.: *quas(res) communis sensus recipit*.⁵ *punat*, Lat.: *pineatus*.

20 þe firste, þe myddle, & þe laste. And þow; þat alle þese ben diffyede senglerlyche by hem selffyn, yt semeþ þat þe celele þat is tofore in þe brayn ys departyde in two parties, & by þat cause
 24 sum men siggen, þat þere ben foure ventricles of þe brayn. þe furþere part of þe brayn ys gret & brod, by cause þat he scholde resceyue manye spiritis þat ben y-sende to hym for þat place is propre instrement of y-maginacion, þe whiche resceyueþ þynges þat buþ comprehendide of fantasie; and þo þynges comen vndirstond-
 28 ynge resceyueþ by propre Instrementys þat longyþ to hym, and þaw; þat al þe brayn, in comparson of þe herte & of alle opere membres of þe body, be y-demyde colde & moist, þis celule hauynge comparson to opere celules ys y-demyde hot & dryze. þe myddel
 32 part of þe brayn ys lasse þan eny of þe opere two parties, & here forme ys pyneat, brod towarde þe furþere syde of þe hed and scharpere towarde þe hyndor syde, þat he myzte be þe more able to resceyue y-maginatyf þynges & þo þynges to zeue to þe ynnere
 36 partye & þo þynges þat beþ y-zeue to wiþ holde. þis ventricle ys y-sette bytwene tweyne additamentes of þe brayn, þe whiche additamentes ben y-liche þe two buttokkes of a man þat beþ y-ioynede togedre, and þey beþ to * þis ventricle as yt were a syttynge place
 SURGERY.

Add. MS.
12,056.

stretches and contracts during perception,

is smaller than the other Ventricles.

[12. 60]

The third Ventricle is the largest,

from it starts the Spinal Marrow.

The brain is cold and moist,

place eipir a couche vpon þe which he is drawen abroad, whanne þat he resseyueþ ymagynatif þingis; aftirward he is drawe togidere as a worm, whanne þat he resseyueþ ymagynatiyf þingis; & whanne þat þe sentence of þilke ymagynacioun is brouȝt forþ, þanne þilke ventricle is drawe along, & also þe smallere eende of þe ventricle entriþ into þe ventricle þat is bihynde in þe heed. & þis ventricle is myche lasse þan þe opere tweyne, bicause þat no senewis proceden¹ not out of him, & þat manye þingis myȝte be comprehendid [in 8 lital]* place þat vertu of witt myȝte þe sunnere be gaderid togidere to take his² counseil; & þis ventricle to comparisoun of opere ventriclis is deemed hoot & drie. & aftir þat þe hyndere ventricle, þe which is grettere & hardere þan þis; þe which [in]* comparisoun to 12 þe opere tweyne is demed cold & drie, þe which is brood twoward þe fore partie of þe heed & scharp bakward, þe which resceyueþ sentence þat ben schewid & kepiþ hem priuyliche as a cheste kepiþ tresour. & out of him goiþ out nucha poruȝ þe hole of þe boon, 16 þat is clepid passillaris, & þilke nucha is clopid wiþ two pannicles þat goon out of þe brayn.

& al þe brayn is deemed cold & moist, bicause þat he schulde

¹ MS. *proceden*.

Add. MS. 12,056. [fol. 71 b] opere a couche, vpon þe whyche he ys drawyne abroad, whenne þat he resseyueþ³ y-magynatyff þynges. And afterwarde he ys y-drawe togedire as a worme, whenne þat he resceyueth y-magynatyff þynges; and whenne þat þe sentence of þilke y-magynacioun ys y-brought forth, þenne þilke ventricle ys y-drawe alonge. And also þe smallere ende of þis ventricle entriþ into þe ventricle þat ys behynde in þe hed, and þis ventricle ys myche lasse þenne þe opere tweyne bycause þat non synwes procedent not out of hym, and þat manye þynges myȝhte be endyde in lital* place, þat vertue of wytt myȝhte þe sonnere be y-gedryde togedre to taken hys counseyll. And thys ventrycle to comparson of opere ventricles ys y-demyde hot & drye. After þat ys þe hyndere ventricle, whiche ys grattere & hardere þenne thys; þe whiche in *comparson of þe opere tweyne ys y-demyde colde & drye, þe whiche is brod toward þe fore partye of þe hed & scharpe bachwarde, þe whyche resseyuyth sentense þat beþ schewyde & kepyth hem priuyliche as a chest kepyth tresore. And out of hym goth out⁴ nucha⁵ prowre þe hole of þe bon þat ys y-clepyde passillarys. And þilke nucha ys y-clothyde⁶ wiþ tweye pannycles þat goth out of þe brayn. And alle þe brayn ys y-demyde colde & moyst. bycause þat he scholde

⁴ in þe a, struck through after goth out.

⁵ nucha on margin.

⁶ MS. *ys y-clothyde twice*.

- atempren spiritual fumosite þat comen of þe herte, & þat he schulde not ben dried for to myche meuyngþe þat he haþ in worchingþe of vertues; & þe brayn is whijt, bicause þat he schulde þe bettere white like a painter's table,
- 4 resseyue resoun & vnderstondyngþe / For if þeyntouris whanne þey schulen peynte a table, first þei maken it whijt, for þer wole no colour lasten but þoruþ him; & it is neische þat þe meuyngþe of vertues myzte þe bettere han place; & þe brayn is towþ þat þe soft and tough.
- 8 senewis þat goon out of hym ¹myzte be þe more towþ, & þe more þei ben enlongid from her bigynnyngþe & þe more hardere þei schulen be, & also þat þei schulden be bowable ynowþ & nouþt azenstondyngþe her hardnesse. & it is nessessarie þat þe brayn be clopid wip The brain is protected by two Pannicles (Membranes);
- 12 .ij. panniclis: þat is to seie .ij. clopis, þat in his meuyngþe, [as]* I haue seid tofore, þat it schulde not be hurt of þe brayn panne. Al þe brayn is departid into .iiij. colules² with addiamentis of þe panniclis of þe matris, þat þe spiritis myzten þe lengere dwelle in þe ventricle which diuide it into three cells,
- 16 to resseyuen bi ordure of digestioun, foorme & perfeccioun more þan þei hadden first of þe herte; & þat euery vertu myzte fulfille his accidens³ in his ventricle, or þan þe vois⁴ þat is comprehendid where thought is formed.

² *cellis*, written above line.³ *accidens* for *accioun*.⁴ *vois*, Lat.: "antequam res comprehensa posset ad sequentem ventriculum pertransire."

- atempren spirituel ffumosites þat comyth of þe herte, and þat he Add. MS. 12,056.
- 20 scholde noþte ben y-dreyþede fforto myche meffyngþe þat he haþ in worchyngþe of vertues. And þe brayn is whit bycause þat scholde resceyue þe bettere resoun & vnderstondyngþe. Ffor þese þeyntores, whanne þey schulle peynten a table, firste þey maken yt whyte, for
- 24 þere nylle none coloure lasten but yt be leyde vpon whyt; & it is þenne opere rare, because þat vndirstondyngþe myzte þe sonnere passe þorwe hym; & yt is nessche þat þe meffyngþes off vertues myghte þe betyre habbe place; & þe brayn ys towþ, þat þe synwes
- 28 þat goth out of hym, myzte be þe ⁵more towþere, and þe more þat þey ben enlongyde from here bygynnyngþe, þe more hardere þey scholde be; and also that þey scholde be bowable y-nowþ nought azenestondyngþe here hardnesse. And yt is necessarye þat þe
- 32 brayn scholde be cloped with tweye clothys, þat in hys meffyngþe as *y haue seyde tofore he scholde nought ben y-hurt of þe brayn panne.

Also þe brayn ys departyde into þre celules with þe addiamentes of þe pannicles of þe⁶ matris, þat þe spiritis myzt þe lengore dwellen in þe ventricles, to reseyfen by ordre, digestioun, forme & perfeccion, more þanne þey hadden fyrst of þe hert, and þat euery vertue myghte fulfille hys accioun in hys ventricle, ere

⁶ MS. *pie*, twice.

Part of the
brain is most
essential to
life,

Nota

[p. 11. 61]
especially the
substance of
the Ven-
tricles.

Different
kinds of
wounds on
the head.

myzte passe to þe ventricl þat is sewingge.¹ Not azenstondynge þese propirtees þe brayn haþ sum substaunce of marie þe which fulfillþ þe voidenes of þe forseid panniclis. & þilke mary enuyroun- neþ þe forseid panniclis, of þe which mary þer may sum partie in 4 hurtynge of þe heed be lost; & not azenstondynge þe goynge out² of sum partie of þilke mary, a man schal nouȝt die. For þis mary ³is not of þe substaunce of þe ventriclis of þe brayn of þe which mynde is maad; for þei ben of so greet nobilite, þouȝ þat þer be 8 neuere so litil infeccioun, or ellis þat þer falle neuere so litil a lesyng of hem⁴ þei ben depriued of her heelp, in so myche þat oon colule⁵ may not be lost & a man be saued, as manye idiotis supposen contrarie / ⁶Anotamie of yȝen, eeris, nose, chekelappis, mouþ, tunge & 12 teep, we deferren to ordeyne in þe þridde tretis, in þe whiche if god wole we þenken to treten, & of opere sicknessis, & of opere lymes out-cept woundis.

& þo hurtyngis þat ben maad in þe heed eiþir þat ben maad 16 wiþoute wounde or wiþ wounde. & wheþer þat þei ben wiþoute wounde or wiþ wounde, eiþir þei ben wiþ brekyng of þe brayn

¹ MS. *swingge*.

² MS. inserts *þ*.

⁴ of hem written on margin.

⁵ *cellul* written above.

⁶ The MS. has a marginal note: *Anotemy off eyen, eres, nose, chekes, mouthe, tounge, teth.*

Add. MS. 12,056. þanne þe foys þat ys comprehendye myghte passe to þe ventricl þat ys sywyngge. Nowȝt ageynestondynge þese propretes, þe brayn 20 haþ sum substaunce of marie whiche fulfillþ þe voydenesses of þe forseide pannycleres. And þilke marye envyrownyth þe foreseyde pannycles, of þe whyche marye þere may sum partye in þe hurtynge of þe hed ben y-lost; and nouȝt ageynestondynge þe goynge out of 24 sum partye of þilke marye, a man schal nouȝt deye. Ffor þis marye is nought of þe substaunce of þe ventricles of þe brayn, of whiche mynde ys y-mad; ffor þey ben of so grete noblete, ȝif þere be neuere so litel infectioun opere ellys þat þere falle neuere so lytel a lesyng 28 of hem, þey ben deprefyde of alle here helthe, in so myche þat on celele may nouȝt ben y-lost, and a man ben saffyde, as manye ydyotes supposen. Anothomye of eynen, neose, erne, chekelappes, mouþ, tonge & teþ, we deferren to ordeynen in þe þridde tretys, in 32 þe distynccioun whiche ȝif god wol, we þynkeþ forto treten of opere syknesse of þe lymes, outsepte woundes. And þo hurtynges þat beþ y-mad in þe hed, opere þey ben mad withouten wounde, opere with wounde. & wheþere þat it be wyth wounde opere wiþoute 36 wounde, opere þey ben with brekyng of þe brayn þanne, opere

panne or wipoute brekyng of þe brayn panne / Or wheþer þat it be maad wip breche of þe brayn panne, or wipoute breche of þe brayn panne, summe ben wip hurtyng of þe brayn, & summe ben
 4 wipoute hurtyng of þe brayn / & riȝt as þilke hurtis haue difference in tokenes, so þei han difference in perels & pronosticaciouns & maners with þe whiche þei musten ben holpen /

- ¹& if þat ony hurt be in þe heed wipoute ony wounde as wip [? II. 61, bk.]
 8 fallynge or wip smytyng of a stoon or of a staf or wip sum opir hurt of þe
 þing þat brusip, & if þat it be wipoute breche of þe brayn panne without any
 & wip hirtyng of þe brayn panne, it nedip not but schauynge of wound or
 þe heed & anoyntyng with hote oilis of rosis & [abofen þe vncture]* fracture.
 12 to strawen on þe poudre of mirtillis seed, & streyne þe place wip a *Nota*
 boond til al þe place be fastned & þe swellynge be vanyschid away / Have the
 In þis maner þou fastne al þe place þat no þing schal be corruppid, head shaved
 or ellis þer schal dwelle a litil corrupcioun, & if þat ony þing of and an oint-
 16 corrupcioun abide, þe place schal be opened wip an instrument, & ment applied.
 so schal þe quyttur be excludid, & he schal be curid riȝt as opere empostymes þat ben woundid.

& if þat þe brayn panne were broke wipoute wounde of þe Fracture of
 20 heed þe which may be knowe bi disposicioun of þe cause & also of the skull,
 þe sike man, in biholdynge, if þat þat smytiþ were strong, or ellis without any
 open wound.

- without brekyng of þe breyn panne. And wheþer ²þat yt be mad Add. MS.
 wip þe breche of þe brayn panne opere withouten breche of þe breyn 12,056.
 24 panne, some ben with hurtyng of þe brayn, some without hurtyng [? fol. 72 b]
 of þe brayn. And ryȝte as þilke hurtynges habben dyfference in toknes, so þey haue differens in pereles & pronosticaciouns & maners, with þe whiche þey most ben y-holpen. And zif an hurt be
 28 in þe hed withouten wounde, as with fallynge, opere with smytyng of a ston, opere a staff, opere with sum opere thyng þat brusyþ, and zif þat yt be withouten breche of þe brayn panne, & with outen hurtyng of þe brayn panne, it nedyþ nouȝt but schaffynge of þe
 32 hed, & anoyntyng wip hote oyle of roses, and abofen þe vncture* to strawyn on þe poudre of þe seed of myrtylles, & streyne þe place with a band tyl al þe place be y-fastnyde & þe swellynge be y-vanschyde awaye. In þis manere þou schalt fastne al þe place, þat
 36 noþyng schal be corumped, opere ellys þere schall dwelle a lytel corrupcioun. And zif enye þyng of corrupcion abyde, þe place schal ben y-opnyde with an Instrument, & so alle þe quytter schal be excludyd, & he schal ben y-curyd ryȝt as opere empostemys þat beþ
 40 y-woundyde. And zif þat þe brayn panne were y-broke withoute enye wounde of þe hed, þe whiche may ben y-knowe by dysposicioun of þe cause & eke of þe syke man, in byholdynge zif þat þat smyt

Symptoms of the fracture: [11. 62] *pat* þe sike haue falle from his place, or ellis *pat* he was smyte with strong¹ smyting, & also if *pat* he fel & myzte not hastili arise. ¹& if as giddiness, *pat* he hadde scotomie,² *pat* is to seie a maner sijknes, whanne *pat* þer semeþ as flien or opere smale gnattis flien tofore his yzen / or 4 ellis he spewip his mete, or he felip to gret akþe in þe heed, & if *pat* he may not breke a knotte of a straw wip hise teep, & if þe heed be smyte wip a lizt drie staf as of salow or ellis of pinee— & þanne leie þin eere to his heed, & if *pat* þe boon be hool þou 8 schalt here an hool soun aftir þe comparisoun of þe soun of an hool belle, also if þou makist þe sike man to holde bitwene his teep a þred twyned & I-wexid, & þanne bigynne to harpe with þi nailis vpon þe þred faste bi þe sike mannes mouþ, & so harpe wip þi naylis 12 vpon þe þred alwey streyned & makynge soun to þe eende of þe þred, & þilke þred schal ben on lenkþe fro þe mouþ of a cubite, & so þou schalt harpe ofte tymes, & if *pat* þe pacient mowe susteyne þe soun, he haþ not his brayn þanne broke, for if his brayn 16 þanne were broke, þe sike man myzte not susteyne þe soun of þe þred. Alle þese signys, or ellis manye of hem bitokenen *pat* [11. 62, bk.] þe brayn þanne is broken / & tweyne ²of þe laste signys ben

² *scotomie*. Vigo Interpret. "*Scotomia*. They shoulde saye, *Scotoma*, and it is a disease, when darckenes ryseth, when al thinges seme to go rounde about."

Add. MS. 12 056. were stronge, opere ellys *pat* þe syke haue y-fallen from hys place, 20 opere ellys *pat* he was y-smyte with stronge smytinge; and also zif *pat* he fel & myght nought hastlye aryse, and zif *pat* he hadde scotomie: *pat* ys to sugge a manere seknesse, whenne *pat* þere semyth as flyezes, opere smale blake gnattys vleyzen tofore hys 24 eyzen, opere ellys he spyweþ hys mete, opere he felyth to grette akþe in hys hed, and zif *pat* he may nought breken a knotte of a strawz with hys teth, and zif þe hed be smyten with a lyzt dreyze staff, as of salwe opere ellys pyne, and þenne leye þyn ⁴ere to hys hed; & 28 zif *pat* þe bon be hol, þou schalt heren an hol soun after þe comparisoun of þe soun of an hol belle & a bloke belle; also zif *pat* þou makyste þe syke man to holde bytwene hys tep a þrede y-twyned & y-waxed, & þenne begynne to harpen with þy naylles vpon þe 32 þrede faste be þe seke mannes mouth, & so harpe with þyne naylles vpon þe þred alle wey streyned, in makynge soun to þe ende of þe þred, & þilke þred schal ben of lengþe from þe mouth be þe space of a Kubyte; and þou schalt harpe so ofte tymes, & zif *pat* þe 36 pacient mowe susteyne þe soun, he haþ nozt hys brayn þanne y-broke; ffor zif hys breyn þanne were broke, þe seke man myghte nought susteyne þe soun of þe þred. Alle þese signes opere ellis manye of hem betokne *pat* þe breyn þanne is broken. And to þe 40

more certeyn þan any of þe opere. & vndirstonde þat þe brayn
 panne mai ofte tymes be to-broken, & neþeles þe brayn felip noon
 harm in þe bigynnyng. But aftirward ofte tymes of hirtyng
 4 of þe brayn panne, þe brayn is hirt / Galien witnessynge, þe Galien
 brekyng of boonys in þe heed is dyuers in perels fro brekyng
 of opere boonys in þe bodi, for þe accidens þe which þat fallip ofte
 tymes to þe breche of þe brayn panne. Neipir is no man ne neuere
 8 was þat myȝte euermore helpe to alle accidentis, whanne þat þe
 brayn was meued in þe bigynnyng þat not aȝenstondynge his
 help,¹ be he neuere so good a leche, þat þe syke ne muste die /
 Eucl accidentis þe whiche þat [comyth to þe accidentes of þe
 12 brayn & of hys]* pannicle ben² alwey dwellynge as constipacioun
 of þe wombe, or ellis þe flix of þe wombe, or ellis crokidnes, or ellis
 lokynge asquynt of þe iȝen, or ellis wepyng of þe oon yȝe, or ellis
 an hard scotomie, or ellis febilnes of alle þe vertues & chaungynge.
 16 Not oonly animal vertues, þat ben vertues of þe brayn, ben³ I-
 chaungid, also naturel vertues & liui⁴ vertues—sensibles & ⁵motifes ;

Fracture of
 the skull is
 very danger-
 ous,

the following
 accidents
 (symptoms)
 are frequently
 mortal.

Evil symp-
 toms:
 yvel acci-
 dentes

If the animal,
 natural, and
 vital func-
 tions,
 [11. 63]

¹ *help* in margin.

² One word "*spewing*" omitted, and *as* erroneously inserted in both MSS. Lat.: "*Mala autem accidentia . . . sunt vomitus perseverans constipatio ventris,*" etc.

³ MS. inserts *nouȝt*.

⁴ *liui*, Lat. *vitales*.

laste signes beþ more serteine þenne enye of þe opere. And vnder-
 stonde þat þe breyn panne may ofte tymes ben to-broke, & napeles
 20 þe brayn felyth nought in þe bygynninge none hurtyng. But
 afterwardys ofte tyme of hurtyng of þe brayn panne þe brayn ys
 y-hurt, Galien wytnessynge; the brekyng of þe bonys of þe hed ys
 dyuers in perels from brekyng of opere bonys of þe body, for þe
 24 accidentes whiche þat fallyth ofte tymes to þe breche of þe brayn
 panne. Ne þere nys no man, ne neuere ne was, þat myȝte euyre
 more helpen to alle accidentes whanne þat þe brayn was meffye in
 þe bygynninge, þat nouȝt ageynestondynge his helpe, be he neuere
 28 so gode a leche, þat þe syke ne moste deye. Euyle accidentes
 whiche þat *comyth to þe accidentes of þe brayn & of hys pannycle,
 ben alwey dwellynge: as constipacioun of þe wombe, opere ellys
 flux of þe wombe, opere ellys crokydnesse, opere ellys lokynge a-
 32 squynte of þe eyȝen, opere ellys wepyng of þat on eyȝe, opere ellys
 an hard scotomye, opere ellys ffebylnesse of alle þe vertues &
 chaungynge. And noȝt only anymal vertues, þat beþ vertewys of
 þe brayn, beþ noȝt y-chaungyde, but also naturell vertewys, & lyfy
 36 vertewys sensyble & motifes; sensible, for þat þey seen noȝt

Add. MS.
 12,056.

the imagination,
reason,

memory,
and motor
power are
affected.

A strong
fever pre-
ceded by a
cold shiver-
ing,

blackness of
the tongue,
blains, etc.,
are bad
symptoms.

sensible, for þei ben¹ not riȝtfulliche; for boþe her heerynge & opere comoun wittis ben troublid; also priuy vertues þat ben troublid as ymaginatif, for þei bileuen þei seen, [þat þey seen nouȝt];* also resonable vertues, for þei speken in deyn² & answeren whanne þei 4 ben nouȝt I-askide / also³ memorial þat þei þenke nouȝt on her owne name / also meuable vertues is so myche greued þat vnneþe þei moun nouȝt meue hem nameliche aboute þe necke. þei syke greuouseleche, & a scharp feuere falliþ, þe which arrigor, þat is to seie a cold schurg- 8 ynge⁴ goiþ tofore / Arrigor is no þing⁵ ellis, but as it were a prick- ynge of nedelis, or ellis of netlis in þe fleisch, & if þis rigor come wiþ a feuere, or ellis without feuere, it is þe worste signe tokene of deef, & if þe crampe folowe it is deedly / Also þese ben yuel accidentis: 12 blaknes of þe tunge, bleyenis aboute þe skyn or þe chekis, or in ony partie of þe heed þanne [in]* þe wounde, is an yuel signe.⁶ & sumtyme blood comeþ out at þe eeris & noseþrillis. & if þe more partie of þese tokenese or ellis alle comen, þe sike man muste nedis die, 16 namely, & þe accidentis conteynen⁶; ⁷& specialy if þe sike man haue be her-tofore manye daies in good disposicioun, & after pilke

¹ *ben*, error for *seen*. Lat. : quia non recte vident.

² See page 102, note 2. ³ MS. *alle*. ⁴ *schurgyng*, schurien, to shower.

⁵ Lat. : vel in alia parte capitis quam in vulnere : quod est malum signum.

⁶ *conteynen* for *continwen*.

Add. MS. 12,056. also priuye vertues ben y-trublyde as ymagenatyff, ffor þey beleffe þat þey seen, *þat þey seen nouȝt; also resonable vertue, for 20 þey speken in deveyn, & þey answeren whanne þey beþ nouȝt y-askyde; also memoryal, þat þey þynke nouȝt on here owne name; also meffable vertue ys so myche y-greuyde, þat vnneþe þey mowe nouȝt mefen hem namlyche aboute þe nekke. þey syken greuouselye, 24 and a scharpe ffuere fallyth, þe whiche a rigor goth tofore. A rigor nys nothyng ellys but as yt were a prikyng of nedlys opere of nettlys in þe flesch, and ȝif þis rigor come with a ffuere opere Sygnum Mortal. ellys with outen ffuere, yt is worst signe, and ȝif the crampe fol- 28 wen, yt ys dedlye. Also þese beþ yuele accidentes: blaknesse of þe tonge, bleynesse⁹ aboute þe chyn opere þe chekenesse, opere in enye opere partye of þe hed þenne in* þe wounde, ys an yuele signe, and sum tyme blod comyth out at þe erys & noseþrylles. And ȝif þe 32 more partye of þese toknys, opere ellys alle comen, þe syke man moste nedys deyzen, namlye & þo Accidentes continwen, and specialy ȝif þat þe syke man haue y-be tofore manye daies in gode disposicioun, & after pilke disposicioun þese yuele accidentes fallen; 36

⁹ *bleynesse*, leady colour. See *N. E. Dict.* s. v. *bley*; mistake for *bleynes*, blains.

- good disposicioun pilke yuel accidentis fallen ; but sumtyme in þe bigynnyng þese yuel accidentis fallen wickid, & aftirward bi good gouernaile & good help of þe leche pilke yuel accidentis ben departed & good comeþ, and þanne it is a [good]* signe, for it bi-tokeneþ strenkþe of kynde, hauynge no drede of þe sijknes, & kunnyng of þe leche / O holi goost, al þing fulfyllynge, alle þingis sanctifynge, & alle þingis liztnynge, & alle þingis gouernynge, opene þe yzen of hem þat loken & reden on þis book, þat þei moun vndirstonde þat þing þat is weel seid, & þat þei moun demene¹ þoruþ þi cleernes þat, þat is yuel seid, & specialy in þis caas² where þat oonly not I þat am vnwijs & vnkunnyng, but also greete maistris & more kunnyng han writen sotilliche, & han sett in þis caas dyuers vndirstondynge. Ne þei ne I ne foond no wey in þis werk þat myȝte us make sikir, specialiche in scryuynge of þe brayn panne, in þe whiche cure³ dyuers men haue³ I-wrouȝt dyuersliche.
- 16 "I wole bigynne at a symple wounde of þe fleisch of þe heed, in þe which þat þer is noon hurtynge of þe brayn ne brayn panne. // Biholde whepir pilke wounde be maad wiþ a swerd or ony þing sembla[b]le to it, & þanne sowe pilke wounde, & caste aboue þe

It is a good sign when evil symptoms grow better.

May the Holy Ghost enlighten the readers.

[* If. 64]

Nota
Treatment of
a symple
wounde.

¹ demene, O.Fr. "demener," for demen.

² in þis caas. Lat. : in isto passu. See below pas.

³ cure, here, above line.

- 20 ryȝtfullyche, for boþe herynge & opere comyn wyttes ben y-trublyde; but sumtyme in þe bygynninge euyle accidentes comyþ, afterwarde, by good gouernaile & by gode helpe of the leche, þese euyle accidentes ben departyde & good comyþ, & þenne yt is a good *
24 signe, for it betokenyþ strengþe off kynde, hauynge non drede of þe syknesse & konyngnesse of þe leche. O holy gost, al thyng fulfyllynge, al þinge sanctifynge, lytnynge & gouernynge, opyne þe eyzen of hem þat redyn in thys booke, þat þey mowen vndirstonde
28 þat þynge þat is wel seyde, & þat þey mowe demen þorwe þy clernes þat þat⁵ ys euyle seyde, specyliche in þis where þat only nouȝte y þat am vnwys & vnkunnyng, but also grettere maistryes & more kunnyng han y-writen dotousliche. & haþ y-sett in þis cas
32 "dyuerse vnderstondynge. Ne þey ne y ne fonde non wey in þis [¶ fol. 74 a] werke þat myȝte maken vs sykere, specialiche in grefynges of þe breyne panne, in whose cure dyuerse men han wrought dyuerslye; y wyȝ begynne at a symple wounde of þe flesch & of þe hed, in þe
36 whiche þat þere ys non hurtynge of þe brayn ne of þe brayn panne. Biholde whar pilke wounde be maad wiþ a swerde opere enye þynge semblaþle to hit, & þan sowen þylke wounde, & caste abofen þe

Add. MS.
12,056.

⁵ MS. at.

⁷ Heading of the page: *Cure of symple Wounde off þe hed.*

wounde þe poudre of lym tofore seid, & do al þing bi ordre, as it is conteyned aboue in þe chapitle of woundis of fleisch /

Treatment
of a contused
wound.

Apply
a maturatif,

[² If. 64, bk.]
a mundifi-
catif,
and
a defensif.

Cure of a
wound which
touches the
membrane.

& if þat a wounde be maad in þe heed wiþ brusynge, as wiþ a mace,¹ or wiþ a staf, or ony þing þat brusip, þanne it is necessarie to 4 leie aboue þe brusynge a maturatif maad of iiij. parties of watir, & oon partie of comoun oile & flour of wheete, þat suffisip to make it pikke,² til þat þe mater þat is brusid be maturid; þe which maturatif schal be do abroad vpon a linnen cloop & leid to þe 8 wounde, & þou schalt fulfille þe wounde wiþ oile of rosie & ȝelke of an ey, & lynt of an oold linnen cloop medlid togidere, til þat þe wounde ȝeue quytture & þe akþe be aswagid. & aftirward leye in þe wounde drie lynt of old cloop, & fille þe wounde of þe same 12 lynet, & leie aboue þe mundificatif of mel roset & barly mele, ³til þat it be perfiztly clensid; & leie aboute þe wounde, from þe bigynnyng til þat þe wounde be parfiztly clensid, a defensif of bole armonyak, þe which I haue told ofte tyme; aftirward incarne 16 it, þat is to seie brynge ouer fleisch, & aftirward consowde.

& if þat þis wounde towche þe pannicle þat byndip boonys togidere, þowȝ þat þe boon be not to-broken, charge it not litil, but

¹ mace, Lat. macis.

² MS. pilke.

Add. MS. 12,056. poudre of lym tofore seyd, and do alle þynge be ordre as yt is 20 conteynede aboue in þe chapitell off wounde of þe flesch; and ȝif þat a wounde be mad in þe hed with a brusynge, as with a mace

Maturatif
for brosure

opere a staf, oper with enye þynge þat brusyþ, þanne it is necessarie to leggen aboue þe brusynge a maturatyf, y-mad of foure parties of 24 water, & on partye of comyn oyle & floure of whete, þat suffisip to maken yt pikke, tyl þat þe matere þat is brusyde be matured; þe whiche maturatyff schal be do abroad on a clop & y-leyde to þe wonde, & þou schalt fulfille þe wounde with oyle of roses & þe ȝolke 28 of an eyȝe,⁴ & lenet of an olde lynne clout y-medlyde to gedre, tyl þat þe wounde ȝif quytter & þe akþe be aswagede. & afterwarde leye in þe wounde dreye lynet of lynne cloth, & fille þe wounde full of þe same lynet, & leye aboue þe mundificatyff of mel roset & 32 barlye mele, tyl þat he be perfilye clansyde, & leye aboute þe wounde fro þe begynnyng, tyl þat þe wonde be perfilie clansyde, a defensyf of bol armonyak, þe whiche y haue tolde of ofte tymes; afterward incarne hit—þat is to sigge, brynge ouere flesch, & after- 36 warde consoude yt; and ȝif þat þis wounde touchith þe pannicle þat bynde þe bonys togedre, þowȝ þat þe bon be nouȝt to-broken,

⁴ eyȝe at the beginning of a line.

- take þerof good hede, & do þerynne in þe wounde hoot oile of rosis down to þe pannicle þat byndiþ boonys togidere, til þat þer be noon akyng in þe wounde. & kepe þilke wounde as þou woldist
- 4 kepe opere woundis of þe brayn panne; & kepe þe brayn fro cold & fro heete, for cold is moost greuous to boonys & to panniclis þat ben woundid. þer ben summe maner men þat leien wipout forþ on alle maner woundis of þe heed, wheþer it be wip wounde of þe
- 8 brayn panne or wipoute þe wounde of þe brayn panne, in what maner þat þe heed be hurt, a lynnen cloþ wet in þe oynement þat is maad on þis maner / Take white rosis libram ß, oile of rosis ʒ v, whiȝt wex ʒ iiij, þei melten alle togidere in an yren panne, & þei
- 12 maken ²þerof .j. bodi, & boile it aftirward in good wyn bi þe space of an hour; & þei leten it aftirward nyȝ colden, & þei weten þeriane a pece of a lynnen clout, & þei schapen þilke pece wip a schere aftir þat þe wounde is, & þanne þei baþe þilke pece in good wiyn, &
- 16 þanne leie þilke pece [on þe wounde]*, & anon aftir þei leien vpon þilke pece on eipir side of þe wounde a plumaciol I-wet in good hoot wiyn; & þei leien on a drie pelowe of herdis vpon þo two wete pelowis, þe which drie pelowe of herdis schal comprehendende þe
- 20 tweie wete, & bynde hem faste; & þei ȝeuen to summen to drynke

Apply
oilum ro.
hoot.

Meta

Some physicians use a general treatment for wounds on the head.

Entreat.¹

They apply Compresses with an ointment,

[² ff. 66]

¹ *Entreat.* See entreten ne. entreat, Mätzner, *Dict.*

- charge yt noȝt litel but take þere of gode hede, & do in þe wounde hot oyle of roses don to þe pannycle, tyl þat þere be non akþe in þe wounde. & kepe þilke wounde, as þou woldiste kepen opere wondys
- 24 of þe brayn panne & of þe brayn, fro colde & from hete; ffor colde ys most greuest to bonys & to pannycles þat beþ woundyde. ³þere ben some manere of men þat leggen withouten forth on alle manere wondys of þe hed, wheþere it be wip wounde of þe brayn panne
- 28 opere without wounde of þe brayn panne, in what manere þat þe hed ben y-hurt, a lynnen cloþ y-wett in þe oynement y-made in þis manere: R whit resine lb. ß., oyle of roses ʒ v., whyt wex ʒ iiij., þey melten all togedres in an erthyne panne, & þey maken þere of
- 32 on body, & þey boyllen yt afterward in gode wyn by þe space of an Oure; & þey leten afterwarde nyȝ colden, & þey weten þere yane a pece of lynnen cloþ, & þey schapen þilke pece with a schere aftre þe wounde ys, & þey baþen þylke pece in gode wyn, & þey leggen
- 36 þilke pece on þe wounde,* and anon afterwarde þey leggen on þilke pece on eipere syde of þe wounde a plumacyole, y-wet in good hote wyn, & þey leggen on a drye pylwe of herdes vpon þo tweie wete pylwes, þe whiche dreie pylwe schalt comprehendende þe tweie wete
- 40 & bynden hem faste; and þey ȝeuen some men to drynken gode

Add. MS.
12,066.

[² fol. 74 b]

Oura
Ancellina

and diet with
wine and
fowls.

I never dared
to try this
treatment.

[³ If. 65, bk.]

Nota bene.

Wine is
especially
dangerous.

riht good wyn, & to ete good fleisch of hennes & of capouns; &¹
pei comaunden to drynke a drope of water; & pei gouernen on pis
maner alle men þat ben woundid in þe heed differentliche, & pei
seyn þat mo men ben heelid bi pis maner cure þan dien. But bi as 4
myche as alle auctouris ben azens pis cure, namely in dietyng, I ne
was neuere hardi to preue pis maner cure; for in mannys bodi a
medicyn schal not be preued which þat is not acordynge to resoun /
For alle autouris acorden þat þer is no þing² þat so soone greueþ þe 8
brayn & þe senewis as wiyn doþ, & vsynge of fleisch is cause of
bryngynge yn an hoot enpostyme. Neuere þe-latter if a man þat
vsip of custum sich a maner dietyng haue a strong heed, in his
hele him dredip no wiyn, & þe vertu of him þat is sijk be strong— 12
in sum manere of folk wiþ pis maner gouernaile, vertu is more
strenkþid, & þe sunner þei ben heelid. But I ne procede not wiþ
sich a maner dietyng bi cause of drede lest an hoot enpostyme
schulde come to þe sore, but I procede in dietyng & worche aboute 16
þe wounde as I haue seid tofore.

Treatment if
the skull is
broken:

Opere men loke [in brekynges of þe brayn panne, wheper þat]*
þe brekyng of þe brayn panne be with a greet wounde, or smal

¹ Lat.: & præcipiunt quod unam guttam aquæ non bibat.

Add. MS. 12,056. wyn, & to eten gode flessch of capouns & of hennys; & þey 20
comaunden to drynken a drope watere; and þey gouernen on pis

manere alle men þat ben woundyde in þe hed differentlyche, & þey
sigge þat mo³ men ben y-helyde by pis manere cure þen dyzen.
But by as myche as alle auttours beþ azeyns pis cure, namlyche in 24
dyetyng, y ne was neuere hardye to preuen pis manere of cure;
ffor in mannys bodye a medycine schal nouzt ben preuyde, whiche
þat is nozt acordynge to resoun; ffor alle auctores acorden, þat þere
ys noþynge þat so sone greuyth þe brayn & þe synwes as wyn doþ, 28
and vsynge of flesch ys cause of bryngynge in an hot Emposteme.
Neuere þe latere gif a man þat vsith of custome swyche a manere
dyetyng haffe a stronge hed, & in hys hele he dredyth non wyn,
[⁴ fol. 75 a] & þe vertue of hym þat ys seek ⁴be stronge, in some manere of folk 32
with pis manere of gouernaylle vertue ys more y-streynþed, & sunner
þey ben y-helyde. But y ne procede nouzt wiþ swyche a manere
dyetyng, by cause of drede leste an hote empostome scholde come
to þe sore; but y procede in dyetyng & worche aboute þe wounde, 36
as y haue seyde tofore. Opere men loken* in brekynges of þe
brayn panne, wheper þat þe brekyng of þe breyne panne be with a
gret wounde opere a smal wounde, opere without wounde; and gif

³ MS. no.

wounde, or withoute wounde. & if þat þer be a greet wounde, þei loken wheþer þei moun se if ony pece of þe brayn panne be to-
 broken, & þei don it away. & aftirward þei putten bitwene þe
 4 brayn panne & duram matrem a pinne clout wet in þe white of an
 ey, & sumwhat þe white compressid out, & þei fulfillen al þe wounde
 of þe brayn panne with sich a maner cloop. & þei leyn in þe ouer
 wounde which þat is in þe fleisch, lynet wet in þe white of an ey,
 8 til þat þe blood be staunchid; ¹& þei leien aboute a plumaciol wet
 in an ey. & whanne þe blood is staunchid, þei leien a dreie cloop
 vndir þe brayn panne in þe wounde, & þei leien aboute þe wounde a
 potage, þe which engendriþ quytture; & whanne þat þe quytture is
 12 engendrid, þei leien in þe wounde carp, ²eipir lynet of a cloute; &
 þei anoynte aboute þe wounde wiþ vnguento fusco; & at þe laste
 eende þei leien aboute apostolicon.³

& þei asaie in þis maner if þat þe brekyng of þe brayn panne
 16 be wiþ a rimel,⁴ þat is to seie a chene, eipir a creueis; & if þat
 ilke creueis peerse to wipinne, makynge þe sike man to streyne his

Broken pieces
are removed,wet com-
presses
applied to
stanch the
blood;

[12. 66]

then dry
compresses,
a poultice,and an
ointment.Treatment of
a fissure of
the skull;

² carp, Lat. carpia, 'charpie.' oil struck through after carp.

³ *Apostolorum Unguentum*, a cleansing Ointment, so call'd, because it is made of twelve Drugs, according to the number of the Apostles.—Kersey. 1706.

⁴ rimel, Lat.: si fractura esset rimalia. O.Fr. rimule, Lat. rimula, a small chink.

þat þere ben a gret wounde þey loken wheþere þey mowe seen zif
 enye pece of þe brayn panne ben to-broken, & þey don yt away.
 20 And afterwarde þey putten bytwene þe brayn panne & duram
 matrem a þenne clout y-wett in þe whyte of an eyze, & sumwhat þe
 whyte compressyde out, & þey fulfyllen alle þe wounde of þe brayn
 panne with swiche a manere cloth. & þey leggen in þe ofere
 24 wounde whiche þat ys in þe flesch, lenyt y-wett in þe whyte of an
 eyze, tyl þat þe blode be staunchyde; & þey leggen aboute a
 plumacyole y-wet in an eyze. And whanne þat þe blode ys y-
 staunchyde, þey leggen a dreie cloth vndire þe brayn panne in þe
 28 wounde, and þey leggen aboute þe wounde a potage, the whiche
 engendryth quytter; & whenne þat þe quytter ys engendryde, þey
 leggen in þe wounde carp opere lyneth of a clout; and þey anoynt⁵
 aboute þe wounde with oynement fusco; and at þe laste ende þey
 32 leggen aboute Apostolicon. And þey assayen in þis manere: zif þat
 þe brekyng of þe brayn panne be with a rimele, þat ys to seye a
 chyne, opere a creueys; & zif þat þilke creueys perse to wipynne,
 makynge þe syke man to streynen hys mouþ & hys nese, & þey

Add. MS.
12,056.

⁵ At the end of the line.

Some physicians open the fissure from end to end,

which is entirely wrong.
[² If, ss, bk.]

Better open only one end of the fissure, make several holes in the skull,

and remove a piece of the bone.

mouþ & his nose, & þei maken him þanne to blowen, & þei loken¹ if ony þing² exale out bi þilke rimele,²— as blod or ony other mater, þei drede not to perse þilke rimelle. & þanne summe seien þat þilke rimele schulde be to-broke eipir peersid from þe toon eende to 4 þe toþir wiþ rinspindel³,³ perischinge þe brayn scolle / A rinspindil is an instrument þat coteleris poudren⁴ wiþ her haftis, þe which figure schal be schapen in þis same chapitle folowyng. & þe worste þing⁵ þat a man may do is to peerse þe rimele on boþe sidis / 8 But opere⁶ men don bettere which þat peerse þe rimele on þe oon eende which is moost hangyng; & þei maken as manye hoolis, oon biside anoþer, as it is nessesarie to make an hole in þe brayn panne, bi þe which hole if ony þing be fallen vpon, duram matrem⁷ 1: myzte be clensid; & þese, in as myche as touchinge trepanacioun⁸ worchip best / & whanne þat þei han maad manye hoolis, þei kutten from oon hole to anoþer hole wiþ an instrument, þat þei moun drawe out þe boon þat is bitwene þe ordure of holis þat was 11 maad & þe rimele, & þei casten him away, & aftirward þei proceden

¹ þanne struck through after loken.

² as blod or ony oper mater. þei drede not to perse þilke rimelle, this is as a note at the bottom of the page.

³ rinspindil, see mod. Germ. Rennspindel, f., upright drill, pump drill. Trépan.—Rumpf, *Technolog. Dict.*

⁴ poudren for boren, under the influence of 'pore.' Lat. porus.

⁵ Lat.: quantum est ad trypanacionem.




Add. MS. maken hym þenne to blowen, & þey loken zif enye þynge exale out by þilke rymele. * & zif þat enye þynge exale out by þylke rymele, as blod ore enye opere matere, þey drede nozt to perce þilke rymele; 20 and þenne some sigge þat þilke rymele scholde be to-broke opere y-perced. from þat one ende to þat opere with Rynspyndles, persyng þe braynscolle. 7 A rynspyndeþ ys an Instrument þat Cutlers poudren wiþ here heftes, whose ffigure schal be schappyde⁹ in þe 24 same chapitle ffolwyng. And þe worste þynge þat a man may do, ys to perce þe rymele on boþe sydes. But opere men don bettyre whiche þat persen þe rymele at þat one ende, whyche is moste hongyng; and þey maken as many holys on bysyde an opere, as 28 beþ nessesarie to maken an hole in þe brayn panne, be þe whiche hole zif enye þynge beþ⁹ fallen vpon þe duram matrem myzte ben y-clansyde; & þese in as myche as towchyng trepanacioun worchith best. And whanne þat þey haue made manye holys, þey kutten 32 from on hole to an opere with an spatymyne,¹⁰ þat ys an Instrument, þat þey mowe drawyne out þe bon, þat ys betwene þe ordre of holys þat was y-made & þe rymele, & þey casten hym aweye, afterwarde

⁸ MS. *scharpyde*. *rp* for *pp*, like *lk* for *kk*. See p. 120.

⁹ þ above line.

¹⁰ Lat.: cum spatumine.




[7 fol. 75 b]

forþ in opere maner þingis as it is seid tofore / For whanne þou
 desirist way of¹ trepaninge [þis manere trepanynge]* sufficiþ to
 þee in þe rimelis of þe brayn panne. þis schal be þe foorme of a
 4 trepane [with þe whiche þe brayn scolle schal be trepaned wiþ]* . & þis is þe foorme of a spatina, wiþ þe which a man
 schal kutte from oon hole to anoþer hole . & þou schalt
 smyte wiþ a mal² eiper an hamer on þe greet eende; & whanne þou
 8 hast remeued of þe boon þat schal be remoued, euene þe brynkis
 with schauynge, þat þou mowe not leue no maner scharpnes in þe
 brynkis. þis is þe maner of þe schap , ³ & þis schauē schal [12. 67]
 kutte on þe side þat foldiþ ynward, & it schal be blunt on þe oon
 12 side þat is outward. & þei fulfillen þe wounde þat is wiþinne þe
 fleisch wiþoutforþ, as I haue seid, with þe cloop expressid of þe
 white of an ey & lynet, til þat þe wounde be ful, & also til þat
 þe kynde haue regendrid a repeirement, þe which schal fulfille
 16 þe place þere as þe boon was don away. Aftirward þei curen
 þe wounde aftir comoun cure of woundis / Alle opere maner of
 trepanacioun is comprehendid vnder o summe, þowþ þat summen
 ordeyne particuler aftir her dyuyse, diuers maners.

20 But bi as myche as I haue not seen in þis caas no way þat

¹ þe struck through after of.

² mal, Lat. malleus.

þey proceden forth in opere manere thynges, as yt is seyde tofore. Add. MS.
 And whenne þat þou desiriste þe wey of trepanynge, *þis manere 12,056.
 trepanynge suffiseþ to þe in þe rimeles of þe brayn panne. þis schal
 24 be þe forme of a trepane, *with þe whiche þe brayn scolle schal be
 trepaned wiþ . And þis is þe forme off a spatimene, with
 þe whiche a man schal kutte with from on hole to an opere hole
. And þou schalt smyten with a Mal opere an hamere
 28 vpon þe gret ende; and whenne þou haste remefed of þe bon þat
 schal be remeffyde, euene þe brynkes wiþ schauynge, þat þere mowe
 not lefe non manere scharpnesse in þe brynkes. þis ys þe manere
 of þy schafe , and þis schafe schal kutten on þe syde þat
 32 feldyth inwarde, & schal be blunt on þe syde þat ys outwarde.
 And þenne fulfyllen þe wounde þat is in þe flesch, wiþoutforþ as y
 haue seyde tofore, with clop expressyde of þe whyte of an eyze, &
 lynet to þat þe wounde be ful, and also tyl þat þe kynde haue
 36 regeneryd a repeyrement, þe whiche schal fulfille þe place where
 þat þe bon was don away. ⁴Afterwarde þey cure þe wounde aftere [fol. 76 a]
 comyn cure of wondys. Alle opere manere of trepanacioun ys
 comprehendyde vndire on Somme, þowþ þat sum men ordeynen
 40 partyklerliche aftere here devyse, dyuerse maners. But be as
 myche as y haue nozt seyne in þis place no wey þat myzte remefe

Trepanning
is dangerous.

Galen

and

Auicenn

used medi-
cines instead
of operating.

[^a ff. 67, bk.]

Nota.

I operate if
the broken
piece

1.
gets under
the healthy
bone,

2.
or hurts the
dura mater,

causing a
tumour,

then cramp,

myzte remeue me from doute, bi as myche as I haue saied bi longe
tyme, boþe bi summe auctouris experimentis, & also bi myn experi-
ment, & þat wei is not certeyn / þerfore here þei Galien, þat seiþ:
if we mowe remeue quytture wipoute doynge awei of boonys þat 4
schulde be do away, it is good / And auicen & serapie¹ acorden to
þe same sentence of cure of heed akþe þat comeþ of smytynge or
ellis of fallynge, where þat he towchip² þe worchinge of hurtis of
þe brayn ³panne, not bi trepanacioun, but bi emplastris & medicyns / 8
& also I took good hede þat manye mo men ben heelid bi maner
of medicyns & emplastris, þan ben heelid bi trapanes, þat ben
peersynge or þrillynge / For I ne vse not instrumentis to remeue
the boon but in two causis / þe oon cause is if þat þe brayn panne 12
be so myche I-slend⁴ þat þe part þat is broke, entre vndir þe partie
þat is hool / þe secunde caas is, if ony pece be departid from þe
brayn panne, þe which þat prickiþ duram matrem / In þe firste
caas dura mater is compressid. In þe secunde caas dura mater is 16
prickid, which is cause of akþe, & akyng is cause of drawynge
humouris, þere engendriþ an empostyme vpon þe same pannicle, þe
which is cause of a crampe, & of opere accidentis tofore seid; &

¹ *Serapie*, probably Ser. the Elder, an Arab physician, cc. 900.

² *towchip* for *techip*.

⁴ *islend*, Add. MS. *ysclend*. See *slent*, to tear, to rend (Dorset).—Halliwell.

Add. MS. 12,056. me fro doute, by as myche as y haue assayed longe tyme boþe by 20
sum auctores experyment, & also by myn experyment, & þat wey
is not certeyn, þerfore here þey Galien, whiche þat seiþ: 3if we
mowe remywe quyter without doynge away bonys þat scholde be
do away, hyt is good. And Auisene & Serapio acorden to þe same 24
sentense of cure of hed-akþe, þat comyþ off smytinge opere allys of
fallynge, where þat he techiþ þe worchyng of hurtynges of þe
brayn panne & of þe brayn, not by trepanacioun, but by emplastres
& by medycines. And also y toke gode hede þat manye mo men 28
ben y-helyde by manere medycines & emplastres, þenne ben y-helyde
by trepanes þat beþ persynge opere þrillynge. Ffor y ne vse not
Instrumentes to remywe þe bon, but in tweye cases—þat on cas ys
3if þat þe breyn panne be so myche y-scleud, þat þe part þat ys 32
y-broke entre vndire þe partye þat ys hol, þe secunde cas ys 3if þat
enye pece be departyde from þe brayn panne, whyche þat pryketh
duram matrem. In þe firste cas dura mater ys compressede. In þe
secunde cas dura mater ys y-prikyde, þe whiche ys cause of akþe, 36
& akyng ys cause of drawynge of humoures, the whiche engendrith
a posteme vpon þe same pannycle, the whiche is cause of a⁵ crampe,
& of opere accidentes tofore seyde, & at þe laste þey bryngen dep

⁵ *a*, above line.

at þe laste þei bryngen deep to þe pacient / In þese .ij. causis ^{anally death.}
 I leue hem¹ constreyned to remeue a boon wip handely² instru-
 mentis. In alle opere maners of brechis eiper in creueis, in what
 4 maner þat þei happen, þow3 þat I be not siker of þe pacientis lijf,
 nepeles I procede in þis maner with more trist, bisekyng alwey
 help of god, þe which þat³ hap heelid mo men bi myn hondis, þat⁴
 am his instrument, þan haue ben deed, nou3t azenstondynge alle
 8 my cautels & helpinge. For soþe þat I haue biholde sopliche resonis
 & þe proces of opere auctouris, I holde þis wey lasse dredful þan
 ony opere / for I folowe þe sentence of Galien, which þat seip : ^{In all other cases I use medicine,}
 if þat a man haue but o wei to his hele,⁴ it is good þat he holde ^{[¶ If. 68] and by God's help I have generally been successful.}
 12 þilke wey, þow3 þat it be yuel. ^{Galien}

& whanne þat I come to a man þat is woundid in þe heed, & I ^{Treatment of fractures of the skull, without trepanning:}
 knowe þat þe brayn panne be broke, bi tokenes tofore seid, first I
 considere þe vertu of him þat is pacient, & also his age & alle
 16 opere particuler ping, & nameli vertu, & gladliche I leue þe cure,
 if þat I se ony deedly tokenes, but if it so be þat I be preied wip
 þe grettere instance of þe freendis of þe sike man. & not azen-
 stondynge her preier I telle hise freendis þat bi wey of resoun þe

¹ hom for am; leue is erroneously added in margin.² handely na. handy.⁴ MS. izelo.

20 to þe pacient. In þese tweye causes y am constreynde to remefe a ^{Add. MS. 12,056.}
 bon with handly Instrumentes. In alle opere manere of breches
 opere of crefeys, in what manere þat þey happen, þow3 þat y be
 not sykere of þe paciente, napeles y procede in þis manere wilh
 24 more trest, by sechyng alweye help of god, þe whyche þat hap
 y-helyde mo m'en be myn handys, þat am hys Instrument, þenne
 han be ded, nou3t azeynestondynge al my cauteles & ^[¶ fol. 76 b] helpynge.
 Ffor sytthe þat y haf beholde sotelyche þe resouns & þe processes
 28 of opere auctorys, y holde þis wey lesse dredful þenne enye opere.
 Ffor y folwe þe sentence of galien, which þat seip: 3if þat a man
 hath but o wey to hys hele, hyt ys gode þat he holde þilke weye,
 þow3 þat þilke wey be eueñ. And whanne þat y come to a Man
 32 þat is woundyde in the hed, & knowe þat hys breyn panne ys
 to-broke, by þe tokenys tofore seyde, ffirste y considere þe vertu of
 hym þat ys pacient, & also hys age & alle oper⁷ partyclere thyng,
 & namly vertue. And gladliche y leue þe cure, 3if þat y se enye
 36 dedlye signes; but 3if þat so be þat y be preyde wip the grettere
 instance of þe frendes of þe seke man. And not azeynestondynge
 here preyere, y telle hys frendys þat by resoun þe pacient scholde

⁶ MS. m, en cut away.⁷ oper, above line.

If there are
no mortal
symptoms
and if the
wound is
large,
[¹ If. 68, bk.]
I shave the
head and
apply
Oleum
Rosarum,

a defensif
ointment,
compresses,
and band-
ages.

patient schulde die, & panne I worche aboute him as in a man in
whom yuele accidentis appere. & if þat þe signys ben not
deedliche, & þe breche of þe brayn panne be with a greet wounde
of þe heed, & þat a greet partie of þe brayn panne be do away al 4
togidere, so þat I mowe ¹have a good wey to leie medicyns vpon
duram matrem / First I do schauē his heed, afterward I leie on an
eeld lynnen clout & a penne,² wett in .ij. parties of oile of rosis
swete smellynge, & oon partie of mel roset colat, bitwene þe duram 8
matrem & þe brayn panne slyly & softli, þat dura mater be not
compressid wip þe cloop þat is wet tofore seid; & I fulfille þe
wounde of þe fleisch wip lint of oold lynnen cloop wett in þe zelke
of an ey, & oile of rosis, boþe liche myche; & anoynte aboute þe 12
wounde wip a defensif of bole armoniak ofte tymes I-seid, & leie
aboute þe wounde a plumaciol, þe which þat schal keuere al þe
wounde; & panne aboute al-togidere I leie a greet plumaciol, wett
in good hoot wyne. & aftirward I bynde þe wounde wip a boond, 16
byndynge ofte tymes aboute þe heed wip þe lynet & þe cloop, þe
which þat is in þe wounde & aboute þe wounde myzte not slide to
no partie, & bynde þe wounde in þat maner þat dura mater bi no

² MS. panne, error for a penne. Lat.: pannum lineum vetustum et
subtile. See below.

Add. MS. 12,056. deyze, & penne y wirche aboute hym, as y worche in a Man in 20
whom yuel accidentes apere. And 3if þat þe signes be nought
dedlyche, & þe breche of þe breyn panne be with a gret wounde of
þe hed, & þat a grete partye of þe breyn panne be don awaye alle
togedre, so þat y mowe han a gode wey to legge medycynes vpon 24
duram matrem. firste y do schaffe hys hed, afterwarde y legge an
olde lynnen clout & a penne, y-wett in two partyes of oyle of rosys
swote smellynge, & on partye of mel rosat colat bytwene þe duram
matrem and þe brayn panne, slyly & softlye, þat dura mater be 28
nozt compressyde with þe cloth þat ys y-wett tofore seyde, & y
fulfille þe wounde of þe flesch with lynt of olde lynnen clop wet in
þe 3olke of an eyze & oyle of roses, of boþe y-lyche myche; & y
anoynte aboute þe wounde with deffensyfe of bol armonyak ofte 33
tymes seyde, & y legge abouen þe wounde a plumacyole which þat
schal keuere alle þe wounde, and penne ²abouen alle togedre y
legge a grete plumacyole in-wet in gode hot wyn. And afterwarde
y bynde þe wounde with a bande, in byndynge ofte tymes aboute þe 36
hed, þat þe lynet & þe clop whyche þat is in þe wounde & aboute
þe wounde myzte nozt slyde to non partye, and y bynde þe wounde
in þat manere þat dura mater be no weye be compressyde. þe

[² fol. 77 v]

- wey be compressid. þe heeris of þe heed schulen be remeued away How to shave the head.
on þis maner: clippe hem first with scheris, afterward take .ij. parties of water cold, & oon partie of oile ¹ of rosis in somer, & [1 ff. 60]
4 make hoot þe same water & oile in wyntir, & waische þe heed softliche, takynge hede þat no water ne oile entre into þe wounde, & þanne schaue it wip a rasour / & whanne þat I haue serued þe patient on þis maner, I lete him reste til on þe morowe, & aftirward
8 I serue þe wounde on þe same maner til þat þe wounde be hool / Neþeles I considere if þat þe patient be ful of blood, & his vertu If the patient is strong,
be strong, & if he be zong^r, & litil blood bled at his wounde, & whanne alle þese þingis acorden, I make him to be leten blood on þe I bleed
12 coral² veyne of þe arme / & but if he mowe go to priuy, I helpe and purge.
him conys aday, or wip suppositories or wip clisterie; & I procede in dietynge, as I haue seid in þe chapitle of dietynge / & whanne If pus is discharged
þat þe wounde makij sufficiently quytture, I leie in þe wounde of
16 þe brayn panne, & vpon þe brayn panne, as I haue don tofore; & aboue þe wounde I leie a mundificatif of mel roset, colat, & barly mele, til þat þe wounde be clensid, & þat þe dura mater be sowdid I use a mundificatif
with þe brayn panne / & þanne I caste in þe wounde of þe heed and puluis capitalia.
20 a poudre maad on þis maner / Take frank encense & ciperi, þat is þe

² coral ceyne, vena cephalica.

- herys of þe hed schul be remyweðe away on þis manere: clippe Add. MS. 12,056.
hem firste with scherys, afterwarde take two partyes of colde water & on partye of oyle of roses in somere, & make hot þe same watyr
24 & þe oyle in wynters & wassche þe hed softliche, takynge hede þat non waters ne oyle entre into þe wounde, & þenne schaffe yt with a rasoure. & whenne þat y haue seruyde þe patient on þis manere, y lete hym resten tyl on þe morwe; and afterwarde y serfe þe wounde
28 on þe same manere tyl þat þe wounde be hol. Napeles y consydere zif þat þe patient be replet of blod, & hys vertue be stronge; & zif þat he be zonge, & lytel blod haue nouzt go out of hys wounde, & whanne alle þese þynges acorde, y make hym to by leten blod on þe
32 coral veyne of þe arme; & but zif he mowe schiten, y helpe hym onys a day, opere wip suppositorye opere wip clisterie; and y procede in dyetyng as y haue seyde in þe chapytell of dyetyng. And whenne makyth sufesentlyche quytter, y legge in þe wounde
36 of þe brayn panne & vpon þe brayn panne as y haue don tofor, & aboue þe wounde y legge a mundyficatyff of mel roset colat & barlye mele, tyl þat þe wounde ben y-clansyde, & þat þe dura mater be y-soudyde wip þe breyn panne; & þenne y caste in þe wounde of
40 þe hed, poudre y-mad on þis manere: R frank Ensence, ciperi, þe

[¹ lf. 69, bk.]² note of a cipres, ¹seed of mirtilles, mirre, ana. orobi, $\frac{3}{4}$ j; make poudre, & leie þis poudre in þe wounde, & aboue þe poudre leie þedis of lynnē cloþ, or ellis lynet; & aboue al-togidere leie an entreet maad of .ij. parties of whiȝt rosyn,³ & oon partie of wex ⁴ moltun togidere vpon stronge vynegre, & colid þoruȝ a þinne streynour vpon cold water / & whanne þin hondis ben anoyntid wiȝ oile of rosis, malaxe⁴ it longe tyme togidere. In somer take euene porcioun of whiȝt rosyn & of wex; in wyntir / take .iiij. 8. partis of rosyn,⁵ & þe .v. part of wex, & drawe abrood þat treet⁵ on a cloþ, & leie it on þe wounde til þat he be perfizliche cicatrisid. & if þat þer were ony partie of þe boon þat prickide duram matrem, þanne I aforce me to remeue þilke partie þat ¹² prickiȝ wiȝ pynsouns,⁶ if þat I may; & if þilke partie þat prickiȝ be ioyned so faste to þe hool boon þat he wolde not be remeued away, þanne I remeue him away wiȝ rugement⁷ from þe partie þat halt,⁸ in makynge oon hole or two, or mo, aftir þe quantite of þe 16

Lay over all an
Entreet
(Plaster)
made from
wax and oil
of roses.

I remove a
bone which
pricks the
membrane,
with pincers.

² At the foot of lf. 69 is this note: R *radicis erios, aristolege, thuris, mer, aloes, sanguis draconis, orobus ana, fac puluis.*

³ whiȝt rosyn, hardened Terpentine.

⁴ malaxe, Lat. malaxo, mollify.

⁵ treet = entreet. See p. 123, note 1.

⁶ wiȝ pynsouns, cum piccario. See Pynsone, Tenella. *Prompt. Parv.*, p. 400.

⁷ wiȝ rugement. Lat.: cum rugine ruginando, Fr. rugine, ruginer.

⁸ Both MSS. omit to translate the Lat. *si non possum.*

Add. MS. 12,056. note of cypresse, sede of mirtylles, mirre ana. 3. i., oreby. 3. j., mak poudre & leye þis poudre in þe wounde, & aboue þe poudre leye þe þedys of lynne cloþ opere ellys lynet; and aboffe al togedire y-legge an entrete ⁹y-made of two partyes of whyte resyn & on party 20 of wex y-molten togedre, & vpon stronge Vynegre, & y-colyd þorwe a þenne streynoure vpon¹⁰ colde water; & whanne þat þyne hondys ben anoyntede with oyle of roses, & malaxe yt longe tyme togedyre. In somere take euene porcioun of whyt resyn & of wex; in wyntere 24 take foure partyes of —* & þe fiifte partye of wex, & y-drawe abrode þilke tret on a cloþ & legge yt on þe wounde, tyl þat he be perfizliche cycatrysede. And ȝif þat þere were anye —* of a bon. whiche þat prekyde duram matrem, þenne y aforce me to remeffe 28 þilke partye þat prykeȝ with pynsones ȝif y may. And ȝif þilke partye þat prikeȝ ys y-ioynede so faste to þe hol bon þat he nyl nouȝt be remeffyd away, þenne y remeffe hym aweye wiȝ rugenyng. from þe partye þat halt, in makynge an hole, opere two, opere mo, 32 after þe quantyte of þe bon þat scholde be don away,* þat halt with þe hole bon; & afterwarde y kutte with a spatymene from on hole

¹⁰ MS. o pound.

- boon þat schulde be don away [þat halt *with* þe hole bon & afterwarde y kutte *with* a spatymene from on hole to anopere tyl al þe bon be remeffyde awaye.]* / & whanne þat þe boon is remeued
- 4 awei, I procede in þe cure as it is ¹seid in þis chapitle / But [¶ 11. 70]
- whanne I remeue a boon wip instrumentis of þe brayn panne, panne I stoppe þe sijck mannes eeris, þat he mowe not heere þe ^{I stop the patient's ears during the operation.} soun of þe yren þat trepanij. & I remeue þe same maner þe partie
- 8 þat is broke, þe which þat goiþ vndir þe partie þat is hool, & compressiþ þe dura mater. & if þat a gobet eipir a pece of a boon holde *sumwhat* in þe wounde, & myzte not lyztliche be remeued away, & he prickiþ not dura mater ne compressiþ not dura mater,
- 12 þanne at þe bigynnyng I do on þe boon hoot oile of rosis, & I fulfille þe wounde wip oile of rosis & þe zelke of an ey medlid ^{Nota} togidere, til þat þe boon be neischid & may lyztliche be remoued ^{I soften the bone before removing it.} away; þanne I remeue þe boon softliche, & I procede in þe
- 16 worchinge bitwene þe boon & duram matrem, as it is seid tofore /
- & if þat þe breche of þe brayn panne were as a creueis or ellis I-alend, & neiper part of þe boon were lowere þan oper, þanne I considere if þat ilke slendynge² perce al þe brayn panne; & þat
- 20 þou schalt knowe bi þe tokenes tofore seid, or ellis þou schalt knowe bi þis signe, þat neuere failiþ / Make ³a plastre of poudre of [¶ 11. 70, bk.]

² *slendynge*, see p. 128, note 4.

- to anopere tyl al þe bon be remeffyde awaye.* And whenne þe bon ^{Add. MS. 12,056.} ys remeffyde away, y procede in þe cure, as yt is seyde in þis same
- 24 chapytell. But whanne þat y remeffe a bon *with* Instrumentes of þe brayn panne, þenne y stoppe þe syke mannys eres, þat he mowe nozt here þe sonn of þe eyren þat trepanyth. And y remeffe þe same manere, þe partye þat is broke, whiche þat goþ vndire þe
- 28 partye þat ys hol, & compressyth þe dura mater; and zif þat a gobbet opere a pece of a bon helde *sumwhat* in þe wounde, & myzte nozt lyztlye be remeffyde away, and he prikyde nouzt ne compressyde nouzt duram matrem, þenne at þe bygynnyng y do on
- 32 þe bon hot oyle of rosys, and y fulfille þe wounde *with* oyle of roses & þe zolke of an eyze y-medled togedire, tyl þat þe bon be y-nesschyde, and mowe lyztlyche be remywede awaye; þenne y remeffe þe bon, & y procede in worchyng bytwene þe bon &
- 36 duram matrem, as it is seyde tofore. & zif þat þe breche of þe breyn panne ⁴were as a cerfes, opere ellys y-sclend, & neipere party of þe bon were lowere þenne opere, þen y consydere zif þilke ^[¶ fol. 78 a] slendynge parten alle þe breyn panne, & þat þou schalt y-knowe by
- 40 þe toknys tofore seyde, opere ellys þou schalt y-knowe by þis signe þat neuere faileþ: make a plastre of þe poudre of mastyk & þe

How to discern by means of a Plaster, whether the fissure pierces the skull or not.

When the skull is pierced, some physicians use trepanning.

[17. 71]

Nota.

mastik & þe white of an ey, medlid togidere as þikke¹ as hony, & distende² it vpon a cloop, & leie it on þe place þat is hurt fro morowe til euen, or ellis from þe euene til þe morowe / & whanne þat þe plastre is remoued away, if þat þe creueis peerse þoruþ þe 4 brayn panne, þou schalt se þe plastre more drie azens þe creueis þan in ony oþer place, for þe greet heete þat comeþ fro þe brayn [& 3if þe breyn panne]* be nouȝt I-slend þoruþ, þe plastre schal be nomore drie aboue þe creueis þan on anoþer place / & if þe creueis perse 8 not þe brayn scolle, þe cure is as it is seid in þe bigynnyng of þis chapitle, þere as I tolde of cure of wounde of þe heed, where þat þe brayn panne eiper þe brain is not hurt. For if þat ilke remile peerse þe brayn panne, þer is a greet doute in þe caas, for summen seien þat 12 it is impossible sich a wounde to heele; but if þe remele be trepaned, & a quantite of þe boon be doon away, þat þe superfluyte þat is cast vpon duram matrem may be doon away, or ellis þe dura mater schulde putrifien & be corrupt, & bi þat skil³ þe pacient schulde 16 die, þe which þat myȝte ⁴be heeled bi þe remeuynge of þe boon / Neþeles I þat haue seen in trepaninge greet perel, namely whanne

¹ MS. pilke.

² distende, Lat. distendo.

³ bi þat skil, Lat. quare. Skil = causa, synon. with 'reason' occurs frequently in *Polychron.* See Gloss. The same construction in: '& by þe same skile' ea ratione, *ibid.*, lii. 465.

Add. MS. 12,056. whyte of an eyȝe, y-medlyde togedyre as þykke as hony, & distende it on a clop, & leye it on þe place þat ys hurt from morwe tyl euene, 20 opere ellys from euene tyl þe morwe. And whanne þat þe plastre ys remefyd away, 3if þat þe crefeys persith þorwe þe breyn panne, þou schalt se þe plastre more drye anonde⁵ þe crefeys þen in enye oþer place, for þe gret hete þat comyth from þe brayn; * & 3if þe 24 breyn panne* be noȝt y-slend þorwe, þe plastre schal be namore rye abouen þe crefeys þenne on an opere place. And 3if þe crefeyad perse nouȝt þe brayn scolle, þe cure is as yt is seyde in þe by-gynnyng of þis chapytelle, þere as y tolde of þe cure of wounde of 28 hed, where þat þe breyn panne opere þe brayn ys noȝt y-hurt. Ffor 3if þat pilke ryemele persyth þe breyn panne, þere ys a gret doute in þe cas, ffor some seyne þat yt ys vnpossible awyche a wounde to ben y-helyde, but 3if þe rymale be y-trepanyd & þat a quantyte 32 of þe bon be y-don away, þat þe superfluyte þat ys y-caste vpon duram matrem mowe be done away, ellys þe dura mater scholde putrefien & be corrupt, & by þat skylle þe pacient scholde deye, whiche þat myȝte be helyde by remywyng of þe bon. Neþeles y 36 þat haue y-seye in trepanyng grete peryle, namlyche whanne þat

⁵ Over an erasure.

- pat' þe creueis is bisidis þe semys, where þat' þe trepaninge is deedlich / & I haue seen manye þat' wipoute trepanyng' almyȝty god haþ delyuerid bi myn hondis, wipoute touchinge of ony brayn
- 4 scolle wip ony trepan or wip iren ; but' I helde in to þe creueis hoot' ^{de vertute} oile of rosis colat, & mel roset' colat, medlid togidere aftir þe ^{Olium} doctrine tofore seid, fulfillynge al þe wounde with sich maner ^{Rosarum.} clopis ; & aftirward leie aboue þe ȝelke of an ey & oile of rosis ^{I use oil of}
- 8 medlid togidere, & aboue a defensif' of bole armoniak tofore seid, ^{a defensif} til þat' þe quytture be engendrid. & aftirward I contynue mel roset' & oile of rosis in þe wounde, & aboue a mundificatif' of mel ^{and a} roset' & barly mele til þat' þe ligament' be fully engendrid on þe ^{mundificatif}
- 12 brayn panne, & þat' þou schalt' knowe whanne þat' þou seest' þe boony ben¹ ioyned togidere, as it were two bordis weren ioyned togidere with cole² or with glu ; & þanne I fulfille þe wounde wip drie þedis of clene lynnyn cloþ, & aboue ^a mundificatif', til þat' ^[fol. 71, bk.]
- 16 þe boon be keuerid. þanne I strowe on aboue þe capitale poudre tofore seid, & I leie on þe schauynge or ellis þe rasure⁴ of lynnyn cloþ, & aboue al þis I leie on a trest' of whizt' rosyn ; & I do alle ^{and a plaster} þese þingis þat' I haue seid tofore til þat' þe wounde be consowdid / ^{of terpentine.}

¹ ben, above line.² cole, Lat. : sicut si essent duo ligna cum glutino in simul incolata.⁴ rasure, Lat. rasura.

- 20 þe crefeys ys bysyde þe semys, where þat trepanynge ys dedlyche, Add. MS. 12,056.
and y haue seye manye þat wipouten trepanynge almyȝtie god haþ delyuereþ be myn handys, without touchynge enye brayn scolle with trepane opere with eyren ; but y helde into þe crefeys hote
- 24 oyle of roses, and y legge aboue clopes y-wett in mel rosat colat, & oyle rosat colat y-medlyde togedyre afters þe doctryne tofore seyde, fulfillynge aþt þe ^awounde wip swyche manere clothys, & after- ^[fol. 78 b]warde y legge aboue þe ȝolke of an eyȝe & oyle of roses y-medlyde togedres, and aboue þe wounde a defensiff' of bol armoniac tofore seyde, tyl þat þe quytter be engendryd. & afterwarde y contynwe mel roses & oyle rosarum in þe wounde, & aboffe a mundificatyf' of mel rosarum & barly mele, tyl þat þe ligament be fulliche engendrede
- 32 on þe breyn panne, & þat þou schalt y-knowe whenne þat þou seste þe bonys loynyde togedre, as yt were tweye bordys loynede togedre wip colle opere wip glew ; & þenne y fulfille þe wounde with drye þedis of lynnyn cloþ, and abouen a mundificatyf' tyl þat þe bon be keffride aboue. & þenne y strawe on aboue þe capytale poudre tofore seyde, & y legge on þe schaffynge opere ellys þe rasure of lynnyn cloþ, and abouen al þis y legge on a Tret of resyne ; & y do alle þynges þat y haue seyde tofore tyl þe wounde be con-

& if þe make an obieccioun how þat it myȝte, wiþoute arerynge of þe boon, þe blood & þe quytture be dried, þe which þat fil doun bi þilke slendynge vpon duram matrem / I answere: riȝt as þe mater of þe frenesie & þe mater of þe litarge¹ þat is more doutes, bi 4 emplastris wiþoutforþ I-leie is dissolued, & þer is no slendynge of þe brayn panne, ne no wounde in þe skyn, myche more liztloker & more bettere þe blood, þat is lizt & able to be resolued, þe which þat wente doun bi þe forseid slending, may bi þe forseid slendynge 8 þe bettere be exaled. Ne þilke blood is not viscat² in þe substaunce of dure matris, as þe mater is in empostymes, wherfore he is more obeisschaunt* — to þe attraccioun of medicyns /

[² If. 73] & if þe brayn panne be hurt wiþoute wounde ³of þe skyn, þe 12 which þou shalt knowe bi þe tokenes tofore seid / þanne summen kutte aboue þe hurtyng in þe maner of a crose, & þei areren þe .iiij. quarters, & þei kutten & fleen þe pannicle þat keueriþ þe boonis. & aftirward þei vsen trapanes & her opere comoun curis, as 16 it is schewid tofore / But I kutte not þe skyn in þe maner of a crose, but in þe maner of a scheeld or ellis of a þing þat is triangle in þis maner ◁, & I make but oon quarter, & I vnwrie þe boon þat þe oile of þe rosis may peerse yn, & þat þe vertu of þe medicyn, 20

I apply oil of roses.

Nota.
This remedy dissolves the blood and pus,

which exhales through the fissure.

Treatment of a wound of the skull when the skin is not broken.

Some physicians use trepanning.

¹ *litarge*, Lat. *lethargus*. Lethargy, stupor.
² *viscat*, Lat. *inviscatus*, inclosed. See below, *inviscat*.

Add. MS. 12,056. soulded. And ȝif me maken an obieccioun how þat yt myȝte wiþouten arerynge of þe bon, þe blod & þe quyter be dreyede whiche þat fel doun by þilke slendynge vpon þe duram matrem, I answere: ryȝte as þe matere of þe frenesie & þe matere of þe litargie þat is 24 more doutes, by emplastres wiþouten forth leyd is desolved, and þere nys none sclyndynge of þe breyn panne ne no wounde in þe skyn, myche more lyztlokere & more bettere þe blod þat is lyzt & able to ben reselfyde, whiche þat wende done be þe forseide 28 sclendynge, may be þe forseide sclendynge beter ben exaled. Ne þilke blod ys noȝt inviscat in þe substaunce of dure matris as þe matere ys in apostemys, wherfore he ys more obeyssaunt to* þe expulcioun of kynde, & also ys more obeyssaunt to the attracioun 32 of medycine. And ȝif þe brayn panne be hurte wiþout wounde of þe skyn, þe whiche þou schalt y-knowen by þe toknys tofore seyde, þenne sum men kutten aboue þe hurtyng in þe manere of a crose, & þey areryn þe foure quarters, & þey kyttten & fleen þe pannycle þat 36 keferith þe bonys, & afterwarles þey vsen trepanys & here opere comyn cures, as ⁴yt ys schewyde tofore. But y kytte noȝt þe skyn in manere of a cros, but in þe manere of a Schelde opere ellys of a thyng þat ys tryangle in þis manere ◁, & y make but on 40 quartere & y vnwrye þe bon, þat þe oyle of roses may persen yn,

[⁴ fol. 79 a]

pat is maad of hony of rosis & oile of rosis, may drawe fro bynepe
 þe brayn-panne / & I do in þis caas al þing as it is declarid next
 aboue. & if 3e make obieccioun azens me bi costantyne¹ or ellis bi
 4 opere, þat seien þat bi al oure myzt we eschewen þat neiþer oile
 ne noon oyntuose þing falliþ not wiþinne þe brayn-panne / I
 answeþ wiþ auicen, þat seiþ : þat he worchiþ riȝtfulliche þat vsiþ
 teped² oilis, & þe same tellen galion & serapion ; & also I seiþ þat
 8 oile of rosis, þe which þat schal³ be maad of grapis of olyue trees
 þat ben not ripe, is not oyntuose, but it is drie, & is clepid oile
 enfancinum ;⁴ & namely whanne þat rosis ben medlid wiþ þilke
 oile, þilke oile haþ gete to him a swete smellynge & a drie þing of
 12 comfortyng⁵ animal spiritis ; & also þat oile haþ a vertu expressif,
 as galion telliþ in þe book of symple medicyns, bi þe whiche þe
 brayn is confortid & akpis ben swagid / & if þer be maad ony greet
 blood, it is maad sutil wiþ þat oile ; & whanne alle þese þingis
 16 ben congaderid & leid aboue duram matrem, it is clensid /

¶ Sumtyme þe brayn is meued of sum greet hurt eiþer of sum
 fallynge or of sum smytyng wiþoute ony wounde or wiþoute ony

¹ Constantinus Africanus, c.c. 1070.

² teped, Lat. tepidus.

⁴ enfancinum, for omfacinum *ὀμφάκινον ἔλαιον*, oil made from unripe
 olives (*Diosc.* I. 29). *Vigo Interpr.* : "Omphax in Greke is an vnripe
 grape. *Vigo* calleth oyle of omphacyne, that oyle that is made of vnripe
 Olyues." Compare *Tbwm. Dict.* s. v. onfacino.

⁵ See below.

and þat þe vertue of þe medycine, þat ys y-mad of honye of
 20 roses & oyle of roses, may drawe fro bynepe þe brayn-panne ; and
 y do in þis cas al þynge, as yt declarith nexte aboffe. And 3if
 men make obieccioun azeyns me by constantine opere ellys by hym,
 þat seiþ þat by alle oure myght we encheuyn þat neþere oyle ne
 24 non vncomys⁶ þynge falle noȝt wiþynne þe brayn-panne, I answeþ
 wiþ Auecene, þat seiþ : þat he wircheþ ryȝtfulliche þat vsith
 certeyne oyles, & þe same telliþ galien & serapion, and also y seiþ
 28 þat oyle of roses, whiche þat be mad of grapes of Olyue tres þat beþ
 noȝt ripe, is noȝt vnctuouse, but is dreyze ; & it is clepyde oyle
 Omfacinum, & namlye whanne þat roses ben y-medlyde wiþ þat
 oyle, þilke oyle hath y-gete to hym a swete smellynge & a dreyzinge,
 cumffortynge animal spirites ; and also þilke oyle hath a vertuo
 32 expressif, as galien tellyth in the bok of symple medicynes, by þe
 whyche þe brayn ys confortyde & akpes ben aswagede, & 3if þere
 be mad enye gret blod, yt is y-made Sotyþ ; & whenne alle þese
 þynge ben y-gadryde togedyre & leyde abouen, dura mater ys
 36 clansed. Sumtyme þe brayn ys meffyd of sum gret hurt opere of
 sum fallynge, opere of sum smytyng wiþouten eny wounde ore enye

Add. MS.
12,056.

⁶ Corrupt, probably for *unctuous*.

by a wound
or fracture.
Nota

A certain
Canon fell
from his
horse,
and was left
senseless.

[1. 11. 75]

I thought
him dying,

Nota

but entreated
by his friends

I anointed his
head

and laid on
compresses,

breche of ony boon, þanne do þou as I dide to a chanoun of þe
ordre of seynt austyn. Whanne þat he wolde haue lept vpon an
hiȝ hors & haue seten in þe satel, þe hors areride vpon hise two
hyndere feet, & pilke chanoun fel doun backward vpon þe erþe vpon 4
his heed; & al his bodi was brusid & namely aboute þe heed, þat
anoon he loste þe meuyng and þe felynge of al his body / þanne a
lewid leche ¹þat was frend to pilke chanoun was clepid, & he cowde
not helpen him, for he hadde neuere seen þe same caas, ne he 8
cowde not no letrure² / & at þe laste I was clepid, & I foond him
neiþer heerynge, ne spekyng, ne no þing³ meuyng, & I deemed
him for deed / & neþeless³ I seide, & he were my broþer, I nolde not
for an .C. mark, but I asaiede in him goodnes of þe helpinge of 12
medicyns / for ofte tyme kynde wiþ good werkis helpiþ priuylliche
þat semeþ vnpossible to a leche. & þei þanne preieden me with greet
instaunce / & I made þe heeris of his heed to be schauen & þanne
I anoyntide al þe heed wiþ .iiij. parties of oile of rosis, & oon partie 16
of vynegre hoot medlid togidere, & I castide aboute poudre of
mirtillis, & leide aboute a sotil linnen cloþ þinne, wett in þe same

² Lat.: nec sciebat aliquid de scriptura. O.Fr. lettreure. See *Piers the Plowman*, ed. Skeat. Gloss.

³ Lat.: meo tamen addens iudicio quod pro centum marchis argenti non dimitterem, quin adhuc probarem in eo, si meus esset frater, iuuenta medicina inducens.

Add. MS. 12,056. breche of eny bon, þan do þou as dyde y to a Chanoun of þe ordre
of seint Austyn. Whanne þat he wolde haue lopyn vpon an hye 20

[1. fol. 79 v.] ³hyndere fete, & pilke chanoun fel doun bakwarde vpon þe erthe
on hys hed; & alle hys bodye was y-brusyde, and namiþe aboute þe
hed þat anon he lost þe ffelynge & þe meffynge of alle his bodye. 24
þanne a lewyde leche þat was frende to pilke Chanoun was y-
clepyde, & he couþe helpe hym noȝt, for he had neuere seyne þe
same cas, ne he ne couþe noȝt on lettre. And at þe laste y was
clepte, & y fonde hym noȝt herynge ne spekyng ne nothyng 28
mevyng, I demyde hym for ded, and napeles sanyde, ȝif þat he
were my broþere y nolde nouȝt for an hundrede mark, but y sayede
in hym þe godnesse & þe helpynge of medycines; for ofte tymes
kynde with gode werkys helpith preueliche þat semyth vnpossible 32
to a leche. And þenne þey preyede me with gret Instaunce, and y
made the herys of hys hed to be schaffen and þenne y anoynt all þe
hed with þre partye of oyle of roses, & on partye of vyneger hot
y-medlyde togedyre, & y caste abouen þe poudre of mirtylles, and y 36
leyde abouen a sotyþ þenne cloth y-wet in þe same oyle & vynegre,

oile & vynegre, & aboue þat tow3 smal tosid, & I boond al þe heed a bandage,
 wiþ a boond, & aboue I leide a lambis skyn. & so I chaungide it¹ and a lamb's
 þries ech day in anoyntyng þe nolle & þe necke into þe myddil¹ skin.
 4 of þe rigge-boon bihynde wiþ hoot oile of camomille / In þe
 ij. day he openede a litil hise yzen, & he bigan to loke aboute On the 2nd
 2 him as it hadde be a deef man þat were in a wondring / & þanne day he opened
 summe wolden haue asaied if þat he myzte haue ete / & I wolde his eyes.
 8 not suffre him to ete / & I seide þou3 þat he wolde ete þat he [? If. 73, bk.]
 schulde not / In þe iij. day I spak to him / he answeride me babe-
 lyng as a child þat bigynneþ to speke, but he myzte forþ wiþ no On the 3rd he
 word³ / In þe iiij. dai he spak boistousliche⁴ / & þanne I 3af him to spoke
 12 drynke hoot ypcras⁵ þat is maad of sugre & of watir / In þe v. boisterously.
 day he took pikke tizanne⁶ / In þe vj. dai I 3af him broþ of a From the 6th
 chicken; and þanne he bigan to strenkþe litil & litil, & litil & litil day I gave
 to meuen / & neuer-þe-lattere he myzte not walke not manye daies him strength-
 16 aftir. & whanne þat he myzte take sufficiently mete, I comaundide ening food,

¹ of þe myddil, inserted.

² See below, note 8.

⁴ *boistousliche*. Lat.: balbutiendo, stammering, seems to connect the sense of O.Fr. boistous, lame, with boisterous.

⁵ *ypocras*, error for *ydrosacre*. See below. "*Hydrosaccharum*, a Syrup made of Water and Sugar." Phillips. *Hippocras*, a kind of "Artificial Wine, made of Claret or White Wine, and several sorts of Spice." *Ibid.*

⁶ Lat. *ptisanam spissam*. Matth. Sylv.: "Tisanna i. aqua ordeï uel fariola."

& aboue þat tow3 smale y-tosyde, & y bonde alle þe hed with a band, Add. MS.
 & abouen y leyde a lambys skyn, & so y chaungede yt twyes euerye 12,056.
 day; in anoyntyng þe nolle & þe nekke into þe myddeþ of þe
 20 rygge-bon byhynde wiþ hote oyle of Camamylle. In þe secunde
 day he opnyde a lyte his eyzen, & he hygan to loken aboute hym
 as it hadde be a deff man, opere ellys a man þat were in a
 wondryng; and þenne some wolden haue assayed 3if þat he wolde
 24 eten, & y wolde nouzt⁷ Suffren hym to eten, & y seyde þow3 þat he [? fol. 80 a]
 wolde eten he scholde nouzt. In þe pridde day y spak to hym, &
 he answerde me bablyng as a childe þat begynneþ to speke, but he
 myzte formen non worde.⁸ In þe fourþe day he spak bostynglyche,
 28 and þenne y gaf hym to drynke hot ydrosacre, þat ys y-mad of Sugre
 & of watyre. In þe ffyfte day he toke pikke⁹ tysan. In þe sixe day
 y gaf hym þe broþ off a chykne, & þenne he gan to strengþe litel
 & lytel & lytel, & lytel to meffen, & neuere þe latere he myzte nouzt
 32 walkyn by manye dayes. And whanne þat he myzte take Suffi-
 sauntlye mete, y comaundyde hym to take Pylulas Cochias, for to

⁸ Lat.: verbum non potuit formare.

⁹ MS. þilke.

purgative pills, him to take pilulas chochias¹ for to resolue bi euaciacioun þe matere þat I-gaderide togidere in þe heed bi pilke fallinge / & I comaundide him to ete ofte þe braynes of briddis heedis, & of hennys & of smale briddis & kedis / & in þis maner he was hool; nepeles he was 4 neuere so sotil of witt as he was tofore /

Evil symptoms [s. 11. 74] In þis ben yuel signes as þe face to be to² crokid, & þe yzen to loke asquynt³ eiper crokidliche, apoplexie, crampe, to schite wiþoute felynge, & vnmouablete of alle þe membris outcept þe lacertis of 8 þe brest þat moun be saaf⁴ / He þat rediþ þis book may chese aftir his owne wil oon of iij. weies þe whiche þat ben now vsid / þe toon is þe wey þe whiche þat is seid in þe bigynnyng of þis chapitle, þe which wey manye vsen, & a leche of Ianewe⁵ þat is clepid anselme 12 vsiþ þis wey, & þerbi he gate myche money / nepeles I wiste weel þat manye men dieden in hise handis bi þis wey / þe secunde maner is in almaner hurtyng of þe heed to vsen terabracioun⁶ eiper remeu- ynge of þe boon wiþ handliche instrumentis / þe iij. is my wey þe 16 my own way,

are: cramp, immobility except of the muscles of the chest.
Three ways of treatment:
1. the way used by Anselme.
2. trepanning.
3. my own way,

¹ *Cochia*. An ancient name for several officinal purgative pills. Dunglison, *Medic. Lex.* κόκκος, a pill. Alex. Trall. Compare Fr. cochée.

² *be to*, added in margin.

³ Lat. : præterquam lacertorum pectoris qui sallire videntur. The translator evidently read *sallere* instead of *sallire*.

⁴ Anselmus de Ianua. A. de Porte, quoted by Guy de Chauliac as Anserinus de Ianua, XIII. cent. Ianua is Genoa, see Eloys Dictionn. historique.

⁵ "Terebration, a boring or piercing; a Term more especially used in Surgery." Phillips. "Terebra, an Awger or Wimble, a Piercer; also an Instrument to engrave on Stones; also a Surgeon's Trepan or Trepaniron." *Ibid.*

Add. MS. 12,056. resolfe by euacuacioun þe matere þat was y-gadrede togedire in þe hed by pilke fallinge. And y comaundyde hym to eten ofte þe braynes of briddys hedys, as of hennys & of smale bryddes, & also of kyddes; and in þis manere he was hol; napeles he was neuyre 20 so sotyl of wyt as he was tofore. In þis cas buþ yuele signes: as þe face to be crokyde, & þat on eyze to loken asquynt oþer crokydlyche, apoplexie, crampe, to schyte wiþout felynge, & vnmouablete of alle þe membris outsepte þe lacertes of þe brest þat 24 mowe be saff. He þat redith þis bok may chesen aftir hys owne wyl, one of þre weyes whiche þat beþ now y-vsye, þat on ys þe wey whiche þat ys seyde in þe bygynninge of þis chapiteit, þe whiche weye many vsen, and a leche o Ianewe þat is y-clepyde 28 Anselme vsith þis weye, & þereby he gat myche moneye, napeles y wyste wel þat manye men dyzeden in his handys by þis wey. þe 7 secunde weye is in alle manere hurtynges of hed to vsen terebracioun, oþere ellys remeffyng of þe bon with handlyche Instru- 33 mentes; þe þridde ys my weye whiche þat y haue tolde opynlye in

[7 fol. 80 b]

which þat I haue told openliche in almaner caas / & I bileue, if where fewer people die.
 þat he take hede to alle þese weyes & þat he wole wisely discussen
 alle þe opynyons of auctouris, þat he schal seen fewere die bi my
 4 .iij. wey þan bi ony of þe opere .ij. weyes // Almyȝti god lede þe
 redere of þis werk in þe best wey, þoruȝ whos myȝtis, wordis takis
 sentencis & also vnderstondinge.

þouȝ þat we han bihoten to tretyn of ano¹tamie of membris [¹ ff. 74, bk.]
 8 þat ben compound, in þe bigynnyng of eueri chapitle of þis
 secunde tretis, nepeles we leuen² it for þe bettere for to treten of
 anotamie of þe visage, to þe þridde tretise, where we schulden treten
 of sijknis þat comen to þese membris, þe whiche syknessis ben non³
 12 woundis // // // The anatomy of the face is given in the 3rd treatise.

The secunde chapitle of woundis of þe face & [¶] Cap. ij.
 anotamie of þe same.

Woundis þat ben maad in þe face, or þei be maad wip a swerd
 16 or wip sum dinge⁴ ellis þat woundeþ, or þei ben maad wip pricknyge
 of a knyf, arowe, eiper spere. It is necessarie þat a surgian haue
 more diligence in þe woundis of þe face, for it is a place þat is Wounds of the face must be treated carefully.
 myche seen, & it is wel to do make⁵ a sotil⁶ cicatrice / A wounde

¹ Lat. relinquimus tamen propter melius.

² MS. *now*.

⁴ *dinge*, in margin.

⁵ Compare: *his instrument may ȝe do make wipoute grete cost.* Quinte
 Essence, p. 62.

⁶ *a sotil*, in margin.

20 alle manere of cas; and y beleue ȝif þat he wyl take hede to alle Add. MS. 12,056.
 þese weyes, & þat he wyȝ wyslye dycussen þe opyniouns of
 Auctores, þat he schal se fewere dyȝe be my þridde weye þenne by
 enye opere. Almyȝtie god lede þe redere of þis werk in þe beste
 24 wey, þorwe whose myȝte, wordes takyȝ sentence & echyn vnder-
 stondyng. þouȝ þat we han behoten to treten of Anotamye of
 membres þat ben componed, in þe bygynnyng of eueri chapytelle of
 this secunde tretys, napeles we leuen yt for þe bettire for to treten
 28 of þe Anotamye of þe vysage, to þe þridde tretys, where we schulle
 tretyn of seknesse þat comyȝ to þis membres, whyche seknesse
 beþ non woundes.

¶ Cap. off woundes of þe face & Anotamye of þe same.

32 Woundes þat ben made in þe face, opere þey beþ mad with a
 swerde, ore wip sum thyng ellis þat woundeþ, opere þey ben mad
 wip prikyng of a knyf, arwe, opere spere. Yt is necessarye, þat a
 surgyns haue more diligence in þe woundes of þe face, for it is a
 36 place þat is myche y-seyne, & yt ys wel y-do to make a sotyl cic-
 tryce. A wounde þat ys mad with a swerde opere with sum þyng

þat is maad wiþ a swerd or wiþ sumping¹ semblable þat is alwei in lenkþe, a man muste sotilliche sowen & gaderen þe parties of þe wounde togidere / & for þat manye men lizen of þe wounde of þe nose, þei seien þat oon bar his nose kutt of in his hond, þe which nose was afterward sett azen in his owne kynde; þe which is an open lesynge / For þe spirit of lijf of felynge & ¹meuyng² passiþ, whanne a membre is depertid from þe bodi / I wole bigynne at a wounde of þe nose þat is kutt in lenkþe, þe which cure is list to hele / Brynge þe 8 parties togidere of þe wounde & sowe hem, & worche aboute þe wounde as I haue seid tofore in þe chapitle of woundis / & if þat þe nose were kutt ouerþwert³ down to þe ouer lippe, & neþeles þat þe ouer lippe & þe nose were kutt al away, but þat it held faste at boþe þe eendis 12 of þe eendis of þe wounde, þanne sette azen þe nose in his propre place, þe noseþrillis ech azen opir as þei weren toforn, & make two smale tentis of wex & putte on eipir noseþrille aboue þe wounde, if þat þou maist, & þanne make a poynt bi þe space of a litil fyngre from þe oon 16 eende of þe wounde, & anoper poynt at þe opere eende of þe wounde, & anopir poynt in þe myddil of þe nose azen þe forheed; and afterward a poynt on eipir side of þe nose, afterward make [a poynt]⁴ bitwene eueri poynt, so þat þou haue in noumbre of alle þe poyntis 20

² Heading to this page: *Off wondes of the face & Anotomy of þe same ffrom the face to the ffote.*

Add. MS. 12,056. [fol. 81 a] semblable þat is alweye in lengthe, a man moste sotylliche sowyn & gedre þe parties of þe wounde. And for þat many men lyzen ³ of þe wounde of þe nese, þey seyzen þat on bare hys nose y-kytte of in hys hande, þe whiche nose was afterwarde y-sette azeine in hys 24 owne kynde; þe whiche ys an opyn lesynge, for þe spiryt of lyf of felynge & of meffynge passith aweye, whanne a membre is departyde from þe body. I wylle begynne at þe wounde at þe nese þat is y-kutte in lengthe, wose cure ys lyzt to hele; brynge þe parties to- 28 gedre of þe wounde & sowe hem, & wirche aboute the wounde as y haue seyde tofore in þe chapitle of wondes. And zif þat þe nese were y-kutte twarte offere douu to þe ouere lippe, & napeles þat þe ouyre lippe & þe nose were nozt kutte al away, but þat it helde 32 faste at boþe þe endys of þe wounde, þanne sette azeine þe nose in his propre place, þe noseþrellis yche azeyns opere as þey were tofore, & make two smale tentys of wex, & putte in boþe þe noseþrellis aboue þe wounde, zif þat þou maist, & þenne make a poynt 36 by þe space of a litil fyngere from þat on ende of þe wounde, & an opere poynt at þe opere ende of þe wounde, and an opere poynt in þe myddel of þe nose anentys þe forhede; & afterwarde a poynt on eipere syde of þe nose, afterwarde make a poynt⁴ 40 betwene evry poynt, so þat þou haue in noumbre of alle þe poyntes,

There is a lie about replacing a nose cut off.

[12. 75]²

Wounds of the nose: a longitudinal cut,

a transverse cut, the nose still hanging.

Adjust the nose, retain it in position by splints of wax, sew it,

- whanne þei ben ful maad, .ix. Caste þe poudre þat is tofore seid
 vpon þe wounde, þat is maad of ¹lime, frank encense, & sandragoun
 / & take þe white of an ey & oile of rosis, & bete hem togidere, throw a powder on the wound, [1 lf. 75, bk.]
- 4 & wete þerinne a linnen cloþ & leie aboue þe wounde / Aftirward
 bynde* þerto þre plumaciols, oon vndirneþe, anoper on þe oon side, apply three pledgets, and two bandages,
 anopir on þe toþir side / & þanne bynde þe nose wiþ two bandis /
 þe toon schal holde vp þe nose þat he may not discende dounward /
- 8 þe toþir schal be leid aboue þat he mowe kepe þe plumaciols, poudre,
 & þe sowynge / & pilke boond þat is vnder þe nose þat halt þe nose one holds the nose in position,
 vpward, schal be knytt² aboue vpon þe heed, & aftirward he schal be
 turned ouertwert ouer þe forheed, þat he mowe holde þe boond, þat
- 12 þe nose decline to neþir³ side. & þe boond þat is leid aboue þe nose, the other the pledgets.
 schal be bounden bihynde in þe nolle / & aftirward he schal turne aȝen
 aboue þe nose, holdynge þe plumaciols þat þei moun not wagge to
 neþir side aboute þe sowynge; & aboute þe forheed, þou schalt leie
- 16 þe defensif of bole, & aftirward þou schalt worche on þe wounde of
 þe nose, as I haue seid in a wounde of fleisch in þe fourþe⁴ tretis / [1 lf. 76]
 þe woundis þat ben maad in opere parties of þe face ⁵as wiþ Wounds on other places must be carefully stitched,
 a swerd or ony þing⁵ semblable, brynge hem togidere & sowe hem &
- 20 cure hem, as it is conteyned in general chaptilis of woundis, takynge

² MS. *kutt*.³ MS. þe *neþir*.⁴ *fourþe* for *firste*.

- whanne þey ben ful mad, .IX. Caste þe poudre þat is tofore seyde Add. MS. 12,056.
 vpon þe wounde, þat is y-mad of lym, frank ensence, sandragoun,
 & take whyte of an ey & oyle of roses and bete hem togedire, &
- 24 leye þereynne a lynne cloþ & leye abouen þe wounde, aftirwarde
 [bynde]* þerto þre plumaciols, one ⁶vndireneþe, & on on þat o syde, [1 fol. 81 b]
 an opere on þe opere syde; & þanne bynde þe nose wiþ tweye bandys,
 þat on schalt holden vp þe nose þat he may nouȝt discendyn dun-
- 28 ward, þat opere schal be leyde aboffe þat he mowe kepyn þe plum-
 acyolus, poudere, & þe sowynge. And pilke bande þat ys vnder þe
 nose þat halt þe nose vpwarde, schal be knett abouen on þe hed,
 and aftirwarde he schal be turnyde twarte offere þe forehed, þat he
- 32 mowe holde þe bande, & þe nose declyne to neþere syde. And þe
 bande þat ys leyde aboffe þe nose, schal be bounden behynden in þe
 nolle; and afterwarde he schal turnen aȝeyne aboffe þe nose, hold-
 ynge þe plumacyoles þat þey mowe nouȝt wagge on neythere syde
- 36 aboute þe sewynge; & aboute þe forhed þou schalt legge þe deffensif
 of bol, and aftirwarde þou schalt worche on þe wounde of þe nose
 as y haue seyde in a wounde of flesch in þe firste tretys. þe
 woundes þat beþ y-mad in opere partye of þe face as with a swerd
- 40 ore opire þynge semblable, brynge hem togedire, sowe hem, & cure
 hem, as yt ys conteyned in generaþ chapitle of woundys, takynge

hede herto þat þe sowynge þat is maad in þe face schal be more
 sotil & fairer þan in ony opere partie of þe body / & þou maist
 make a sowynge in þe face, if þat þe wounde be not to myche, on
 þis maner / Take mastik, sandragoun & poudre hem & tempre hem 4
 togidere wiþ þe white of an ey to þe pickenesse of hony, & wete
 þerinne two pecis of linnen cloþ as longe as þe wounde / & leie þe
 toon on þe oon side of þe wounde, & þe oper on þe toþir side & lete
 hem drien / & aftirward make þe wounde sumwhat to blede, & 8
 þanne brynge þe parties of þe wounde togidere; & sowe pilke .ij.
 pecis togidere, & caste aboute poudre of lyme, frankencense, san-
 dragoun tofore seid, & wete a cloþ in þe white of an ey & oile of
 rosis, & leie aboute al togidere, & kepe þe parties wiþ ligature & 12
 prosede forþ in alle þingis as I haue tofore seid /

& if þat þe wounde be maad wiþ a dart or wiþ an arewe & þe
 arowe be drawe out & þe wounde be myche sene, þanne þe cure is
 [1 lf. 76, bk.] 1 þe same þat was seid in þe same chapitle or elles in þe firste tretis, 16
 wheþer þat þe be a senewe prickid eipir noon. But if þe arowe
 heed were entriged in ony priuy place of þe face, so þat it myzte
 not be seen, þanne euery man bisie him to knowe bi his witt how
 try to find it, þat þe sike man stood, whanne þat he was smyte, & whens þat þe 20
 arowe cam, & to what partie þe wounde strecchþ, þat he mowe loke

Add. MS. hede hereto, þat þe sowynge þat ys y-mad in þe face, schal be more
 12,056. sotyl & fairere, þanne in enye opere party of þe body. And þou
 maiste maken a sowynge in þe face, zif þat þe wounde be nouzt to 24
 myche, on þis manere. R mastyk & sangdragoun & poudre hem &
 tempre hem togedire wiþ þe whyte of an eyze to þe þyknesse of
 hony, & wete þereynne tweye pecys of linnen cloþ as longe as þe
 [2 fol. 82 a] wounde, & leye one on þat o syde of þe 2 wounde, & þe opere on þat 28
 opere & lete hem dreyzen, and afterwarde make þe wounde sum
 what to blede, & þenne brynge þe parties of þe wounde togedires;
 & sowe pilke two pecys togedres, & caste aboute þe poudre of lym,
 ffraunc ensence, sanddragoun tofore seyde, & wete a cloþ in þe whyte 32
 of an eyze & oyle of roses, & leye aboue al togedyre, and kepe þe
 parties with ligature, & procede forþ in alle þynges as y haue tofore
 seyde. And zif þat þe wounde be y-mad with a dart opere with an
 arwe, & þe arwe ben y-drawe out and þe wounde be myche y-sene, 36
 þenne þe cure ys þe same þat was seyde in þe same chapytell opere
 ollys in þe firste tretys, wheþere þat þe be a synwe prikyde opere
 none. But zif þat þe arwe-hed were entrygede in enye priuy place of
 þe face, so þat yt myzte nouzt ben seyzen, þenne euerye man bysie 40
 hym be his wyt, to knowe how þe seke man stod, whanne he was y-
 smete, & whennys þat þe arwe come, & to what party þe wounde
 strecchith, þat he mowe loke zif þat he mowe fynden enye manere

if þat he mowe fynde ony maner wey how he may drawe out þilke
 arowe-heed; & þanne drawe him out þe best maner wey þat he and draw
it out;
 may / & if he may not, heelde he in þe wounde oile of rosis & þe if you fail,
apply
Olium
 4 þelke of an ey togidere medlid; & wiþ þis medicyn worche in þe Rosarium
till nature
works.
 wounde, til þat kynde schewe sum maner wey / Manye men han
 born an arowe-heed in þe parties of her face bi longe tyme; &
 after longe tyme kynde haþ cast out þe arowe heed, or ellis he haþ
 8 schewid sum wey bi þe which wey þilke arowe-heed myȝte be taken
 out. & þou must take hede bi al þi miȝt þat, whanne þat þou Beware of
disfiguring
the mouth in
making the
suture.
 sowist þe woundis of þe face, þat þe mouþ be not crokid, but make
 so slyȝly þi sowynge þat þilke accident may ¹not fallen; & þat þou [¹ ff. 77]
 12 maist do weel, if þat þou cowdist ordeyne weel þi sowynge / & if
 þat þou canst, kepe weel þi sowynge wiþ plumaciols and wiþ
 byndyngis // // //

The bridde chapitle of þe secunde tretis is of ¶ Cap. 3^m
 16 woundis of þe necke & anotamie of the same.

Bi þe necke is conteyned al þe place þat is bitwene þe heed & Anatomy of
the neck.
 þe schuldris, þe which anotamie I wole telle as I haue bihiȝt /
 Summen maken difference bitwene þe necke & þe wesaunt² & þe

² wesaunt gula; wesaunde, ysophagus. Wright W., page 676, XV. cent.
 See *Ficary*, page 47, note 4.

20 wey, how he may drawen out þilke arwe-hed; and þenne drawe Add. MS.
12,066.
 hym out þe beste manere þat he may. And ȝif he may nouȝt, helde
 into þe wounde oyle of roses, & medle he oyle of roses & þe ȝolke
 of an eyȝe togedre, & helde into þe wounde, & wiþ þis medycine
 24 worche in þe wounde, tyl þat kynde schewe sum manere wey.
 Manye men han born an arwe-hed in þat partyes of here face by
 longe tyme; and aftere kynde haþ cast out þilke arwe-hed, opere
 ellys haþ schewyde sum weye by whom þilke arwe-hed myȝte be
 28 taken out. And þou moste taken hede be al þy myȝht þat whanne
 þat þou sowyste þe woundes of þe face þat þe mouþ be noȝt crokyde,
 but make so slyȝly þy sowynge þat þylke accident may noȝt ³ffallen; [³ fol. 82 b]
 & þat þou maiste do wel, ȝif þat þou coupest ordeyn wel þy sowynge
 32 & ȝif þou coupest kepen wel þy sowynge wiþ plumacyolus and wiþ
 byndynges.

¶ Cap. iiij. tretis ij is off woundes of þe nekke &
 Anotomye of þe same.

36 ¶ **B**y the nekke is contynwede alle þe place þat is bytwene þe
 hed & þe schuldris, whose Anotamye y wyȝt tellen as y haue
 behyȝht. ¶ Some men makyth dyfference bytwene þe nekke & þe
 SURGERY. L

In the neck
are
vij spondilis,
or Vertebrae,
the 1st is
articulated
with the occi-
pital bone.

[² If. 77, bk.]

.1.
.2.3.
.4.5.6.
7

From the
cervical
vertebrae
spring 7 pairs
of sinews,

prote-bolle, & alle þese ben comprehendid vndir þe name of þe necke. In þe necke þer ben .vij. spondelis þat is to seie whirl-boonys / whirlboonys of þe rigge. þe firste of þe boonys is bounde wip a boon of þe heed þat is clepid passillare¹ with manye smale feble ligamentis; & þei were feble bi-cause þat þilke ioyn^t next to þe heed myzte meue many weies. & þe cause whi þat þer were smale ligamentis multiplied in þat ioyn^t, þat manye smale myzten susteyne a greet burþun as weel as a fewe greete; & if þat þer were 8 a fewe greete, þei weren not so able to be meued / þe firste spondile² is bounde to þe secunde / þe secunde to þe þridde, þe þridde to þe fourþe / þe fourþe to þe fifþe, þe fifþe to þe sixte / þe sixte to þe seuene / þe seuene is bounde loseliche to þe firste spondile of þe 12 rigge, þat þe necke myzte more litzliche meuen, which þat is clepid þe .vij. spondile / whanne þat þou rekenest [from þe hed dunwarde]* seuene peire of senewis proceden out [by þese .vij. spondelis. þe firste peire of synwe procedeþ out]* bitwene þe firste spondilis and³ þe boon of þe heed þat is clepid passillare / þe secunde peire of senewis is bore bitwene þe firste spondile & þe secunde, & so euery peire passen out bitwene ech spondile / þese senewis ben

¹ See *Vicary*, page 44, note 2.

² MS. *of*. Add. MS. 10,440, fol. 2: "þ he is enterberyng in þe kynder partie al þe bones of þe heued, & þerfore he is clepid þe berere *rp* or *passillus*."

Add. MS. 12,056. wesant & þe prote-bolle, and alle þese be comprehendyde vndir þe 20 name of þe nekke. In þe nekke þere ben vij spondiles—þat is to say, whirle bonys of þe rigge. þe furste of þe bonys ys y-bounds wip a bon of þe hed þat ys y-clepyde passillare wip manye smale feble ligamentys; & þey weren feble bycause þat þilke Iuncte² nexte þe hed myzte meffe manye weyes. And þe cause why þat þere were manye smale lygamentes muteplyede in þat Iuncte, þat manye smale myzte susteyne a grete burthyne as wel as a fewe grete; & zif þat þere were a fewe grete, þey were nougt so able to be meffyde. The firste spondyle ys y-bouden to þe secunde, þe secunde to þe þridde, þe þridde to þe fourþe, þe iiij. to þe v., þe v. to þe vi., þe sixte to þe sevenþe, þe vij. ys y-bouden loselyche to þe fyrste spondile⁴ of þe rugge, þat þe nekke myzte more lyztlyche³ meffen, whiche ys clepyde þe .vij. spondile, whenne þat þou reknyste from þe hed dunwarde.* vij. peire off synwes growip out by þese .vij. spondelis. þe firste peire of synwe procedeþ out* bytwene þe fyrste spondile⁵ & þe bon of þe hed þat ys y-clepyde passillare; 36 þe secunde peire of synwes ys y-bore bytwene þe firste spondile & þe secunde, & so euery peire passith out bytwene euery spondile.

[³ fol. 83 a]

* MS. *Whenne þat þou reknyst from þe hed*, struck through, after *spondile*.

dyuydid in many weies bi þe heed, þe necke and þe face, & þe brest,
 schuldris & þe armes; þe braunchis of þe senewis of þe heed in
 sum place ben conteynned & ioyned with þese senewis / & þese
 4 senewis ben clepid meuyng, riȝt as þe senewis þat comen of þe
 fore partie of þe brayn ben clepid felynge, & þese han also felynge.
 Of þese senewis þat comen of þe spondilis of þe necke þere ben
 maad braunys, þe whiche ben instrumentis of meuyng of þo
 8 parties. In ¹þe necke bihynde, þere ben ordeyned open² veynes ^[1 lf. 78]
 comynge fro þe lyuere þe whiche þat ascenden into þe heed / &
 vndir þe veynes þer ben arteries priuylche³ comynge fro þe herte &
 goynge to þe heed for notable profitis. & whanne þat þei han⁴
 12 doon al her office in þe heed þei discenden down bi þe place þat is
 bihynde þe eeris & þei bringe partie materie spermatife: þat is to
 seie mater of sperme, down to þe ballokis / & þefore it is seid if
 þat þo veynes weren kutt, a man schulde neuere engendre⁵ / On þe
 16 riȝtside & also on þe liftside of þe necke ben ordeined. ij. nollis⁶
 whiche⁷ ben of ligamentis matire, þe whiche proceden out of þe

communi-
cating with
the sinews of
the head.

The neck
contains
veins
and arteries,
ascending
from the
heart,

and bringing
spermatic
matter to the
ballocks,

it contains
also liga-
ments,

² open, Lat. manifestæ, superficial. ³ Lat. arterie occulte. ⁴ MS. *ben*.

⁵ Avicenna quotes Hippocrates as authority for this curious belief: "Et Hip. quidem dixit in suis intentionibus quod plurimum materiei spermatis est ex cerebro & quod descendit ex duabus venis que sunt post ambas aures. Et propter hoc abscindit phlebotomia ambarum generationem & facit incur-rere sterilitatem." *Canon Lib. III, Fœn XX, Tract. 1, Cap. 3, ed. Ven. 1523, fol. 5.*

⁶ *nollis*, Latin cervicæ, seem to be the transverse processes.

⁷ *whiche*, struck through after *nollis*.

þese Synwys buȝ deuyded manye weyes by þe hed, & þe nekke, &
 þe face, & þe breste, schuldres, & þe armes; þe braunches of þe
 20 synwes of the hed in some place beȝ contynwede & ioyned with
 þese synwes. And þese synwes buȝ y-clepyde meffynge ryȝte as
 þe synwes þat comyȝh of þe fore partye of þe brayn beȝ y-clepyde
 felynge & þese habbiȝ also felynge. Of þese Synwes þat comyȝh
 24 of þe spondlis of þe nekke þere beȝ mad brawnys, þe whiche beȝ
 instrumentes of mevyng of þe partyes. In þe nekke behynde,
 þere ben y-ordeynde opyn veynes comynge from þe lyffere whiche
 þat ascendyn to þe hed, and vndir þo Veynes þere ben Arteryes y-
 28 hud priuelyche, comynge from þe herte & goynge to þe hed for
 notable profetes. And whanne þat þey han do al here office in þe
 hed, þey discenden down by þe place þat beȝ behynde þe erys &
 þey bryngen materie spermatice, þat is to say mater of sperme, don
 32 to þe ballokes, & þefore it ys y-seyde: ȝif þat þo Veynes weren y-
 kutt, a man scholde neuere engendre. On þe ryȝt syde & eke on
 þe lefte syde of þe nekke þere ben y-ordeynde tweye nollis, þe
 whyche beȝ of lygamente matire, þe whiche proceden out of þe bonys

Add. MS.
12,056.

boonys of þe heed & of þe spondilis, & þei strecchen doun to þe
 to support
 the sinews.
 eeris¹ in lenkþe biside þe spin boon, & þei ben a couche & a rest-
 ynge place to þe senewis þat comen out of þe nucha. In þe fore
 partie of þe necke þere is gula, þe which þat strecchiþ from þe chyn 4
 doun to þe forke of þe brest;² & bitwene þe necke & gula wipiane-
 forþ þere is ordeyned mary,³ þat is to seie þe wesant; þe which þat
 discendiþ of⁴ a smal skyn enuerounnyng⁵ al þe mouþ wipiane-
 forþ & so goynge doun to þe stomak, & he is hool & conteyned wip þe 8
 stomak, & is of substaunce of þe same stomak, & he discendiþ doun
 bi þe hyndere partie of þe necke cleuyng to þe spondilis til þat he
 come to þe fifþe spondile of þe rigge; & þere he is departid from
 þe spondilis, & he declineþ into þe ynnere partie til þat he peerse 12
 þoruþ þe mydrif,⁶ & is compounned of .ij. panniclis, & in þe ynnere
 clooþ þere ben braunnys in lenkþe bi þe whiche drauhtis is maad of
 mete & of drynk, & þe vttere clooþ þere ben brawnys in brede bi
 þe whiche is castynge out of superfluytees; & he haþ noon tran- 16
 suersarie, þat is to seie goynge ouerþwert, for wipholdynge is not
 nedeful to him. & in þe fore partie of þe brest þere is sett þe
 The gullet
 has 2 coats.
 canne⁷ of þe lungis, þe which is compounned of gristil ryngis bounde

The windpipe
 is made of
 gristle,

¹ eeris for ers.

² the forke of the brest, the clavicle.

³ mary, Lat. meri siue oesophagus. Arab. mari'.

⁴ MS. of, twice.

⁵ mydrif, diaphragma. Wright W., *Gloss.*, page 578, l. 23, XV. cent.

⁷ MS. same. Lat. cauna pulmonis. See *Vicary*, page 47, note 7.

Add. MS. of þe hed & of þe spondiles, & þey strecchen doun to þe ers in 20
 12,066. lengþe besydes þe spyne bon, & þey ben a couche & a restynge
 place to þe synwes þat comyth out of þe nucha. In þe fore partye
 of þe nekke þere ys gula whiche þat strecchiþ from þe chyn doun to
 þe furcle of þe brest; and bytwene þe nekke & þe gulam wipynne- 24
 forþ þere ys ⁶y-ordeyned mery—þat ys to seye þe wesand; þe whiche
 þat discendiþ of a smal schyn environnyng alle þe mouth withyane-
 forþ, & so goynge doun to þe Stomak, & he ys hol & conteynde wip
 þe Stomak, & ys of Substaunce of þe same stomak, & he dissendiþ 28
 doun by þe hyndere partye of þe nek' cleuyng to þe spondelis; tyl
 þat he come to þe .v. spondile of þe rugge, & þere he ys departyde
 from þe spondelis and declyneth into þe Innere partye tyl þat he
 perce þorwe þe mydryff, & he ys componed of tway pannycles, and 32
 in þe Innere cloþ þere ben brawnys in lengthe, by þe whiche drauhte
 ys made of mete & drynke, and in þe vtter cloþ þere bene brawnys
 in brede by whom ys made castynge out of superfluyte; and he haþ
 non transversarye, þat ys to seye goynge twartoffere, ffor wythhold- 36
 ynge ys nougt nedful to hym. And in þe fore partye of þe brest
 þere is y-set þe canne of longes, þe whiche ys componed off grustlye

togidere wiþ pannicleris ligamentis, hauynge in þe ynnere partie a ful smeþe pannicle ioynynge togidere pilke gristili ryngis. & pilke ryngis whanne þei ben ioyned wiþ merie, þei ben defaultif azens þe
 4 merie / & þe foorme of þe canne of þe lungis is* as it were þe foorme of a cane, ¹þat is to seie a rehed,² of þe which rehed þe
 fourþe partie were kutt away in lenkþe, & aftirward pilke caane is wrie with a sotil clooþ þat whanne þat a greet mussel of mete passe
 8 doun bi þe merye, he schulde not haue lettinge, but pilke pannicle of merye ȝeueþ stede³ to þe greet mete passynge doun to þe stomak. þe prote-bolle⁴ is maad of iij gristlis, & is sett aboute þese two
 weies. & hoþe on þe riȝtside & on þe lift side of þe caane of þe
 12 lungis þer ben ij. greete veynes þat ben clepid organice or ellis guydes⁵; & vndir þe veynes þer ben greete arteries, & of þe kuttynge of pilke veynes & arteries þer comeþ ofte tyme greete perels, & sumtyme deep; for þe grete affenite þat þei han wiþ þe herte,
 16 and þe greet noyousnes⁶ þat þei han to þe lyuere, bi hem sonner⁷ blood is euacued, wherfore spiritus exalip, þe whiche þat ben

and gives way to great morsels.

The 2 Venæ organice (Jugular Veins) and 2 great Arteries go along the windpipe.

An incision into them is dangerous, for they are near the heart and the liver.

² Read *reed*.

³ ȝeueþ stede, Lat. *cedere*. See *Catholicon Angl.*, page 155, to *giffe stede*, *cedere*, *locum dare*.

⁴ *prote-bolle*. See *Vicary*, page 48, note 1.

⁵ *guydes*, Lat. *guidegi*, *Ibid.* p. 48, note 3. Compare Arab. *widāsch*, *vena jugularia*. Matth. Sylv.: "Guedegi sunt vene guides. Alguidegi in collo flobotomantur."

⁶ *noyousnesse*. See *noyous*, *Cathol. Angl.*, page 256. The Latin has: *propinquitatem*, and the translator seems to have been influenced by the preceding *affenite*.

⁷ *sonner*, in margin.

rynges y-bounde togedire wiþ panycleris ligamentes, habbynge in þe Innore partye a ful smeþe pannicle Ioynynge togedire pilke
 20 grustly rynges. And pilke rynges, whenne þat þey ben ioynede with mery, þey ben defaultyf anonde þe mery. And þe forme of þe caane of þe longes [is]* as yt were þe forme of a cane—þat is to say a reed, of þe whiche reed þe fourþ part were kutt away in lengthe, & aftere-
 24 ward þe canne ys y-wreye wiþ a sotyl cloth, þat whanne þat a grete moesseþ of mete passe doun be þe mery, he scholde han non lettynge, but pilke pannicle of mery ȝeuyth stede to þe grete mete passynge doun to þe stomak. þe protbolle þat is mad of þre grustlys, ys y-sette
 28 aboute þese two weyȝes. And hoþe on þe ryȝte syde & eke on þe left side of þe cane of þese longes, þere beþ tweye grete veynes þat beþ y-clepyde organice opere ellys guydes. & vndire þe veynes þere ben grete arteries, and of þe kyttinge of pilke Veynes &
 32 Arteryes þere comyth ofte tymes gret peryle & sumtyme sodeyne dep; for þe grete afynite¹⁰ þat þey han in þe herte & þe grete noyeesse þat þey han to þe lyffer, sennore by hem blod ys euacued, wherfore spirites exaleþ whyche þat buþ frendys, hoþe to þe body &

Add. MS. 12,056.

[fol. 84 a]

¹⁰ a, above line.

The muscles,
nerves, and
vessels of the
neck

[* 1f. 79, bk.]

pass in its
longitudinal
direction.

Wounds on
the neck are
either longi-
tudinal or
transverse.

In the latter
case staunch
the blood,

sew the vein,
and the
nerve,
and apply a
preparation

freendis boþe to þe body and also to¹ þe soule² / þe ligament of þe
þrote is clepid emanence eipir þe heizþe of þe epiglote, & in þe sidis
of þe þrote þere is sett gula. &³ þe goynge of brawnys, senewis
and cordis, veynes & arteries & her braunchis bi ⁴parties of þe heed 4
proceden aftir þe ordour of eeris,⁵ & þei ben ordeyned in þe necke
& in gula aftir her lenkþe. & herbi þou maist se þat it is necessarie
a surgian to make hise kuttyngis & hise brennyngis bi lenkþe of þe
necke & of þe þrote, & þat þe woundis þat ben maad ouerþwert⁸
ben more perlous, þan þo þat ben in lenkþe /

Now we wolen tretyn of woundis þat ben maad in þis place,
wip a sword or wip sum þing semblable to him, or wip an arowe or
sum þing semblable to him. & if it be wip a sword, eipir it is ouer- 12
þwert eipir in lenkþe / & if it be ouerþwert & þere be kutt greete
veynes eipir arteries, it is to dreden. Neþeles þou schalt helpe to
staunche þe blood & consowde þe veyne, aftir þe techinge tofore
assigned in þe chapitle of flux of blood. & if þer be a senewe kutt, 16
þanne brynge boþe parties of þe senewe togidere & sowe þe pelliclis
of þe senewe wip þe sowynge of þe woundis, as I haue tauzt tofore
in þe place of sowynge of senewis, & leie aboue lumbricus of þe

¹ to, above line.

² Lat.: qui est inter corpus et animam amicabile ligamentum.

³ in, inserted.

⁵ eeris for heeris.

Add. MS.
12,056.

eke to þe soule. þe ligamente of þe þrote ys y-clepyd þe⁶ eminence 20
opere þe hekþe of þe epiglote, & in þe sydes of þe þrote þere is y-set
gula. & þe goynge of brawnys, cordys, synwes, veynes, arteries &
here braunchys by parties of þe hed proceden aftyre þe ordre of
heres, & þey ben ordeyned in þe nekke & in þe gula aftire here 24
lengþe. And hereby þou maiste ysene, how þat yt is necessarye a
surgyn to maken hys kuttynges, & hys brennynges by lengþe of þe
nekke & of þe þrote, and þat þe woundys þat ben y-mad twarte
offere beþ more perylose, þen þo þat bene in lengthe. 28

Wonde of þe nekke. ¶ Now we wyl tretyn of woundes þat
beþ mad in þis place wip a sword opere with sum þynge semblable
to hym, opere wip an arwe, opere with sum þynge semblable to hym.
And ȝif it be wyth a swerde, opere yt ys twarte offere ore in lengthe; 32
and ȝif it be twart offere, and þere ben y-kutt grete Veynes opere
arteryes, lit ys gretly to dreden. Napeles þou schalt helpe to
staunche þe blod & to consoude þe veyne, afters þe techynge tofore
asygned in þe chapytle off flux of blod. And ȝif þere be a synwe 36
kutte, brynge þe parties of þe synwe togedyre, & sow þe pellykles
of þe synwe with þe sowynge of þe wounde, as y haue tauzt tofore
in þe ⁷place of sowynge of synwes, and leye aboffe lumbricus of þe

[7 fol. 84 b]

⁶ þe, above line.

- erþe, þat¹ beth erþe-wormes staumpid & boilid wip oile of rosis, & of earth-worms. [1 lf. 80]
 kepe þe sowynge ¹with byndynge, & so procede forþ in al þing of
 þe cure, as it is told in þe chapitle tofore schewid / & if þat þe
 4 wounde were in lenkþe, it is not necessarie but for to sowe þe
 wounde & caste aboue þe poudre of lyme, frankencense, & sandra-
 gown, & kepe þe poudre & þe sowynge wip byndynge, til þe wounde
 be ful consowdid / & if þe wounde were maad in þe parties wip an
 8 arowe or wip a knyft, or with a spore or sum þing semblable to hem,
 & if þer be an arowe, drawe him out; & if an arowe be drawe out,
 loke if þer folowe emorosogie,² þat is to seie, a greet flux of blood,
 & þanne staunche it¹ aftir þe doctryne þat is told tofore / & if þer
 12 be no flux of blood, loke if þer be akþe / & if þer be acþe, putte in
 þe wounde a litil tent þat may holde þe wounde open al a day, þat
 þou maist¹ seen þat þe woundid man schal haue noon acþe / & if
 he haue noon acþe, lete þe wounde be consowdid; for sumtyme it
 16 happiþ, þat an arowe or sum þing semblable passiþ þoruþ þe necke
 & þe þrote, & he touche not þe senewe, arterie, ne veyne, & þanne it
 nedip not but þat þe wounde be ²consowdid. & if þer were akþe
 eiper bigynnyng of swellynge, þanne it were necessarie to fulfille
 20 þe wounde wip hoothe oile of rosis & to putte in a tente not to
² Lat. emorrogia. Matth. Sylv.: "Emorogia. Emorrogia .i. sanguis
 fluxus vel discursus."

If the wound
is longitudin-
al it needs
sewing and
pulsis

An arrow
must be
drawn out,
and if
Emorogie
(hemorrhage)
ensues,
staunch the
blood,
if there are
pains, tent
the wound.

[1 lf. 80, bk.]
If there are
pains and
swelling,
tent the
wound and
apply oil of
roses.

- erthe þat beþ erthe wormes y-stampyde & boylled wyth oylle of Add. MS.
 roses, & kepe þe sowynge with byndynge, and so procede forþ in alle 12,056.
 þynge in þe cure, as yt is tolde in the chapitle tofore schewyde.
 24 And 3if þat þe wounde were in lengþe, yt ys nozt necessarie but
 forto sowe þe wounde & to casten aboue, þe poudre of lym, frank
 ensence & sank dragoun, & to kepe þe sewynge & þe poudre with
 hyndynge, tyl þat þe wounde be ful consouded. And 3if þat þe
 28 wounde were y-mad in þe parties with an arwe opere a knyfft, opere
 a spere, opere sum þynge semblable to hem, and 3if þere be an arwe,
 drawe hym out, and 3if þe arwe be drawen out, loke 3if þere folwe
 emorosogie, þat ys to seye, a gret flux of blod, & þenne staunche hym
 32 aftere þe doctryne y-told tofore. & 3if þere be non flux of blod,
 loke 3if þere be akþe; & 3if þere be akþe, put into þe wounde a
 lytel tente þat may holde þe wounde opyn al day, þat þou may se
 þat þe wounded man schal han non akþe. And 3if he haue non akþe,
 36 lete þe wounde be consoudyde; ffor sum tyme it happiþ, þat an
 arwe, oper sum thyng semblable passith þorwe þe nekke & þe þrote,
 & 3it he touchiþ nozt veyne, arterye, ne synwe, & þenne it nedip
 nozt but þat þe wounde be consouded. And 3if þere were akþe opere
 40 ellys a bygynnyng of swellynge, þan yt were necessarie to fulfille
 þe wounde wip hot oyle of roses & to put in a tente nozt to grete,

greet, wet in þe 3elke of an ey & oile of rosis hoot, & so holde þe wounde open, til þat he 3eue quytture, & aftir clense him & aftir consowde him / Vndirstonde þe perilis þat comen for [wondys]* þat ben maad in þis place / þe firste perel is: if þat þe necke be kutt 4 ouerþwert wiþ a swerd, so þat þe necke-boon & þe marie of þe necke-boon be al atwo, it is deedliche. & if þat nucha, þat is mary of þe necke boon, is not kutt al atwo but is hurt, it is perile of lesynge, felynge & meuynge,¹ & at þe laste be deed, but if þat 8 medicyns þat I schal telle moun helpe / & if þat ony veyne or ony greet senewe be kutt ouerþwert, I suppose þat he be heeled, þe necke schal neuere haue² his free meuynge; & if þat ony of þe veynes organik, þe whiche þat ben clepid guydes, or ellis ony of þe 12 arteries þat ben vndir hem be kutt, it is drede of sodeyn deep, for sodeyn exalacioun of þe spiritis & also for affinite of þe herte; & also if þat þe cane of þe lungis be kutt ouerþwert al atwo, for þe more partie it is deedliche / Also it is seid, þat if þe veynes þat 16 ben bihynde þe eeris bee kutt al atwo, he ne schal neuere engendre. And also sumtyme it is kutt eipir prickid þe senewe þat is clepid reuersif, þat is vndir boþe sidis of þe eere, of þe whiche kuttynge or prickynge euermore is maad hosnesse⁴ / And if þat þe places 20

Nota. Hoarseness follows the cutting of the "reversif nerve" (auricularis posterior).

¹ Lat.: est periculum amissionis sensus et motus. ² *have*, in margin. ⁴ *hosnesse*. *Prompt. Par.*, p. 248. "*hoorsnesse*, Rancor."

Add. MS. 12,056. y-wett in þe 3olke of an ey3e & oyle of roses hot, & so holde þe wounde open to þat he 3yfe quyter, & afterwarde clanse hym & afterwarde consoude hym. Nota: vndirstande þe peryles þat comen from wondys* þat ben maad in þis place. þe firste ⁵Perel ys: 3if 24 þat þe nekke be kutte twarte offere with a swerd, so þat þe nekke-bon & þe marye of þe nekke-bon be y-kut al atwo, yt is dedlyche; and 3if þat nucha, þat ys þe marye of þe nekke-bon, is nozt y-kut al atwo but ys y-hurt, yt is peryle of leosynge, ffelynge & meffynge, & 28 at þe laste to be ded, but 3if þe medycines þat y schal tellen afterwarde mowe helpen. And 3if þat enye Veynes opere enye gret synwe be y-kut twart offere, y suppose þat he be helyde, þe nekke schal neuere haue hys fre meffynge; and 3if enye of the veynes 32 organyk whiche þat bep clepyde guydes, opere ellys enye of þe arteries þat bep vndire hem bep y-kut, yt ys drede of sodeyne dep, ffor sodeyne exalacioun of þe spiritis & also for Afynyte of þe herte; & also 3if þat þe canne off þe longes be y-kut twarte offere al 36 atwo, for þe more partye it is dedlyche; & so it ys seyde 3if þat þe veynes þat bep behynde þe eres be y-kut al atwo, he schal nevire engendre. Also sum tyme ys y-kut opere y-prekyde þe synwe þat is clepyde reuersiff, þat ys vndire boþe þe sydes of þe ere, of whos 40 kuttynge opere prekynge euere more ys mad horsnesse. And 3if

ben peersid with an arowe, & pouz þat trache arterie be peersid or ellis ysophaga, so þat nucha be nouzt prickid bi þe mydle, þanne zitt he may be heelid wip gode medicyns & acordynge.

- 4 þou schalt helpe nucha þat is hurt in þis maner: þou schalt helde into þe wounde, in þe bigynnyng, oile of rosis, & aftirward do yn oile of rosis & zelke of an ey medlid togidere, and þou schalt be bisy in al maner to aswage akþe; & whanne þat quytture is
- 8 maad, þanne leie a mundificatif wip medicyns confortatiuis & incarnatiuis maad in þis maner / Take oile of rosis colate 3.iiij., wex, rosyn of ech two dragmis, terbentine .iiij. 3, frankencense, mastik of ech .i. 3, mirre, sarcocol,¹ mummie² of ech 3 .ß., barly mele 3 ß.,
- 12 streyne it on a cloop & ³leie it on þe nucha þat is hurt. & þei þat hereof⁴ pronosticioun schulde go tofore, þe which schulde schewe to yuel, neþeles bi þis medicyn þer cometh a rectificacioun to þe nucha, & melioracioun of meuyng of lymes, þat ben byneþe þe
- 16 place of þe nucha þat is hurt, more helpinge, þat semeþ possible to þe leche. For þer is no þing vnpossible to stalworþe⁵ nature; namely, whanne þat it is holpen wip a good leche & wip þingis, þat ben

Treatment if the spinal marrow is hurt.

Apply Olinum Rosarum.

R

Modus confortandi & mundificandi vulnera Nucha.

[¶ ff. 81, bk.]

Tho' the prognosis is unfavourable, yet medicine,

Nota nature and the physician may help.

¹ *Sarcocolla*, Gr. *Σαρκοκόλλα*, "is the Gumme or liquore of a tre growyng in Persia." Halle, *Table*, p. 109.

² *mummie*, *mumia*. See Halle, *Table*, p. 72, and Notes.

⁴ MS. of *here*.

⁵ *stalworth*. See Skeat, *Et. Dict.*, s.v. *Stalwart*.

- þat place ben y-perced with an arwe, & þowz þat trachea arteria be y-percyde opere ellys ysophaga, so þat Nucha be nozt þrillede be þe mydle, þey mowe ben y-helyde with gode medycines & acordynge. þou schalt helpe Nucha þat ys y-hurt in þis manere: þou schalt helden into þe wounde in þe bygynnyng oyle of roses & afterwarde
- 24 leye aboffe oyle of roses & þe zelke of an eyze, and þou schalt be busy in alle manere to aswage akþe; & whenne þat quyter ys y-mad, þenne leye a mundificatyff wip medicynes confortatyff⁷ and ⁸Incarnatyfes y-mad in thys manere: R. oyle of rosis colat .3. iiij, with⁷
- 28 resyne ana. 3. ij, terbentyne 3. iiij, frank ensence, mastyk ana. 3. i, mirre, sarcocolle,⁸ mumie ana. 3. ß, barly mele .5. ß; streyne it on a clop & leye yt on þe nucha þat is hurt. And þawz þat hereof euere more pronosticacion scholde go tofore whiche scholde sownen to
- 32 yuele, napeles by þis medicine þere comyth rectificacioun to þe nuca, & amelioracioun off mevyng of lymes þat beþ beneþe þe place of þe nuca þat ys y-hurt, more helpinge, þenne semyth possible to þe leche. For þere ys noþyng vnpossible to Stalworth nature; namlyche
- 36 whanne þat yt is holpen wip a gode leche & wip þynges, þat beþ

Add. MS. 12,056.

[¶ fol. 85 b]

⁷ *wip* for *wex*.

⁸ MS. *sarceticolle*.

Wounds of
the brain, the
Spinal Cord,

and the
principal
nerves

[* 1f. 82]
are mortal.

Avoid such
hopeless
cases.

helpinge & acordynge to a good intencioun / Here vndirstonde þat
al maner wounde þat peersip to þe substaunce of þe brayn or ellis
to þe nucha, so þat bi þer hurtynge of þe nucha þe meuyng & þe
felynge of summe lymes ben lost, nameliche from þe whirle-boonys 4
of þe rigge, of þe reynes vpward, & al maner wounde þat is maad
in þe extremittees of¹ þe lacertis² as .iij. fyngir mele³ brede vndir þe
schuldris, eipir .iij. fyngir mele brede aboue þe elbowe eipir byneþe,
eipir .iij. fyngir mele aboue þe kne or byneþe / & ech wounde þat is 8
in a senewe place with strengest akþe & hardnes, ⁴schal be deemed
deedlich, for þe nobilte of pilke brayn, & for þe affinite of þe nucha
wip þe brayn, of þe which nucha passip as a reuere⁵ from a welle,
& for þe affinite of pilke senewe wip þe brayn bi mene of nucha, of 12
þe whiche þei passen out as a flood / Wherefore þou schalt euermore
in sich maner woundis pronosteken deth, & euermore fle as miche
as þou myzt from vnreasonable curis, but if þou be with þe more
instaunce y-preied / Neþeles sumtyme nature wip good helpinge 16
worchip þat semeþ to þe leche vnpossible, neuer-þe-lattere loue noon
sich [cures]* but if þou be greetliche preied & þanne entermete of
þe cure of þe sike man //

¹ MS. *ax.* Lat. in extremitatibus lacertorum.

² *lacertis*, the sinewy part of the arm. See *Vicary*, p. 57, note 1.

³ *iij fyngir mele brede.* Lat. *tribus digitis.*

⁵ MS. *reuere.*

Add. MS. 12,056. helpynge & acordynge to a gode entencioun. Here vndirstande þat 20
alle manere wounde þat persith to þe substaunce of þe brayn opere
ellys to þe nuca, so þat by þe hurtynge of þe nuca þe meffynge &
of þe ffelynge of some lymes ben y-lost, namlyche from þe whirle-
woundes bonys of þe rugge, of þe reynes vpwarde, & alle manere wounde þat 24
þat ben dedlich ys mad in þe extremitis of þe lacertes as þre fyngre mele brede in
þe schuldres, opere þre fyngre mele brede aboue þe elbowe opere by-
neþen, opere þre fyngre mele aboue þe kne opere byneþene, & euery
wounde þat ys in a synwe place with strengest akþe & hardnesse, 28
schal be demyde dedlyche: ffor þe noblete of pilke brayn, & for þe
Affynite of nuca wyth þe brayn, of þe whiche nuca passith as þe
Ryuere from a welle, & for þe Afynite of pilke Synwes wip þe brayn,
by mene of þe Nuca, of whom þey passen out as of a fiod, where- 32
[* fol. 86 a] fore ⁶þou schalt euyre more in swiche manere woundes pronostiken
deþ, and euere more fle as myche as þou mayst from vnreasonable
cures, but 3if þou be wip þe more Instaunce y-preyzede. Napeles
sumtyme nature with gode helpynge wcrchith þat semeþ to the 36
leche vnpossible. Neuere þe latere loue non swiche cures* but 3if
þou be gretliche y-preyede, and þenne entyremete of þe cure of þe
syke man.

THe .iiij. chapitle of þe .ij. tretis is of woundis ¶ *Capit. iiij.*
of þe spawde,¹ schuldre, arm, handis, fyngris,
brawnys, veynes, & her anotamie /

4 þe spawde is oon of þe iiij. boonys, þe which þat makþ þe
foorme of þe schuldre / & þe spawde-boon is pinne & brood two- ^{1 The Shoul-}
ward þe schuldris & in hise endis gristly. On þe vpper side of ^{der-blade.}
him he haþ an egge sumwhat greet & toward þe arm ^{2 in þe place} ^[¶ 11. 22, bk.]
8 of þe schuldre he is greet & round ; & pilke eende is holowe as a
box, & þis boon is lich to a pele³ wiþ þe whiche men setten breed
into þe ouene, & on þe hyndere partie of the schuldre he haþ an
eminence. & in þe box of þis boon — —⁴ þe which is clepd adiu- ^{3 The Ad-}
12 torium ; þe which is oon boon sumwhat crokid, greet & holowe / ^{jutor}
þis boon is greet for necessite of strenkþe, & of schap holowe, þat ^(Humerus)
he were lizt, þat he schulde not þoruþ his heuynes lette þe worch-
inge of lacertis, & þe round extremite of þis boon entrip into þe
16 holownes of þe spawde. & þei ben bounden togidere wiþ a bowable
ligament. þe canel-boon⁵ of þe brest is in þis maner maad, hauynge ^{4 The Ad-}
^{jutor}
^{is strong and}
^{hollow.}

¹ *spawde*, *spatula* = scapula, shoulder-blade. See *Cathol. Angl.*, p. 352.
“*spawde* Armus.” O.Fr. *espalde*.

² *pele*, Lat. *palla*. See *Cathol. Angl.*, p. 273, note 4.

⁴ Some words are wanting in both MSS. (*entrip þe extremite of a boon*).
Lat. : In hac pyside sive concavitate huius ossis, intrat extremitas ossis
adiutorii.

⁵ See *N. E. Diet.* This is the earliest reference for *canelbone* = *clavicula*.

¶ Capit. iiij. tretis .ij. is of woundes of þe spawde, ^{Add. MS.}
schuldre, arme, handis, ffigres, brawnys, veynes, ^{12,056.}
20 and here Anotamye.

þe spawde ys one of þe iiij bonys whiche þat makþ þe forme
of þe schuldre, & þe spawde-bon is penne & brode toward þe
schuldres & in hys endys grustly. On þe vppere syde of hym he
24 haþ an egge sumwhat gret & toward þe arme in þe place of þe
schuldre he ys grete & rounde. And pilke ende ys holwe as a box,
and þis bon ys lyche to a pele, þe whiche men settyth brede into
þe ovyne, and on þe hyndere partye of þe schuldre he haþ an
28 emynense. & in þe box of þis bon — —* whiche ys y-clepyde ad-
iutorium þe whiche ys a bon sumwhat crokyde, gret & holow. þis
bon ys gret for necessite of strengthe, & of schappe holwe, þat he
were lyzte, þat he scholde nouþt prowen his hevynesse lette þe
32 wirchyng of lacertes, and þe rounde extremite of þis bon entrep in-
to þe holwenesse of the spawde. & þey beþ y-bounde togedre with
a bowable ligament. þe canel-bon of þe brest ys in this manere

an additament¹ sumwhat² round in þe neþer partie, þe which entrip a maner box, þe which is in þe ouer partie of þe ouer boon of þe .vij. boonys of þe brest. Euery extremite of þilke .vij. boonys ben ioyned with þe spawde, þat³ þe schuldre myȝte be þe more strengere, & forto make þis place more strengere, þer ben sett⁴ .ij. smale boonys, þe whiche ben clepid rostralia¹ to þe lijknys of þe bele² of a crowe, & for to fastne þe schuldre, þis boon rostral is putt in maner of a wegge / But þe boon of þe adiutori hap in þe neþer partie toward 8 þe elbowe .ij. eminentis, & þe oon of þe eminence is more hizere þan þat³ oper; & boþe þese eminence ben as þei it were holf a boket³ wip þe which men drawen watir / & þilke .ij. additamentis ben ioyned wip þe boonys of þe arm / þe arm from þe elbowe dounward hap .ij. 12 bonys; & þe ouer boon, þe which þat³ arecchip fro þe þombe to þe boon þat³ is clepid adiutorium, is þe smallere boon; & þe neþir boon þat³ strecchip from þe litil fyngir to þe elbowe is þe grettere boon. & he hap in þe ouer ende toward þe elbowe an additament¹ lik toward 16 a bille or a pike; & þilke pike makip þe elbowe scharp whanne þe arm is folden, & it lettip þat³ þe arm may not be bowid [bakwarde]*.

Joins with the
Os Rostrale
(Coracoid),
[² lf. 83]

and has 2
eminences.

The Forearm
has two bones
(Ulna and
Radius),

and an "Ad-
ditament"
(Olecranon).

¹ *rostralia*. Coracoids. "*Rostriformis Processus*, a Process of the Shoulder-blade, and of the lower Jawbone."—Phillips.

³ Compare *Vicary*, p. 49, l. 18, where the word *polly* is substituted for bucket.

Add. MS. y-made, habbynge an additament¹ sumwhat² rounde in þe neþere partye, þe whiche entryth a manere box, þe whiche ys in þe offere 20 partye of þe ovyre bon of þe vij. bonys of þe brest. And euerye extremyte of þilke .vij. bonys beþ y-ioyned wip þe spawde, þat þe schuldre myghte be þe more stronger; and forto make þis place þe more strengere, þere beþ sette two smale bonys whiche beþ y-clepyde 24 *rostralis* to þe lyknesse of þe byle of a crowe, & forto fastne þe schuldres, þis bon rostrale ys y-put in þe manere of a wegge. But þe bon of þe adiutorie hap in þe neþere partye toward þe elbowe tweye emynences, and þe on of þe emynence ys more herre þenne 28 þe othire; and boþe þese emynence beþ as yt were half a bokett wip þe whiche men drawip water; and þilke tweye Additamentis beþ y-ioyned with þe bonys of þe arme. þe Arme from þe Elbowe dunwarde, hap two bonys, and þe offere bon whiche þat strecchip 32 from þe þowmbe þat ys clepyde adiutorium is smallere bon, and þe neþere bon þat strecchith from þe lytel fyngere to þe elbowe is þe grettere bon. & he hap in þe offere ende toward the elbowe an additament like to a byle opere a pyk, and þilke pyk makyth þe 36 elbowe scharpe, whenne þat þe arme ys y-folden, and it letteth þat þe arme may noȝt ben y-bowyde bakwarde.* þese tweye bonys beþ

12.056.

[⁴ fol. 86 b]

þese .ij. boonys ben so ioyned togidere, þat it semeþ as þouȝ it were but oo. boon. & þe neþir ende of þese boonys ben ioyned with þe boonys of þe hand, þe whiche ben clepid rasceta,¹ þat ben 4.viiij. boonys, .iiij. of ²hem ben ordeyned & ioyned with summe additamentis to þe .ij. boonys of þe arm / & þe opere .iiij. ben conteyned³ with þe boonys of þe hand þat ben clepid pecten⁴ / þe firste boon of pecten is ioyned with þe firste boon of rasceta,⁵ & þe 8 opere .iiij. in þe same maner outaken þe þombe. —⁶ þat haþ .iiij. boonys as þe opere fyngris han, conteyneþ³ his firste boon wiþ þe extremite of þe ouer fosile,⁷ & þe þombe euenliche azenstondip þe strenke of þe opere fyngris in clicchinge.⁸ & alle þese boonys þat 12 mencions is maad of, þat ben in ioynturis, as þe schuldris, elbowis, raschet, & þe knottis of alle þe fyngris, ben ioyned togidere bi mene of ligamentis, as it is seid tofore / & þese boonys ben clopid wiþ symple fleisch & brawnys after þat þe dyuersite of foorme of lymes 16 askip /

& alle þe greete senewis proceden out of nucha, þe whiche senewis ben compounned wiþ ligamentis & wiþ symple fleisch, makynge brawnys meuynges þo parties; of þe whiche brawnys 20 summe ben open to a mannys sizt, & summe ben hid; for þei ben departid in two ⁹þe leeste parties¹⁰ / þere ben .iiij. brawnys open in þe fleischy partie of þe arm, bitwene þe schuldre & þe elbowe: oon on þe ynnere half, anopir on þe vttere half, anopir on þe lowere 24 half, anopir on þe hizere half. Whanne þe ynnere brawn is drawe togidere þanne is þe arme foldid ynward, & þe contrarie brawn on

¹ *Rasceta*, Arab = carpus. Castelli, *Lexicon medic.*, p. 139. See Littré: "rachette," and Devic Suppl. to Littré. *Dict.*

² *conteyned*, *conteyneþ* for *contynued*, *contynueþ*.

⁴ *pecten*, Latin, pecten manus. See Halle, *Treatise of the Anatomye*, p. 62 (A.D. 1562). "And after these bones Rasceta, are constitute the bones of the palmes of the hands, called Ostea metacarpis. i. Postbrachialia, Palma, vel manus pectus." The corrupt form *Patinis* occurs in *Vicary*, p. 50, l. 9.

⁵ MS. *pasceta*.

⁶ Two words (*þe þombe*) are wanting. Latin: Nam pollex tria habens ossa. . . . He counts the metacarpal bone of the thumb as a phalanx.

⁷ *fosile*, Latin: focile. See *Vicary*, p. 49, note 3.

⁸ *in clicchinge*, Latin: (pollex) ut sit solus ex opposito comprehendens cum aliis firmius, et firmius retinens apprehensum.

¹⁰ Lat. in tres partes minimas diuiduntur.

so y-ioynede togedire, þat it semyth as on bon. And þe neþere ende of þese bonys beþ y-ioyned wiþ þe bonys of þe hande, whiche beþ 8 y-clepyde rasceta þat beth viij bonys.

Here the Add. MS. ends.

To the arm-bones are joined the 8 hand-bones, the *Rasceta*. [³ l. 63, bk.] The wrist articulates with the 4 metacarpal bones. The thumb has 3 phalanges.

The Sinews, Ligaments, and symple flesh form the Muscles. [⁹ l. 64] The Upper Arm has 4 Muscles.

When the inner Muscle contracts,

the outer extends. þe vttere half is maad long; & whanne þat þe vttere brawn of þe¹ arm is maad schort, þanne is þe arm drawe outward & þe ynnere is maad long; & in þe same maner by² opere .ij. brawns, þe arm is houe vp & lete falle down / & whanne þat alle þe brawns traueilen⁴ liche myche, þe arm stant euene rȳtliche & declyneþ to no partie /

The muscles end in Cords near the joints of the arm. & þese brawns,³ .iiij. fyngir mele from þe ioyncture of þe schuldre, ben nakid cordis, & þei ben þe same from þe ioyncture of þe elbowe & in þe myddil of þe adiutorie, þat is þe place þat is from þe⁸ schuldre to þe elbowe; þe cordis ben multiplied dyuersliche wiþ fleisch to þe composicioun of þe same brawns, .iiij. fyngir mele

[* 11. 54, bk.] aboue þe elbowe. & .iiij. fyngir mele by⁴neþe þe elbowe ben nakid cordis; & þere þei maken anopir⁵ brawn; & in þis maner ben¹¹ maad nakid cordis & generacioun of brawns, til euery lyme haue his meuyng, after þat it nedip him.

In boþe þe armes ben .iiij. open veynes þat comen from þe lyuere, & ben scharpeled⁶ þoruþ þe arm. For þere is a braunchid¹⁶ veyne þe which wexip on þe vttere partie of þe lyuere, & is dyuydid in two parties: oon arisyng, anopir discendyng; þe veyne arisyng comeþ to þe mydrif; & sum partie of hir is sparpoiled⁷ þoruþ þe mydrif & þe lymes of þe brest / þat opere partie of þe veyne passip²⁰ to þe arm-hoolis, & þere he is forkid. & þat veyne passip byneþe the arm to þe elbowe, & þere sche may be seen; & he is clepid basilica⁸ or ellis epatica, & aftirward he strecchip bi þe neþir partie of þe arm to þe hond, bitwene þe litil fyngir & þe leche⁹ fyngir, &²⁴ sche is clepid saluatella¹⁰ or ellis epatica in þe riþthond, & in þe lift-hand splenatica. þe toþir partie of þis veyne þat is dyuydid fro þis assellari strecchip to þe vttere partie of þe schuldre: & þere is

From the Vena Cava one branch runs to each armipþ,

where it divides into 2.

1. at the elbow called Basilica,

in the right hand Saluatella, in the left hand Splenatica;

¹ brawn, struck through after of þe.

² MS. ben.

³ ben, inserted.

⁴ corde, cancelled, after anopir.

⁵ ben scharpeled, Latin: disperguntur—O.Fr. escharpiller, mettre en pièces. See Godefroy.

⁷ is sparpoiled, Latin: dispergitur—O.Fr. esparpeiller. See *Cathol. Angl.*, p. 351, note 6.

⁸ Basilica. See *Vicary*, p. 52, note 5. There is one reference for *φλὶ βασιλική* given in *Stephane Thes.*, from Synesius, *De febribus*, which is a translation of an Arab. treatise by Constant. Africanus.

⁹ leche fyngir. See *Prompt. Parv.*, p. 291, note 4. O.E. *læcefinger*, *Leechd.*, vol. i. p. 394. See Notes.

¹⁰ Saluatella. See *Vicary*, p. 53, note 1. Dufresne gives one reference for Saluatella with a different meaning: "Pellicula involvens cerebrum." It occurs frequently in the Latin translations of Arab. authors, and translates Arab. sceilem or osallemon.

- ¹dyuydid. & þe oon partie goiþ to þe heed & þe opir partie to þe arm. & þilke is eftsoones dyuydid, & þe oon partie is spred bi þe arm manye weies wiþoute forþ, þat is clepid funis²; & þe opere
⁴partie strecchiþ euene to þe elbowe, & þere sche is schewid bi þe ouer partie of þe arm; & so sche strecchiþ to þe hand, & þere sche apperip bitwene þe fyngir and þe pombe, & is clepid cephalica. ij. braunchis þat ben diuided þat comen fro þe schuldre, þe toon is
⁸cephalica, þe opere from assillari,³ þat is basilica, maken oon veyne þat is clepid mediana eipir purpurea. & þere ben .iiij. veynys, as it is seid bifore, *scilicet*, finis⁴ brachij þat strecchiþ bi þe vttere partie of þe arm, & sephelica þe which þat strecchiþ bi þe ouer partie, &
¹²basilica þat strecchiþ bi þe lower partie & communis seu mediana seu purpurea seu fusca quod idem est is comun veyne eipir myddil veyne, þe which þat is compounned of basilica & cephalica tofore seid, & sche apperip openliche in þe foldyng of þe myddil of þe
¹⁶arm. // ¶ þe veynes þat comen from þe lyuere han manie departingis & dyuers placis, & for to telle alle þe departyngis, it is not profitable for a sirurgian / Saue it suffisip for a sirurgian, for to knowe in what place þe grete veynes sitten & þe arterijs, so þat he mowe
²⁰saue him-silf from perel & helpe hem, whanne þei ben kutt / þis þou schalt wite, þat from þe lyuere þer comeþ a veyne to euery lyme bicause of nurischinge. & for to make þe lymes ful of lijf, Arterijs comen þerto also. & þerfore in euery place þere þat ben
²⁴grete veynes, in þe same place ben arterijs. ¶ Bi þes þingis þat ben aforseid, þou maist wite wel þat þere comeþ greet perel of woundis, þat ben aboute þe schuldris & vndir þe arme-pittis,⁵ & in þe boon of adiutorie, & in þe arm, & in þe
²⁸hondis / for whi: if woundis be maad in adiutorijs & in þe arme ouerþwert, it is greet perel lest þe braun be kutt away, wherby þe arme schulde haue his meuyng; & it is perel of kuttinge of veynes and arterijs, lest þe blood myzte not be staunchid. ¶ And
³²if it be maad a wounde with a þing þat prickide, & falle vpon a

[17. 85]
 2. the other runs a. into the head;
 3. one branch, funis, outside the arm; another branch, Cephalica, along the arm, between the thumb and the 1st finger.
 The Basilica with the Cephalica form the Mediana.

Besides these 4 chief Veins,

there are many smaller ones,

[17. 85, bk.]
 which a Surgeon needn't know.

With every vein there is an Artery.

Off parallels off wounds an quites,

if an important muscle is out

or a blood-vessel,

if a Cord or Tendon is wounded,

² funis, Castelli, *Lexic. Medicum*, p. 351. "Arabes venam Medianam vocasse Funem brachii, testatur Ioh. Zecchius, lect. ii. in sect. 1. *Sph. Hipp.* p. m. 109." On this place *funis* evidently means not the vena mediana, but one of the recurrent veins.

³ Vena assellaris. Matth. Sylv.: "Vena communis nigra purpurea media — dicitur communis quoniam componitur ex assellari et humerali."

⁴ finis for funis.

⁵ þe arme-pittis. See *Wr. W.*, 627. 3. xv. cent.

[¹ If. 86] corde þat is in þe ¹ende of þe braun, & is clepid thenantos,² þanne
 where cramp
 may arise,
 it is greet drede of þe spasme & aftirward of deep, for þe akyng
 entriþ in þe corde þat is prickid, & so þe akyng arisiþ vp to þe
 especially if
 it is the ten-
 don of the
 elbow.
 brayn, & þanne cometh spasme. ¶ Also it falliþ many tyme þat a
 man is hurt þe brede of iij. fyngris wipinne aboue þe elbowe, þe
 is þe eende of þe braun & þere ben cordis; & þanne þe wole come
 greet akyng, & þanne þe spasme aftir, & þese woundis ben mortal.
 ¶ If þat wounde be maad endlongis in þe arme & in adiutorio, 8
 þanne it is not so greet drede þerof, þerfore it is necessarie for a
 Treatment: A wound
 along the
 arm is not
 dangerous,
 sirurgian to knowe þe perel of woundis þat falliþ in þis place, &
 wheþer þe wounde be ouerþwert or endelongis. & if þe wounde be
 and must be
 sewn.
 endelongis, þanne he schal ioyne þe wounde togidere & sewe hem, 12
 & sprynge þeron þe poudre of lyme & opere pingis, as it is aforeseid,
 for to kepe þe sewyngis & þe ligaturis togidere & alle pingis as it is
 aforeseid in þe wounde of fleisch. ¶ If þe be ony nerues, or
 If nerves or
 blood-vessels
 are cut,
 arterijs, ouper veynes kutt ³ ouerþwert: þanne þou schalt worche 16
 [³ If. 86, bk.]
 with pingis þat streyneþ blood, & þou schalt sewe þe hedis of þe
 staunch the
 blood,
 join the
 nerves or
 cords
 and apply a
 defensive
 medicine.
 nerues togidere or of þe cordis. & þe pacient schal be kept from
 akyng wiþ good kepinge & with reste, & he schal ligge in an euene
 bed. & þou schalt leie aboute þe wounde a defensif of bole & of 20
 oile of rosis þat is aforeseid / And þou þis defensif be forþete in
 ofere woundis, in þis wounde it may not in no maner. ¶ þou
 schalt kepe þe sewyngis & þe ligaturis with poudre & lynet, as it
 is aforeseid / Also þis þou must knowe if þou sewist sich a maner 24
 wounde of nerues & cordis, & if þe akyng go not away, þou
 muste rippe þe sewynges agen, & þou þis be contrarie to þe soudyng
 of þe nerues, 3itt it is bettere to do ⁴ þus, þou he lese þe meuyng
 of sum lyme, þat þe nerue seruede þerfore, þan falle in þe spasme; 28
 for þanne it were drede of deep / þerfore it is necessarie for to
 opene þe wounde & fille it ful of oile of rosis & of þelke of an ey.
 & vpon ⁵ þe wounde leie of þe same medicyn til þe wounde quyt-
 and fill the
 wound with
 oil of roses
 [⁵ If. 87]
 untill þus is
 discharged.
 ture, & þanne make þe wounde clene with mundificatiues, & þanne 32
 regendre fleisch as it is aforeseid // If it be so þat þere come ony
 hoot apostymes vpon woundis in þis place: þanne þou schalt
 worche as it is aforeseid in a propre chapitre // If it so be, þat þou
 leie vpon þe wounde oile of rosis, & þelke of an ey for to do awei þe 36

² *thenantos*, sinew. Matth. Sylv.: "Tenantos gre. est chorda que in capitibus musculorum aggregatur." It is a corrupt form of Gr. *τίσινος* (Suidas Gloss.).

⁴ *do* above line.

akyng, & if þere falle a flux of blood, & þanne if þou leidist þerto
 ny constreynyng þingis, þe akyng wolde be þe more, & if þou
 eidist þerto þe ȝelke of an ey & oile, þat wole make þe flux of
 blood þe more—In þis caas what is for to done? þou schalt brene
 þe hedis of þe veynes & of þe cordis with an hoot yrn, but þou
 schalt not touche þe lippis of þe wounde wiþ iren in no maner; &
 þanne þou schalt leie in the wounde þe ȝelke of an ey & oile of
 rosis, til al þe rynde of þe brennyng falle awei. & þanne þou schalt
 eie þerto mundificatiues, & þanne þou schalt regendre fleisch, and
 þanne þou schalt soude þe wounde /

If oil causes
hemorrhage,
and styptic
pain,

then use the
Cauterium
actuale
(red-hot
iron).

Of woundis of thoracis & of þe brest & of þe
 membris þat ben conteyned in it, & anothamia.

THorax is maad of .vij. boonys & euery boon at þe eende is
 cartilaginosum / þese .vij. boonys ben ioyned togidere in þis
 maner þat euery leeneþ vpon opir, & wiþ þese .vij. boonys ben maad
 fast .vij. ribbis þat ben grete ribbis, & þo .vij. ribbis ben maad fast
 in þe rigge boon bihynde, & þese ribbis ben crokid / Wipinne² þese
 .vij. ribbis ben v. ribbis þat ben lasse, & ben clepid lital ribbis, &
 ben maad fast bihynde with .v. boonys of þe rigge, & in þe forside
 of a man þei haue no fastnyng to no boon, saue þei ben maad fast
 with lacertis.³ & bitwixe þe .viij. boon & þe .ix. boon, diafragma is
 maad fast, for to bigynne tellyngis of boonys aboueforþ. & þis
 diafragma departiþ þe spirituals from þe guttis. & in þe holownes
 þat is aboue liggip þe herte & þe lungis /

The Brest has
7 bones with
gristly ends,

7 true,

5 false Ribs,

and the
Diafragma,
which diuides
the Spiritual
Members
from the
guts.

þe herte⁴ is maad of hard fleisch & strong & of lacertes þat þei
 miȝte be hard, þat it ne schulde take a greuance liztli.⁵ & perfore
 summen seiden þat it is al braun; but it is not so, for þe braun of
 a man meueþ whanne he wole, & restiþ, & þe herte is alwei meuyng
 & not reste. & þe herte is schape aftir a pyne, & hangiþ in þe
 myddil of þe hizere holownes, & hangiþ sum-what to þe lifside-
 ward; & þe hizere þerof is brood, & þat place is medlid wiþ car-
 tilaginosus ligaturis, & is maad fast in þe lungis⁶; & þe lungis
 touchiþ not þe herte, saue in þe aboue, þere it is maad fast togidere,

[⁴ 1r. 88]

The heart is
made from
muscular
fibres,

is like a pine,

is surrounded
by Pannicles
(Pericar-
dium),

² *wipinne*. The Latin has *infra*, which the translator took for *intra*.

³ *lacertis*. See *Vicary*, page 57, note 1.

⁵ *Avicenna*, Lib. III., Fen XL., Tract. I., Cap. 1, ed. Venet, 1527, f. 204 :
 "Cor quidem creatum est ex carne forti ut sit longinquum a nocumento."

⁶ *lungis*, a mistranslation of *panniculi*. The pericardium is also called
 panniculus cordis.

and has
ij. ventriculis.

& þe lunge defendiþ þe herte from greuaunce. & þe herte haþ two ventriculis .i. two holowe placis wipiane, & þat oon ventricule sittip in þe riȝt side of þe herte, & þat oþer in þe lifside¹; & þese ventriculis holdiþ & resseyueþ eir & norischip þe herte / In þe riȝt ventricule 4 comeþ a greet veyne þat is clepid ramosa² þat comeþ from gibbo³ epatis, & comfortiþ diafragma, & peersiþ þoruȝ diafragma. & þis veyne is ful of greet⁴ norischinge blood & hoot, & it norischip lymes of greet substaunce. & þis veyne goiþ bi þe riȝt side of þe 8 herte, & filliþ þe herte ful of norischinge blood. & þanne þe blood in þe herte sutillip⁵ & filliþ ful þe two ventriculis of þe herte, & of þis clene blood þe spirit is engendrid; which spirit is more cleer & more schynynge & more sutil, þan ony bodi þat is maad of þe iij. 12 elementia. & þerfore it is turnid⁶ into heuenly bodies, & it is bitwixe a mannys bodi & his soule a louely byndynge. ¶ And of þe lift ventricule þere wexiþ out ij. [arteries]⁷ and þat oon þerof haþ a maner coote, & þerfore of summen it is clepid arteria venalis.⁸ & 16 þis arterie beriþ sutil blood to þe lungis & norischip þe lungis / And þat oþere arterie haþ .ij. cootis. & of þe ilke⁹ comeþ alle þe arteries in a mannys bodi, & ben departid in euery lyme of a mannys bodi. & þese arterijs makip alle a mannys lymes to haue lijf & spiritis; 20 & alle þes arterijs & alle þese spiritis þat ben aforeseid; and þese arterijs goiþ to þe brayn¹⁰ & þei goiþ to þe lyuere & ȝeueþ him vertu ful myche & makip deflynge / And þese arterijs goiþ to a mannys ballokis & ȝeueþ him vertu for to engendre; & in þis place 24 þe vertu of alle þe spiritis of a mannys bodi ben ioyned togidere.¹¹

Into the right
one comes a
Vein from the
liver,
[⁴ 1f. 88, bk.]

and fills the
Heart with
nourishing
blood,
which is
refined
into a clear
spirit between
body and
soul.

From the left
Ventricle
springs
arteria
venalis

and the Aorta
from which
all other
Arteries pro-
ceed.

[¹⁰ 1f. 88]

¹ The translator has omitted the following passage: "In medio illorum duorum ventriculorum est quedam fouca: & vocatur a quibusdam ventriculus tertius, super ventriculo dextro et sinistro. Item duo additamenta cartilaginosa fortia et flexibilia quandam habentia concauitatem, et constringuntur & dilatantur, & recipientes & retinentes nutrimentum et aerem ad nutriendum et temperandum cor."

² The translation is not correct. Lat.: "ad dextrum nanque ventriculum venit una vena ex ramosa vena." This vein is the vena cava inferior, which gets the blood from the liver by the venæ cavae hepaticæ. "The seconde veyne is called Vena choele, or Vena concaua, and of some Vena Ramosa." Halle, *Anatomie*, page 78.—1565.

³ gibbus. See *Vicary*, page 69, note 1. ⁵ sutillip. Latin: subtiliatur

⁶ MS. turid. Latin: vergit in naturam supraclestium corporum.

⁷ arteries, wanting. ⁸ Arteria venalis. See *Vicary*, page 58, note 1.

⁹ MS. inserts, ij cootis

¹¹ The translation is corrupt. Lat.: Iste namque spiritus cordialis, qui per viam quæ dicta est a corde sumit originem, sicut omnes virtutes, quarum est instrumentum, cum ad ventriculos peruenit cerebri, aliam ibi recipit digestionem, quæ meretur formam suscipere spiritus animalis, & ita ut ad epar dirigatur, in ipso formam recipit nutritiui, et in testiculis generatiui, donec

¶ *þe lungis ben maad of .iiij. substauncis: of fleisch þat is* *þe lungis*
recchingē,¹ & braunche of arterijs, & of veynis,² & of cartilaginīs *are made of*
þat ben holow, & þese goþ out of cauna pulmonis as it is afore- *3 tissues,*
4 seid. ¶ þe profit þat þe lungis doip a man is þis: þe lungis drawip *flesh, vessels,*
eir into þe herte, for to do awei þe fume & þe vntemprid heete of *and liga-*
þe herte, & makip þe herte in tempre hete / And in tyme whanne *ments.*
þe herte is constreyned, þanne it is necessarie for to drawe coold eir *They bring*
8 to þe herte; & if þe lungis myzte not drawe eir to þe herte, þe *cool air to*
spirit of lijf schulde be stoppid, & so a man schulde be deed / & *the heart.*
þerfore it is necessarie þat a man haue clene eir, for þe eir passip *The air ought*
þoruþ þe lungis þat ben tendre & goip to þe herte; & þerfore vnclene *to be clean.*
12 eir doip harm to þe lungis & also to þe herte. & þerfore þe lungis
ben ³departid into .iiij. placis, & if þer falle ony harm to þe oon [*12. 80, bk.*]
partie of þe lungis, þanne þat opere partie berip al his charge //
 ¶ *Woundis þat ben maad in þe brest. If þe wounde go into þe* *Woundis mad*
16 holownes, þanne it is miche to drede þerof, for þanne it myzte falle *in the brest*
þat sum substaunce of þe herte myzte be harmed, & þanne þe wounde
were mortal // ¶ *Ouþer if þe wounde ȝede into þe lungis, þere were* *Wounds of*
greet peral: for þe wounde mai not be helid but if it be soudid *the lungs are*
30 anoon // ¶ *And if þe wounde go þoruþ diafragma, it is mortal /* *dangerous,*
And if it be so þat þe herte be hurt, þere lijf no⁴ cure þeron, saue *wounds of*
þe schal die anoon; for þe herte takip no lijf of no lyme of al þe *the midriff,*
bodi, saue þe herte ȝeueþ lyues to euery lyme of þe bodi; & þe *or the heart*
24 herte ordeyneþ alle lymes to vertues, & þe herte is þe welle of lijf; *are mortal.*
& þerfor þe herte mai suffre noon harm, saue ioie ouþer sorowe /
þerfore if þe herte be kutt wip a swerd ouþer ony greet arterie þat
is nyþ þe herte, þe wounde is mortal; for þe arterijs goip to þe herte
28 & þanne al þe blood of þe herte & þe spirit passip out bi þe arterijs, [*12. 80 **]
as þou myzt se bi ensaunple of a candel. For if a candel þat *either the*
brenneþ, ouþer a weke, be putt al in oile ouþer in grese, þe fier þerof *blood rushing*
wole out; in þis same maner is þe spirit of lijf queynt, whanne þe *to the heart*
32 herte is hurt, for þe greet flux of blood, þat fallip to þe herte & *quenches the*
stoppip þe spirit of lijf / Ouþer if þer be greet flux of blood com- *flame of life,*
ynge fro þe herte, þanne þe spirit passip out þerwip; as þou myzt
se bi ensaunple of a candel: whanne þe talow of a candel is doon, *or the blood*
36 or wex, or oile, þanne þe lijf wole passe, & in þe same maner it *and the spirit*
of life flow
out from the
wound.

omnis spiritus, omnisque particularis virtutis perfectio cum virtutum operationibus coniungatur.

¹ *recchingē.* Latin: *rara.*

² *braunche of arterijs & of veynes.* Latin: *ramis arterie venalia.*

⁴ *MS. do.* Lat.: *Cor autem vulneratum curam non recipit.*

When the lungs are hurt the wound must be stitched before it suppurates.

[1 f. 89^v, bk.]

Medicines reach the lungs by a long way, and therefore the patients get phthisis.

The midriff is to the heart what bellows are to a fire.

Symptoms if the herte be wounded,

[1 f. 90]

and if the lungs be wounded.

Throw a powder into the wound,

and close the wound when the lungs are healed.

De vulnera diafragma.

Symptoms of a wounded midriff.

fariþ bi a mannis lijf, as it is aforseid. ¶ þe lungis wolen take no souding whanne þei ben hurt, but if þe leche be þe more kunnyng & soude þe wounde or it quytture. For if it qutture, þe lungis moun not be maad clene but wiþ cowzyng, & þe more þat þe pacient cowzeþ, þe more þe wounde wexiþ // ¶ Also þe lungis ben euermore meuyng; & [if] woundis¹ schulen be soudid in lymes, þe lyme² mote reste; & þefore for þe contynuel meuyng of þe lungis, þe woundis þerof ben seid incurable // ¶ Also þouȝ a man wolde soude þe woundis of þe lungis wiþ ony medicyne þat is consolidatif, it ne mai not come þerto but bi a long wey as bi þe stomak, ouþer bi þe lyuere, ouþir bi veynes, & so þe vertu of þe medicyne ne may not come to þe lungs, but bi þe forseid weies; & þefore men þat ben hurt in þe lungis falliþ in þe tisik³ / ¶ If a man be hurt in diafragma, þer is no remedie þerof; for diafragma is alwei meuyng, for þat is an instrument of wijnd to the herte, riȝt as a belowe is an instrument for a fier / For riȝt as a below, whanne he is opened, he takiþ in wijnd, & whanne he is closid, he puttiþ out wijnd & blowiþ þe fier /

¶ If þe herte be woundid, in þis maner þou schalt knowe: þe pacient schal swowne, & þe blood þat cometh out is blak, & he schal size sore, & þanne he is but deed //

¶ If þe lungis ben hurt, þou schalt knowe in þis maner bi cowzyng, & þe blood þat goiþ out of þe wounde wole be spumous & cleer / If þe wounde hereof be streit wiþoutforþ, make it largere, & þanne in þe wounde of þe lungis caste poudre of mastix, & olibani,⁵ draganti, gumme arabici, fenigreci ana; & he schal ete no mete saue þat, þat he mai soupe, & penidis⁶ medlid þeron, & loke þat he haue sciencence & good reste, & þat he traueile not; & þou schalt not close þe wounde wiþoute, til þe wounde of þe lungis be sowdid, & þanne soude þe wounde wiþoutforþ //

¶ If þat a wounde be in diafragma, þes ben þe signys þerof: streit secching of breeþ, & greet agreuance for to drawe his breeþ, & greet akyng in his side, & greuous cowzyngs; alle þese ben signys of deeth, & principali if þese signys be greet & greuous /

¹ þat inserted. Lat.: et vulnerata membra indigent ut quiescant.

³ "Tisica, Italis et Hispanis Phthisis."—Dufresne. "Tissick, an Ulceration of the Lungs, accompay'd with an Hectick Feaver, and causing a Consumption of the whole Body."—Phillips, 1706. *tysyk*, Hampole, 701. "þat man þat hath þe tisik & þe etik," Quintess, p. 17, 7.

⁵ *Olibanum*. Thus masculinum. Arab. al-louban (Devic. Dict.). N.E. oliban.

⁶ *Penidium*, barley sugar.

If þese signys ben but litil & not strong¹ greuou, þanne zeue him Alay the coughing and apply a tent. metis & drynkis þat mowe swage¹ þe cowze, & þanne take a tent þat be not to greet, & wete it in þe zelke of ²an ey & oile of rosis, [¶ It. 90, bk.] & þanne cure þis wounde as þou doist opere woundis /

If it so be þat a wounde be in a caua³ & noon of þe forseid If a wound enters into the hollows of the chest lymes ben not hurt, þanne wete a tent in oile of rosis hoot & putte in þe wounde; & whanne þou remeuest þi medicyne ouþer leist þerto ony medicyne, be war þat þer passe out noon eir þoruþ þe wounde, ne entre in noon eir into þe wounde, & þerfore or þou change þi tent, loke þat þou haue þingis þat ben necessarie þerfore redi, þat þe wounde mowe be stoppid anoon, þat þere go no breeþ into þe wounde, ne out of þe wounde / For if þer go ony breeþ out, it wole afeble þe patient, & if þer go ony breeþ þere, it wole do harme to þe spaulis. Leie vpon þe wounde oile of rosis & þe zelke of an ey, & herwiþ wete þi tent til þe wounde quytture. & þanne

euery dai make him to turne vpon his side, & make him cowze & spitte out þe quytture, & awoide þe quytture bi þe wounde also. & if þere be myche quytture, & may not be avoidid bi þe wounde, þanne þou schalt make sich a maner waischinge & putte it yn wiþ Make the patient cough out the pus. ^[¶ It. 91] ⁴an instrument maad lijk a clisterie / R .mel ro. 3 .iiij., mirre, R

fenigreci, farine lupinorum ana 3 lb, boile hem to þe consumpcioun a loction for wounds with in the breast of þe .iiij. part in li j. of swete wijn, & li j. of water, & þanne cole hem & putte in þe colature as it is aforseid. Vpon þe wounde wiþoutforþ, from þe tyme þat it quytturip, leie þis mundificatif planed vpon a clooþ.⁵ R mel ro. li j., farina ordeí substillissimi. 3 R

.iiij., mirre, fenigreci ana. 3 j., be þei encorperat⁶ & boild at esi A cleansing (mundificatif) plaster. fier / & whanne þei ben weel boild, & weel medlid togidere so þat it be picke, do hem doun of þe fier, & do þerto 3 .iiij. of terbentyne waischen & medle hem weel togidere. þis emplastre þou schalt vse, & þe waischingis þat is aforseid, & þou schalt holde open þe wounde with a tent wet in oile, til þe quytture þat is withynne be perfitli dried / þis þou schalt knowe bi þe vertu of þe patient & bi One knows by the odour of the patient's breath þe sauour of his breeþ, & whanne his cowzynges goiþ awei, & whanne

¹ swage. See *Cathol. Angl.*, p. 372.

² MS. *canna*. Lat.: Cum autem vulnus est in cassum penetrans. *Cassus*, Pecten. Semibarbaris ex Arabico. Castellus, Lex. Med. *Casse*, Arab. Kaa, cup, calice.—Devic. I would rather trace it from Lat. cassus adj. void, hollow, and cassum, i = cassa, orum sb. the hollows. The latter form cassa gave origin to Ital. cassa f. See cassa del cranio, etc.

³ &. Lat.: super pannum distensum. O.Fr. planer, Lat. planare.

⁶ encorperat. Lat. incorporatus, O.Fr. encorperer.

his vnkyndely heete goiþ awei / If þou doist alle þese þingis to him
if the wound is clean. þat¹ ben aforseid, & þe quytture ¹be not wiþdrawe þerwith, & his
[¹ If. 91, bk.] cowzyng & his akyng be not aswagid, & his vertu be feble, & his
When sup-
puration con-
tinues, a weak
patient dies. spirit¹ be nouȝt, þanne do þou nomore þerto, saue he schal al turne
him to goddis merci // ¶ Saue if it so be þat he haue þe cowȝe &
If the patient is strong,
make a new
incision. greet¹ quytture in þe wounde, & he be strong, & principali if þe
wexe ony swellynge in his side bihinde bitwixe þe .iiij. & þe .v. rib,
þan þere þou schalt make a newe kutting¹ & lete out þe quytture, &
& bi þis place drawe out þe quytture, & holde þe wounde open,
& lete þe olde wounde close togidere. & if it be nede, caste yn
þe forseid waischinge bi þis wounde & leie a mundificatif wiþoute
Do the same,
if blood and
pus gather on
the midriff. til þe quytture be al aweie, & þis cure þou schalt folowe / It falliþ
ofte tyme þat a man is hurt an hiȝ aboue in þis place, & þanne
þe blood & þe quytture falliþ vpon diafragma & gaderiþ togidere,
þanne þou schalt kerue him bitwixe þe .iiij. & þe .v. rib as it is
aforseid, for þe blood & þe quytture mai haue no cours to þe wounde
[¹ If. 92] aboue; & if he is kutt¹ so byneþe, þanne þe blood & þe quytture
mai be drawe away; ²& if þou doist not þus þe pacient schal die,
& if þou doist þus þe pacient schal be delyuerid wel // Whanne
woundis ben in thorase ouþer in þe brest, & þe woundis ne goon
not þoruȝ, þanne þou schalt cure him as it is aforseid in opere
woundis //

Of woundis of þornis³ ouþer spondilium, & of þo þat
ben conteyned in him & anothamie /⁴ 24

¶ vj: c /

The spinal
column is
composed of
30 Spondiles
or Vertebrae.

BOnys of þe necke, as we haue aforseid, ben .vij, & rigge boonys
of þe brest ben .xij, & of þe reynes ben .v. riggeboones, &
vndir þe reynes ben .iiij. riggeboones, & vpon þe place þat is clepid⁵
—þe boon of þe tail is maad of .iiij. rigge boones, & þere ben .xxx. 28
¶ Eueri boon of þe rigge is an hole þoruȝ, & þoruȝ þe ilke hoolis
nucha⁶ goiþ endelong þe rigge; & euery boon of þe rigge haþ .iiij.
addiciouns to him, & summe han mo; þis is not necessarie to telle
to a sirurgian, saue it is necessarie to a sirurgian for to knowe þis: 32

³ MS. *þorais*. Lat.: *De vulneribus spinæ seu spondylium & eorum anatomia*. The scribe changed *þornis*, the translation of 'spinæ,' into *þorais*, for *thoracis*, as in the heading to Cap. V. The words: *of þo þat ben conteyned in him* are taken from the same Chapter-heading.

⁴ See *Vicary's Anatomy*, page 74.

⁵ One word is here wanting. Lat.: *super locum qui dicitur aboratur alahume*. *aboratur* is perhaps a corruption for *ab arabis*, *alahume* is the Os sacrum.

⁶ *nucha*, Arab. *nukha*, spinal marrow.

þat euery rig-boon hap a greet hole, & nucha goiþ þer þoruþ. & Through the Vertebrae passes the Spinal cord. [1. 17. 92, bk.]
 þer ben opere smale hoolis in þe boones bi þe sidis aboutforþ, & þere
 þoruþ goon nerues for to holde þe lymes faste¹ togidere. & so þese
 .xxx. boones ben bounden togidere wiþ stronge ligaturis, & þei ben
 so strongeli bounden togidere þat þei semeþ al oon boon. þese The Spondiles form the Back-bone.
 boones bineþe þe necke is clepid þe rigge ouþer spina, & þis is þe
 foundement of al þe bodi //

¶ Woundis þat ben maad in þis place. If nucha be kutt The Prognosis is unfavourable, if the Spinal Cord is cut,
 þoruþ ouerþwert, þe wounde is mortal for þe nobilte of nucha þat
 comeþ fro þe brayn riȝt as a ryuer comeþ of wellis.² ¶ And þouþ
 nucha be not kutt al þoruþ saue hurt, it is greet perel þerof, for
 þe lymes bineþe schulen lese her meuyng, for þe nerues þat ben
 aboute þe boones of nucha ben kutt. & also þe rigge-boones ben
 kutt & herof cometh greet perel / And if þe braun þat sittip ende-
 longis þe rigge in boþe sidis of þe rigge-boon & durip³ from þe heed
 adoun anoon to þe tail eende, & if ony of alle þese be kutt ouþer
 prickid, it is greet perel for þe spasme, for þe causis þat ben aforseid /

þe curis herof ben lijk to þe curis þat ben aforseid of opere The Treatment is the same as in other wounds. [4. 17. 93]
 woundis, saue it is necessarie for a cirurgian to knowe pronosticatiuis
 of þis place, & also if a man be hurt in þat place, he mote haue
 for þe causis aforseid //

Of woundis of þe stomac / & *intestinum* & wombe, &
 anothamia /

I Haue seid heretofore in what maner mery⁴ goiþ doun þoruþ ¶ vijo. 90.
 þe necke wipinneforþ, and goiþ þoruþ diafragma, & is maad
 fast wiþ diafragma, & diafragma goiþ aboute þe moup of
 þe stomak. & þe stomak is schape in þis maner,⁵ & in oon
 side he is gibbous, & in þe toþer side he is more playn.
 & þe stomac is maad of .ij. cloþis. & þat oon clooþ sitt The stomach is made of 2 Membranes
 wipoute & þat oper wipinne, & þe clooþ þat sittip wipinne
 is villosus & neruous, & þe clooþ þat is wipoutforþ is
 fleischi / ¶ In þe ynner clooþ ben longe villis wherof with longi- tudinal and transverse fibres.
 comeþ drawynge, & þere ben villis ouerþwert, wherof

¹ *Rases*, Liber ad Almansorem, Tract. I, Cap. 1, ed. Ven. 1506, fol. 2.
 "Cerebrum quasi fons sensuum est et motus voluntarii, Nucha vero sicut
 fluius magnus ab eo manans."

² *durip*. Lat. distenditur. As to the local sense, compare O. Fr. *durer*.

³ *mery*, oesophagus. Arab. *marijun*, windpipe.

⁴ In the margin is a diagram of the shape of the stomach.

comeþ wipholdyng / In þe cloop þat is wipoutforþ, þere ben longe villis, & þat makip expulcioun. þe yner cloop is neruous, þat it mowe fele whanne it is ful; wipoutforþ it is fleischi for to make him hoot & moist, þat he miȝte helpe for to make digestioun. ⁴ þat skyn þat is wipinne þe stomak is norischid with moisture of mete ¹ þat is resseyued into þe stomak / The skyn þat is wipoute þe stomak is norischid of blood, þat comeþ fro þe lyuere in smale veynes & goip al aboute þe stomak. ¶ Also þere comeþ arterijs ⁸ from þe herte to þe stomak & makip him to haue lijf, & of þese .ij. pingis, þat is to seie vena & arteria, gibbus² is maad þat gouerneþ þe stomak & þe guttis wip his fatnes, & makip hem hoot. ¶ In þe botme of þe stomak þere is a mouþ, and þat mouþ is more ¹² streit þan þat aboue. & þe firste gutt is maad fast to þe lower mouþ, & þis gutt is clepid duodenum.³ þis is þe skille whi he is clepid so, for he is of þe lengþe of xij. ynchis; & þanne þere ben .vj. guttis bineþe him; & þanne þis firste gutt is maad of .ij. cootis, ¹⁶ as alle þe opere guttis ben, but þe .ij. gutt is smal & folde togidere. þe .iiij. gutt is clepid ieinum,⁴ *id est*, fastyng, for he is euermore voided,⁵ & þat is for he is nyȝ þe galle & resseyueþ myche colre⁶ for to avoide him, & þere goip to him manye veynes, wherbi, he is ²⁰ voidid / Aftir him þere comeþ a gutt þat is clepid orobum⁷ ⁸ ouper a sak, & it hap but oon mouþ, & he resseyueþ alle þe fecis; & þere is fullfillid þe firste digestioun of þe guttis / Aftir þis gutt þer is a gutt þat is clepid colon, & lijþ ouerþwert þe wombe & resseyueþ ²⁴ feces / And aftir þis gutt comeþ langaon,⁹ & is þe eende of alle; & he hap .iiij. brawnys, & þerof he hap vertu for to wipholde þe fecis yn, & for to putte hem out whanne a man wole / Euery meuyng of þe guttis is kindly & eueri gutt of þese þat ben ²⁸ aforseid hap diuers kynde // ¶ þer ben manye maner causis whi þat guttis ben folde with nerues: þe firste enchesoun is þis, þat a man schulde not as soone as he hadde ete, anon riȝt go to sege as

Arteries
bring life to
the Stomach.

The Entrails
or Guts:
duodenum.

Ieinum.

Orobum,
[⁸ If. 94]

where the first
digestion is
made
Colon.
langaon,
retains and
finally evacu-
ates the
feces.

The entrails
are nervous
1.
that the food
may be
retained

² gibbus, mistake for *zirbus*. See *Vicary*, page 64. note 2; and page 86, note.

³ duodenum. See *Ibid.* page 65, note 1.

⁴ *jejunum*. See *Vicary*, page 65, note 2.

⁵ Avicenna, Lib. III., Fen. XVI., Tract. I., Cap. 1, ed. Ven. 1527, f. 248. "et nominatur hoc intestinum ieinum, quum ipsum inuenitur secundum plurimum inanitum et vacuum."

⁶ colre. Lat. cholera. Choler, "Bilis."—Huloet.

⁷ orobum. Lat. orbum. The *Ileum* is here meant.

⁹ langaon. See *Vicary*, page 66, note 5. Lat. longanon, longao = the straight gut.

doip a beest. þe .ij. cause is þat þe mete miȝte abide in þe stomak
 for to make digestion, & þat þat is not fulfillid in þe stomak is
 fulfillid in þe guttis. þe .iiij. cause is þis, þat it first abide in oon
 4 gutt / & þanne it is sent to anoþer & so forþ. & þanne for to holde
 alle þese þingis / þe stomak & þe guttis is ordeyned a skyn, þat is
 clepid þe siphac¹; & is a syngle skyn & is not villous, & is engen-
 drid bineþe as is diafragma is aboue, as it is aforeseid, & is maad
 8 fast at þe rigge bihinde, for to holde vp þe stomak & þe guttis / In
 þis partie bineþe þis þer ben engendrid of siphac .ij. þingis þat ben
 clepid dindimi² & goiþ adoun al aboute þe ballokis, & is clepid þat
 ynnere skyn of þe ballokis; & þoruþ þis dindimi goiþ arterijs &
 12 veynes to þe ballokis, & makip hem haue lijf & norischinge &
 kynde of sperme // ¶ Alle þese þingis þanne ben comprehendid in
 a skyn þat is fleischi & of lacertis maad, & is clepid mirac, & is
 clepid þe vttere wombe in whiche ben lacertis, for to helpe putte out
 16 þe fecis & wijnd & vrine /
 þerfore woundis þat ben maad in þe stomac ben perilous, & in
 þe guttis, for manie causis / þe firste cause is þis, for her worchinge
 is necessarie to þe bodi, for þei ben þe firste instrument of digestioun,
 20 & her worchinge is so necessarie to þe bodi, þat it mai in no maner
 be susteyned, ne abide wiþoute hem / þerfore if þere be ony woundis
 in þis place her worchinge is lost, but if þe wounde be soudid
 anon; & þat is ful hard & sumtyme impossible for þei ben neruous,
 24 & þere is no fleisch on hem, & also for þei ben alwey meuyng, &
 principali whanne woundis ben maad in þe hindere partie of þe
 stomac ouþir in þe smale guttis / For if þe woundis falle in þe
 nepir partie of þe stomac þat is fleischi, ouþer in þe greete guttis
 28 bineþe, if þe leche be kunnyng, þe pacient mai lyue /
 ¶ If it bifalle þat a man be hurt in ony of þese placis þat ben
 aforeseid in þe stomak ouþer in þe guttis, þe leche muste knowe
 wheþer þe substaunce of þe guttis or of þe stomak be prickid þoruþ,
 32 or no; þat þou miȝt knowe bi þe goyng out of þe fecis at þe
 wounde, & þanne þe wounde is iugid mortal. ¶ If a man be
 woundid in his stomak & þe wounde of þe wombe wiþoutforþ ne
 be not brood, þanne kutte it more & þanne sewe the wounde of þe
 36 stomak wiþ a nedele þat is iiij. squar & wiþ a sutil þreed, & þis þou
 schalt speciali, whanne þe wounde is in a fleischi place of þe stomak, [¶ 17. 96, bk.]

.2.
and digested
in the
stomach
.2.
and the guts.

[¶ 17. 94, bk.]

Siphac
(Great Omen-
tum):

it is con-
tinuous in its
lower part
with the
dindimi
(Tunica
vaginalis).

siffac is þe
inuer aken,

mirac
the vtter.
(Peritoneum)

Wounds of
the stomach
and the
bowels are
dangerous,
as their func-
tional activity
is necessary.

[¶ 17. 96]

The patient
may recover
if the fleshy
part of the
stomach or
guts is
wounded.
Nota.

A wound
which per-
forates the
entrails is
mortal.

Sew the
wound in the
stomach,

[¶ 17. 96, bk.]

¹ siphac. See Vicary, page 62, note 4.

² dindimi, used elsewhere to signify the Testicles.

for if þe wounde be aboue in a place of þe stomak þat is neruous,
 ne traueile þou not þere aboute þanne, for it is an idil / Whanne
 þou hast sewid þe wounde bineþe as it is aforseid, þanne springe
 þeron poudre consolidatif & soude þe wounde of þe stomak, & holde
 open þe wounde of þe skyn wipoute, til þe wounde of þe stomak be
 hool // ¶ If it bifalle þat a man be hurt in þe greete guttis bineþe,
 so þat þe wounde be not to greet, þanne þou schalt sewe þe gutt, &
 þe eendis of þe predis schulen hange out, & þe vtter wounde schal
 be holde open, til þe wounde of þe gutt be soudid ¶ If it so be þat
 þe wounde of his wombe wipoutforþ be so brood þat þe guttis falle
 out, putte hem yn anoon while þei ben hote / If it be so þat þe
 guttis be colde, or þat þou come þerto, & þe wounde of þe wombe
 be to swolle, & þe guttis be chaungid wip þe eir, wherfore þe guttis
 wolen not in aȝen, þanne þou must sutilli make þe wounde of þe
 wombe a litil more, þat þe guttis ¹mowe liztly falle yn aȝen wipoute
 greuaunce. Whanne þe guttis ben ynne, sewe mirac & siphac in
 þis maner togidere, so þat þei moun boþe be soudid togidere; for if
 mirac were soudid & not siphac, þanne aftir þe tyme þat þe wounde
 were soudid, þere wolde leue a crepature.² þerfore þou must sewe
 in þis maner / Take þat oon side of mirac & siphac togidere so
 þat þei be euene, & loke þat þi nedel be .iij. squar, & þanne make
 oon poynt þoruȝ hem ij. togidere, in þe same maner in þe toþer, &
 þus þou schalt make þeron as manie pointis as þou þenkist neces-
 sarie / And whanne þou hast sewid mirac & siphac togidere in a
 good maner, þanne knytte þe predis togidere þat þei vnknytte not,
 as þou seest þat is to doing; & lete þe eendis of þe predis hange
 out, & þanne springe vpon þe sewynge þe poudre consolidatif þat
 is aforseid, and holde open þe wounde wipoutforþ til mirac & siphac
 be perfitli soudid, for in þis maner mirac & siphac moun be soudid
 bi þis cause: Siphac is neruous & haþ ³no fleisch, & mirac is fleisch,
 & bi þe vertu of him siphac is soudid; & þanne do þe cure herof
 aftir as it is tofore // ¶ Summen seien þat þe smale guttis moun
 be sowdid in þis maner: make a pipe of eldre, & putt wipinne þe
 gutt, & þanne soude þe gutt þer vpon. & I seie þat it is not soop,
 for þis ping, þe smale guttis wolen not soude, & to þe greete guttis
 þis queyntise is nouȝt; þerfore triste to þe maner þat is aforseid,
 & take kepe of þe perels þat ben forseid.

and keep the
 external
 wound patent
 while the
 stomach
 heals.

When the
 bowels fall
 out from the
 wound, re-
 place them,

[1 ff. 96]

Nota.
 sew the
 Siphac and
 Mirac to-
 gether,

and keep the
 external
 wound patent.

[2 ff. 96, bk.]

Some phy-
 sicians put a
 reed-pipe
 into the
 wounded in-
 testine before
 sewing it.

² crepature, hernia.

Of woundis of þe lyuere & splen & reynes & þe
bladdre, and anothamia¹ /

- T**he firste schapinge of þe lyuere is maad of þe .ij. spermes as ¶ viij. O.
 4 **T**hen þe opere principal lymes, saue þe greetnes of þe lyuere is The Liver is
 principali maad of blood & is in þe hardnes of fleisch. & þe sub- made of
 stance þerof is fleisch, & it is in þe maner as it were blood runne,
 & chilus comuneþ fro þe stomac to þe lyuere for to zeue him
 8 norischynge, & þe lyuere is gibbous wipoute, & wipinne holow þat
 it miȝte be þe more closynge to þe stomac. & þe heete of þe ²lyuere
 makip þe stomac to seþe as fier makip a furneis to seþe.³ ¶ The
 lyuere haþ addicioun, & ben diuers; for in summe ben .iiij. & in
 12 summe ben .v. & in summe ben .iiij. Of sperme þe mater of þe
 lyuere wipinne is gaderid. & þerof comeþ a greet veyne & is en-
 gendrid in sima⁴ epatis, & is clepid þe gate of þe lyuere. & of þis
 veyne summen seien þat þere ben engendrid .viij. veynes, & sum-
 16 men seien þat þere ben mo; & þus veynes ben zatis riȝt as rootis
 of a tree.⁵ & þese veynes ben clepid miseraice / & summe of þese
 veynes ben maad fast wip þe botme of þe stomac, & wip a gutt þat
 is clepid duodeno, & summe wip þe smale guttis, & summe wip þe
 20 gutt þat is clepid ieinum, & summe wip orobo ouþir wip þe sak //
 ¶ þe lyuere is maad fast to þe riȝt side of þe stomac, & in þe
 lifside of þe stomac sitt þe splene, & is schape along, & is maad
 fast with o partie of þe stomac. & oon partie þerof is maad fast
 24 twoward þe rigge in þe lifside, & haþ .ij. poris, & þoruȝ þat oon
 pore he drawip malancolious blood of ⁶þe lyuere, & clensip þe
 lyuere of malancolious superfluite, & þerof þe splene is norischid.
 & þere is anoper pore þat goip to þe moup of þe stomac, & makip
 28 þe moup of þe stomac to haue appetite⁷ //

¹ See *Vicary's Anatomy*, page 68.

² "for his heate is to the stomacke as the heate of the fyre is to the Potte or Cauldron that hangeth ouer it."—*Vicary*, p. 69.

⁴ *sima*, concavitas hepatis. Matth. Sylv., see Dufr. σμῆς, ἡ, ὅν, hollow, concave: τὰ σμὲν τοῦ ἥπατος, the bottom of the liver. Poll. 2. 213, Galen. It is used opposite to *εὐπρὸς*, convex, curved, in Galen ad Glauco. 2.—See *Stephanus Thesaurus*.

Sloane 2463, fol. 40: "Syma of þe lyuer is as it were þe palme oper þe holwenesse of þe hond. The vtilite, whi þat it is of suche forme oper schappe is because þat it schulde ben aplied oper leyen to þe stomak as þe hond lieth to an appull, when þe appull is in þe hond."

⁶ Lat.: venæ quæ sunt ipsi portæ sicut radices arbori.

⁷ *De propr. rer. Trevisa*, Lib. V., Cap. 41, Add. 27,944, fol. 57 b: "ð Constantyn seiþ þat þe melte is i-set in þe lift side, & þe schap þerof is

[2 ff. 97]

The Liver is to the Stomach, what fire is to a furnace.

lyuer. From the spermatic part of the Liver comes the Vena Porta.

The Mesenteric veins are branches of the Vena Porta.

The Spleen

draws the Melancholic Blood from the Liver,

[2 ff. 97, bk.] and incites Appetite in the Stomach.

The Reynes þe reynes ben set, þat oon in þe riȝtſide & ſittip hiȝere, & þat oon in þe liȝtſide & ſit lowere, & ben maad of hard fleiſch, & ben ſett in two ſidis of þe rigge boon. Boþe þe reynes hauen .ij. veynes ouþir .ij. neckis, & þat oon is aboue, & þat oþere is bineþe. Þoruȝ⁴ þe necke aboue of þe reynes is drawe watri blood & comeþ from vena ramosa¹; & þis watri blood is vryne, & from þe reynes it goiþ to þe necke of þe bladdre þoruȝ a veyne þat is clepid kylym,² & in þis maner þe vryne comeþ into þe bladdre /

draw watery
blood from
the
vena ramosa,
and transmit
urine to the

bladdre þe bladdre is maad of .ij. þinne ſkynnes, & boþe ſkynnes ben neruous, & þe necke of þe bladdre is fleiſchi. In men þe necke is long, for it paſſip þoruȝout þe ȝerde, & in wymmen þe necke of þe bladdre is ſhort, & is maad faſt to the cunte.³ / þe necke of þe¹² bladdre hath oon braun, & is in þe mouþ of þe bladdre⁴ & þat

bladdre
via the
ureters.

The Bladder
has a neck,
longer in
men than in
women.

[* II. 98]

galle.

makip a man holde his vryne whanne he wole, & putte cut his vryne whanne he wole, wiþ help of þe wombe þat preſſip, & of lacertis // ¶ Of þe galle we makip noon anothamie, for al oure¹⁶ ſcience makip noon mencion of a wounde in þe galle /

Only ſmall
and recent
wounds of
the Liver can
be healed.

¶ Woundis þat ben maad in þe lymes aforeſeid ben euermore perilous / For alle þeſe lymes, ouþir þei ben principal lymes as is þe lyuere, ouþir þei ſerueþ principal lymes, wiþoute whiche lymes þe²⁰ bodi ne mai not be ſuſteyned / If þe lyuere be hurt in þe depe ſubſtaunce, þanne þe lyuere ſchal leſe al hir worchinge, & al þe blood þerof wole be diſturblid þat is matere of þe ſpirit, & in þis maner þe ſpirit of liȝt is diſturblid & þe foundement of alle hiſe vertues; ²⁴ ſaue if þe wounde of þe lyuere be but litil it may be ſoudid, ſo þat þe wounde be freiſch & not oold hurt, forwhi a principal lyme mai not ſuffre longe ſijknes // ¶ Þouȝ a man were hurt in þe ſplene, ²⁸ ȝitt he miȝte be wel curid, & þouȝ þere were a gobet þerof kutt away, ſo þat it ne were not to myche and ouerþwert, for þerof ofte tyme fallip þe dropesie; ouþir if þe poris were kutt, it wolde afeble þe ſtomac. ¶ Woundis þat ben in þe reynes ben not curid,

Even ſevere
wounds of the
ſplene
can be cured.
[* II. 98, bk.]

euelong, and is ſomwhat holonȝ toward þe ſtomak & bunchinge toward þe ribbis. In þeſe tweye places he is i-bounde with certeyn ſmale cloþinge, & me ſeiþ þat þe melte haþ tweye veynes, by þe on þerof he drawip blak colera of þe blod to þe lynour, & by þe oþir he ſendiþ what ſufficeþ to þe ſtomak to comforte þe appetite þerof."

¹ *vena ramosa*, Vena Cava.

² Lat.: per venam chylin quæ a quibusdam pori uritides dicitur = Meatus Urinarii = Ureter. *Kylym*, from *χυλός*, juice. See alſo *Vicary*, p. 72, note 3.

³ "Hec vulva, cunte." Wright, *Voc.*, p. 677. 32, xvth cent. O.Fr. *cunne*, Lat. *cunus*, *cunte* is a diminutive form like *cunetta* of *cuna*.

for þei ben norischid wiþ watri blood, for þat is *contrarious* to
soudinge / & for þe reynes ben alwey in meuyngē, & also vryne þat
alwei is bitynge goiþ þoruþ þe reynes. ¶ þe bladdre ne mai not be
4 soudid if it be kutt, for it is a lyme þat is neruous & hap no fleisch,
& is alwei meuyngē, & for he is alwei resceuyngē vryne & also þe
vryne fretiþ & þat lettiþ þe soudingē / For ypocras seiþ / If þe
bladdre be kutt, or þe brayn, or þe herte, þe wounde is mortal. ¶ If
8 a leche be sent aftir, for to come to a man þat is woundid in ony of
þese forseid / if þe leche be a man of good loos & a kunnyng man,
he schal, whanne he comeþ to þe pacient, & seeþ þe perel þerof, he
schal telle þe perel of þe wounde to þe pacientis frendis, & he schal
12 seiþ to þe man þat is hurt þat he schal ascape & fare weel; and
first he schal make him haue hise riȝtis¹ ²of holy chirche, & lete
him make his testament, or þat his vertu faile / þanne he schal
bigynne wiþ his good worchingē, riȝt as he took no drede þerof /
16 for ofte tyme kinde worchip, þat þat semeþ vnpossible to þe leche,
& principali if he worche wel. Neþeles þouþ þe leche se goode
signys bi þe pacient, he schal alwei haue his owne pronosticacioun
as it is aforseid, til þe man be al hool, if he schal ascape / for ofte
20 tyme whanne þe pacient drawiþ toward þe deef, his passioun wole
aswage; & also þe contrarie þerof is seen, þouþ þe pacient haue
greet peyne & þe signes of deef, ȝitt he mai ascape / & þerfore for
þese perels þat ben aforseid, he mot be war of vndirtakyngē & of
24 biheest // ¶ If a leche be in straunge cuntre, he ne schal bi no maner
wei take sich a cure. & also he schal forsake alle maner of curis
þat ben harde to do, & also he schal forsake curis þat ben longe for
to make ony perfeccioun þerof, & he mote be war þat faire biheste,
28 ne veyn glorie, ne coueitise ne bigile him not /

Wounds of
the kidney

and bladder
are incurable,

as ypocras
says.

The physician
shall warn
the patient's
friends,
but cheer the
patient,

[¶ 11. 99]

and advise
him to
arrange his
spiritual and
temporal
affairs.

nota.

The phy-
sician must
never despair,
and always
remember his
first prog-
nosis.

He must be
cautious in
a foreign
country.

³Of woundis of þe zerde & of ballokis, & of þe regioun
of þe bladdre and anothamia.⁴

32 **G**Od almyȝti þat alle þingis knewe tofore þe makyng of þe
world ouþir of man, he knewe þat a man schulde be maad
of moist substaunce, as of sperme, in which natural hete schal
worche.⁵ & for to resseyue þe mater of sperme, it is necessarie þat

Man's gener-
ative organs.

¹ Lat.: primo tamen ipsum faciat confiteri.

⁴ Comp. *Vicary's Anatomy*, p. 81.

⁵ Compare *Avicenna*, Lib. III., Fen. XX., 1. 1., ed. Venet. 1527, fol. 279:

"Sublimis deus creauit duos testiculos," etc.

a man haue ballokis / He made ballokis as it was necessarie, & gaf
 hem schap & complexioun for to engendre / & he gaf a man greet
 delite for to lie bi a womman, so þat a man schulde not haue abho-
 minacioun þerof, saue a man schal do it with greet will & wip 4
 greet loue, so þat generacioun miȝte be multiplied wip greet delite¹ /

The Yard has ¶ Also god almiȝti schop in a man a ȝerde. & in þe bigynnyng
 þerof ben cartilaginiȝ & ben maad fast to þe laste boon of þe rig-
 boon, & is maad of nerues, veynes & arterys, & is sumwhat holow, 8

a Glans þat he miȝte be fulfillid wip spirit. & in þe heed þerof is fleisch
 and Prepuce. þat is felynge, & a skyn þat goiþ ouer & is clepid prepuce. &
 [¶ II. 100] þe meuyng of þat skyn² & of þe fleisch tofore helpiþ for to putte
 out þe sperme / þe risynge of a mannes ȝerde cometh of a mannes 12
 herte, & witt of þe brayn, wilnyng, & greet desier; & watri
 humour cometh of þe lyuer. & haþ .ij. open holis; & þoruȝ þat
 The yard has two passages,
 a. for urine,
 b. for sperm;
 oon hole goiþ out vryne & cometh fro þe bladdre, & þoruȝ þat oþir
 hole cometh sperme and cometh fro þe ballokis. & þese .ij. holis ben 16
 good for to knowe / And auicen seiþ: þat þere is þe .iiij. hole, &
 þoruȝ þat hole passiþ a maner of superfluite þat a man feleiþ not,
 as whanne he halsiþ a womman wip hise hondis; saue þis þridde
 hole is not knowen of a cirurgian³ //

20

The structure of the Testicles. þe .ij. ballokis ben maad of hard fleisch in þe maner as ben
 wommans brestis, & þat oon ballok of a man is grettere þan þe
 toper & stronger, & to þe ballokis cometh veynes & arterijs, & makip
 hem haue lijf & norischinge. & superfluite of good blood & cleue 24
 cometh þerto of alle þe lymes, & gaderiþ togidere in a mannes ballokis,
 & þere it bicometh whizt & turneth into sperme, riȝt as blood bicometh
 [¶ II. 100, bk.] mylk in a wommans brestis / And þer ben maad fast wip þe
 The Seed passes along
 the excretory
 ducts (Vas
 deferens). ballokis .ij. vessels, & ben brode vpon þe ballokis, & narowe toward 28
 þe ȝerde, & ben clepid þe vessels of sperme, & ben clepid of auicenne

¹ *De propr. rer.*, Lib. V., Cap. 48. Add. 27,944, fol. 60 b: "For as Constante seiþ, to covenable getynges & gendringe of bestis god haþ ordeyned & i-made covenable membres, in þe whiche he haþ i-sette þe cause & mater of generacioun, þe whiche may not come forþ in dede wipoute affeccioun of loue. ¶ In þe membres genytral god haþ send such an appetite inseperable, þat eueryche beest schulde be comfortid to multeplis beestis of his owne kynde, and þat is i-doo by schewinge of god, lest ȝif þe doyngs of generacioun were abhominable, generacioun of best were i-lost." This passage is taken from *Constantinus Afric. De morb. cog. et. cur.*, Lib. VI., Cap. 1, ed. Basil, 1536, p. 122.

² *Avicenna l. c.*, "Et in virga sunt meatus tres, meatus vrins et meatus spermatis et meatus alguadi." *Matth. Sylv.*: "Alguedi est humor ille qui egreditur, cum aliquis tangit mulierem."

- barbachi,¹ & of þese vessels cometh sperme into þe 3erde, & þoruþ þe 3erde is born into þe matris of wymmen / In þese .ij. vessels sperme is fulfillid, saue þe hete þerof cometh of þe ballokis; & to þe ballokis
- 4 as it is aforesaid cometh veynes & arterijs, & goiþ þoruþ dindimous, þat ben maad fast to þe siþhac as it is aforesaid //
- ¶ Þe maris in a womman is maad neruous & is schape as it were a 3erde þat were turned a3enheer.² & þe necke of þe maris is
- 8 fleischi, & brawny, & felynge, & gendring, & in þe necke of þe maris ben veynes þat ben to-broke whanne a womman lesiþ hir mayden-hode. & þe botme of þe maris is schape as it were þe case of a mannes ballokis / And þe maris haþ .ij. brode ballokis in þe necke,
- 12 & wiþ þe ilke .ij. ballokis ben maad fast .ij. vessels of sperme, & hen more schort þan a mannes vessels of sperme / And of þese ³vessels, a wommans sperme goiþ to þe botme of þe maris / And in þe tyme of conseuyunge þe wommans sperme [is] medlid wiþ a mannes /
- 16 And þe maris of a womman haþ wiþinne .ij. grete concautees / And þe maris haþ manie veynes, & þoruþ þe ilke veynes, whanne a womman haþ conseued, cometh blood to⁴ þe lyuer for to norische þe child. And whanne a womman is not wiþ childe, þoruþ þe same
- 20 veynes cometh blood of þe veynes menstree & is putt out, & in þis maner a womman is purgid of superfluite of blood; & it is maad fast bitwixe þe grete gutt & þe bladdre, & is hizere þan þe bladdre, & is maad fast to þe rigge wiþ ligaturis, & in tyme of child berynge
- 24 þe ligaturis recchiþ, & aftir þat tyme⁵ * — /
- If þere be woundis in ony of alle þese placis, þei ben stronge perilous for her sutil complexioun, & for her nobilte of workinge.
- ¶ If it so be þat a man be hurt in his 3erde or ouerþwert in a litil quantite, þou schalt sewe þe wounde, & sprynge þeron poudre, & leie þerto defensiuus, & lete him blood, & diete him with pinne mete, & cure him wiþ good diligence //
- ¶ If it so be þat a mannes 3erde be kutt al off ouerþwert, þanne it is greet drede þerof / for
- 12 þe veynes þat cometh þerto & þe arterijs & manie nerues, for sumtyme þe pacient mai be deed, or þe blood mowe be staunchid / Saue

Auton
calls them
Barbachi.

Female
generative
organs.

The Matrix
has two
ballocks
(Ovaries),
and two
spermat-
ic ducts (Fal-
lopian Tubes).
[³ If. 101]

The Embryo
is nourished
by blood from
the liver.

Menstruation
removes
superfluous
blood.

Wounds of
generative
organs are
dangerous.

Treatment of
a wounded
yard.

[³ If. 101, bk.]
If the yard is
cut away,
death from
hemorrhage
may ensue.

¹ *barbachi*, Arab. *barbah*, 'conduit of water, canal of the urine.'

² Galen (ed. Kuehn, vol. IV., p. 636) has originated this curious comparison, which has been copied by the Arab. authors. *Arac.*, Lib. III, Fen. XXI., Tract. I., Cap. 1, Ven. 1527, fol. 285 b: "Matrix est quasi conversum instrumentum virorum."

⁴ *to*, mistake for *from*. Lat.: per quas sanguis ei venit ab hepate.

⁵ Some words are wanting. Lat.: partusque completo tempore constringatur.

Wounds of
the Testicles

cause Impo-
tence.

Wounds of
the Matrix
are mortal.

Treatment
of wounded
Colon.

[² 11. 102]

in þis cas þou schalt take hede for to do awei þe akynges wip oile of
rosis, anoynte him aboute þe ers & þe regioun of þe ȝerde, & brenne
þe ȝerde wip an hoot ȝirn for to constreine þe flux of blood; for a
cauterie streyneþ blood tofore alle þingis. ¶ Woundis þat ben in
þe ballokis, þei roten hem anon, & þouȝ a man be not in perel of
deep þoruȝ þe hurtyng of hem, ȝitt his generacioun is lore / A
wounde in þis place schal be curid in þe same maner as woundis in
opere place of þe bodi, & þe cure schal not be chaungid þerof // ¶ If
it so be þat a womman be hurt in her marijs wip a swerd, oupir wip
a knyft, ouper wip a dart, þe wounde is mortal // ¶ If it bifalle þat
colon¹ be hurt wip sum scharp þing oupir wip hardnes of humouris,
he may wel be curid þe while þe wounde is freisch, wip putting
of vnguentum album rasis of ceruse distemprid wip ius of arnog-
lossa.² & if it so be þat þe wounde of þis place be olde, þanne it
is for to make a mundificatif þerto, wip castynge yn of gotis whay
oupir watir of barley //

16

Of woundis in þe haunche and of þe coxe of þe knee,
and of boonis of þe feet and of anothomia.

¶ 20. 67/
The Haunch-
bones

have each a
box (aceta-
bulum) which
contains the
head of the
thigh-bone.

[² 11. 102, bk.]
The thigh-
bone

Boyns of haunchis ben maad fast wip þe lattere boon of þe
rigboon / & riȝt as þe rigboon susteyneþ alle þe boones aboue, 20
so alle þe boones bineþe ben maad fast to him / þese boones ben
cartilaginous & sutil toward þe fore partie, & bineþe þei ben more
greet; & eueri of hem haþ a box þat is clepid pixis haunche &
vertebrum sit þeron.⁴ & þat is þe eende of þe hipe boon. & wip
this boon is maad fast þat boon þat goiþ ouerþwert vnder þe ars
aboue þe ȝerde, & is clepid os pectinis. & as summen seien þere ben
iiij. partis, saue in cirurgie it is seid al oon. & þe place of þe con-
iuncioun of þese boones is clepid þe scie.⁵ & sumtyme þese boones
goon out of þe ioiunt, as þou schalt haue a perfit teching herof in
þe .iiij. tretis in þe chapitre of dislocacioun / þis hipe boon, as it is

¹ Lat. Se al collo vulnus fieri accideret. Phillips. "Collum Uteri, the Neck of the Womb."

² arnoglossum. Wr. Wü., p. 559. 27 (XIII. cent.) "Arnoglossa, i. plaun-stein." O.E. wegbrade, waybread.

⁴ Sloane 2463, fol. 42 b: "þei ben cleped ylia other ossa yliorum, and is þe utter partie of þe mydward of hem ben concaytes other holowness, þe whiche ben clepid boystes, in þe whiche þe endes of þe bones of the þiges ben receyved inne."

⁵ scie, Med. Lat. scia, from *toxion*, it means the hip-joint. Wr. Wü., 610. 11 (xv. cent.), "Scia an^c the whyrlebon."

- aforseid, is maad fast' aboue wip ligaturis & pannyclis & nerues, & it' is a greet' boon & miche holow wipinne, & is ful of marow ; & it' is hollow and is greet', for it' schulde be strongt' ; & it' is holow, for it' schulde be
- 4 lizt. & pis boon is maad fast' in pe knee, & pere pe boon of pe hipe is joyned with the leg-bone in the knee. & pe boon of pe leg' ben ioyned togidere in a box as it' is aforseid.
- & pese boones ben bounden togidere wip ligaturis & senewis, & vpon pe ioynt' of pese boones & for to kepe pis ioynture from harm, is
- 8 ioyned peron a round boon & is clepid rotula, & of summen it' is Retula. clepid pe y3e of pe knee, & alle pese boones ben bounden togidere wip strongt' ligaturis // ¶ Vndir pe round boon of pe knee ben ordeyned
- .ij. boones in pe leg, & pat' oon perof' is grettere & sittip tofore in
- 12 pe leg, & pe toper is smaller & sittip bihynde in pe leg. & in pe neper partie pei ben maad fast' wip pe boon of calcanei pat' sus- The two bones of the leg articulate with the Calcaneus and Astragalus. [¶ If. 103] teynep alle pe boones, & with alkarad,¹ & pat' is a boon pat' fulfillip pe ioynture & is ²ioyned wip pe boon pat' is clepid naucula /
- 16 ¶ Racheta³ of pe foot' is maad of .iiij. boonis, & ben bounden togidere wip ligaturis. & wip pese boonys ben maad fast' pe bonys of pe toos pat' ben .xiiij., for eueri boon hap .iiij. boones, saue pe boon of pe grete too, & pat' hap but' .ij. boones / to alle pese boones The Racheta has four bones articulating with the fourteen Phalanges. [¶ If. 103, bk.]
- 20 comeþ nerues fro pe riggeboones—& wip pese nerues, & with peso ligaturis, & wip symple fleisch pese boones ben maad fast' togidere —& zeueþ to pese lymes meuyng & felynge. & per ben greet' bawnes in a mannes leggis & in hise hipis, & ben ful of grete
- 24 veynes & arterijs & senewis, & ben departid into alle pe leggis & to pe feet' / & summe of pese veynes comeþ fro a veyne of pe lyuer, The veins of the lower limbs start from the Vena Ramosa (Vena Cava), which divides into the
- 28 ben aforseid. & pese veynes ben departid in pe foot', & .ij. perof' ben in pe holow of pe foot' wipoutforþ, & pat' oon veyne perof' is clepid sciatica, & pat' opere is clepid renalis, ⁴& pis is þus miche to seie : pat' oon veyne serueþ for pe scie, & pat' oper for pe reynes / Solation and the Renalia. [¶ If. 103, bk.]
- 32 þanne per ben ij. oper veynes in pe holow of pe foot' withinne, & pat' oon is clepid sophena, & pat' oper is clepid vena ventris, id est a veyne of pe wombe. ¶ pe veyne pat' is clepid renalis scheweth its- Saphena, Vena ventris.
- 36 of þis veyne is good for þus manye þingis : for cancrena pat' ben in

¹ alkarad, Lat. alchaab, from Arab. *al kab*, a die.

³ Racheta, Lat. Rasceta, from Arab. *rugh*, which means the carpus or the tarsus. The Rasceta pedis is not exactly our tarsus, as it comprises only the three Cuneiform bones and the Cuboid bone.

þe hipis & for a mormal¹, & for varices & for vicera þat ben in þe hipis ouþer in þe leggis.

Wounds of the lower extremity are dangerous.

Bi alle þese skillis þou myzt wel se, þat woundis þat be maad in þese placis ouerþwert ben swiþe perilous for þe kutting of nerues⁴ & of cordis & braun, & of veynes & of arterijs, for alle þese þingis goiþ endelong þe leggis & þe hipis, & þerfore woundis þat ben maad ouerþwert in þis place ben swiþe perilous as it is aforseid //

Treatment of such wounds.

¶ Woundis þat ben maad in þes placis þat ben curable, schulen be⁸ curid in þe same maner as it is aforseid in curis of armys & of hondis / Saue of o þing þou schalt take kepe, þat woundis þat ben maad iij. fyngris brede wipinne þe knee, for þe² nobilte of þe place & for þe causis þat ben forseid, þe wounde is iugid mortal / þerfor¹² woundis þat ben in þese placis þat ben forseid & ben curable þou must do good diligence þerto, & be wel war of woundis þat ben mortal as it is aforseid //

[p. 12. 104]

¶ The techinge of þe .ij. tretis is fulfillid þoruþ þe help of god, 16 & now schal bigynne þe techinge of þe .iij. tretis & schal conteyne .xvij. chapitris /³

the þerd book conteynes viij. c.

Here bigynneþ þe þridde book.

¶ 12. c. /

Of þe engendryng of heeris //⁵

20

Heeris ben engendrid of greet fume & of viscous mater, & þe more hoot þat a man is, þe more heer he schal haue⁶ / & þer falliþ manie amendementis of heeris.⁷ ¶ First we wolen speke for to make heer fair, & aftirward of opere sicknessis þat falliþ in placis²⁴ of heeris.

¹ for a mormal, ad malum mortuum, a severe form of leprosy. See *Prompt. Parv.*, p. 343.

² Inserted by the translator; the number of the chapters is incorrect. *Lat. Add.* 26,106, f. 44 b: "Incipit tractatus tertius, et erit de curis morborum, qui non sunt vulnera, qui possunt accidere diuersis membris a capite usque ad pedes, que veniunt ad curam cyrurgici, qui continet tres doctrinas et est capitulum primum doctrine prime, tractatus tertii de ornatu capillorum."

⁴ The marginal note ought to be: þe firste doctrine of the þerd book conteynes VIII. C.

⁶ A list of passages on the same subject from works of Lat. and Arab. authors is given by Adams, *Paulus Aegineta*, vol. I., p. 339 (for "Rhases ad Mansor, VI. 1.", *ibid.*, read "Rhases ad Mansor, V. 1.>").

⁸ De propr. rer. Add. 27,944, fol. 66 b.: "And here is i-bred and cometh out of fumosite hoot & drie." Compare *Vicary*, p. 24.

⁷ Lat.: quibus multa accidunt corrigenda.

- ¶ If þou wolt make longe heeris, ouþer if þou wolt make heeris wexe long, dissolue a litil mustard in water of decoccioun of *bletarum*¹ & waische þerwith ofte, & þanne anynte with comoun oile. A wash to make the hair grow long.
- 4 ¶ If þou wolt make heeris ȝelow, þou schalt do in þis maner. An ointment to dye the hair yellow.
R. mirre ȝ .iiij., *lupinorum amarorum* 3 vj., ²flos salicis, fecis vini combusti ana 3 .iiij., grinde hem wel togidere & distempere hem R
wip lie maad of askis of vinis, & herwith anynte þe heeris aftir þe (¶ If. 104, bk. 1)
- 8 tyme þat þei ben wel waische wip þe forscid lye //
- ¶ If þou wolt make hem blac³ R *stercus irundinum*, & *enulam* R
sioacam, & *orobum*,⁴ *semen raphani* & *sulphurus*, & *florem capillaris*⁵ An ointment to dye the hair white.
succus, grinde alle þese wip a galle of a bole ouþer of an oxe &
- 12 tempere hem wip vinegre, & herwith anynte hise heeris, & first þou schalt fumie⁶ hem wip sulphur, & þus þou schalt do ofte. & þou schalt anynte him with oile of sambuci, þat is maad of whit flouris of ellern, & leid in oile riȝt as me makip oile of rosie.
- 16 ¶ If þou wolt kepe þe eendis of þe heeris fro fretynge, kutte hem alle euene & ȝeue þe pacient good mete, & anynte ofte his heed with oile & watir medlid togidere, & anynte herwith ofte / & A treatment to keep the ends of the hair from splitting.
anynte it with muscillage *seminis lini* & psillij⁷ //
- 20 ¶ If þou wolt make heeris crisp R *farinam fenigreci*, & mirre, R
& *semen raphani gallarum*, *gummi arabici*, *calcis abluti*, & wynde An ointment to make the hair crisp.
alle þese þingis & frote þe heeris, and þei⁸ wolen bicomme crisp. (¶ If. 105)
- ¶ If þou wolt kepe heeris þat þei schulen not falle awei. R
24 *ladani*⁹ .ȝ j., & resoleue it in ȝ .iiij of oile of mirtilles & herwip An ointment to keep the hair from falling off.
anynte þe rootis of þe heeris / ¶ If þou wolt saue heeris fro R
hoornes so þat þei bicomme not whit, þanne it is necessarie for to Feed well in order to prevent the hair from getting gray.
kepe him fro al maner þingis þat engendriþ fleume, & fro greet
- 28 studiȝnge,¹⁰ & fro fisch þat is rotid, & fro roten wijn, & he mote ofte

¹ *bleta*, Alphita, p. 22, "*Beta major*, uel *bleta* uel *bletis*, *atriplex agrestis* uel *domestica*."

³ *blac*, O.E. blác, albus.

⁴ Lat.: *orobum*, qui appellatur in gallico uicia.

⁵ Lat. *florum cappa*; *capillaris* is a mistake for *capparis*, the caper plant. See *N. E. Dict.* s. v. Caper 1.

⁶ *fumie*, Lat. *suffumigare*. Compare *Maccer. Engl. Translat.*, xvth cent., Sl. 2627, f. 251: "*make therof a suffumygacyon*."

⁷ *psillie*, Wr. Wü., p. 559. 6 (XIII. cent.), "*psillium*, i. lused." Cooper, "*psyllion*, the herb called fleawort."

⁸ *Ladanum*, *Laudanum*, *Labdanum*. "A gumme that runneth from the hearbe Leda, and is much used in Pomanders."—Cooper.

¹⁰ *fro greet studiȝnge*, Lat. a *fastidio*. The correct explanation is given in *De propr. rer. lib. VII. Cap. 44. Add. 27,944. fol. 91^b*: "*And fastidium is unskilful abhominacioun & wlatsonnes of mete & drinke and most greuous þe vertu of fedinge and of norischinge, for as Isidir seip, fastidium is i-seid: as it were makinge noye & disese, for a man þat hap abhominacioun hap noye and disese in þing þat anothir hap solas in & lykinge*."

R purge fleume with turbit, and vse strong^t wijn & a litil, & vse sutil sauce, & vse of þese þingis: R. mirabolanorum,¹ kebulorum indorum, emblicorum, & bellicorum² ana,³ & grinde hem alle with oile of almondis longe, & þanne tempere hem vp with wijn & hony, & eueri 4 morowe he schal take þerof þe quantite of a note / And þow schalt die hise heeris if þei ben white, wiþ tincture þat ben forseid //

A hair-dye.

R ¶ If a man desirip for to haue blac heeris as doiþ greuis⁴ & spaynardis, þanne make þis tincture. R foliorum mirti, foliorum 8 papaueris rubij, capilli, ciperi, spice, seminis bletarum, apii, ana 3 j., seþe hem in iiij li of watir, til þei come to o pound, & þanne cole⁵

[¶ 12. 105, bk.] hem & do þerto li. j. of oile of violet⁶ & boile hem in a double vessel til al þe watir be waistid away; þanne caste into þe oile 3 li of acacie, & make aischis of pyne applis, whanne þe kirkels ben taken out þerof, & medle hem alle togidere, & kepe þis oynement. & herwiþ anoynte heeris þat þou wolt make blake.

Of alopecia þat is namys of fisik þat signifiek 16
diuers passiouns /

¶ 130

The falling
off of the hair
called Alo-
pecia is a
sort of
Leprosy.

N Amys of phisice þat signifiek diuers passiouns vnder oon name ofte tyme bigilip a leche, & bringip him into greet^t errour / For comounli al maner lesing^t of heer is clepid alopecia⁷; saue for 20 to seie þe soþe, alopecia is a maner spice⁸ of lepre þat comeþ of rotid fleume / Saue in þis chapitre I wole speke of alopecia þat fallip oonli in þe heed. Allopix in grew, is seid a fox in latin, for a fox in sum tyme of þe 3eer his heer pilip awei, & þerfore fallyng^t 24 awei of heer is clepid alopecia / ¶ Tinea⁹ is as miche to seie as a

The disease
is called

¹ *Mirabolans*, a kind of Pluma.—Phillips.

² *Chebuli*, *Emblici*, and *Bellirici* are different kinds of *Mirabolans*. See Tommaseo Diz.

³ Lat. *ana partes equales*.

⁴ Greeks.

⁵ *cole*, Lat. *colo*, strain through a sieve.

⁷ De propr. rer. Add. 27,944, fol. 66 b.: "And if such a fumosite faileþ nouzt, but is infect or i-lette by som opir humore, þan failinge and lak of heer is nouzt propirliche ballidenes, but a special yuel þat phisicians clepen *allopiciam*. ¶ By þat yuel þe nurtur of heer is corrupt & faileþ, & þe heer fallip & þe ferþe partye of þe heed is bare, and þe furþer skyn of þe heed is þe foulere. ¶ Soche men faren as foxes, for þe heer of hem fallip happiliche for inmoderat and passinge hete. ¶ *Allopes* in grew, *vulpes* in latyn, a fox in englishe."

⁸ *spice*, Lat. *species*. *Cathol. Angl.*, p. 355, "a Spyce; species." As to the pleonastic use of *spice*, compare: a maner kynde of sponges (leaf 109).

⁹ De propr. rer., *ibid.*, fol. 80: "Also þe heed is ofte diseid wip an famuler passiou, þat children haue oft, and by constantin þat yuel hatte *squama*, shalle, & we clepip þat yuel *tynea*, moppe, for it fretip & gnawep þe over partie of þe skyn of þe heed as a moppe fretip cleop & cleueþ þerto wipoute departinge & holdinge þe skyn wel faste."

reremous, for þe heeris of a reremous ben alwey aboute þe heed, & þe
 þe fore cirurgians makij difference bitwixe allopuciam & tineam, for
 þei ¹clepid tineam þere þat þere is corrupcioun in þe skyn wip harde
 4 crustis & quytture / Saue allopucia is whanne þe heeris fallij awei
 wipoute ony wise of þe skyn.²

Tinea when
 attended by
 corruption of
 the skin.
 [1 ff. 106]

¶ Allopucia þat is wipoute cometh of þe skyn,³ & sumtyme it
 cometh in þe eende of a siknes for defaute of norischinge of þe bodi
 8 þat schulde helpe to norische þe heeris, oupir it cometh, for þe poris
 openeth to myche / In þis cas it is necessarie for to augmente
 norischinge of þe bodi wip good metis þat engendrij good blood, &
 frote wel þe heeris of his heed wip þin hond & anoynte it wip oile
 12 of mirtillorum / If þis suffise not, frote wel þe heeris of his heed
 with þin hond til þe skyn of his heed bicometh reed; & þan frote it
 wip ryndis of an oynoun til it bicometh drie, & þanne þere wole arise
 þere vpon, as it were, bladdris, & þanne anoynte þe place wip grece
 16 of a maulard. & whanne þe heeris wexen agen, lete schauwe hem
 ofte, for miche schauynge is good þe fore /

Alopecia
 arises from
 want of
 nourishment.

Treatment of
 this disease.

If it so be þat allopucia cometh of vijs⁴ of humouris, þat þou
 miht knowe bi þe teching⁵ þat is aforseid in allopucia þat cometh
 20 of long⁶ sijknis; for if it come of vijs of humouris, þanne vlcera
 wole be in þe skyn. þan þou must loke of what humour it come,
 þat þou miht knowe bi disposicioun of al þe bodi & bi þe colour of
 þe place, as if þe pacient be fleischi & wel colourid, & if þe fleume
 24 of his mouþ be swete, & þe pustulis þat ben in his heed be reed, &
 if his vryne be picke & reed, & if he be zong⁷, & if he etij metis
 þat engendrij miche blood, & if vlcera be in þe skyn, & if al þe
 skyn be reed & ful of quytture, alle þes ben signys of aboundaunce
 28 of blood. If it so be þat his bodi be leene, & þe colour of þe place
 be rufus ouþer zelow, & vlcir be drie, it is signe þat colre is þe
 cause / If his bodi be sumwhat whijt, & if he haþ smale veynis, &
 if he haue miche moisture in his mouþ, & if his vryne be whijt &
 32 picke, & if he þirstij not, & if þe place be whijt & neische and
 miche moisture þeron wipouten ony brennyng, it is a signe of
 fleume / If þe colour of his bodi be derk ouþer blac, & if he be
 leene, & if his vryne be pale & þinne, & if he haþ greet appetit,
 36 & if his blood be blac, & if he vsij miche for to ete beef & caul, &

The skin is
 ulcerated,
 [1 ff. 106, bk.]

If the disease
 is caused by
 bad humours.

Signs for
 telling

whether it is
 caused by
 superabund-
 ance of blood,
 by choler,

by phlegm,

[1 ff. 107]

² *without ony wise of þe skyn*, Lat. *absque cutis vitio apparente*; *of riis of humouris*, Lat. *propter humorum malitiam*.

³ *Mistranslated from the Lat. alopecia quæ sine cutis est vulnere*.

⁴ See note 2.

opere pingis þat engendriþ malancolie, & if þe place of þe siknes be
 ledy & hard, þat is a signe of malancoli, saue þis passioun comeþ
 ful seelde of malancoli, but if it be of greet corrupcioun, & þanne
 it is worse þan ony oper aforseid / 4

Whanne þou knowist of what humour it comeþ, first þou
 must auoide¹ þat humour, for þis is a general rule of .G., for as .G.
 seiþ / First, þou must do awei þe cause, & I woole teche þee to
 auoide þe matere with fewe medicyns þat ben approued & ben 8
 laxatiuis, profitable, & ben necessarie for a cirurgian for to knowe
 alle þe maner of purgaciouns, for ellis he schal neuere wel worche
 in sich maner causis / If it so be þat a man be ful of humouris, þou
 must first bigynne for to lete him blood, if he be strong & in age, 12
 þat is, & not to zong ne to oold. & þan lete him blood, ouþer garre
 him, & þan afterward purge him, saue it is bettere to purge him
 first, & þanne wipiane a few daies lete him ²blood / If it so be þat
 blood be oonli þe cause, þanne it suffisþ ynow for to lete him 16
 blood / ¶ If it so be þat þou dissoluest þe water wip a laxatif, &
 if þou letist not him blood tofore ne aftirward, þanne þou art not
 sure; for ofte tyme þe medicyne laxatif wole engendre a feuer, &
 principali if it be hoot / 20

¶ Colre schal be purgid in þis maner / R̄ violarum 3 j., pruno-
 rum 3 j & ʒ, sebesten .xv. in noumbre, iuiubas .xx., seþe hem in
 iij li of water, til þei come to li j, & cole hem, & resoluþ þeron
 cassia fistula³ 3 j., thamarindorum, manne ana 3 ʒ., & boile hem a 24
 litil togidere, & þan cole hem, & aneuen do þeron poudre of mira-
 bolani citrini 3. j., & of rubarbe, & amorowe cole hem, saue chaufe
 it a litil first, & distempere it with 3 ʒ of sugre rosarum, & lete
 R̄ him drynke it⁴ / ouþer wip þese pelottis⁵ / R̄ aloes cicotrini⁶ .3 j., 28
 mirabolani citrini, rosarum rubearum ana .3 ʒ., scamonie quintam

¹ *auoide*, Lat. *evacuare*. See *N. E. Dict.*, *avoid*, 1.

² *cassia fistula*, see *Alphita*, p. 33, and *Adams l. c.*, vol. III., p. 429. It is *Cassia fistula* L., the pudding-pipe tree.

⁴ The following prescription is omitted in the text, but written in a different hand at the bottom of lf. 107 bk.: *pro colera & cantaridarum, mane, modulle cassia fistule ana 3 ʒ, myrbol, cytri[ni] 3 ij, boylle in li ʒ watir, to the halfe put therto 3 j suger & ʒ 3. & drenk yt.*

⁵ *pelottis*, Lat. *pillis*, Fr. *pelote*, a little ball. Phillips. "Pellota (in the *Forest Lam*) the ball or round fleshy part of a Dog's Foot." *Charta de Foresta*, 1225: in *Annales de Burton. Annales Monast. Luard*, vol. I., p. 233: "Talis autem sit expeditatio [canum] per assisam comitatuum, quod tres ortilli abscondantur siue *pelota* de pede anteriori."

⁶ *aloes cicotrini*, Lat. *sucotrini*, for *socotrini*, so called from the island *Socotra*.

partem .3. j., þat is to seie þe .v. part of 3., & make þerof pelottis with sirupo violaceo. & þis is good to ȝeue to a strong^r man / Also þese ben good pelottis for to purge clene colre / R̄ mirabolani 4 citrini .3. j., scamonie cocte .᠑ ᠒, masticis ¹grana iij., grinde hem & tempere hem vp wip ius of iouis barba,² & make þerof pelottis & þis ius, but collige on ȝest.³ ¶ þis þou must wite þat whanne þou wolt purge colre, first þou muste make a preparatijf tofore with 8 oxisacra⁴ & wip metis þat ben colde & moist & wip reste.

¶ If þou wolt purge fleume þou schalt to þis medicyne þat Maister William of Salerne vside / R̄ turbit albi gummosi .3. j & ᠑ j, diazinziberos .3. ij., & medle hem togidere & make herof a gobet, 12 & medle þerwip a litil of sirupe of rosas. ¶ It is good forto medle ȝinziberos wip turbit for þat wole comforte þe stomac & defie fleumatik humouris, & also it is good for to ete euery dai fastyng wipouten ony medlynge of ony laxatif / R̄ ȝinziberis albi .3. j., 16 liquericie rase .3. iij., gariofilī cardamoni, nucis muscati, granorum paradisi .3. ij., ȝucare albissime .li. ij., & make herof a letuarie not to hard soden; oupir wip þese pelottis: pulueris pigre,⁵ turbit electi ana .3. x, pulpe coloquintide .3. iij & ᠑ j, grynde all þese & sarce hem,⁶ 20 & tempere hem vp wip oile of almondis & make þerof pelottis, & herof þou myzt ȝeue at oony 3. ij. ¶ þe poudre of pigre þat goiþ to þese pelottis is good þouȝ it were bi it-silf.⁷ & it is swiþe comoun, & Rasis & A. acorden þeron, & hali abbot & serapion⁸ / R̄ 34 rosarum rubearum, masticis, xilobalsami, spice, cassie lignie, azari ana,¹⁰ aloes þat it be good, double to alle. ¶ If fleume be medlid wip

² *iouis barba*, med. L. for *Sempervivum tectorum*. Add. 15,236, fol. 4: "*iouis barba*, *semperuiua idem*. *G. Iubarba A. siluegrene*."

³ *zest*, Lat. et ait dosis una. "Zest, a chip of orange . . . it is also sometimes taken for a short afternoon sleep or Nap: as to go to one's zest."—Phillips. Zest (chip of orange), Fr. zeste, Lat. schistus—zest (nap), Esp. siesta, Lat. sextus.

⁴ *oxisacra*—*Oxysaccharum*, a Composition of Sugar and Vinegar.—Phillips.

⁵ *pigre*, *πικρόν*, η, έν, sharp, bitter. Matth. Sylv.: "*Pigra* Gal. in *dinamidiis* .i. amara, quæ amaritudine sua morbos & humores expellunt."

⁶ *sarce hem*, Lat. *cribellentur*. *Cathol. Angl.*, p. 318. "a Sarce, colum." Phillips. "Scarce or Sarce, a fine Hair Sieve." Lat. *serica*, Ital. *sargia*, Fr. *sarge*.

⁷ *be it-silf*. The *N. E. Dict.* s. v. by 4, gives examples for the early occurrence of 'by oneself' = alone. The first reference for 'by itself' is quoted by Shaks.

⁸ *hali abbot & serapion* are not named in the Latin text. Hali abbot, also called Hall þe abbot, is Ali the son of Abbas, a Persian physician (994), the author of 'al muluki' = the Royal. See *Sprengel II.*, p. 412.

¹⁰ Lat. ana partes equales.

R̄

[11. 106]

To purge
Flem. l. h.A prescrip-
tion of Wil-
liam of Sa-
lerne

R̄

R̄

[11. 109, bk.]

A powder
used by
Rasis &
Auienna

R̄

colre, þanne do [þerto]¹ þe forseid pelottis of turbit, of scamonie .3 ij. & ð, sticados arabici² .3 .v, & þanne þou schalt do þerto turbit .3 .v—& it was aforseid .3 x in þe resceit tofore—& þese pelottis ben clepid cochium rasis, & þis is þe beste þing þat mai be 4 for to purge dyuers humouris þat ben in þe heed / I ne knewe no medicyn laxatif þat is so good, þat is so profitable for to purge ij. humouris þat ben medlid togidere as þis medicyn is / For þere ben opere medicyns as sure as þis, saue þei ben not so myzty. Also 8 þere ben opere medicyns more mizty, saue þei ben not so sure.

To purge
melancolie
Ry ¶ þou schalt purge malancoli wiþ þis list medicyn þat is ofte zeue /
Ry R. epithimi .3 j., & boile it in li j. of gotis whey, saue þou schalt boile it but a while, & lete hem stonde so al nyzt, & a morowe 12

[² li. 109]
Ry chaufe ³ it a litil & cole it, & zeue it to drynke; ouper make it wiþ a decoccioun of Epithimi Rasis Ry mirabolanorum indorum .3 x, pollipodij .3 .v, sene 3 vij, turbit 3 iij, sticados .5 x, seþe alle þes in iij li of watir, til it come to j. li., & þanne do þerto epithimi 16 3 .x, & lete it boile a litil, & þan sette it adoun fro þe fier; & whanne it is cold cole it & do þerto sugre ro. 3 j., & zeue it to drynk in diluculo / If þou wolt make a medicyn þat is more

A stronger
medicyn:
Ry strenger, zeue first bi iij. houris þese pelottis. Ry aloes 3 j., salis 20 indi 3 .ñ., agarici .9 ij., ellibori nigri þe .iiij. part of a 3., & make herof pelottis wiþ hony, ouper make herof a sirup.

After having
purged, pro-
ceed to the
local cure;
use rubbing
and mild
medicines,
if necessary—
stronger ones
Ry Whanne þou hast wel purgid þe mater, þanne þou must go to þe cure in þis maner / Loke if frōtyngis and list medicyns þat ben 24 seid in þe firste bygynyng of þis chapter suffise in allopucia þat ben not vlcera, saue oonli fallyngt awei of heeris. If þe forseid medicyns wolen not serue, þan þou muste make stronger / Ry spume maris, þat is a maner kynde of sponges,⁴ saue it is more sutil & 28

[² li. 109, bk.]
Ry more whit, 3 x. baurac⁵ .i. ⁶nitrum, in þe stide herof we moun do þerto sal gemme, sulphuris, euforbij ana 3 .ij., staphisagria, cantaridarum ana .3 j, grynde alle þese togidere & make hem wiþ oile, & anoynte herwiþ his heed. ¶ If þou wolt worche more stronglich 32

For rich peo-
ple use an
ointment of
Cantharides.
Ry aboute þe place þat þe heeris ben pilid awei, & princypaly if he be a riche man: Ry olium de beu.⁷ .3 j., cantaridarum & kutte awei þe

¹ Wanting.² *stecados* or *stichados*, Cassidonia or French Lavender. Minshew.—Stoechas d'Arabie. Pharmacopœa Gallica.⁴ See page 179, note 1.⁵ *baurac*, Arab. = nitrum.⁷ "Ben or Behn, the Fruit of a Tree, like the Tamarisk, about the bigness of a Filberd, which the Perfumers bruise to get the Oil out of it, not so sweet smelling of it-self, but proper to receive any sort of Scent."—Philippe.

- hediz perof & þe wyngis ana .3 j., stampe a litil cantarides & leie hem in oile of violet,¹ & sette þe viol² vpon soft colis & lete hem boile, & putte in a smal sticke, and alwei meue hem & it wole
- 4 bicombe al into an oynement, & make it haue a sote smel wip musco, & herwip anynte his heed; & þis wole make bladdris arise peron, & it wole make heeris to growe. Saf þou must take hede, þat in medicyns þat ben cantarides ynne, þei wolen make a greet
- 8 brennyng, and þat brennyng wole be yuel to take awei. & sumtyme it falliþ þat þoruþ þat brennyng comeþ a feuer. First, þou schalt helpe þis caas³ in þis maner: þou schalt anynte þe place with vnguentum⁴ album þat schal be seid in þe antidotarie /
- 12 ¶ Vlcera þat ben in allopucia ouper tinearum⁵ summe ben curable & summe ben incurable; if it be so þat þe substaunce of þe skyn be not to hard, þanne þou schalt traueile þereaboute. Also if þe skyn be hard & calose,⁶ þanne it is seid incurable //
- 16 ¶ If þere ben pustulis þat ben hote & ful of blood, & þe skyn be ful of humouris & neische, þanne it is good for to garce þat skyn, & þanne waische al his heed with þat blood hoot, & þanne hile⁷ his heed wip caule leuis. & þanne aftirward anynte al his heed wip oile of notis
- 20 ouper of camomil hoot, til al þe scabbis perof be wel tobroke. & þanne bigynne for to drie with þese drynge medicyns / R̄, argillam rubeam þat it be neische & clene wipouten grauel & wipouten stoony, & distempere it with strong vinegre, & make it as it were
- 24 an oynement, & þerwip anynte his heed //
- ¶ Item, argillam partes ij., sulphuris viui, cineres corticis, cucurbite siccos⁸ pulpe colloquintide ana partem j., distempere hem with vinegre⁹ & anynte
- herwip. þis is good þing perfore & driep swiþe vlcera þat ben
- 28 hoot, & alle pustulas þat ben in þe heed & in þe face; þis driep & soudip //
- ¶ If þe matere be corrupt & swiþe hoot & brennyng, first þou schalt aswage þe heete wip vnguentum album rasis þat schal be seid in þe antidotarie, & anynte þerwip al his heed, &
- þanne leie þerevpon a linnen cloof wet in þe iuys of stooncroppe,¹⁰ and a lotion.

¹ in oile of violet, Lat. in oleo in fiala.

² viol, Lat. fiala. See *Cathol. Angl.*, p. 129, s. v. fialle.

³ Lat.: Primo casu succurre cum unctione . . . in secundo casu ponas egrum in balneo.

⁴ Lat.: Vlcerosarum autem allopiciarum seu tinearum.

⁵ calose, Lat. callosus. The references in *N. E. Diet.* are later.

⁶ hile, O.E. helan.

⁷ MS. siccage.

⁸ stooncroppe, Wright W., 712. 35. "Heo vermicularis, stooncroppe." Lat.: crassula minor Add. 15,236, fol. 175 b.: "*Cassula minor* frigid. sic. teste de soriz. stooncroppe."

Inflammatory symptoms, such as fever, to be treated with unguentum album.

[* II. 110]

Ulcers accompanying Alopecia or Tinea are sometimes incurable.

Treatment, if there are blood-pustules, and if the skin is full of humours.

R̄

Cool with unguentum album

& lete þis lye þeron til al þe brennyng be aweie, & þanne aftir þis anynte his heed wip oile of violet. & þanne hele his heed wip leuys of *bletarum* til al þe skyn bicomē moist & neische & wipoute brennyng, & þanne drie it vp & soude it wip þingis þat ben afor-

Treatment of
Tinea in an
early stage.

Ry

seid // ¶ Item, if tinea be¹ newe, þou schalt do þerto anoper maner cure / Ry, abrotani agrestis,² fumiterre, lappacij acuti,³ artemesie⁴ ana .m. j. boile alle þese in oile til þei bicomē al drie þeron, & wip þis oile anynte his heed manye daies, & þanne spryng þeron 8

[⁵ If. 111.]

Treatment, if
there is much
phlegmatic
(liquid) mat-
ter in the
skin.

matere schal be⁵ taken out of þe skyn, & wip frotyng of þis poudre it schal be dried // ¶ If þe mater be fleumatik þat is in þe skyn, & if þere be⁶ myche corrupcioun þeron & if þe skyn be 12 crusty,⁷ þanne waische his heed wip a decoccioun of malowis in watir, & þanne anynte his heed wip oile of camomille & oile of notis medlid togidere; & whanne it is anyntid, hile his heed wip caule lewis, & þus þou schalt do manie daies til þe skyn be more 16 scabbid⁸ þan it was. & þan frote it wel wip an oynoun til þe skyn bicomē hoot & reed, & þan þou schalt waische his heed wip lye maad wip aschis of a vine, & þeron schulen be dissolved wijn-drastis brent.⁹ & whanne þou hast waische his heed herwip, þan 20

An ointment
for removing
the hair.

Ry

þou schalt anynte his heed wip þe oynement þat wole pile awei þe heeris / Ry, calcis vif .3 iij., arsenec 3 j., aloes 3 .iij., & make herof a poudre & tempere hem togidere wip seþing hoot water, & herwip take awei hise heeris, & þan waische his heed aȝen wip þe lye þat 24

Another for
restoring the
hair and skin.

[¹⁰ If. 111, bk.]
to mak heres
grow

Ry

is aforseid til þe matere be wel dried / þan for to make þe heeris 10 wexe & for to regendre skyn & soude it, þou schalt anynte þe place with an oynement þat is maad þus / Take aischis maad of a mannes heer 3 j, fecis of oile, lynseed ana. 3 .iij, mirre 3 j & 1, 28 staphisagre .3 .ij., euforbij .3 j., make þerof an oynement // ¶ If þe matere come of malancoli, þou must take hede to make þe matere neische and moist wip waisching of a decoccioun of violet & fumi- terre in water, & anynte it wip oile of violet til þe matere be 32 resoluēd & þe skyn bicomē neische, & þe pacient schal ete moist

¹ not, erroneously inserted. Lat. Item fit aliter cura tineæ novæ.

² abrotani agrestis, Wr. Wü., p. 544. 20, *superuade*. Add. 15,236, f. 14 bk.: "Abrotanum. gallice aueroy. anglice suthernewode." See *Alphita*, p. 1.

³ Add. 15,236, f. 17 bk.: "Lapacium acutum. anglice reddoke."

⁴ *Ibid.*, fol. 12: "Artemisia. A. mugwort."

⁵ be, in margin. ⁷ crusty, Lat. crustosus.

⁸ scabbid, Lat. ulceratus. See *Cathol. Angl.*, p. 320.

⁹ Lat.: in quo dissoluta sit fex vini combusta.

metis, & þou schalt baþe him in swete watir, & þan þou must drie it vp wiþ medicyns þat drien þat ben aforseid /

þis is a medicyn þat is approued of G. & is good for tineam & A general pre-
scription of
Galen
for skin-dis-
eases.
4 vlcera þat ben harde in þe heed, & for pustulis þat ben clepid
saphati,¹ & for impetiginem & morpheam,² & for fallynge awei of
heeris, & for al maner scabbe. R̄, gallarum .3 iij., seminis secute R̄
3 .ij., baurac .3 j. & þe iiij part of [3 i],³ sulphuris viť 3 ij. & ű,
8 arsenec rubij, aristologie rotunde ana ʒ ij, salis armoniaci, ful-
liginis, amigdalorum ⁴ amarum, colloquintide, eris vsti, venarum [4 ff. 112]
citrinarum, & in stide þerof þou miȝt take lumbricos terrestres brent,
litargirij, capparum foliorum, fice sicce,⁵ radices canne siccarum, flos
12 eris, alumnis sicci, rosarum, mirre, aloes, olibani ana 3 ű, picis
liquide, foliorum oliue, vellis vaccini, ana .3 j., grinde hem sutilly &
tempere hem wiþ eyssel, & sette hem in þe sunne in a vessel of glas,
ouȝer in a vessel of erþe glasid⁶ wiþinne, & meue hem wel in þe
16 sunne, til it bicomē al an oynement, & herwiþ anynte his heed, til
it be perfetly hool, saue þou muste take kepe of þingis þat ben
aforseid þat þe humouris be purgid /

Of þe fallynge of heeris //

20 **C**Aluiciem is a fallynge away of a mannis heeris tofore, & is as 7
miche to seie as ballid. & oon cause herof [is]⁸ kindly as Baldness is
caused by
old age,
whanne a man is oold for to be ballid, & oon þerof is vnkyndly,
as whanne a mannis heeris falliþ awei for sijknes as it is aforseid & by sickness,
24 remedijs þerfore in þe nexte chapter here tofore. & if þis cause
come for elde þanne it is incurable // ¶ Also ballidnesse ⁹ comeþ of [4 ff. 112, bk.]
humouris rotid þat ben vnder þe skyn as it is in allopucia & tineia, by a cor-
ruption of the
humours.
& þe cure herof is bi avoidyng of humouris as it is aforseid.¹⁰ ¶ þe

¹ *Saphati*, Hebr. Saphath.—Philipps. "Saphatum, a dry Scurf in the head."

² *morphea*, a skin-disease. See *Cathol. Angl.*, p. 243, s. v. Morfew.

³ Add. 26,106, fol. 46 b.: et quartam partem 3 iiii.

⁴ *fice sicce*, Lat. *fisti sicce*. Halle Table, p. 87: "Fistakia so named bothe in Greeke and Latine, and vulgarly Fisticl, are the frutes of a tree." Fisti-nut, from fistick-nut.

⁵ *glasid*, vitreatus.

⁷ This paragraph is omitted in the printed editions of Lanfranc's Surgery and in Add. 26,106. It is preserved in Roy. MS. 12. C. XIV, fol. 32, where it forms part of cap. II, but with a separate heading. The translator took it for cap. III, but did not alter the following chapter-numbers. ⁸ is, wanting.

¹⁰ De propr. rer., lib. V., cap. 66, Add. 27,944, fol. 67: "*Ballidnes is priuacioun and defaute of heer, and comeþ of defaute of moist fumosite in þe formere partye of þe heed; so seiþ constantyn. . . . Ofte þe heer of men*

cause whi þat makip a man ballid ben þese / as whanne þe skyn
 recchip along, & if his bodi be drie & þinne & his skyn hoot, þan
 þou must do þis cure / Take *olium mirtinum* & *olium de mastice*
 ouper *olium ladani*, & anointe þerwith his heed. & if þe tyme of 4
 þe zeer be coold, þou muste anointe him wip *olium de spica* //

Treatment, if
 the patient is
 young,
 If the skin is
 tender.
 [? H. 118]

¶ Whanne a mannes heeris fallip awei so in vnkyndeli tyme, as þe
 while he is 3ong, þan make him a bap & anoynte him wip camo-
 mille & wip bittir¹ almondis & wip oile maad þerof // If a man 8
 bicombe ballid for cause þat his skyn is to neische, þese ben þe
 signys þerof as whanne a man hap fewe heeris & sotil / þanne take
olium mirtinum & *olium masticis* wip oilio laurino, & herwith anointe
 his heed, whanne hise heeris ben schauen awei // ¶ Item, take 12
 capilli veneris, ladani ana, grinde hem & medle hem with wijn &
 with olio mirtino / If a mannes heed be waischen² herwip, it wole
 make hise heeris longe & make hem sitte faste / Also take water
 þat bletis ben soden yn & a litil mustard, & þerwip waische hise 16
 heeris & after anointe him wip oile // ¶ Also to make heeris þat þe
 falle not / take leuys of mirte & sette hem in water til þe watir
 þerof bicombe al troublly þan take li .j. of þe water & *olium infantini*
 or of oile þat is vnripe & medle hem togidere. & þan sepe hem til 20
 þe water waaste awei, & þanne caste þerto canel & *ladanum* grounden
 & resolved in wijn, & make herof an oynement & anointe herwip þe
 rotis of þe heeris /

An ointment
 for preserv-
 ing the hair
 from falling
 off.

Of litil pustulis þat wexip in a mannes face or in 24
 children hedis /³

¶ *Saphati* ben litil pustule þat wexip in a mannes heed & in
 children forhedis & her face, & principali in wommens facis, &
 also in mennys facis þat ben moist, & makip sumtyme crustis / For 28
 to cure þis passioun, here þou schalt haue a good medicyn of .G.
 þat is aforseid of aischis of cucurbite & argilla // ¶ Children moun
 be holpen þerof if her norice abstayne hir fro salt metis & scharpe
 & fro strongt wijn⁴, & þe child schal be bapid in a decoccioun of 32

¶ *ofte seruen venus fallip and bredip ballidnes litil & litil. . . And if a
 man is withoute hed-her, he is i-holde þe more vn honest.*

Treatment of
 Galien.

¹ MS. *butir*. MS. 12. C. XIV, fol. 32 bk.: *oium amigdalīs amarīs*.

³ Lat., Add. 26,106, fol. 47: "pustule parue que nascuntur in capite fronte et facie puerorum."

⁴ Gul. de Salic., lib. I., cap. 2, Sl. 6, fol. 55 b.: "This soeknesse is not bred but in children, when þei souken, and it ys clepid a crest, and it ys mad in hem in þe forked and in þe hede. . . . The cure of it ys þat every

camomile ¹ & rosis & fenigreci, & þou schalt anointe þe place wiþ ^[17. 112, bk.]
 oile of camomille hoot // ¶ Furfurea ben a maner of squamis .i. ^{Furfures}
 schellis þat comeþ of brennyng þat is in þe skyn ; if þei be frotid ^{(dandrif).}
 4 wel wiþ a manys nailis, þei wolen falle awei, & sumtyme þei ben liȝt
 & wolen falle awei wiþ þe heeris, whanne þei ben schauē & wiþ
 waischingis of hoot water / If þis suffise not þerfore, anoynte his ^{Ointment.}
 heed wiþ an oynement maad of farina ciceris & þe seed of malowe
 8 uisci temperid wiþ vinegre / If it be not remeued herwiþ, anoynte
 him wiþ þis oynement // Take farine ciceris .ȝ. iiij, farine fenigreci, ^{Ry}
 sulphuris viui, nitri croci, ² sinapis ana .ȝ. iiij., tempere hem wiþ
 vinegre and watir /

12 Of cloop³ þat is clepid fraclis or goutte roset.

Pannus is a superfluite þat falliþ in a wommans face, & comeþ ^{iiij. eo.}
 ofte in childberyng, & also whanne hir menstrie is wiþholde, ^{Pannus, a}
 & is as it were a maner ledi⁴ colour or purpur, & sumtyme it is ^{skin-disease}
 16 medlid myche wiþ blak, & it comeþ alwei of malancolious matere. ^{on the face,}
 & þou schalt first purge þe matere wiþ a decoccioun of epithimi & ^{which affects}
 gotis whey, & þou schalt make þat ⁵ he leue metis þat engendriþ ^{women, when}
 malancoly, & þanne take seed of raphani in a newe linnen cloop, ^{they are with}
 20 bittir almoundis, mele of benis, seed of melonum & curcubite, ^{child.}
 stampe hem alle togidere & tempere hem wiþ water & dissolue a litil ^{Apply a}
 safron & hony & make þerof an oynement, & herwiþ þou schalt ^{purging}
 anoynte hir face at euen late, & amorowe þou schalt waische hir ^{medicine,}
 24 face wiþ a colature of bran // ¶ If it so be þat þis passioun be ^[17. 114]
 cold, þanne þow schalt make a stronger oynement wiþ þe same
 oynement, & do þerto eruca þe seed þerof, & argentum viuum
 slayn⁶ wiþ spotil, & pepir & mirre,⁷ & tempere hem wiþ oximel, &
 28 sumtyme it is nede to sette vpon þe place watir lechis. & after ^{and leeches.}
 þat anoynte it wiþ þe poudre of catapucie⁸ & staphisagre temperid

*day þe place most be anointed with oyle of camomille hoot. And þe noryse
 absteine hyre fro flesces, and fro chese, and fro scharp metis."*

¹ croci, for croci.

² cloop, translated from Pannus. Lat. : De pannis, cossis et gutta rosacea et de lentiginibus et cicatricibus vulnerum.

⁴ ledi, from "lead." Lat. lividus.

⁶ slay, Lat. extinguere, precipitate. Comp. H. G. Niederschlag.

⁷ mirre, mistaken from Lat. nitro.

⁸ catapucie. Add. 15,236, fol. 74 bk. : "Catapucia, semen spurge, cata-
 pusta, spurge seed." The original meaning "a medicinal preparation" is
 shown in Aelfr. Gloss. : "Catapodia, a swylfende drenc." Compare N. E. D.
 s. v. catapuce.

Anicea.
R̃
vnguentum
amigdal-
arum.

[11. 114, bk.]

Cossi are
small pus-
tules on the
face.

dubium

R̃

Gutta rosacea
changes the
colour of a
man's face.

A purging
medicine.

[11. 115]

with hony // ¶ Also a medicyn of A. for þis passioun / Take argenti viui .3 j. gr̃m amigdalorum 3 ij. medle hem togidere & stampe hem til þou se noþing of þe quik siluer, & do þerto seed of melonis maad clene .3 iij., stampe alle þese togidere & anoynte herwip hir 4

face aneue & amorowe ; waische hir face wip watir ¹ þat violet hap leye þeron / Lentigines² ben purgid wip a stronge purgacioun & wip a stronge medicyn þat ben forseid for pannum //

¶ Cossi³ ben litil pustulis & harde þat ben engendrid in þe face, 8 & principali aboute þe [nose],⁴ & þei makip þe place reed, & þerfore þis medicyn is good. R̃, sulphuris viui .3 j, & make it to sutil poudre, & leie it in a pound of watir of ro. in a glasen vessel, & stoppe wel the mouþ þerof, & hange it in þe sunne in þe monþe of 12 Iulij & august bi xv. daies, & euery dai þou schalt meue þe vessel, & with þis watir þou schalt anoynte his face þere þat þe passioun is //

¶ Gutta rosacea,⁵ þat is a passioun þat turnep þe skyn of a mannys face out of his propur colour & makip þe face reed. & þis 16 passioun comep of humouris brent & abidiþ in þe skyn, & herfore is a good purgacioun þat purgip salt humouris. & þis is þe medicyn / R̃, litargiri, auripigmenti, sulphuris viui, viridis eris ana⁶ & poudre of litil meis⁷ brent, & of þis poudre half so miche as of alle þe opere. 20

& þis schal be poudrid wip .ij. partis of trifolij⁸ & þe .iiij. part of swynys grese freisch, & make of alle þese an oynement. & on euen anoynte herwip his face, & amorowe waische his face wip a decoction of semina frigidorum⁹ & wip a litil campher, & þan make his 24 face clene, & þan anoynte his face wip olio tartarino,¹⁰ & al þe

² "Lentigo, a Pimple, or Freckle; a small red Spot in the Face, or other Part, resembling a Lentil."—Phillips.

³ Gulielm. de Salic., lib. I., cap. 63, Sl. 277, fol. 12, mentions as skin-diseases: þe ampte, þe toter and þe ryngworm. Dunglison identifies the ringworm with cossi, deriving it from Lat. cossia, or cossus, m., a worm that breeds in wood. The description given by Gul. de Sal. differs entirely from Lanfranc's description of cossi.

⁴ nose, omitted in MS., but space left free. Dubium in margin refers to it. Lat. circa nasum.

⁵ De propr. rer., lib. VII., cap. 65, Add. 27,944, fol. 100 b.: "And nerphea is al in þe skynne, & lepra in þe fleische & in þe skynne; þis infectionn is but litil diuers from infectionn þat hatte gutta rosea, þat infectip þe face wip smale pynples, and comep of a gleyney & a MS. & bloody & colerik humours, þat ben bytvene felle and fleische." Sl. 563, fol. 17 b.: "þe rose goute." Gutta rosacea vel rosea, Rosy Drop or Whelk. (Dunglison.)

⁶ The dose is omitted, so it is in Add. 16,106, fol. 47 b. Prints: unc. l.

⁷ meis, "mice." Lat. pulveris parvorum suricum. meis is probably an error for miis.

⁸ MS. fin.

¹⁰ The translator has omitted the prescription of oleum tartarinum, given

remenaunt herof þou schalt do of þis cure & fulfille wiþ medicyns
as it is aforseid / *ad pannum* /

¶ *Cicatrices vulnerum* ben remeued wiþ *litargirum nutricum*, & To remove
4 is good for manie maner þingis, for it doip awei wennys, and it doip the scars of
awei scharpnys of þe browis & gendriþ good fleisch in woundis & wounds.
fretiþ awei wickid fleisch, & is maad in þis maner / Take litarge & R̄
grinde it sotilli in a mortar & caste þerto a litil vinegre & þanne
8 a litil oile of ro., & þus þou schalt do til it come to a perfit
oynement /¹

Of icchinge & smertynge² and scabbe.

¶ *Capo. vo.*
pruritus

12 **I**Cchinge & scabbe comeþ of salt humouris, & a mannys kynde
hap abhominacioun þerof, & putteþ³ hem out of þe skyn,⁴ & Itch and
þis falliþ ofte of salt metis & scharpe metis & of⁵ wijñ þat scabs arise
is strong; & it falliþ ofte to hem þat wakiþ & traueilip & from acid
vsiþ no þaping & weriþ no lynnyn cloþis, & þis is oon of þe humours,
16 siknes þat is contagious, for o man mai take it of anoþer / þis maner [[¶] If. 115, bk.]
sijknesse comeþ sumtyme of blood, sumtyme of fleume, sumtyme of
colre, sumtyme of malancolie / Also scabbe, sum is drie & summe and are
is wet / If it be drie, it schal propirli be clepid icche / And if it be caused by
20 moist, it schal be clepid scabbe / To þe cure herof þou schalt avoide salt meat,
salt fleume, þou schalt defie þe matere wiþ þis sirup / R̄, abetinhij, strong wine,
salt fleume, þou schalt defie þe matere wiþ þis sirup / R̄, abetinhij, and filth.
They are
contagious.
Dry scab is
called itch.
Treatment of
scabs.
R

in the Lat. Original. It is written by a later hand on the margin of If. 114, bk.: "*oylle off tarter. R, tarter off whyt wyn made in powder temperd w remygge as past, bynde yt in a clothe & put yt under embers, to yt be wolle brent; þan put yt in a ston pot with an hulle benethe. & þis ys oyлле off tarter.*"

Two prescriptions, which are not in the Lat. Original, are added on the same place:

"*aqua pro guta rosacha: R, lytargiri, argenty vivi ana ʒ iiij, acety alby li. i, beyll yt to conschoun*" in an erthen veselle, let stande & clere & keep yt."

"*R. salt ar. ʒ i, saltpeter ʒ i, salt comun ʒ i, clere water ʒ iiij, mixte togeder with y^e sexte part off a ʒ off camffer, let colle, put thes ij waters togeder.*"

¹ The following prescription, translated from the Lat. Original, is written by a later hand on the margin of leaf 115: "*Item gos gres & dom & diaculum, alle sycastryues it rectifyes.*"

² *smertyng*, Lat. *pruritus*.—*Prurigo*, emertung, Wr. W., 114. 8.—*emertung*, is probably a mistake for *smertung*, to O.E. *smeortan*. ³ MS. *putte*.

⁴ De propr. rer., lib. VII., cap. 62, Add. 27,944, fol. 99: "*Schabbe is corruptioun of þe skynne, & comeþ of corrupt humours þat bep bytvene felle and fleische, & hurtip & greueþ & defoulip þe body. For as Constantine seiþ, kynde puttip out eucl humours to þe vtter parties of þe body to clenise and to purge þe inner parties.*"

⁵ consumption.

abrotani, cuscue, fumus terre, ana m .j., & take xx. damascenes & xij. figis, & vj. datis, sene 3 j, thimi, epithimi .3 fl., sepe hem wel in li iij of water & li j. of vinegre til þei come to li j. & di. cole hem & do þerto iuys of fumi terre & sugur li .j. & ʒ, & make þerof 4 a sirup & herwiþ defie þe matere / & þan þou schalt purge him wiþ þese pelottes, R, aloes optimi, cortices mirabolani, citrini, ana .3 j stampe hem & tempere hem with iuys maad of fumi terre, til þei be picke as it were hony, & lete it drie til þer mai be maad gobetis 8

[1 lf. 116] þerof & maad þerof pelottis, & herof þou schalt ʒeue þe 1 weizte of ij. 3. at oonys, & þis medicyne mai be rehersed ofte. ¶ Also blood leting¹ is good þerfore, if opere particlis acordiþ þerfore // ¶ Also gotis whey is good þerfore, in which be leid mirabolani wiþ sugre, & ofte 12

R take, for þat clensiþ miche, & is maad in þis maner / In li .j of gotis whey leie 3 j. of mirabolani citrini powdrid an eue, on þe morowe heete hem & cole hem & do þerto 3 .j of sugre ro. // ¶ If it be drie scabbe, hoot watir is good for to baþe him ynne, in which is soden 16 fumi terre & enula, lappacij acuti, & in þe baþ anoynte him with oile of ro. & iuys of ache & vinegre, & herwith his bodi schal be wel frotid in þe baþ ouþer in a stewe // ¶ Also an oynement þat rasis

Treatment of dry scab.

An ointment made by Rasis.

R

ellebori, nigri costi, 3 .j., picis liquide 3 vj., olium violarum & aceti, & herof make an oynement / & anoynte herwiþ in his stewe & frote him wel, & aftir lete him be þerinne by an hour, & aftir baþe him in a decoccioun of bran & lappacij acuti, enule campane² & arthe- 24

de scabi humida.

R

[2 lf. 116, bk.] misie // ¶ If þe scabbe be moist / þan make an oynement of rasis / R, argenti viui extincti, ³ & in þis maner þou schalt sle⁴ it: leie it

eleborum nigrum.

in a peuter disch & spete þeron, & frote it wiþ mannes heeris, & do þerto: whit litarge, elleborum nigrum, alumen⁵ vetus, oleandrum ana, 28 grynde alle þese togidere & tempere hem with vinegre,⁶ & herwiþ al his bodi schal be anoyntid at euen, & at morowe he schal be stewid,⁷ and whanne he swetiþ his bodi schal be frotid wiþ vinegre // ¶ Also

² MS. compare.⁴ sle = slay. See p. 189, Note 6.⁵ alumen, on margin.⁶ The following passage omitted by the translator is written on the bottom of lf. 116, bk., by a later hand: "¶ *o*lio communi miscantur de q totum corpus unguatur in cero, mane intret stupiam et cum sudauer ffricet corpus cum usne et aceto, usne i. mosse off the oke."usne, Arab ouchna. See *Littre-Devic*.—"Usnea, a kind of green M which grows upon Humane Sculls that have been lying in the open Air some years, and which is used in Physick."—Phillips.⁷ he schal be stewid, Lat. intret stupham. See Skeat, *Etym. Dic* s. v. stew.

aȝen scabbe & icching, first lete þe pacient blood, & make him þis
 oynement / Rȝ, sulphuris viui & tīn¹ de sale & tartaro, grinde hem R
 wel togidere til it bicomē in þe maner of an oynement, & wiþ þis
 4 oynement anoynte þe pacient, & þis wole delyuere him fro icching //
 ¶ Also if þe pacient haue greet brennyng & greet icching, þanne
 anoynte al his bodi wiþ oile of ro. þat ben good, & lete him reste
 so .vij. daies // ¶ Also for þe same cause / Rȝ succus affodillorum & R
 8 distempere it wiþ whit hony & anoynte him herwith, whanne he
 goiþ out of his stewe; for þis oynement doiþ away filþe of þe skyn
 and clensiþ myche /

Of morphue² and impetigine³ //

12 **N**OW we han medycyns drawen of .ij. wellis & of manie [¶ 11. 117]
 maistris, þat is to wite: of Salerne, & of Costantyn, & ¶ vj. c.
 Platearij, & of Iohannes de sancto Paulo & of opere manie auctouris, The school of Salerno
 as of Ipocras, Galien, & Serpion, & Isaac, & Iohanne[s] Mesue, and the Arab physicians differ as to the names of the diseases.
 16 Auiēn / Hali þe abbot, & Rasis, & of opere manie auctouris / Alle
 þese auctouris speciali ȝeue it us, saue þei acorden not in names /
 5 Forwhi impetigo, serpigo & morphea ben seid in salerne diuers
 names, for þat men of salerne clepen albam & arabes clepen im-
 20 petigo morphea / & men of salerne clepen morpheam / men in
 arabie clepen it albarec /⁵ & þefore I wole in þis book teche þe

¹ MS. tīn, tantum. This prescription is neither in the prints nor in Add. 26,106, but preserved in Roy. MS. 12 C XIV, fol. 33 b.

² *morphue*. See p. 187, Note 2. N.E. morphew, Med. L. morphea, Fr. morphée, Ital. morfea, is probably the Latinized form of an Arab. past part. marfu, connected with marf, 'thin.' See *Lane Lex.*, p. 1132.

The derivation given by Tommas: *μωρφή*, is unsatisfactory. Phillips: "Morphew, a kind of white Scurf upon the Body, from the French Word *Mort-feu*, i. e. dead Fire; because it looks like the white Sparks that fall from a Brand extinguished."

³ De propr. rer., lib. VII., cap. 63, Add. 27,944, fol. 99: "And þis euēl hatte impetigo, for it lettīþ and greueþ þe skyn and þe fleisch, namliche with tikeling and icching. Also þis euēl hatte serpigo, as it were a crepinge euēl, for it crepiþ into þe skynne al aboute as it were a serpent oþir an addre, & infectiþ þe skynne and defouleþ it wiþ smale scales aftir crackinge and clawinge."

Lib. VII., cap. 65, fol. 100: "Morphea is speckes in þe skynne, and comþ of corrupcioun of mete and drinke, and what is lepre in þe fleische is morphea in þe skynne. Also som morphea is white & comþ of fleume, & som is blak & comþ of malencolia, & som is red & comþ of colera oþir of blood."

⁴⁻⁵ The passage is corrupt. Lat.: Nam serpigo, impetigo, morphea sumuntur aliter apud salernitanos aliter apud arabes. Quod enim salernitani vocant SURGERY.

Serpigo is an acidity of the skin.

Treatment:

[1 ff. 117, bk.]

Rk

Impetigo, a disease, where the skin gets white.

Morphea, a kind of leprosy confined to the skin.

Albaras.

Nota

[7 ff. 118]

Albaras is a local disease of the flesh and the skin.

difference of euery of hem, & after þat þe curis of hem / & I seie þat serpigo is a scharpnes of a mannes skyn, & it is clepid serpigo, for it passij fro place to place. þou schalt cure it wij gumme of cheritrees distemperid wij vinegre, ouþer gumme of 4 pluntre & anoynte wij buttir & turbentyne. & þis oynement is good þerfore / Take gres ¹ of a doke clene purid, ysopi humide, olium ro., ʒelow wex, terbentyne, mussilaginis *seminis citoniorum* ² ana, make of alle þese an oynement, & anoynte him þerwith amorowe, 8 & þanne waische him in watir þat þer hap leie þeron semen melonum & violet. & be he ofte hapid wij sich swete water. & good swete mete is good for hem þat engendrij good humouris //

¶ Impetigo is anoþer maner passioun, as whanne a mannys 1 skyn chaungij in oþer colour þan it schulde, & propirli into whit colour & wijpouten ony harmyng of þe skyn. & þer is no þing þeron þat harmej a man, saue oonly þe colour of þe skyn chaungij oþir þan it schulde be // ³

¶ Morphea is a passioun þat þe skyn is out of his propir colour & þe skyn is harmed þerbi. & morphea is a spice of lepre þat sitt in þe skyn; for riȝt as lepre sittij in þe fleisch, in þe same maner riȝt so morphea sittij in þe skyn. ⁴

¶ Albaras. ⁵ Not oonly þe skyn, saue þe fleisch is harmed þerbi / þis is þe difference of albaras & morphea / In morphea þe vertu of expulcion ⁶ is strong / & þe mater ⁷ þerof is but litil, & þerfore it is al putt into þe skyn / In albaras þe vertu of expulcion is but feble & 24 þe matere is corrupt, & þerfor it is boþe in þe fleisch & in þe skyn, & þer is but litil difference bitwixe albaras & lepre, saue albaras abidiþ alwei in oon place, & lepre goiþ into al þe bodi / In boþe þese causis it is nede for to awoide humouris þat ben in þe cause, ⁸ 28

serpiginem, arabes vocant alunda. Et impetigo apud arabes est morphea, et apud salernitanos aliter et aliter apud nos. Quod autem Salernitani vocant morpheam, arabes vocant albaras.

² *Citonia* = *Cydonia*, quince.

³ Lat. Add. 16,106, fol. 48 bk. : et non peccat ibi nisi color.

⁴ Not in the Lat. Origin.

⁵ *Albaras*, Arab. al-baras, leprosy. Compare *Avicenna*, lib. 4, fen. 7, tract. 3, cap. 9, and ff.

⁶ MS. *expulsif*. Lat. : virtus expulsiva.

⁷ *humouris* þat ben in þe cause. Lat. : Conueniunt in hoc quod omnis humoris indigent euacuatione peccantis. *N. E. Dict.* s. v. cause, q. b. gives references for *to be in cause* : to be to blame.—*Littre Dict.* (14th cent.) ils en sont en cause.—Dufr. gives several references for *in causa esse* : to be ill, from *Causa*, morbus.

- saue þat oon mote haue stronger medicyns þan þat oper. ¶ Impe-
 tigo muste haue abstynence fro þingis þat engendriþ fleume, & he
 muste haue a purgacioun for to purge fleume / Anoynte þe place
 4 wip oile of whete þat is maad in þis maner / Take whete & leie
 hitwixe two platis of iren hoot / & presse hem togidere & perof
 wole bicomme oile // ¶ Also in anoper maner / Take .ij. vessels of
 erþe, so þat þe moup of þe oon vessel go to þe moup of þe toþer
 8 vessel, & þat oon vessel schal stonde in þe erþe, & in þe vessel
 aboue þou schalt do þi whete, & þou schalt stoppe þe moup of þe
 vessel þat is aboue þat þe whete is ynne with a plate of bras ouþer
 of iren þat is bettere, ¹& þe plate schal be ful of smale holis. & [1 ff. 118, bk.]
 12 þan þe moup of þis pott schal be ioyned to þe moup of þe pott þat
 is in þe erþe with good lute, þat þere mowe noon eir out þerof. &
 þan make a fier aboute þe pott þat is aboue þe erþe, & þere wole
 distille oile into þe pott þat is bineþe in þe erþe, & wip þis oile þou
 16 schalt anoynte þe place ofte, & frote harde. & if þis suffise not,
 þanne þou schalt sette vpon þe place watir lechis ofte, for to do
 away þe fleumatik blood / If þis suffise not, leie þervpon a mun-
 dificatif of cantarides stampid wip whete, til þe place schyne², &
 20 þan cure it vp wip an oynment of ceruce / Frote him wip an oyn-
 ment maad of armoniac & with þe sournes of citri, & nitro is
 good þerfore //
- ¶ þe white morphu is curid wip purgacioun þat purgiþ roten
 24 fleume, & wip þis special medicyn / R̄, trifere minorum .3. .iiij.,
 turbit, pulueris pigre .3. .ij., colloquintide .3. .ij., make herof pelottis
 wip hony, & he schal take þerof .iiij. pelottis euery wike, & eueri
 dai bitwixe he schal take .3. .ij. of trifere minorum, & he mote
 28 abstayne him fro metis þat engendriþ ³fleume; & þe place shal be
 frotid in þe sunne wip an oynment of tapsia, & þe seed of raphani,
 rubie maioris / elleboro nigro & mustard, & distempere hem wip
 vinegre / Also frotting wip squillis is good þerfore //
- 32 ¶ þe blac morphe is curid wip ofte purging of malancoli, wip
 gotis whei, & wip epithimo, & opere medicyns þat purgiþ malan-
 colie, þat be forseid in allopucia; & his dietyng schal be moist, &
 he schal abstayne him fro metis þat engendriþ malancolie, & he
 36 schal be bapid ofte in swete watir, & he schal be anoyntid & frotid
 as it is aforseid //
- ¶ Albaras þat is whit is curid wip þe same þingis & with

Treatment of
Impetigo.Purge and
use an oint-
ment.

R̄

R̄
Oil of wheat
obtained by
distillation.

[1 ff. 118, bk.]

Treatment of
the whyt
Morphea.

R̄

[2 ff. 119]

Treatment of
the black
morphea.² til þe place schyne, donec locus excoarietur.

Treatment of white Albaras stronger medicyns þat ben aforseid in þe cure of þe white morphu, & miche castyng^t is good for hem, & þou schalt frote wel þe place with squillis in a stewe, & after þat spryng^e þeron poudre maad of tapsia, & staphisagre, & þe wombis of cantarides, & seed of eruce, & tordis of a culuere, & þou schalt anoynte him wiþ blood of a blac serpent, for þat is bi prop^rte good þerfore /

Black Albaras is incurable, but¹ if it be so þat it mowe be take awei wiþ alle rootis, it schal neuere be curid; saue þe colour of his skyn mai be amendid / R^y, aloxanti, þat is þe flour of þe wiþi,² mirram, feces of wijn brent, reed cley, & alyme, poudre alle þese, & herwiþ frote þe place til þe pacient fele prickyng^t & brennyng^t. þis wole deye þe skyn for 12 manie daies, & whanne þis failiþ reherse it aȝen.

// Of lepre and of þe domys of lepre³ //

¶ vij. c.
Leprosy arises from the corruption of the melancholic humours and affects the whole body.

[⁷ M. 120]

LEpra⁴ is a foul sijkn^es þat com^eþ of malancolie corrupt, ouþir of humouris þat ben brouȝt to þe forme of malancolye⁵ 16 corrupt. & it goiþ into al þe bodi, riȝt as a cancre is in oon lyme of a mannes bodi / For whanne malancolie multipli^eþ⁶, & a mannes guttis ben not strong^t for to putte it out, & þe weies bitwixe þe splene ben stoppid & þe poris of þe skyn closid, þan malancolious²⁰ blood wole rote wiþinne, & rotⁱþ complexiouns of þe lymes. & þe bigynnyng^t of þe mater myȝte be of blood ouþir of fleume, colre, ouþer of malancolie, neþeles whanne þe mater is fulfild⁷ it is malancolie corrupt. & þis is oon of the syknessis þat ben contagious / 24
¶ In þis place I wole sette curis of lepre þat ben profitable for a cirurgian to kunne, & also curis þat com^eþ ofte to a cirurgian handis /

² Lat. aloxantum, quod est flos salis. The translator read *salicis* for *salis*. ἀλόςανθον, ró, brine. Matth. Sylv.: "Alosantus i. flos salis et invenitur super petras nili fluminis."

³ Lat. de lepra et indiciis leprosi. The translator read *iudiciis*.

⁴ Add. 27,944, fol. 99 b.: "Lepra menslyre is an universal corrupcioun of membres & of humours." Four different kinds of Leprosy are distinguished, "1. the *Elaphantia*; 2. the *Tiria* or *Serpentina*, and haþ þat name of an addre þat hatte tyrus, for as an addre leneth liȝtliche his skynne and is skaȝy, so he þat hath þis maner lepra is ofte i-strept and i-hulde, & ful of skales; 3. *alopicia* & *vulpina* forisich; 4. *leonina*, it fretiþ as a lyon & destroyeþ all þe membres."

⁵ & inserted.

⁶ multipli^eþ, Lat. multiplicatur.—Multiplye, fructificare, multiplicare.—Cathol. Angl., p. 246.

Men þat ben leprous,¹ in þe bigynnyng her heeris of her heed falliþ awei, & þe heeris of her browis, & þe heeris of her berd; & her forheed bicometh reed & as it were schynyng. ¶ Also in summe þe face wexiþ reed & swellþ & is sumwhat ledi, & principally aboute [þe nose]² // ¶ Also her vois is rowȝ ouȝer sumtyme it is wondirly sharp, & þe whit of her ȝen bicometh al dork, & þe heeris goon awei of her browis / Her noseþrillis bicometh smal, ouȝer wondirly greet, & her noseþrillis ben streit for to drawe yn wijnd, & her nailis bicometh ledi / Also her breeþ wole stynke & her sotes / Also her pisce wole be streit³ & þei schulen haue greet snesyng / Also þei wilneþ myche to comne⁴ wiþ wommen / Also þei schulen be heuy, & if her skyn be in þe coold eir, it wole bicomē as it were þe skyn of a gander þat his feperis weren pilið [¶ 17. 120, bk.] away / Also þese ben priuy þingis: if þou prickist his leg bihynde, he ne schal not fele it / & if þou waisschist his lymes in watir, anon riȝt it wole drie yn // Also þese signes ben comoun: his ȝen wolen bicomē rounde, & þer wolen wexe pustulis in his tunge, & her nailis wolen bicomē greet, & þer wolen wexe scabbis aboute-forþ. And þe fleisch þat schulde be bitwixe þe þombe & þe nexte ȝyngir þerto schal be wastid away, & if þou prickist him in þe hele he schal not fele it, & if he be lete blood, her blood wole be sharpe & as it were ful of grauel. & if þou waisschist her blood, in þe botme þerof wole leue as it were grauel. & þis sijkes aftir þe tyme þat it is confemed is incurable, saue in þe firste bigynnyng it mai be curid wel //

¶ þe cure of lepre is not sett in þis book, for þis book is of cirurgie, saþ þer ben in þis solempne medicyns & apreued for to kepe a man, þat þei schulen not wexe, & for to make it priuy, & canterijs þerfore / For alle þese þingis falliþ for a cirurgian / þis þou schalt knowe: if þe siknes be strong, it is hard for to do ony medicyne þerto; fforwhi, if þe sijkes be strong, þanne he muste haue stronge medicyns, & þat were greet perel, & also þe medicyn muste be ofte rehersed.⁷ Saue þou schalt chese a liȝt medicyn þat

Signs of Leprosy: the hair falls off,

the face gets red and swollen, the voice gets hoarse,

the nostrils are disfigured,

the breath is foetid,

the legs lose their feeling,

pustules grow on the tongue,

the blood is sharp and leaves a sediment like sand.

Treatment of Leprosy.

[¶ 17. 121]

Strong medicines are dangerous.

¹ The symptoms of leprosy are similarly described by Avicenna, lib. IV., fen. 3, tract. 2, cap. 2.

² þe nose, wanting.

³ her pisce wole be streit, Lat. item accidit eis strictura pectoris.

⁴ comne for comune.

⁷ Add. 26,106, fol. 49 b.: Scias quod in egritudinibus fortibus si fuerint cronice fortes non competunt medicine, nam licet propter egritudinis fortitudinem medicina sit nocua tamen dari non debet, quia medicinam oportet sepius iterari.

Light purg-
ing medi-
cines.

[^a 12. 121, bk.]

Give the pa-
tient nourish-
ing food.

A preparation
made from
the flesh of a
black snake

is given, until
the patient
becomes
giddy.
Then let him
lie down and
give a re-
viving medi-
cine in case
of collapse.

wole falle for to purge þe humour liztli // A medicyn maad of gotis whey wiþ epithimo, þis medicyn is riȝt & good, for it purȝiþ malancolie lital & lital, & also a man schal not be greued þerebi // Pelottis þat be maad of epithimo þat ben aforseid in þe tretijs of 4 allopucia ben good herfore, for þin entent schal be oonly for to purge malancolie þat is corrupt, & amende his complexioun wiþ good dietyng. Blood letyng is not good þerfore, but if þe cauce come miche of blood / If his breeþ be streit, þanne it comeþ of þe 8 veyne þat goiþ to þe herte / Sumtyme it is in þe veyne of þe nose¹ / þou schalt ȝeue to men þat ben drie lepre & comeþ myche of colre, þou schalt ȝeue him gotis whey ofte for to drynke, & ²þou schalt, in as miche as þou miȝt, make his complexioun moist & baþe him in 1 tempere baþ & lete him swete þerinne; & þan þou schalt anoynte him wiþ oile of violet & oile of cucurbita, & þou schalt ȝeue him good metis þat engendriþ good blood, & hese metis & hise drinkis schulen be in tempere heete, not to hoot ne to coold // ¶ Summen 1 curiþ hem wiþ þe fleisch of a blac eddre³ þat ben in drie lond & among stones, & þan þei kутten away þe heed & þe tail of þe eddre & doiþ awei þe guttis wiþinne / & þan þei doon hem in⁴ a vessel of erpe wiþ a lital peper & galyngale & salt & vinegre & watir & oile, 20 & so þei seþe þe eddre til al þe fleisch þerof be dissolued. þanne þe broþ herof is ȝeuen to drynke, & þe fleisch for to ete til þe pacient haue scotomiam⁵ & al his bodi to-swolle / Whanne his bodi is to-swolle & he haþ had scotomiam, þan leie him in a bed & lete 24 him ligge; & if þere falle ony þing to him as syncopis, ouper greet cooldnes of hise lymes wiþoutforþ, or if his herte quake, þan ȝeue

¹ Incorrect translation. Add. 26,106, fol. 49 b: "Flebotomia namque non convenit nisi quum scis lepram esse valde sanguineam cum hanelitus strictura tunc fit de uena cordis et de duabus guides timendo suffocationem: alia fit de venis nasi propter palliandum faciei colorem."

³ De propr. rer., *ibid.* fol. 100: "To hele opir to hide lepra as plato seiþ, best is a rede adder wiþ a while wombe; ȝif þe venym is awaye & þe tail & þe heed i-smyle of, þanne þe body i-sode in leke, ȝif it is ofte i-take & i-ete; in þe same wise wyne in þe whiche it rotieþ, ȝif þe patient drinke ofte þerof, and þis helpiþ in many iueles, as he telleþ of a blind mannes wiþ þat wolde slee hers housbonde, and ȝaf him an addre with garlek in stede of an ele, þat it myȝte sle hym, & he et it, and aftir þat by moche swete he recovered & had his siȝt goode & clere." The flesh of vipers is commended by Galen for the treatment of elephantiasis. Lib. II., *Simpl. de carne viperæ*.

⁴ in, in margin.

⁵ *scotomia*, *σκότῶμα*, *αρός*, *ró*, dizziness. Vigo Interpret.: "They shoulde scotoma, and it is a disease, when darckenes ryseth before the eyes, and thinges seme to go rounde about."

him tiriaca maior wip a litil musco ouper hoot wijn // In pis maner
 al his ¹fleisch wole pile & alle hise heeris wolen falle awei & newe [¹ If. 122]
 heeris wolen come vp azen / & pis medicyne schal be rehersed so
 4 ofte, & kepid wip dietyngt til he be perfitli hool / Forwhi manie
 men moun be delyuerid of manye greet sicknessis, if her leche is
 kunynge & diligent aboute hem, & bi negligence & defaute of
 help manie men ben perischid / Cauterijs herfore pou schalt fynde
 8 ynowe in þe chapiter of cauterijs, & oynementis þat makip clene &
 soudip, all þese þingis pou schalt fynde in þe antidotarie.

A skilful
 physician
 often cures,
 where a neg-
 ligent one
 fails.

¶ Of waastyng off membris and bicommen smal /

12 **A** Mannes lyme bicommeþ smal wip greet streynyngt of ligaturis ¶ ¶ vñij. 60/
 þat takip awei þe norischyngt of þe lyme, or of long akyngt Limbs be-
 come swollen
 after a
 streight
 ligature,
 they become
 larger by
 congestion.
 of ioynnt þat enfeblip al þe lyme / þese þingis makip a mannes lymes
 to bicomme smal // ¶ Also a mannes lymes bicommeþ greet oper þan
 þei schulde be,² whanne veynes ben feble & matere fallip þerto &
 16 þe vertu of soudyng failip, & in pis maner þe lyme swellip, & þe
 mater is fleumatik, & for defaute of heete it turneþ not into
 quitture ³saue it abidiþ in þe lyme & swellip þe lyme / [³ If. 122, bk.]
 ¶ A lyme þat is bicomme smal, in pis maner pou schalt make it
 20 greet: if þere be ony þing to take awei þerof as akyngt ouper ony
 stricture, ouper ony byndyngt, þan remeue away þat first in þe
 manere as it schal be seid in þe chapiter of ioyntis. Whanne þe
 akyngt is doon awei, þanne waische þe lyme wip a decoccioun of
 24 malowis & violet & rotis of bismalue in watir, saue his lyme schal
 be in þe water no lenger þan it bigyzneþ for to bicomme reed & sum-
 what to swelle, & be war þat his lyme be not so longe in þe water
 til þat he swete, & þan drie his lyme wip a lynnen cloop & frote it
 28 a litil wip þin hond, & þanne take a litil smal zerde & bete þe lyme
 þerwip til pou drawe blood þerto, & make a plastre þerto in pis
 maner. R̄y, picis naualis, picis grece, resine albe ana, & melte alle
 þese in a þanne. & whanne þei ben molten cole hem þoruþ a cloop
 32 into coold water, & þanne anoynte þin hondis with oile & þan take
 it vp of þe watir & tempere it togidere & make þerof gobetis &
 kepe hem for þin vsse⁴, herof pou schalt plane vpon ⁵a leþer, & [⁵ If. 123]
 leie it to þe lyme þat is forseid, & so lete it ligge adai, & aneuen

To restore a
 wasting limb
 remove the
 cause of the
 disease,

apply a wash

and an adhe-
 sive plaster.
 R̄

² Lat. ingrossatur etiam membrum aliquod ultra debitum. Compare þe colour . . . chaungip opir þan il schulde be, p. 194, Note 3.

⁴ vsse.

There is no perfect cure in case of an old dislocation.

If the swelling of a limb is caused by the phlegm,

use a purging medicine,

a bandage and compresses, soaked in lye,

R

[1 ff. 123, bk.]

or in a solution of saltpetre,

R

or bruise lily-leaves, and apply them.

If the swelling arises from melancholic blood, purge and use a softening ointment.

[1 ff. 124]

drawe it away, & so lete þe lyme be til amorowe, & þanne rehearse þe waischinge þat is forseid & þe froting' & þe beting'. þis wipoute ony drede wole bringe [þe lyme] azen to his greetnes as it schulde be, but if þe lyme be out of ioynct & haue be longe tyme, þan it wole be hard, þan it is yuel to make þe lyme greet azen as it schulde. & þouȝ it mowe not be maad greet as it schulde be, neþeles bi þis maner it may be myche amendid //

¶ If a mannes lyme is gretter þan it schulde be, if þe cause þerof be of fleume þat þou miȝt knowe bi neischenes of þe lyme, for if þou priste yn þi fyngir, þer wol leue a pitt þerafter, it may be brouȝt azen to greetnes þat it schulde be, if it be purgid ofte wip a medicyn þat is clepid *trociscus de turbit* þat is aforseid, & þe pacient schal kepe him fro alle metis þat engendriþ fleume, & he schal be war of greet replecioun of metis & drinkis, & þan þou schalt cure him wip medicyns þat schulen be seid in þe chapiter of apostemes of fleume / Take lye maad ¹ of aischis of wijn or of an ook, & leie þeron a double linnen cloþ & wete it wel, & þerwip folde þe lyme, & þan streyne þe lyme wip a boond, & euery dai þou schalt wete it .ij. sipsis in þat lie & bynde so his lyme, & in þis maner his lyme schal drie. Oþer in þis maner / Take sal nitre & distempere it wip watir, & þanne take a sponge þat it be so myche þat it mowe hile al þe lyme & þan lete þe sponge drie so þerupon, & þan wete þe sponge azen & leie it on þe lyme azen, & lete it drie azen & alwei bynde wel þe lyme; & þis þou must do manye sipsis. Or take þe leues of lillie celestie & grynde hem wel and þanne leye it vpon þe lyme, & þanne bynde wel þe lyme, & in þis maner þe matere wole waaste away & þe lyme wole bicomme smal as it schulde / If it so be þat þis greetnes come of malancolious blood or of greet fleume, make him a purgacioun wip gotis whey & epithimo, or anopir competent medicyn. & first þou schalt make þe lyme neische wip oile of lillie, or wip oon of þe oynementis þat ben mollificatiuis þat schulen be seid in þe antidotarie, þanne go to þe cure þat is forseid. Whanne þe swellyng' of þe lyme is doon aweie, if it be in hond or in arme, þat falliþ ofte tyme, or in þe foot & in þe leggis & in þe knee, þanne þou schalt make bitwixe þe fyngis cauterijs þat ben clepid *cauterium cultellare*, as þou schalt fynde in þe chapitre of cauterijs // þe greetnes of a mannes foot þou schalt cure as it schal be seid in elephancia as it is conteyned in his propre chapitre /

pe firste chapter of engendering of humours & pe
kindis of hem, & conteyneþ .xviiij. chapters /

- E**Veri enpostym is engendrid of .iiij. humouris, oupir of water, or of wijnd. & it is impossible for a cirurgian for to kune a cure, but if he knowe pe cause perof, & perfore me pouzte þat it was necessarie for to make a propre chapitre of pe generacioun of humouris¹ & alle pe propurtees perof, þat pe redere of þis book mai knowe pe causis of apostyms & pe curis perof & metis & drinkis þat ben necessarie in þis cause for norischin² & augmentin² of pe lymes & for to engendre natural heete // Whanne pe mete fallip into a mannes stomac & þou haddist anothamie perof, þan in pe stomak pe mete is soden, & þan fro pe stomak it goip into pe guttis, & perof þou haddist anothamiam, & þan pe mete goip anoon to pe gutt þat is clepid orobum or pe sak. Veynes þat ben clepid miseraice & þere ben manie maners perof as it is forseid, & þei ben inaad fast wip pe botme of pe stomac & wip pe gutt þat is clepid duodeno, & wip pe smal gutt, & wip pe gutt þat is clepid ieunium as it is forseid, & wip þese veynes bigynneþ pe .ij. digestioun & berip a veyne þat is clepid kilus³ to pe lyuer, & þat veyne goip to pe stomac fro pe lyuer. & pe .iiij. humouris of .iiij. substauncis ben engendrid in þis place of digestioun⁴ / For þere is engendrid þere a maner spumous substaunce whanne pe digestioun failip heete; & þere engendriþ anoþer partie þat is sutil as it were wijn; & pe greet substaunce goip adoun & styunkiþ. If þere be engendrid greet fleume⁵ & miche, þat is cause for it quenchip pe hete of pe stomac / Also in pe same placis is engendrid a subtil substaunce, & scharp hete worchip þeron & gaderip him hete & scharpnes, & þis is clepid collera rubea; & if humouris wexip to miche, it wole achaupe pe lyuer / & causis of engendring of colre ben hote metis & drinkis &

pe .2. doctrine.

¶ 1^o. 1^o. Impostema ingendred of pe .iiij. humora.

A disease can only be cured if the cause is known.

[¶ 1^o. 124. bk.]

The first digestion.

The food is sodden in the stomach, and passes through the guta.

Incipit ij dys^o

The mesarale veins carry the chylo to the liver.

nota

The four humours are produced in the liver.

1. Phlegm, [¶ 1^o. 125]

2. the Choleric humour,

¹ De propr. rer., lib. IV., cap. 6, Add. 27,944, fol. 33: "Pis four humores bep i-bred in þis manere: whan mete is i-fonge in pe place of seeping, þat is pe stomak, first pe more sotil partie & fletinge perof, þat phisicians clepiþ pthismaria, þat is i-draue þe certeyn veynes to pe lyuore, & þerby pe worching of kinde hete it is i-chaungid into pe four humores; þe bredinge of hem bigynneþ in pe lyuer, but it endiþ þere atte fulle."

² The translator mistook *kilus* for the name of the Vein, perhaps in reference to the *Vena cava*, called *Vena chillis* by the translators of Arab. medical works, from *كحل*.

⁴ Lat.: Ita in hepate ex chylo veniente a stomacho quatuor humores substantie generantur.

3. Blood, traueile & fastyng¹ & stronge saucis // ¶ Also þer is a clene staunce engendrid þat kyndeli hete worchip þeron, & þat is b & þe matere herof is good metis & drynkis þat ben swete // ¶ þer is engendrid anoper substaunce þat is sumwhat stynkyng² clepid malancoli & is engendrid in .ij. maners: oon maner is þ greet hete þat is brennyng³ & of greet cooldnes þat wexiþ ha & þe cause herof ben grete metis,² & metis þat engendriþ malancoli. And þes .iiij. humours Sanguis, Colera, fleumtica & Malancoli euery of hem hap diuers qualitees, for blood is hoot & moist, fle cold & moost, Colre hoot & drie, Malancoli cold & drie // ¶ [¶ 17. 125, bk.] of þese humours³ summe ben kindeli & summe ben vnkyndel perfore in þis chapitre we wolen make mencion of alle, ff gendring⁴ of þese humours enpostyms ben engendrid //
- Phlegm is either natural or unnatural. The natural Phlegm quietes a man's nerves. It is chiefly in the back of the head and in the spine.
- ¶ Of fleume þere ben ij. kyndis, oon is natural & þe innatural / Natural fleume is coold & moist & whit, & goiþ what to swetnes,⁴ of which lordschipe⁵ þer folowip a litil wil for to comoun wiþ wymmen, & þe palesie, & [he is]⁶ pesible loueþ wel for to haue reste⁷ / Saue þe moost part of fleume a mannes brayn, & in hise lungis, & in his stomac, & in hise g & in hise ioynctes. And þe lordschip of fleume is in þe hy part of a mannes heed, & in þe rigbonys. & fleume doiþ þre litis, þe .j. is þis: suntyme a mannes kynde failiþ blood, & kinde worchip vpon fleume & makip blood, & of opere humouri mai not be do / þe ij. profit of fleume is þis: for fleume goiþ blood for to norische diuers lymes / þe .iiij. profit of fleume is þat it acoldiþ þe ioynctis & makip hem moist, for ellis in meuyng þei schulden wexe drie / Of fleume þat is innatural .iiij. maners⁸ as: fleume dulce, fleuma acotosum, fleuma ponti fleuma dulce. fleuma salsum // ¶ fleuma dulce is in .ij. maners. þe firste n

¹ of greet cooldness þat wexiþ hard. Lat. ex frigidityte ingrossante.

² grete metis, Lat. cibi grossi.

³ swetnes, a mistake for whitnes. Lat. ad paucam tendens albed De propr. rer., lib. IV., cap. 9, *ibid.* fol. 35: "Kyndeliche fleume is coo moist, & white in colour, and fletinge in substaunce, a litcheat swete in sa opir al werisch & vnsauoury."

⁴ of which lordshipe, Lat. de cuius dominio.

⁵ he is, wanting.

⁶ *Ibid.*, fol. 35 bk.: "a verray fleumatik man is in þe body lustles, he slooz, dul of wit & of pouzt forzetleful, neissche of fleissche and quauy, bi colour, whitliche in face, ferdeful of herte, ful of spittinge snyuel & rok ful of slouth & of slepinge, & of a litil appetite & of litil þurst."

⁷ a bloo, MS. blood.

is þis: as whanne fleume is medlid wip blood, or as whanne hete
worship wip fleume to turne it into blood // ¶ **fleuma acetosum** fleuma
acetosum.
is seid in .ij. maners / as whanne ebullitium¹ comeþ to fleume dulce
4 & makip him to rote, & it [is] herto as it bifallip in opere pingis
þat ben swete, as to swete winis whanne sournes comeþ þeron it
bicometh coold, & in þe same manere fleuma acetosum makip fleuma
dulce coold // ¶ **fleuma salsum** is moost drier of alle, & þis is fleuma
salsum.
8 whanne þer is ony part of colre medlid wip fleume, þan it is
clepid fleuma salsum, for þe hete of þe colre makip it salt / ¶ **fleuma**
vitreum was liquide fleuma, & wip cooldnes it is congiled, or sum fleuma
vitreum.
partie of malancolie is medlid & congiled it hard // ¶ **Colre sum**
12 is natural & sum is innatural / Natural is list & scharp & reed in
colour &² in substance, & þe more hoot þat it is þe more reednes
it makip / þanne vertues of colre ben þese / A colerik man schal
haue hasti entendement & sotil³ of witt, & hardi & hasti pouȝt, & [³ ff. 126, bk.]
16 hasti answeere, & listly meued to wrappe⁴ / Of colre innatural ben .v.
maners, as citrina, [vitellina]⁵, adusta, prassina & eruginosa / **Colera**
citrina is medlid wip subtil fleume / **Colera vitellina**⁶ is medlid Colera
innatura is.
Colera
citrina.
Colera
vitellina.
Colera
adusta.
20 wip greet fleume / **Colera adusta** is in .ij. maners; oon is þis, þat
it is to miche brent in⁷ þe lyuer; þan wip þis brennyng þe subtil
partie departip fro þe grete parties, & in þis maner it takip a spice
of malancoly // ¶ In anoþer manere, partijs of malancoli þat ben
brent, [ben]⁸ medlid þerwip // ¶ And þer is iij. maner of colre
24 adust, & is whanne his blood is adust *id est* brent as it schal be seid
here after // ¶ þer is anoþer maner of colre þat is clepid **prassina**,⁹ Colera
prassina.
Colera
eruginosa.
Galion.
þat is swiþe bitter // ¶ **Eruginosa** is lijk þe rust of copur, & þis
maner of colre is miche freting & scharp, & G. seiþ þat þis maner
28 colre is engendrid of hoot metis & scharpe as oynouns, garlek,
mustard, & opere mo // ¶ Of malancoli þer ben .ij. maners—as Malancoli.
The natural
Melancholy.
malancoli natural & malancoli innatural / Malancoli þat is natural

¹ *ebullitium*, Lat. *ebullitio*.² MS. *colour*, erroneously inserted.⁴ De propr. rer., lib. IV., cap. 10, Add. 27,944, fol. 36: "And so colerik men beþ generalliche wrappeful, hardy, vnmeke, list, vnstable, inpetuous; in body long, skelendre & lene; in colour brown, in eer blak and cripe, hard and stiff; in touche hoot, in puls strong & swift."⁵ *vitellina*, wanting.⁶ *colera vitellina*, called *yellow colera*, in De propr. rer. *ibid*.⁷ MS. & for *in*.⁸ *ben*, wanting.⁹ De propr. rer., *ibid*. fol. 35 b.: "þe þridde maner of colera hatte *prassina*, & is grene of colour and bitter scharp as an herbe þat hatte *prassium*, & *marubium*, & *porrus* in latyn."

[^o 11. 127] haþ þese signis / þe .j. is as it were fecis of blood,¹ & her colour is as it were ledi & blac, & her bodi schal be leene & drie, & þei schulen haue good appetit for to ete, & þei schulen haue good mynde for to kepe þingis in her pouzt, & þei schulen be dredeful & ful of enuye & gile & sorowe & coueitous / Malancolie innatural comeþ of humours brent & corrupt. Of euery of þese humours ben engendrid diuers maners of enpostyms / & euery maner postyme haþ diuers cure as it schal be seid here-after. 8

The un-
natural
Melancholy.

A general word of empostyms /

¶ 4. ^o. **A** Postyme haþ manie diuers names of diuers men, for lewid cirurgians³ seien, þat þer is noon apostym but þat, þat makip quytture / Saue I seie, & alle auctouris seien þat eueri swellyng is a lyme, whepir it be greet or smal, it schal be clepid apostym / For .A. seip: litil swellyngis schule be clepid litil apostyms, & grete swellyngis schulen be clepid grete apostyms / þerfore apostym is seid swellyng in lymes, ouþir inflatioun⁴ þat chaungip þe lyme of þan it schulde be; & þe mater herof comeþ of manie diuers þingis; ouþer it comeþ of humouris, or of watir, ⁵or of wijnd / If it comeþ of humouris, þan it comeþ of blood, ouþer of fleume, or of colre, or of malancolie // Also enpostyms þat cometh of humours: summe comeþ of natural humours, & summe of innatural; & summe of sengle humours, & summe of humouris medlid togidere / And summe enpostyms cometh of causis wipinneforþ, & summe of causis withoutforþ / þe causis wipoutforþ is falling ouþer smiting, or of a wounde, or chaunging of eir / Of þe causis wipinneforþ: as of wickidnes of humours, or to ful of humouris, or to ful of water, or of wijnd / or whanne a man is hurt wipoutforþ: or wip greet hete þat brenneþ, or wip greet cooldnes of eir þat constreineþ, or of greet drienes þat constreineþ, for alle þese causis humouris gaderip togidere & makip enpostyms // Also if a man falle vpon a stoon or vpon an hard þing, or if a man be smite wip a stoon or wip a staf, or þoruþ prickyng of a venimous beest: alle þese þingis moun engendre venimous⁶ enpostyms / In þis maner þou schalt knowe

Any swelling
in a limbe is
called Apostema.
Ankers.

It arises from
the humours,
[^o 11. 127, bk.]
or from water
or wind in the
body.

The exciting
cause is either
external or
internal.

[^o 11. 128]

¹ De propr. rer., *ibid.* fol. 36: "þe kyndeliche malencolie is coole and drye, þat is i-bred in blood as drastes in wyne."

³ lewid cirurgians, Lat. rurales cyrurgici.

⁴ inflatioun, Lat. inflatio, O.Fr. inflacion. *Vigo* l. c. "Inflatus, Puffed vp, swellyng."

⁶ a venimous, cancelled.

diuers enpostyms of what^r humouris þei comeþ / If superfluite of blood drawe to a lyme, as is clepid flegmon,¹ & þes ben þe signes þerof: þe place wole be reed for lijknes of blood, akyng for þe greet replecioun þerof, beting² for þe greet depnes of mater, or for greet akyng / He may haue greuaunce of a feuer³ / If þe blood be þinne in substaunce & hoot in qualite, þan it makip herisipulam. & þis is þe signe þerof, þat in þe hizest place þerof, it wole be moost reed and hoot; & if þou leist þi fyngir þeron, & whanne þou remeuyst þi fyngir, þe skyn wole be whit þere þi fyngir was, & anon it wole bicomme reed agen, for þe mater þerof is subtil, & þe pacient hap greet brennyng þerof & akyng // Blood in his owne substaunce is more gretter & makip more hete, & makip apostym, þat is clepid carbunculus / þis enpostym comeþ to a man whanne he hap haboundance of greet blood, & þerfor whanne he is replete of mete, he schulde baþe him or traueile him-silf, þat þe blood miȝte falle out, & for his greetnes & hardnes it mai not be⁴ resolved with hete, & þanne it leueþ in þe skyn & makip apostym.⁵ þe signes herof ben þes: þe enpostym is hard for þe þiknes of blood, & þe colour þerof is swart reed for þe greet hete, & þe greet heete⁶ herof makip a man sumtime to haue a feuer þerwip; & sumtyme it makip a man to haue sincopin,⁷ & þis is speciali whanne þe matere is brent, & in þis maner þe matere þerof is turned into venym /

Superfluity of blood causes flegmon.
Symptoms.

Poverty of blood causes herisipulam.
Symptoms.

Fullness of blood causes carbunculus.

Symptoms.

¹ Halle. Table, p. 84. "φλεγμων, id est inflammatio uel collectio, αρω του φλεγμου, hoc est a sanguine dicta, written moste commonly hither vnto (with muche rudenes) *Flegmon*, is properly a symple tumore (as Galen sayeth) and an affecte of the fleshie partes, comming of a greater fluxe of bloude then they nede or can naturally susteyne."

² beting, Lat. pulsatio. See *N. E. Dict.*, s. v. beat, 13.

³ De propr. rer., lib. VII., cap. 59, Add. 27,944, fol. 97 b.: "And somtyme it comeþ of ventosite & of wind, & hatte tubo; somtyme of a symple humour, as of blood, and hatte flegmon; þe tokenes þerof beþ: rede rednes comeþ of þe colour of blood, hardenesse comeþ of multitude of matiere & of hete þat wastip watry matiere, quappinge & lepinge of ventosite & fumosite, schuftyng & puttinge, sore ache of þe strecching of þe place; hete comeþ of hote matiere, & swellinge comeþ of multitude of matiere."

⁴ 26, 106, fol. 52 b.: hoc apostema fit cum homo habundat sanguine grosso, et balneatur post ciborum repletionem aut laborat, ita quod sanguis ad extrema movetur et propter suam grossitiam et duritiem non potest a calore resolui remanens in cuti facit apostema.

⁵ heete, in margin.

⁷ Halle. Table, p. 122. "Syncope. Συκοπη, id est animi deliquium, uel præseps uirium lapsus, that is the defecte of the mynde, or a sodeine slyding away of the strengthe of the body, and commonly called swooundynge."

^a MS. by.

^b Lat. pulsus i. saltus.

^c MS. ofte.

Natural
colre
causes Ery-
sipelas.

Natural colre makip herisipulam,¹ & þe signe þerof is hardnes for þe greet drieness of colre. & þe heed of þe enpostym is schape as it were a pyne, for þe grece þat it hap.² & þe colour þerof is reed medlid wiþ þelow //

4

Phlegm
causes
vdimia.
(oedema).

An enpostym þat comep of fleume, is clepid vdimia³ or zima,⁴ & is a neisch enpostym, & þe colour þerof is sumwhat whizt. & if þou pressist in þi fyngir, þer wole leue þere a pitt for þe greet neischenes; & whanne þi fyngir is aweie, it wole arise vp aȝen. 8 þis enpostym is wiþout akyng, saue it makip a greuance /

Natural
malanco-
li causes
Sclerosis.

[* If. 129]

A watery
apostema.

¶ Natural malanco-
li makip an hard enpostym, & is clepid Sclir-
rosis.⁵ & þe signe þerof is hardnes, & þe colour þerof is as þe
colour of malancolie ledi or blac /

13

Enpostym þat comep of blood & watir medlid togidere. þis is
þe signe þerof: if þou settist þeron þi .ij. fyngiris of þi .ij. hondis,
& first pressist þat oon fyngir & þanne þat oþer, þou schalt fele þe
watri mater remeue fro þat oon fyngir to þat oþer //

16

These are
the simple
Apostemas.

¶ þese ben þe differencis of apostyms þat ben symple, þat
comep of oon matere at oonis; & þese ensaumplis ben schewid
tofor, for þou schalt þe bettir knowe enpostyms þat comep of
double matere //

20

Apostemas
arising from
more than
one cause:
Apostema
flegmonides
and
herisipilades

¶ þer comep an empostym of blood & colre; & if þe more
partie be of blood, þan þe enpostym schal be clepid flegmonides;
& if þe more partie þerof be of colre, þanne he schal be clepid
herisipilades. & þe signes herof þou schalt knowe bi þe signes of²⁴

¹ De propr. rer., *ibid.*: "*herisipila, þat is holy fure per antifrastim, þat is contrarie spekinge.*"

² Lat. propter igneitatē ipsius.

³ *vdimia, οἰδημα*, tumour.—Vigo, *Chirurgery*. The Interpretation: "Un-
dimia is a barbarouse terme, in greke it is called oedema, in latin tumor.
For it is softe swellynge wythout payne."

⁴ *Zima*. Sinonoma Barth, "*Zima est apostema flancorum molle sine dolore.*" From *ζίμα*, that which is boiled, decoction. De propr. rer., *ibid.*: "*In þe same manere aposteme comep of fleume, and hatte zimia oþur palus; for riȝt as in mures and in mareys is moche superfluyte of slyme & of woe, so in þis posteme is moche superfluyte; and if þou þurstist þy fyngre þer oppon, hit dyueþ inne, for þe rennyng matiere wiþdrawiþ & lettþ þe vingre entre, & þanne in þe myddel is a putte as hit were þe bore of an hole; & whanne þe fingre is aweye, þe matiere comep aȝen & fillþ al þe place.*"

⁵ Add. 16,106, fol. 53: *apostema quod vocatur scliros ab aliis sephiros vel sclirosis. Halle. Table*, p. 114. "*Scirrhus Σκίρρος καὶ σκληρότης*, id est durities, writen of old *Sclirosis*, is (as I gat her of Galen in diuers places) a tumore against nature, and an affects of harde and thicke partes."

þe symple apostyms // ¶ Also blood & fleume natural [ben]¹ medlid are caused by the blood and choler. togidere, & makip an enpostym þat is vdimia. & þe signe herof [is]² þat þe heed of þis enpostym is reed, & þat opere wole he
 4 whit³ / ¶ Also blood is medlid wip greet fleume & malancolie, & engendriþ glandulas & Scrophulas.⁴ ¶ Colre medlid with fleume
 6 makip fleume rennyng, & makip þat fleume goip wip him into [¶ If. 129, bk.] ioynctis. & herof þou schalt haue a pleyner teching in þe chapitre
 8 of ioinctes. ¶ Also greet fleume is medlid with malancoli, & þerof comeþ glandula & Scrophule / Also malancolie & blood, colre & fleume ben medlid alle togidere & makip an enpostym þat is clepid
 12 antrax; & þe malice þerof is diuers after euery humour. Saue if Glandula & Scrophule.
 13 blood & colre be feruent togidere & malancolie be malicious, þan þere fallip manie harde þingis þerto, as quaking of þe herte, & Antrax is caused by Melancholy, Blood Choler and Phlegm.
 sincopis, & out of hise wittis, & sumtyme deþ. & þe signes herof ben greet hardnes of þe enpostym, & þe schap þerof as it were a Symptoms of Anthrax.
 16 pyn, & greet akyng, & sumtyme he schal not fele it. And þerfore .G. seiþ: hote apostyms, if þei be not felid, ben incurable. & Galion.
 veynes þat ben þeron wolen be of diuers colouris, & vpon þe enpostym þere wole be as it were a litil bladdre,⁵ & þe colour þerof
 20 wole be as aischis, & it semeþ þat it is drawe ynward wip a þreed.⁷
 & þis enpostym is seid contagious.

Of humouris þat ben [in]⁸ natural, þese þingis folowip þerof / Of fleume þat is corrupt cometh Bicia & testudines / Of malancolie
 24 comeþ scrophule & glandule, as it is aforseid. & of alle þese þou schalt haue propre chapitris / Of colre þat is brent & of opere
 humouris þat ben brent & corrupt þere comeþ manie pustulis, & Bicia & testudines caused by corrupt Phlegm.
 summe þerof ben ful malicious after þe malice of þe matere / Herof Diseases arising from corruption of the humours:
 28 comeþ ignis persicus, miliaris, formica, herpes, herpes estiomenus.

¹ ben, wanting.² is, wanting.³ Incorrect translation. Add. 26,106, fol. 53: facit apostema quod videtur vdimia, nisi quia in superficie magis rubet.⁴ Halle. Table, p. 115. "Scrophula (so called by Auicenna, Guidone de Cauliaco, Bruno, Theodorico, Lanfranco, and others a Scrophula, a pregnant soowe: because it or the lyke, is a disease common to hogs) is a harde Scirrhus tumore, in the glandules of the shere or arme holes, but chiefly in the necke."⁵ Compare Guilelm. de Salic., I. 59. Sl. 277, fol. 11: "In þe antrax . . . þer been smale bladdres aboute þe copp of it, as þouȝ fier hadde touched þe place."⁷ De propr. rer., lib. 7, cap. 59, Add. 27,944, fol. 93: "And also it semeþ þat hit is i-drawe to þe ground þerof wip a maner þrede, i-fastned to þe vllir partye of þe bladder in þe myddel." Not in Guilelm. de Salic.⁸ in, wanting. Lat. De humoribus autem non naturalibus.

ignis periculosus.	Ignis persicus is a signe ¹ þat þere ben manie pustule þeron & venymous water. & þe pustule ben reed al aboute & zelow, & occupiep al þe lyme. & it is wip greet brennyngt. & þis comeþ of
Miliaria.	colre brent and þinne / Miliaris haþ litil pustulis, & haþ not so 4 greet brennyngt, ne þe place þerof is not so reed. & þis comeþ ofte
formica.	of fleume medlid wip a litil colre // ¶ fformica is a pustula þat is swiþe feruent, & haþ a cruste aboue, & it comeþ of colre brent. & þis is goyng & fretiþ þe lyme aboue, & it hath greet brennyngt // 8
Pruna. [² If. 130, bk.]	¶ þe firste ² is a pustula þat comeþ of malancolie & is blac or ledi, & it comeþ of þe venemous mater of malancoli / ³ Herpes
Herpes oethiomenus.	ethiomenus is as miche to seie as fretyng him-silf, & þis comeþ in manie maners / It comeþ in medlyng of colre þat is brent & 11 malancolie innatural & brent & sutil. & whanne þis falliþ into a lyme, it fretiþ þe lyme for þe greet malice þat it haþ // ¶ Also þer is anoþer maner passioun þat haþ manie diuers names, for summen
Cancrum & lupum.	clepen it cancrum, & summen lupum. & men of fraunce clepen it 16 malum nostre domine ⁴ / And lumbardis clepen it fier of seint antony, & summen clepen it herisipulam. Of alle þese diuers names is no charge of, saue þe signes of þis sijknes ben þese: freting & brennyng & blac colour & stynkyng, & þat rizt 20 stynkyngt. & or þe skyn þerof be to-broke, it wole not stynke, saue þe place þerof wole be ledi. & if þou felist þe place wip þi
Cancer vlceratus.	fyngir, þou schalt fynde þe fleisch þerof al corrupt // ¶ Cancer is a postym þat is swiþe corrupt. & is in .ij. maners: as cancer 24 vlceratus, & cancer þat is not vlceratus. ¶ A cankre þat is not

¹ *signe*, probably mistaken for *sickness*. Lat. ignis persicus est egritudo in qua sunt multe pustule.

² Lat. Pruna similiter est pustula. The translator read: prima.—Phillips. "*Pruna*, a burning or live Coal; also a Carbuncle, Plague-sore, or fiery Botoh."

⁴ *malum nostre domine*; This name, given to *Erysipelas*, is due to the miraculous cures of this disease by intercession of the Holy Virgin. They are first reported by *Hugo Faritus*, a canon of Saint Jean des Vignes, in Soissons. In his book, *De Miraculis Mariae Sueuionensis*, he relates the miracles, as seen by himself in the year 1128, and mentions several instances where women suffering from a severe skin-disease have been cured by the help of the Holy Virgin. Further account of a plague known under the name "*mal des ardents*" and of cures by the help of the Holy Virgin, is given by *Gautier de Coincy*. See G. d. C., ed. *Foquet*, p. 138.

The same disease is also called *fuoco di Sant Antonio*. See Tomm. Dict., *Maladie S. Antoine* (Godefr. Dict.). The Saints Germain, Main, Othoine and Verain, have likewise given their names to the *erisipelas*. *Quinte Ess.*, 8. 23: "fire of St. Antony, a brennyng sijknes clepid þe fier of helle."

vlceratus is in .ij. maners: oon comeþ of malancolie rotid, & bi- Cancer non
vlceratus
gynneþ for to wexe in þe mychilnes of a fecche or of a pese. &
þanne it¹ wole wexe alwei in a maner brennyng; & eue as þe [¹ ff. 131]
4 matere wexiþ, so wole þe brennyng wexe forþ. & it wole haue
veynes of diuers colour. & sum colour þerof wole be ledi, & sum
wole be purpur, summe þerof wole be grene. & þan þis is ful of
colerik matere corrupt. & it haþ greet akyng, & if þou pressist
8 it with þi fyngir, þe malice þerof wole be miche more / þis passioun
comounly wole wexe in placis þat ben glandule / þis maner en- It has
variously
coloured
veins,
postym comeþ ofte in a mannes pies & in a wommans brest & in
opere placis / Cancer vlceratus. Alle þe signes þerof ben tofore
12 seid in his propre chapitre /

Now alle þe signes of enpostyms ben seid, go we to þe curis / Treatment of
apostema.
þou must take kepe, wheþer þe enpostym come of causis wiþout- Nota.
forþ or wiþinne / If þe enpostym comeþ of causis wiþinneforþ,
16 þanne þou must purge þe matere or þou leie þerto ony repercussijf
or ony maturatif or ony resoluynge þing / forwhi a repercussijf² mai
not do awei al þe matere, þou; it somewhat aswage þe akyng in þe
firste bigynnyng / neþeles itt makij þe matere hard, & aftirward þe
20 patient³ schulde haue þe more penaunce / A resoluynge in an vnclene [² ff. 131, bk.]
bodi drawij more matere þerto þan itt resolueþ. ¶ A maturatif
makij þe enpostym to wexe more, if his bodi be vnpurgid, & makij
þe matere of þe enpostym feruent / In what maner þou schalt
24 purge diuers maters, in þe chapitre of allopucia þou schalt fynde itt,
& in þe chapitre de doloribus iuncturarum, þat schal be seid here
aftir / þou schalt worche in enpostyms þat fallij in a mannes bodi
wiþoutforþ. If þou wost wel þat his bodi is replet, þis schal alwei
28 be þin entencioun, for to drawe þe matere awei in þis maner: / If
þe enpostym be in a mannes moup, þan þou schalt make him no
gargarisme;⁴ & if itt be in his ers, þan þou schalt make him no
laxatif medicyn / & if itt be in a wommans maris,⁵ þan þou schalt
2 þeue hir no medicyn for to make menstrie; saue þou schalt alwei
go to þe contrarie herof: as if enpostyms be in partijs aboue, þan
þou schalt þeue catarticum / If þe enpostym be bineþe, þan þeue When the
causes are
external use
a contrarious
medicines, i. e.
.Nota.
a purgative,
when the
apostema is
in higher
parts,

² MS. repercussist.

⁴ *gargarisme*, a gargle. Vigo, Chirurgery, Interpretation: "A gargarisme is when we cause water to bubble in our throtes, not sufferinge it to go downe."

⁵ *maris*, Lat. matrix, O.Fr. marris. Sloane 2468, fol. 194 bk.: "The moder is a skyn, þat þe childe is enclosed in his moder-wombe. And manye of þe sokenesses that women hauen, comen of greuaunces of this moder, that we clepen þe marice."

an emetic,
when it is in
lower parts.

[¹ If. 133]
Repelling
medicines
must not be
used in the
following
cases:

- 1.
- 2.
3. 4.
- 5.
6. 7.
- 8.
- 9.
- 10.

In case of a
blood-apo-
stema use
a repelling
followed by

[¹ If. 132, bk.]
a solvent
medicine.

In case of
suppuration
apply a
maturing
medicine.

Open the
abscess when
it is ripe.

1.
Take care
not to cut,
if the abscess
is near a
joint,
looke
well upon
thes
Rulles

him medicyns for to caste. ¶ Whanne þe matere is purgid, þan bigynne we curis of hoot enpostyms / þou must¹ be war of reper-
cussiuus in ten maners. ¶ þe j. cause is þis, if his bodi be replet /
as it is aforseid. ¶ þe .ij. is, greet fume of humours & venymous. 4
¶ þe .iiij. is gretnes² of humours rotid. ¶ þe .iiij. cause is, if
apostym wexe in a noble lyme as in a mannes eere, or in a wommans
tetis, or in þe rigge abouteforþ. ¶ þe .v. cause is: if þe enpostym
be in þe prote, or nyȝ þe brayn, or in ony place nyȝ þe herte, or nyȝ 8
ony lyme þat norischeth / ¶ þe .vj. cause is in a child. ¶ þe .vij.
cause is, if it be in an oold man. ¶ þe .viij. cause is if it be in a
man þat risiþ vp of sijknes. ¶ þe .ix. cause is if it be apostema
creticum.³ ¶ þe .x. cause is, if an enpostyme be in a noble 12
membre, & be putt fro þat place to anoþer. ¶ In noon of þese .x.
causis, þou schalt make noon percussif in hote enpostyms as þou
schalt fynde þe maner in þe antidotarie of percussifs / ¶ To
enpostyms of blood, þou miȝt do medicyns percussifs & dis- 16
solutiuus sotilly, so þat þe firste bigynnyng⁴ percussifs overcome
þe mater of enpostym myche, & in þe stat⁵ of þe enpostym lasse, &
in þe ende þerof þou schalt vse clene resoluyng⁶ þinges / If þou
miȝt not wiȝ percussiuus do awei þe enpostym ne resolue him, 20
saue he bigynneþ to quytture, þan þou schalt do þerto medicyns
maturatiuus, til it be wel quitturid. ¶ Of percussiuus resolutiuus
maturatiuus & þe manere of worching þerof þou schalt fynde in þe
antidotarie. ¶ Whanne þe enpostym is quitturid & sufficiently 24
rotid, þis þou miȝt knowe whanne þe akyng is al aweie, & whanne
þe matere is neische þerof, & þan opene þe enpostym, þat þou seest
moost competent // Saue or þou opene ony enpostyms, þou must
be war of þus manie þinges: ¶ þe j. is, þou schalt opene noon 28
enpostym or he be perfilti rotid, but if þe enpostym rotid ony opir
lyme, or þat he were nyȝ ony noble lyme, or nyȝ ony ioynct // In
opere causis þou schalt abide til he be perfilti rotid. & in þe
kuttyng þou schalt loke where þe skyn is most þinne and moost 32
hangyng, & þere þou schalt opene þe enpostym.⁷ ¶ þe .ij. enten-

² gretnes, grossities.

³ creticum, Lat. criticum.

⁴ þe firste bigynnyng, determination of time denoted by accusative. Add. 10,440, fol. 20: "and be war, þat þe tyme of chaungynge of þis medycyn þou take it not away with violence."

⁵ in þe stat, Lat. in statu. Add. 27,944, fol. 98: "whan þe posteme is in state."

⁷ Lat.: facias apertionem ubi materia magis dependet, et ubi pellis est magis tenuis.

- cioun is þis, þat þou schalt be war, whanne þou openest¹ an [11. 133]
 enpostym, þat þou hurte no senewe, ne no veine ne noon arteria. ^{2.} not to injure
 ¶ þe .iiij. cause is, þat þou schalt not avoide al þe mater at oon ^{3.} a blood
 4 tyme, & principali whanne þer is myche matere, & þe enpostym is ^{4.} vessel.
 greet // ¶ þe .iiij. is þis, þou schalt alwei opene þe enpostym in ^{5.} to evacuate
 endelong þe lyme & not ouerþwert. Whanne þou hast opened þe ^{6.} the pus
 enpostym, þan þou schalt cure him vp² as it is aforseid in þe cure of ^{7.} slowly.
 8 vlcus virulentum. þan þou schalt fille þe wounde þerof with oold ^{8.} to cut in the
 lynnen cloof þat is whijt, anoon to .iiij. daies [wip] mundificatiuis of ^{9.} the limb.
 12 3elkis of eiren & mele, aftir .iiij. daies wip vnguentum apostolorum³ R
 & oon of þe mundificatiuis þat schulen be seid in þe antidotarie, &
 12 wip regendring pingis & drijng pingis. ¶ A colerik enpostym ^{10.} Choleric
 cometh late to rotyng, but if it be rotid wip ony mater leid wipout ^{11.} apostemas
 forþ; þou shalt cure þis enpostym in þe same maner as þou schalt ^{12.} ripen slowly.
 enpostyms of blood, saue þis mote haue coldere medicyns / Car- ^{13.} Nota.
 16 bunculis schulen be curid as antrax, & þe cure herof schal be seid ^{14.} Carbuncles
 hereafter. ¶ Vdimia schal not be smiten yn wip repercussiu⁵ saue ^{15.} [11. 133, bk.]
 it schal be waastid awei in þe firste bigynnyng in þis maner. þou ^{16.} Udimia
 schalt purge him with trocis⁶ de turbit, or wip anoper medicyn þat ^{17.} (Oedema)
 20 purgith fleume. þan stewe⁷ þat lyme wip a decoccioun of absinthij, ^{18.} shall be
 abrotane, sticados, & squinanti. & take aischis of a vyne or of an ^{19.} treated with
 ook, & make þerof lie & wete þerinne lynnen clopis & leie hem ^{20.} purging
 vpon þe place hoot, & binde hem streite þerto þat it hile al þe ^{21.} medicines.
 24 enpostym, & in þis maner þe matere þerof schal be drawen awei // ^{22.} Apply com-
 If it so be þat þere be ony blood medlid þerwip, or if þer hap be ^{23.} presses.
 leid þerto ony maturatif so þat þe mater þerof be rotid, þan opene ^{24.}
 it. Whanne it is opened, it mote haue stronger mundificatiuis þan ^{25.} A softening
 28 ony oper for þe hardnes of þe quittance & þe greetnes þerof / þis is ^{26.} plaster used
 a mollificatif þat rasis made & A. R. bdellij, galbani,⁸ opoponac ^{27.} Basis
^{28.} Aniscum.

² cure him vp. Compare Sloane 277, fol. 1 b.: "be it flesched vp wip
 poudres & oynementes incarnatifies."

³ Phillips. "Apostolorum Unguentum, a cleansing Ointment, so call'd,
 because it is made of twelue Drugs, according to the Number of the
 Apostles."

⁴ Lat. vdimia proprie non repercutitur.

⁵ trociscoe, Lat. trociscus. Sloane 277, fol. 1 b. (xvth cent.), "a troisce of
 þe troiscees maad azens scrophules." Vigo l. c. "Trochiscos in Greke is a
 lyttle whele. Amonge the apothecaries, it is a confection made of sondrye
 pouders and spices, by the meane of some lyquoure. In latine they call it
 Pastillum."

⁷ stewe, Lat. evapora.

⁸ "Galbanum, a kind of strong scented Gum issuing out of a Plant call'd
 Fennel-Giant, which grows in Syria." Phillips.

ana, & make hem neische with oile of lillie in a mortar, & grinde hem wel togidere. & þan do þerto fenigrecum & lynseed as myche as alle þe opere & medle hem wel togidere, & herof leie an enplastre vpon an hard enpostym wip þis oonly, or medle þerwip fatte ¹figis 4 & leie þis enplastre þerto til it be resolued & maad neische / þis medicyn makip an hard enpostym to bicomme neische & resolueþ him wipout ony swellung / þer ben opere manye medicyns þat ben mollificatif & resoluynge þat þou schalt finde in þe antidotarie // 8

A watri apostym schal be curid as vdimia, saue it schal haue drier medicyns, & þou schalt cure him in þe same maner as it is seid in þe chapitre, whanne a mannes lyme is to gret, for to make it smal // Ventosum apostema, þat is apostym þat is ful of wijnd. þou 12 schalt cure it wip medicyns þat consumeþ wijnd wipinne & wipoute / wipinneforþ as of vsyng of comyn & carui, & he mote be war of growel² & metis þat swellip; wipoutforþ wip oilis þat consumeþ wijnd, or with þis oile, R̄. rue, cimini, *seminis fenicli*, anisi, carui, 16 ameos³, apij, ana .ʒ. ſ., cold oile li. ſ., do alle þes in a viol of glas, & do þat glas in a vessel wip water, & make þe water seþe & kepe wel þe glas þeron þat it breke not, & wip þis oile anynte þe place hoot / Item .R̄. calcem and ⁴distempere it wip swete wijn, & make 20 þerof as it were an emplastre & leie þervpon / R̄. olii anetini⁵ .ʒ. ij., cere. ʒ. ſ., ysope þat it be drie & poudrig. ʒ. j., & make herof a plastre. ¶ Herisipilades⁶ or flegmonides schulen be curid in þe same maner þat ben herisipulam & flegmon / Of glandulis & scrophulis, 24 we wolen speke in her propre chapitre //

¶ Antrax schal be curid wip avoiding of noious matere, & wip pinges þat comfortip þe herte & þe vertu. Neþeles at þe firste bigynnyng her vertu failip, & summe þat ben late blood or purgid 28 ben lost / þerfore manie men ben agast for to lete hem blood or zeue hem ony medicyn laxatif / Ech mesel⁷ if þe pacient be strong, I wole lete him blood adai, & in þe same nyȝt I wole zeue him a medicyn laxatif // Saue herof þou schalt take kepe if he be feble, 32 & his herte quake, & his pous falle, þan it is folie for to lete him

Treatment of Anthrax.
First remove the evil matter by bleeding and purging,
if the patient is strong,

² growel, Lat. legumina. See *Prompt. Parv.*, "Growelle or grewelle, Ligumen."

³ ameos. See *N. E. Dict.*, s. v. ammeos.

⁵ oleum anetinum, oil of Fennel.

⁶ Phillips. "Erysipelatodes, a Swelling like the former [Erysipelas], the Skin being of a darker Colour, and the Symptoms more gentle: a Bastard Erysipelas."

⁷ ech mesel, Lat. ego vero. Compare *selwyllly*, *Prompt. Parv.*

- blood or zeue him ony medicyn laxatif, saue take þe cure oonly in and leave the
goddis hand // ¶ I wole telle an ensample þat bifel in þe citee of feble patient
mediolanensis þat it mowe be ensample to þee & lernyng / þer was in the hands
4 a man of xxx. wynter oold, ¹ & an antrax come vpon him in þe riȝt The author
side of his necke, & he was so greet woxe aboute his necke & his relates how
þrote, & he was so swollen, þat þere was but litil difference bitwixe [¶ ll. 135]
þe gretnes of hise schuldris & his necke. & nepeles I fond his vertu he cured a
8 strong. & I wiste what sijknis it was bi a bladdre þat satt þer man, who
vpon, & was in þe riȝt side of his necke, & þat was þe firste bigyn- had a big
nyng of his sijknis / & nepeles þer is manye lechis of greet name antrax on
þat cowde not knowe þat passioun / Also I lete him blood in boþe his neck;
12 his armis, & drowe out blood ynowȝ. & þo I dietide him as a man first he bled
þat hadde a feuer agu. & amorowe I ȝaf þe colature of fruit of then he used
mirabolani citrini,² þe which þou schalt fynde in þe chapitre of several
allopucia / Vpon þe enpostym þere þe bladdre was, I leide scabiose medicines.
16 grounden wiþ grese. I foond neuere bettere medicyns in þis caas þan Nota
þese ben / For þe man was al dissolued of his sijknis of þe brun-
nyng & of þe akyng, saue þe place þat was to-swoollen, was not
þe lasse, & þe man was not þe more feblid for his laxatif, ne for no
20 medicyn þat he hadde / & on þe morowe I lete him blood in his
oon arm, ³ & ȝaue him a medicyn laxatif in lasse quantite þan I dide [¶ ll. 135, bk.]
raþere, & þan þe swellynge aswagide niche, & in þe place þere þe
bl[ad]dre was I fond a maner cruste as it were a þing þat were A scab
24 brent wiþ fier & was of þe brede of iij. ynchis. & wiþinne a fewe appeared
daies þe cruste was arerid vp, & þe pacient felide no greet greu- on the part,
aunce. & in þe same place þere þe bladdre was, þere was a deep and under-
vlcus. & þoruȝ þe greet hole I siz þe þrote & þe gret veins, & I neath a
28 putte yn myn hond / & I ȝaf þe pacient good norisching metis, & deeply-rooted
I made hool vlcus wiþ mundificatiuis, til he was al hool bi þe help he cured with
of god // cleansing
medicines.

¶ Pustule þat comeþ of humours corrupt as ignis persicus⁴ & Ignis per-
32 miliaris,⁵ & ⁶ formica⁷ schal be purgid wiþ medicyns þat purgiþ colre and Formica

³ MS. inserts *hinc*, referring to another chapter.

⁴ *ignis persicus*, Herpes zoster (Dunglison). Phillips: "a Gangrene, it is also taken for a Carbuncle or a fiery Plague Sore."

⁵ De propr. rer., lib. VII., cap. 61, Add. 27,944: "amonge auctoures þis enel is *4-clepid herpes milii* oper graunlesus, an eucl ful of graynes. But swiche bleyues bep litil and smale as greynes of mylic." Phillips: "*Herpes Miliaris*, or *Pustularis*, a sort of yellow Bladders or Wheals, like Millet-Seed, that seize the Skin, cause much itching, and turn to eating Ulcers."

⁶ MS. ¶ instead of *q*.

⁷ MS. *formica*. Vigo Interpret. "Formica is a little excrescence, or

are treated
with purging
medicines.

[2 R. 126]

Strengthen
the patient's
heart.

herpes esti-
omenus cura

Apply a
medicine
which pro-
tects the
limb from
corruption,
and cauterize
the slough.

[2 R. 126, bk.]

& malancolie. & þat same medicyn schal purge humours þat be
brent, as fumus terre, cuscute, lappacium acutum, cene,¹ absinthium
& opere mo / Also þou schalt voide þe matere wip medicyns þat
comforten þe herte, & kepiþ þat þe venym ne smite not to þe
herte; þan þou schalt cure þe place with þingis þat makip cold vpon
þe place. & whanne vlcus is þeron þan it is no nede, saue drie it
vp as it is aforseid in þe cure ²of vlcera. Saue abouteforþ þou
schalt leie colde þingis til þe cure be perfilti do / & þere come ony 8
bifalling þerto,³ þan alwei ȝeue him medicyns for to comforte þe
herte, þat ben forseid in antrace // Sumtyme tofore alle þinges
pruna⁴ ben good / And formicam þou schalt brene / forwhi a
cauterie drawip out al þe matere þat is corrupt & waastip it awei. 12

¶ Herpes estiomenus⁵ is curid after þe purgacioun of þe matere,
þat þou schalt algatis take hede for to do / if his vertu be strong.
& þou schalt algate aboute þe sijknese⁶ leie a defensif of bole &
terra sigillata & oile of ro. & vinegre / þis defensif, as seiþ .A., & I 16
haue ofte preued it, þis defendip eueri lyme fro corrupcioun, & þis
wole not suffre þat þe matere schal make noon vlcercioun ne no
fretynge. & vpon þe place þat is corrupt & deed, þou schalt leie an
hoot iren, & do awei alle þe partis þat ben corrupt. & þis þou myȝt 20
do with a medicyne corosif, saue an hoot iren is bettere / Whanne
þe rotid matere is aweie, þanne make clene þe place wip a mundi-
ficatif of iuys of ache, & do þerto a litil mirra. & whanne þe place
is wel clensid, þan do þerto a medicin ⁷for to regendre fleisch, & ²⁴
þanne drie it vp /

Of empostyms of þe heed //

¶ 1130 00

THow; we han maad a general tale of enpostyms, neþeles apostym
in eueri lyme haþ diuers curis / þerfore I wole make to euery 26

outgrowynge in the Skynne, somewhat brode aboute the botome, which when
it is scratched causeth as it were the styngynge of an ante, or pismare, and
therefore it is also called in greke myrmecia."

¹ cene for sene.

² Lat. si praua superveniunt accidentia. . .

⁴ Lat. : Aliquando super omnia adiuuat prunam et formicam urere. The
translator misunderstood *pruna* (name of the disease) for *pruna* (plums).
Compare page 208, note 2.

⁶ Vigo Interpret. "If the substaunce be grosse, and aygre it vlcereþ
the skynne vnto the fleashe, & is called herpes esthiomenos, that is eatynge
or gnawynge herpes."

⁶ Lat. : sed ponendo supra locum sanum iuxta *agritudinem* defen-
siuuni. . .

- enpostym a diuers chapiter // ¶ I seie þat in þe skyn of a mannes heed ben diuers enpostyms / If þere be¹ enpostym þerof sutil fleume, ful of fleume as it schal be seid heraftir in þe chapitre of
- 4 **bocium**² / þis maner sijknes is engendrid bitwene þe skyn & the fleisch, & it is su[m]what holow, & ben clepid testudines for þe lijknes of a beest þat is clepid so, & ben engendrid of hard fleume, & ben, as it were, hard knottis þat were maad fast to þe scolle, as it
- 8 were hornis / For I seie a man came to me, & he hadde in his heed vij. suche maner þingis in diuers placis, & summe þerof weren as longe & as scharp as it were a gotis horn or þe lenkþe of a mannes pombe, & þei weren greuours to þe man, & I hadde miche wondre
- 12 þat þer were noon vlcers in þe skyn / Whanne I siȝ wel þat þei hadden her bigynnynges of þe scolle boon, I ³wolde not entermete þerwith of þe cure, & I counseilide him þat he schulde putte him into no mannes cure for to cure him, for it þouȝte to me impossible.
- 16 ¶ I þe curis of al þe enpostyms in þe heed, ben þese / If it be of neische matere or of rotid matere, þan þou schalt not take hede for to drie it wiþ mollificatiuis, þouȝ I seide so in enpostyms of fleume in þe general chapitre; for þat myȝte schende⁵ þe scolle wiþ
- 20 liquid mater or corrupt matere. & if þe matere þerof is hard, make it neische wiþ maturatiuis, saue lete þou not it rotie to myche. & or it be rotid to miche, opene it in þe maner of a triangle þus; for þis empostym of þe heed for þe gretnes of þe skyn, and for it is ful
- 24 of pooris, it mai not wel be clensid, but if þe woundis were so miche þat þe mundificatif myȝte come to þe botme. Whanne þe enpostym is kutt in þe forseid maner, þanne awoide þe mater & fille þe place al wiþ pecis wet in oil of rosis, & sugre molten þeron, &
- 28 alym & leie þis in þe botme þerof til ⁶þe place be wel maad clene. Aftirward wiþ vnguentum apostolorum & opere þingis þat engendriþ fleisch, cure him as it is forseid in þe cure of vlcers þat ben olde //
- ¶ Nodus is curid wiþ kuttyng of þe skyn endelongis vpon
- 32 þe place & drawe him out wiþ alle hise rotis. & if þer leueþ ony rote of him, þan leie þeron þe poudre of affadillorum, or of sum

The Testudines are between the skin and the flesh, and are like hard knots.

³reta mirabilis
A man came to Lanfranc, with seven such knots situated on his skull.

[4 ff. 137]
Lanfranc thought the cure impossible.

Treatment of Apostemas on the head.

If the swelling is hard, soften it with maturatives, open it, and cleanse the wound.

[4 ff. 137, bk.]

Nodus must be removed by cutting and by the use of a Corrosive.

¹ be, above line.

² This passage is corrupt. Lat.: Nam sunt ibi apostemata a subtili phlegmate vel ab alia phlegmatis specie ut mucilaginosi et pulinosi et est sicut cancerosi bocii erit dictum.

³ Vigo Chirurgery transl. Traheron, fol. 5: "The sayde Rhete mirabile is like a nette, and is therefore called Rhete, for thys pannicle is compounded onely wyth Arteries, as Guido hath declared."

⁵ schende. Lat.: quia sic posset cranium inficere liquida materia.

li3t^r corosif^r or vnguentum viride, þat þe rotis þerof mowe frete
 awei þerwiþ; & þan regendre & þan drie it vp // Watir þat is
 gaderid in children hedis,¹ ouþer it is wiþinne þe scolle or wiþoute
 þe scolle / If it be wiþynne þe scole, it semeþ to me so perilous, 4
 þat I wole bitake þe cure to god / If þe watir be withoutforþ, it
 mai be curid wiþ anointing^r of oile of camomille & solfre grounden
 togidere; & þanne make him .iij. cauterijs: oon a litil aboue þe for-
 heed, & oon bihinde þe nolle in þe welle² þerof, & oon aboue þe 8
 hindere cella. þese cauterijs wiþ þe forseid anoyntingis driep &
 waastiþ þe matere of þe watir // ¶ Þe water þat comeþ in children
 hedis, is engendrid in þis manere / whanne³ þe maris of a woman
 is watri, & þe child þat lijþ þerine lijþ foldyng^r adounward his heeð
 vpon hise knees. & þan þe moisture falliþ adoun & fyndiþ a voi-
 place in þe childis heed & entriþ þerinne / & þis passion makip
 child deed ofte, or he haue ony age for to be holpen /

Water in a
 child's head
 is fatal, when
 within the
 skull;

when outside
 the skull, it
 may be cured,
 with oint-
 ments, and
 caustics.

This affec-
 tion occurs
 owing to the

[³ If. 138]

particular
 position of
 the child in
 the mother's
 womb.

/ Of enpostyms of þe rootis of a mannes eeris // 11

¶ If. 138

An apostema
 on the roots
 of the ear
 occurs some-
 times, when
 the patient
 is feeble.

It is often
 fatal.

[⁴ If. 138, bk.]

Begin the
 cure with
 mitigatives,

apply oil
 of bitter
 almonds.

A Postyme þat comeþ in a mannes eere or in þe rotis of a
 mannis eeren. & þis comeþ sumtyme in die cretico, whanne
 þat a mannes kynde is not so miȝti for to putte out þe gretnes of
 þe mater bi sote ne bi noon oper avoiding^r, & þan kynde worchip 20
 what it mai, & driueþ þe matere an hiȝ to þe heed & abidiþ in þe
 rotis of þe eeren, & þere it engendriþ apostym. & in þis place it is
 perilous, for it is so nyȝ þe heed & veynes & arterijs & neruys /
 þis manere onpostym ofte sleep a man whanne þe matere comeþ 24
 violently // þe matere of þis enpostym, ouþer it is colre, or blood,
 or fleume, or malancoli; & alle þe signes herof ben aforseid / þe
 cure of⁴ þis enpostym mai not bigynne with repercussiuus, saue it
 mote bigynne wiþ mitigatiuis, & with þingis þat puttiþ out þe 28
 matere / Waische þe place wiþ a decoccioun of camomille soden þer-
 inne / & þanne aftir þat anoynte þe same place with oile of camo-
 mille, & þan wete wolle in þe same oile & leie þervpon, & bi no
 maner leue þou not þat þou leie in his eere oile of bittir almaundis, 33
 for it is a greet help // ¶ If þe mater be deep & it be hard for to
 drawe it out, þan it were good to sette vpon þe place a drie ventose

¹ Hydrocephalus and its cure is treated at some length by most of the ancient physicians. See *Paul. Aegineta*, ed. Adama, vol. II., p. 250. Our author's description is abridged from *Gulielm. de Salic.*, lib. I., cap. 1.

² *welle*, Lat. fontinella.

for to helpe to drawe out^t þe matere, & aftir resoluē þe matere &
 leie þerto mitigatiuis for to do awei þe akyng / ¶ If þe matere wole
 not be resoluē in þis maner, saue it^t bigynneþ to be quittance þeron, If pus is
 formed, open
 the apostema,
 taking care
 not to injure
 a blood-vessel
 or a nerve.
 4 þan wip tempere maturatiuis þat^t ben not to hote, make þe enpostym
 quittance / Whanne þe place is wel rotid abide þou no brekyng^t of þe
 enpostym, saue opene þe place sotilly wip an instrument^t þat is com-
 petent þerto / & þou muste be wel war þat þou touche no veyne, ne
 8 noon arterie, ne no senewe, for þerof^t miȝt come ¹myche perel, for [11. 130]
 þere ben nerues in þe same place, if þei were kutt^t or prickid, þe
 pacient miȝte lese his vois for euere / & if þere were ony veyne
 kutt^t þerof, þer miȝt come greet^t perel þerof. & whanne þe place is
 12 opened, þan make þe place clene wip mundificatiuis, þat^t schulen be
 seid in þe antidotarie / & whanne þe place is perfitli clene, þanne
 make þe fleisch wexe & do þe cure perfitli / For bi yuel curyng^t in
 þis place miȝt engendre a festre, þat^t ofte tyme comeþ of an
 16 enpostym / Then cleanse
 the wound.

Apostyms of þe necke and of þe prote /

A Postyms þat ben in þis place, or it^t is wipoutforþ in þe ¶ v. c.
 senewis, or in þe braun, or it^t is wipinneforþ bi þe place þat^t
 20 a mannes mete goiþ down, or bi þe prote, or it^t is bitwixe þe .ij. Apostemas of
 the neck or
 the throat,
 are either
 external or
 internal.
 placis in a place þat^t is clepid ismon.² & comounli þe enpostyms
 þat^t ben in þis place, comeþ of blood, or of fleume, & ful seelden it^t
 comeþ of colre, & more lattere of malancoli. þe humours þat^t ben
 24 in þe cause,³ þou schalt^t knowe bi signes aforseid / If þe matere be In the former
 case, an out-
 ward swelling
 will be seen,
 but the swal-
 lowing and
 breathing will
 not be af-
 fected.
 in þe braun of the necke wipoutforþ, þat þou miȝt knowe ⁴bi schew-
 ing^t of þe enpostym wipoutforþ. & bi þese signes þou schalt^t knowe
 whanne þe enpostym is wipoutforþ, if þer is no lettng^t in ysophagus
 28 þere þe mete schulde go adoun, & if wijnd be not^t stoppid, þan þou
 miȝt wite wel þat þe enpostym is wipoutforþ, & also bi þe schew-
 ing^t þat^t is outward / And if þe enpostym is wipinne, þan þe If the apos-
 tema is
 internal,
 swallowing
 and breathing
 will be diffi-
 cult.
 pacient schal not^t swolowe adoun his mete, ne drawe wel his brecþ /
 32 If þe enpostym þat^t is wipinne swelle greetly, his igen wolen swelle
 þerwip, & he schal not^t suffre his tunge in his mouþ, & he ne schal

² ismon. *Sinonon*. Barth., p. 26, "Ysinon est inter ysosagum et tra-
 cheam arteriam." Read *Ymon*. From *ισμός*, neck, narrow passage. See
ισμός in *Stephanus Thesaur.* De propr. rer., lib. V., cap. 24, Add. 27,944,
 fol. 49 bk.: "¶ it happiþ þat þis enel matere is semtyme al i-gedred wip-
 inne þe skynne þat departiþ þe weye of þe brecþ from þe weye of þe mete &
 drynke, þat hatti isophagus & bredeþ squynancye, þat sleep in on day."

³ See page 194, note 8.

Some physicians
'break' this
apostema
with a piece
of wood,
but that is
dangerous.

First, bleed
the patient
either from
the Vena

[2 ff. 140]

Basilica or
Mediana,

on the next
day from a
vein under
the tongue,

then give
a gargar-
isme,
mixed with
the excre-
ments of a
sparrow, hen,
dog, or a
child.

The patient
shall drink
barley-water
[2 ff. 140, bk.]

R
and eat a pre-
paration of
wheat-bran.

not speke, & þer wole go out miche spume of his moup / þanne
summe lechis þat ben hardi wolen putte a smal tree in his prote &
breke þe enpostym, & in þat maner þe pacient mai be delyuered ;
saue þis maner worching¹ is not sure, for in þis maner manie men⁴
dieþ, & þe deef comeþ not of þe sijknes, saue it is defaute in þe
leche¹ / þis maner sijknes þat is so hid wiþinneforþ, it mai be helid
wel in þe bigynnyng² in þis maner² / If þe enpostym be hoot, þou
schalt lete him blood in þe veine þat is clepid basilica, & if þe 8
patient haþ had þe³ sijknes longe or þou come to him, þan þou
schalt lete him blood in þe middil veyne of þe arm þat is clepid
mediana, & he schal blede so longe til he swoune almoost, & prin-
cipali if he be strong¹ & ful of fleisch / In þe .ij. dai þou schalt¹⁵
lete him blood in þe veines vnder þe tunge / & loke þat þou do no
þing¹ aftir her counseil þat seien þat in þe firste bigynnyng¹ þou
schalt lete him blood in veines vnder þe tunge, & after þat in þe
leed veine or in sum oþere place. For in þis manere letyng¹ blood,¹⁶
if his bodi were replet, he miȝt liztli be achekid// ¶ Whanne þou
hast lete him blood as it is aforseid, þan make him a gargarisme
wiþ a decoccioun of ro., sumac,⁴ balaustiarum, lentium, & galla-
rum wiþ þe which be distemperid þerwiþ diameron,⁵ or tordis of²⁰
a sparrow, or of an hen, or þe tord of an hound þat etip manie
boonys & noon oþer mete,⁶ or a childis tord dried while it is souk-
yng¹. ¶ Also take an houndis tord þat etip oonly boonis & of
hennis, satureye⁷ ana, & make þerof poudre & distempere it wiþ²
water & hony, & make þerof a gargarisme, & he schal drinke water
of barley, & he schal no þing¹ ete, saue a þing¹ maad of wheete-⁸ bran
in þis maner⁹ / Take newe bran of whete & caste þeron hoot water
& hele it & lete it stonde so an hour, & þanne grinde it in a mortar¹
wiþ a pestel & cole it, & þanne seþe it wiþ a litil salt & ȝeue it þe

¹ it is defaute in þe leche, Lat. medico imputatur.

² Much of our author's treatment is borrowed from *Avicenna*, Lib. III, Fen. 19, Cap. 11, ed. Ven. 1527, fol. 188.

⁴ *sumac*, Fr. Sumac; Arab. Summāq. "*Sumach* or *Sumack*, a kind of rank-smelling Shrub that bears a black Berry, made use of by Curriers to dress their Leather." Phillips.

⁵ *diameron*, διαμώρων. *Vigo* Interpretation, "*Diamoron*, a confection made of mulberries."

⁶ By this kind of food the *album græcum*, the white dung of a dog is produced.

⁷ *satureye*, savory. Wr. Wül. 609, 80 (xv), satureye.

⁹ Lat.: nihilque comedat nisi candarusium factum de surfure in hunc modum. *Matth. Sylv.*: "Candarus vel candarusium—est ordeum cui non est cortex," from *χρόνος*, grain, groat.

pacient / & do þeron penidis.¹ & if he mai not swolowe it adoun,
 þanne sette a litil ventuse in þe welle of his necke² with fier & þan
 he schal swolowe, & anoynte al his necke tofore & bihinde wip oile
 4 of camomille. & vpon þe anoyntyng leie wolle vnwaischen,³ &
 make a sutil plastre of a nest of irundinis, & is good for þe
 squinacie,⁴ & is maad in þis maner / Take a nest of irundinis &
 boile it longe in watir, & þanne cole it þoruȝ a seue þat þe grete
 8 gobetis moun be cast awei / þan take þe rotis of lillie & sepe hem
 in oþer water & rotis of bismalue, & þe rote of brionie & leues of
 malue & bismalue, & violet, & peritorie.⁵ & whanne þei ben
 boilid, grinde hem wel, & medle hem wip water of irundinum þat
 12 is forseid, & do þerto leucyne & mele of fenigreci, & þan do þerto
 oile or grese, & make herof an enplastre / þis enplastre is good to
 resolute enpostym & make it quittance, wheþer it be wipiane or wip-
 16 oute, & make it abroad upon a cloop & leie it vpon hoot. &
 anointing is good wip oile of camomille medlid wip butter þat it
 be oold & not salt, & after þe anoyntyng leie þervpon wolle
 vnwaische // ¶ If þe enpostym be wipiane, it is good þat me leie
 þerto no repercussiuis, saue vse gargarismis maad in þis manere / R,
 20 ficus siccas, semen malue, semen lini, sepe þese in water & þan cole
 hem, & make þerof a gargarisme; or water of figis medlid wip
 butter, þat makip maturatif eueri maner enpostym.

Anoint his
neck,

and apply a
plaster made
from a swal-
low's nest.

R

Irundinis
id est
swallowes.

How to pre-
pare this
plaster.

[c. 11. 141]

In case of an
inward apos-
tema use a
gargle.

R

¹ *penidis*, Vigo Interpr. "*Penidie* are made of the Apothecaries wyth
 faggre wrethen lyke ropes." Fr. *penide*; Lat. *penidium*, from *penion*: spool
 on which the woof is wound.—Compare *diapenidion* in *Piers the Plowman*,
 ed. Skeat, 1886, II. p. 77, note.

² MS. *tofore* inserted but deleted.

³ *wolle vnwaischen*, *vn*, in margin. Lat. *lana succida*. Lewis, *Latin
 Dict.*, gives a reference from *App. Apologia*: *recens lana tonsa succida
 appellata est*.

⁴ *squinacie*, Lat. *squintia*, quinsy. See *Cathol. Angl.*, p. 357, note.

⁵ *peritorie*, Lat. *parietaria*; wall-pellitory.

⁷ The passage from lf. 141, l. 5 till lf. 141, bk., l. 8 (p. 220, l. 15), is repeated
 in lf. 143, with some alterations. The corresponding words from the Latin
 are quoted to show the independent character of the two versions. l. 18, 19.
 If þe — — manere] It is good if þe enpostym be wipiane or þe more partie
 be withynne, & if it mai not be resolved ne do awei wip repercussiuis, þan it
 is good to vse gargarismis, þat ben maturatifs, maad in þis maner. (*Bonum
 est etiam si apostema fuerit interius, aut maior eius pars, cum tempus pro-
 longatur quod non repercutitur nec resolvitur: uti maturatiuis gargarisma-
 tibus ut hoc.*) 20, 21. sepe — — cole hem] putte hem in water & sepe hem in
 water (*coque in aqua*). 21. or] & medle þerwip. 21, 22. medled wip butter]
 & butter & wijn. þat makip — — enpostym] þis wole make enpostym þat
 is withynne in þe þrote maturatif (*maturat omne intrinsecum apostema siue
 in gutture siue in stomacho siue in intestinis fuerit generatum*).

If this apostema shows itself outwardly, it must be carefully opened and cleansed.

R
[12. 141, bk.]

Ranula vnde the toung an apostema that affects the breathing and swallowing.

A Lady had an internal and external swelling ou her neck,

Whanne þe enpostym is rotid; þat þou schalt knowe bi þe aswaging¹ of þe akyng, & if þe enpostym schewe wipoutforþ, þanne opene it wip an instrument, & be war þat þou hurte no senewe, ne no veine, ne noon arterie. & whanne it is opened, make it clene⁴ wip mundificatiuis þat schulen be seid in þe antidotarie / And if þe enpostym be wipinneforþ, þan þou schalt not breke it wip þis gargarisme þat is aforseid, saue þou schalt make a gargarism þat haly vside / Take galle, acacie, psidiarum, balaustie, aluminis⁸ iamini¹ & seþe hem in water & cole it & make² þerof a gargarism, for þis gargarism wole breke enpostym / Whanne þe enpostym is broke, þan þou schalt bringe out þe mater wip hoot water, & disolue þerinne butter & oile of violets, & make þerof a gargarism, & lete him vse þis gargarism til al þe matere be drawe out, & þan after þat make him a gargarism of liquiricie,³ yreos & tamarisci / If þe matere be coold, þan þou muste vse hottere gargarism, & þan þou muste vse mundificatiuis þat þer be þerinne mirre, sarcocolla,⁴ 16 þat schulen be seid in þe antidotarie in þe chapitre of mundificatiuis. ¶ It fallip sumtyme þat for reume þat fallip adoun of a mannis heed, þer wexip in þe rote of þe tunge a maner round þing in þe gretnes of an almaunde, & lettip a man þat he mai not wel²⁰ drawe his breep ne ete his mete / & in þis maner þou schalt cure him as it is forseid wip þingis þat voidip þe matere & wip resoluyng þingis. ¶ I wole sette in þis place a cure þat bifel in þe citee of mediolanensis of a ladi þat was .L. wynter cold, & hadde a squi-²⁴ nacie of fleume þat occupiede al hir necke tofore wipinne & wipoute,

1, 2. þe aswaging] cesing. and if] if. 2. schewe] be seen. 3, 4. be — arterie] be wel war of veynes & arterijs. 4. whanne it is opened] þan. 5. and] om. 6, 8. wipinneforþ — galle] al wipinne & wole not breke wip þe gargarism þat is aforseid of butter & figis & water & wijn, þan þou schalt breke him wip a medicyn þat haly þe abbot vside as wip a gargarism of gallarum. (Si fuerit intra, nec rumpatur: cum gargarismate predicto de butyro, flouum aqua et vino rumpatur cum ingenio subtili Haly ab. scilicet cum gargarismate stypticorum sicut decoctionis gallarum.) 9. & seþe — þerof a gargarism] om. 10. wole breke] brekip þe. 11. þan þou schalt bringe out þe mater] drawe out þe quitture. 11, 12. & — butter] & a litil butter þerinne. 12. & make þerof] & herof he schal make. 12, 13. & lete him vse þis gargarism] om. matere be drawe out & þan] quitture be drawen awei after þat. 14. of liquorice — tamarisci] wip liquoris & thamarisci soden in watir.

¹ Sinonon. Barth., p. 1, "Alumen iamen, A. scissum, Alimen de pluma, idem." — Matth. Sylr. "Iamen est prouincia Iameni uel Aliamen."

³ liquiricie, lycoryce, Pr. Parv., p. 303. See lyguoris in 2nd version.

⁴ Sarcocolla "Is the Gumme or liqore of a tree growyng in Persia." Halle. Table, p. 109.

- ¹saue wipoutforþ þe swelling was moost, & þe womman miȝte not^[1 lf. 142] speke, ne swolowe in no mete. & þis womman was vndir þe cure of^{she could neither speak nor eat,} a ȝong' man þat was my scolur, and he cowde not wel fare þerwip,
 4 & þo he was in dispeir of hir lijf, I was sent after & foond hir in wickide staat;² for sche eet no mete in manye daies tofore, & sche^{nor sleep for fear of choking.} durste not alepe for drede, lest sche schulde be achekid. þan I tastide hir pous, & it was wondir feble, & I tastide þe place of þe
 8 enpostym, & I knewe wel þat sche schulde be rapere achekid þan þe enpostym wolde breke wipoute or withynne, for þe matere was so greet / & þan I took a rasour, & lokide where þe matere was^{Lanfranc opened the apostema with a rasor, where it was most ripe.} moost gaderid for to engendre quittance, & it was moost able vndir
 12 þe chyn, & I felide þe place wip myn hond & tastide it aboute þat I miȝte be war of nerues & arterijs, & þere I made a wounde, & þere I drowe out matere þat was corrupt, & it was foul stynkyng matere, & al miȝte I not awoide anon. & þo þe pacient hadde^{The patient could breathe, [1 lf. 142, bk.]}
 16 bettere hir breen, & hir pous was confortid,³ for þe lungis miȝte take yn eir, & þerwip þe herte was confortid, & þan I ȝaf hir broþ, & þat ȝede out þoruȝ þe wounde þe moost part. þo I studiede how I miȝte best do, & I lete make a pipe of siluir, and putte it in at^{but her food went through the open wound;}
 20 hir moup & passide forþere þan þe wounde was, þat it miȝte fulfille þe place of þe prote. & þan I leide al aboute hir necke mundificatiuis & maturatiuis for to quittance þe toþer deel of þe matere, & so I kepte it til þer come out of þe wounde a greet gobet of^{Lanfranc introduced a silver tube, and the gangrenous parts were removed by suppuration.}
 24 viscous matere & stynkyng, & was schape as it were a greet gutt. & þerinne þe firste matere was engendrid, & whanne þis was oute, þe stynking wente awei þerwip, & þe womman bigan to be stronger, & whanne þe wounde was maad clene I driede it vp & soudide it;
 28 & in þis maner þe pacient was maad hool. ¶ Whanne þou fyndist coold matere rotid in þe forseid placis, þou schalt not abide til þe enpostym breke him-silf, saue þou schalt opene it as it is aforseid / & if it be not rotid, þan make it more maturatif, & opene it as it^{When cold matter suppurates, open the apostema, before it breaks by itself.}
 32 is aforseid / And þis þou muste wite þat þou miȝte⁴ not abide to longe wip þe openyng: for þe herte & þe spiritual lymes ne mowe not longe endure wipouten eir.^[1 lf. 148]

² in wickide staat, in statu pessimo.

/ Of enpostym of subcilio /¹

¶ vj. 00.
If there is a
hot apostema
in the arm-
pit, bleed
from the
Vena nigra
or basilica.
If the apos-
tema is cold,
use mild
medicines,

and open it,
when it is
ripe.

[* lf. 146]

bubo.
is difficult
to heal.

Galion.

THIS maner of enpostym haþ no nede of repercussiuus for causis
wip purgaciouns / And if þe enpostym be hoot, þou schalt lete him
blood in a veyne þat is clepid vena nigra,³ or in þe veyne þat is
clepid basilica in þe arm. & if þe matere be coold, þan avoide þe
matere wip medicyns maad of turbit or sum oþer medicyn þat
fallip þerfore. & as myche as þou miȝt þou schalt take þerto wip
medicyns þat hane not to greet drawyng / For if þou leiest þerto
þingis þat ben to stronge drawyng, þan þe enpostym wole wexe þe
more / þerfore þou schalt anoynte him wip oile of camomille, &
leie þervpon wolle vnwaischen. & his dieting schal be sotil. & if
þis suffise not, þan leie vpon a maturatif / & whanne it is rotid þou
schalt opene it, & principali if it be of coold matere. Saue if
þere be glandule þeron, as it fallip ofte, & it be not ouir al rotid,
as in oon place hard anopir place neische, þan þou schalt haue þis
in certein, þat þis passioun schal be clepid bubo, & þe cure þerof is
hard.⁶ For if þou drawist out þe matere þat is neische,⁷ þe matere
þat is hard is yuel to defie. & ofte þer comeþ þerof sclirosis or a
festre, & it wole make a man yuel disposid & feuerous, as G. seip.⁸
& þerfore aswage þe akyng & þan make rotyng wip maturatiuis;
for þe matere þat is rotid wole helpe to rotie þe matere þat is hard.
& whanne it is al neische þanne opene it / If it so be þat it breke
bi it-silf or it be ful rotid, þan do þerto mundificatiuis, & vpon þe
place þat is hard leie maturatiuis, & kepe wel þe place þat is open
fro festrynge. Mundificatiuis & maturatiuis þou schalt fynde in þe
antidotarie pleyulier.

¹ Lat.: De apostemate sub titillico, id est sub ascellis. The translator made *subcilio* out of *sub ascellis*; *titillicum*, arm-pit, from *titillo*, tickle.

² *is*, above line.

³ Matth. Sylv.: "Nigra uena, purpurea, media communis." V. media = V. mediana.

⁴ *save if*, Lat. hoc saluo, si esset . . .

⁵ Lat.: tunc nullam habes viam tutam, quum tunc est bubo, cuius cura est difficilis.

⁷ MS. inserts &.

⁸ Lat.: "totum corpus in mala tenet dispositione febris et doloris; tamquam qui ad suam salutem, si nisi unam habuerit viam, ut dicit Galienus velit nolit, per eam, etsi mala fuerit, pertransibit." A more accurate translation of this passage is given in Sl. 2463 (xv. cent.) in a treatise on Surgery compiled from various authors, in which several chapters of Lanfranc's work are embodied. Ib. fol. 110 b.: "And as Galyene seith, he that hath but oone weye to his hele althouȝe þat weye be nat good, he muste holde hit wille he nylle hr."

An enpostyme of þe helpers /¹

- T**His enpostym if it be hoot, þan lete him blood in þe arm
 aforzens, & not in þe same side in þe veyne þat is clepid
 4 basilica, & þan þou muste surely leie þerto *repercussiu*,² & if *reper-*
cussiu suffisen not, þan resolue it & leie *maturatiu* þerto, & þan
 abide til it be *perfitli*³ quitturid, but if þe *matere* be so violent
 þat it were in poynt⁴ to schende þe lyme, þan opene it & be wel
 8 war of the braun þat is in þat place / Manie men þat ben *vkun-*
nyng & supposen þat place to be fer fro any noble lyme,⁵ makip
 þeron a deep kuttyng, & supposip to haue gret worschip þerof; &
 manie idiotis wolen preise hem⁶ wel þerfore. & þan þe *lacertis* þerof
 12 ben hurt; & whanne þe *lacertis* ben soudid agen, þan þe lyme þat it
 seruede fore schal be contract, wherfore þe mannes arm mai be lost
 in sum partie or in al / þerfore whanne þou wolt kutte þis en-
 postym, þou schalt but kutte abouteforþ in þe skyn, & not to depe
 16 bi no maner wei for drede of þe braun, & of senewis, & of veynes
 & arterijs, & whanne þe place is opened, þan leie þerto *mundifi-*
catiu. If þe openyng be nyȝ þe elbowe, & þouȝ þe enpostym be
 moost quitturid, þere be wel war þat þou opene not þe enpostym
 20 aboute þe elbowe .iiij. fyngris brede, neiȝer⁷ wiȝinne ne wiȝoute. &
 also nyȝ þe poynt of þe elbowe it is perilous, for it is gret hap if
 it be euere soudid. & þouȝ it be soudid, þe mouyng of his arme
 schal be lost. If þer falle any enpostym in þis place, & it come of
 24 greet *matere* so þat his bodi be replet, þan he mote haue greet
 avoidyng wiȝ laxatiu, & þan resolue þe *matere*, and worche as it
 is aforseid in þe general chapter. In þe same maner þou schalt
 cure þe enpostym of his armis & of hise hondis.
- 28 ¶ *Panariciu*⁸ is an enpostym þat is in þe heed of a mannes
 fyngir aboute þe nail / & is swiȝe hoot, & greuous, & reed, & ful of
 fier, & sumtyme it makip a man to haue þe feure, & sumtyme it
 fretip awei al þe poynt of a mannes fyngir / þe firste cure of þis
 32 enpostym is, þat first þou schalt lete him blood, so þat alle þingis

¶ *vij.* 60/
 In case of an
 apostema on
 the arm,
 bleed the
 Basilic Vein,
 [F. M. 144, bk.]

and open the
 apostema
 when it is
 ripe.
 Unskillful
 physicians,
 in cutting too
 deep, hurt the
 muscles, and
 so the patient
 may lose his
 arm.

[F. M. 145]

panariciu,
 an apostema
 of the fingers,
 near the
 nails.

Treatment:
 First bleed
 the patient,

¹ Lat. De apostematibus adiutorii.

³ *curid*, erased.

⁴ in poynt, Lat.: nisi materia esset adeo violenta quod esset ad corruptionem membri parata. "And in such poynt the body bileueth." Wright, *Popular Treatise*, p. 140.—"Engelond & normandie. in god point he broȝte." *Rob. of Glouc.*, 8868. Compare Fr. embonpoint.

⁵ *siȝf*, erased. Lat.: & inde laudantur ab aliquibus idiotis.

⁸ *Vigo* Interpret.: "Panaritium is an aposteme about the root of the nayles, and it is called in Greke Paronichia; in latyn reduuia." See Dufr. a. v. redubiæ.

if his condition allows, then apply a plaster, compresses or an ointment.

[^a 1r. 145, bk.]

falle perfore as elde & strenkþe & custum. & þan þou schalt make him an enplastre of vinegre & opium, & vpon þe plastre þou schalt leie a lynnyn cloof wet in a decoccioun of psillij, or anynte it wip an oynement þat is coold. & in¹ al maner þou schalt² take hede to⁴ do awei þe greet hete & saue his fyngir fro corrupcioun / If þe akinge & þe brennyng go not awei in þis maner, & it be in wei for to quittance,³ þan leie þervpon scabiose grounden wip grese & do þe cure þerto, as þou schalt fynde in þe cure of antrax & carbuncula.⁸ & enpostyms þat comeþ in ioynctis þou schalt fynde in her propre place of akyng of ioynctes /

Apostym wipoutforþ aboute þe spaudis and þe gibbositees⁴ //

12

¶ viij^o. c.
If there is an apostema on the shoulders, purge the patient, and open it when it is ripe.

[^a 1r. 146]

If a ripe apostema breaks by itself, a fistula will arise.

Treat this fistula with mundificatives by means of a syringe, after having widened the hole of the fistula by a tent.

A Postym þat comeþ aboute the spaudlis wipoutforþ, leie þou noon repercussif þerto, saue it is better to drawe þe matere outward. First þou schalt purge him, for it is greet nede in þis place, & þan þou schalt leie þerto resoluinge þingis & maturatiuis;¹⁶ & whanne þe enpostym is rotid þou schalt not abide, to it breke it-silf;⁵ & principali in a coold cause, saue þou schalt opene þe enpostym & drawe out þe quittance, & þan þou schalt leie þerto mundificatiuis, & fulfille þe cure as it is aforesaid / In þis place þou²⁰ schalt take⁶ hede þat ofte tyme whanne þe enpostym is quitturid & is not opened wipoutforþ, þan it brekiþ inward hitwene þe .ij. ribbis, & whanne it is to-broke, þe pacient felip but litil greuance þerof, & þan þe quittance leueþ wipinne, & in long tyme herof comeþ²⁴ a festre. perfore þou schalt not abide til it breke it-silf outward, saue þou schalt opene it whanne it is quitturid, & þan leie þerto mundificatiuis & cure it vp, as it is aforesaid in opere enpostyms / ¶ If it so be þat þere engendre a festre þeron, or it be maad cleue²⁸ & entre inward, þan he mote vse waischingis þat ben mundificatif, & caste it in wip an instrument maad in þe maner of a clisterie. & if þe hole þerof be streit wipoutforþ, þan þou schalt putt yn a tente of þe pip of eldre, or of a sponge, or of malum terre,⁷ or³²

¹ in, above line.

³ in wei for to quittance, Lat. in via maturationis.

⁴ Gibbositas, tumour. *Dufr. Gloss.*—"Gibbosity, a bunching or standing out of any part, especially of the Back."—Phillips.

⁵ Lat.: non expecta crepationem per se.

⁷ "Malum terre, ciclamen, panis porcinus id. q^d dilnote and erthenote." *Alphita*, p. 107. mal. t. = galluc. *Wr. Wü.*, 133. 20.

brionie, or gencian, & putte into þe hole of þe festre. & þis wole
 make þe hole of þe festre to waxe more wide þan it was, þat þe
 ende of þe instrument mowe be putt þat schal be schape in þe
 4 maner of ¹a clisterie. & þanne þou schalt sepe hony & mirre in ^[1 ff. 146, bk.]
 watir, so þat þer be .x. partis of water, & of hony .ij. partis, & of
 mirre .ij. partis, & if þou doist þerto ysope & sauge, it wole be þe
 bettir / Sumtyme it is good for to do wijn in þe stide of watir, &
 8 principali if þe place be wipouten ony hete. & þis decoccioun þou
 schalt caste into þe festre wip an instrument as it is aforseid, &
 make þat þe pacient turne hidir & pidir, vpward & dounward, þat
 it mowe waische wel þe place þere þe quittance is. & þan make þe
 12 patient turne & ligge vpon þe hole of þe festre, & make him cowze
 þat al þe quittance mai goon out wip þe decoccioun. & whanne it is
 al oute, þan þou schalt make him a tent & anynte it in oile þat þe
 wounde close not togidere. & þus þou schalt worche, til þou se þe
 16 waisching come out of þe festre withoute ony quittance. & whanne
 þe festre is al clene, þan þou schalt fulfille þe cure with oynementis
 þat wolen regendre fleisch & fulfille þe cure as it is aforseid / If it
 so be þat þe wei of þe festre þat goiþ in & out ²be bicom hard &
 20 callous so þat it be a verri festre, þan þou muste hete an hoot yren
 þat it be as greet as þe hole of þe festre & brenne al þe hardnes
 þerof, & aftirward make þe cruste falle awei with buttir & opere
 þingis, & þanne make it clene, & þan drie it & soude it.
 24 ¶ Also it bifallip þat children han grete bocchis in her brest, &
 þat cometh of cowzinge þat puttip out þe matere, & also it cometh
 of greet wynd þat puttip out þe matere / þe cure herof in þe firste
 bigynnyng is in þis maner for to aswage cowzing, as almaundis
 28 grounden wip penidis & temperid with a decoccioun of fenel, & þis
 he schal vse / Also take swete almaundis .ij. partis, dragaganti,⁴
 semen citoniorum⁵ ana, oon parti, Iulip quod sufficit. & make
 herof a souping medicyn,⁶ þat it be as picke as hony. & whanne
 32 þe cowzinge is aswagid, þan make him a baþ wip rotis of altea, &

Keep the
 wound
 dilated until
 it is perfectly
 cleansed.

When the
 passage of
 [2 ff. 147]
 the fistula is
 callous, use
 the hot iron.

Mitigatio³
 Tussis

Children
 have aposte-
 mas in their
 chest in con-
 sequence of
 coughing and
 of wind in
 their body.

Allay the
 cough,

and apply a
 lotion.

³ MS. *Metegacho*.

⁴ Vigo Interpr.: "*Dragagantum*. *Tragacantha* is a brode. & a woddy rote appearyng about the earth, wher-oute manye lowe braunches sprynge, spreading themselues al about. There cleaueth to thys rote, a gummy liquour of a bright colour, & somewhat swete in tast, which they cal comunly *dragagantum*."

⁵ *citonium* = *Cotonea malus*, *Cydonea*, "Quince." Wr. Wü., 13, 19.
 "*Citonium*, goodaepel."

⁶ a souping medicyn, Lat. *medicina sorbilis*.

leues of malue, & fenigrec, & lyne seed soden in watir, & þis schal be cast vpon þe enpostym wip a vessel holden an hiȝe þere from / þanne aftirward þou schalt ¹dissolue þe matere & make it neische with medycyns þat ben forseid in hard enpostyms, & þan cure it vp ⁴as it is aforseid in þe enpostyms of wijnd. ¶ A greet boch þat comeþ of þe passioun of þe riggeboon, whanne þei ben of þe ioynct, is incurable whanne it is conformed /

Of an enpostym apperinge in þe moup of þe stomac / 8

¶ ix. 00
If there is an Apostema at the stomach, the liver, or the spleen, strengthen the affected part.

apply resolving medicines, but beware of repellents.

[¶ ix. 168]

This apostema easily gets indurated, and causes dropsy.

WHanne þere schewip an enpostym in þe moup of þe stomac & aboute þe regioun of þe lyuer & of þe splene: þou; summen wollen take hede to þe contrarie, bi my general rule² it is good & profitable to comforte þe place wip oile of mastíc, & oile of ¹²spica, & oile of lilie, & wip cold enplastris of rosis, & of absinthio, squinanto, cipero, citonijs wip mele of barli & opere þingis. & þou schalt be wel war of repercussiujs, whanne þe enpostym is ny; ony principal lyme, saue þou schalt leie þerto resoluyng³ & maturatif ¹⁶þingis. & loke þat þei be not medlid wip no þingis þat ben repercussif; for if þou leidist repercussiujs vpon þe stomak, or ³þe lyuere, or þe splene, þei wolde be enfebrid þerwip, & to al þe accioun of þe bodi wolde be enpeirid; for þese lymes serueþ principaly for ²⁰to norische al þe bodi / þerfore þou schalt not vse in þis caas pure maturatiujs, ne pure repercussiujs, ne colde þingis / What schalt þou do in þis caas? þou schalt awoide þe matere, & þou schalt comforte þe place with stiptikis, & tempere attractiujs, & do awei þe ²⁴matere. & if þou miȝt not, þan resoluþ þe matere, for it is greet perel⁴ of þis enpostym, for it wole liztli turne in to sclirosym, & þan it wole be hard to resoluþ, & aftirward it wole be cause of þe dropesie / þerfore if þou seest⁵ þat þe enpostym bicomþ hard, þan ²⁸þou muste leie þerto mollificatiujs & wip comfortatiujs. & þou muste be in þis caas ful wijs. & whanne þe enpostym is maturid, þan opene it as it is aforseid, & leie þerto mundificatiujs & cure vp þe enpostym as it is aforseid. 33

// Of an enpostym þat comeþ in iguine .id est þe gryndis

¶ x. 00/
[¶ ix. 168, bk.]

APostym comeþ often time in iguine for vlcers of þe ȝerde & of þe feet, for ⁶þe place is discending adoun of humours to þat ³⁶

² rule, above line.

⁴ perel, above line.

⁵ seest, in margin.

- place,¹ & þan it is not so greet drede² þerof.³ Saf if his bodi be ful of wickid humours, þan it is greet drede þerof / þis matere þou muste resoluē in þis maner. Take oile of camomille & anointe þe
- 4 wip þe enpostym, & leie þervpon wolfe vnwaische, & if it resoluē not in þis maner, þan leie þerto maturatiuis, as it is aforseide. ¶ If þe matere be hoot, þan lete him blood in þe veyne þat is clepid sophena. & þou schalt sotille⁴ his dieting, & leie þerto resoluynge
- 8 þingis þat ben not to strong, & þat þei drawe not to harde. & whanne þe cours of humours ceessiþ, þan leie þerto stronge resoluynge þingis. & in þis caas þis is good þerfore: lie of askis & of vryne, & wete þerinne stupis & leie vpon þe enpostym, for þis
- 12 makip maturatif & waastip it sotilly & driep it / If þou myzt not resoluē it, þan leie þerto maturatiuis & opene it, & þan leie þerto mundificatiuis & hele it vp as it is aforseid /

Apostemas in the groins are caused by ulcers of the yard or the feet.

Ry Apply resolving medicines; if the matter is not, bleed from the Vena Saphina.

Ry

Of an enpostym of þe hauuche & of þe cox.

- 16 **I**N þis place ofte tyme engendriþ an enpostym, & þou schalt fynde⁵ þere þe curis þerof in þe chapitre of dolour of ioynctis; saue if þe enpostym be without þe haunche in þe hipe, or in þe leg, or in þe foot, þan þou schalt do þerto þe same cure þat is aforseid
- 20 in þe enpostyms of þe arm. Saf herof þou schalt take kepe, þat oftetymes an enpostym gaderiþ in a mannes hipe al wiþinne in þe depnes of it, þat a leche schal not knowe it, but if he be þe more wijs / þerfor ypo[cras] seiþ: in placis þere enpostym is, and þe quit-
- 24 ture schewe not out, it is perilous / þerfor þou muste taste it wip þi fyngris, & loke where it is moost maturid, & opene it, and drawe out þe quittance, þan leie þerto mundificatiuis, & þan fulfille þe cure as it is aforseid /

¶ xi. co.

[p. 11. 149]

Apostema on the legs are treated like those on the arms.

A deep apostema in the hip must be opened. ypoecrus.

¹ Lat.: Sæpe provenit apostema in inguine propter vlcera virgæ et pedum: propterea quod locus est descensus humorum ad illa loca. The translator mistook "descensus" sb. for descensus part.

² drede, above line.

³ Compare Guiliel. de Salic. I. 42. Sl. 277, fol. 5 b.: "This secknesse is cleped bube or draguncell, or aposteme of þe grynde, & it is maad as oftest of cold matere whiche is cast out of þe lyuere to þoo places, & operwhile it is hoot. It is maad also, when a man is seck in his zerde for filþehede of kommen or of oper cause."

⁴ sotille, Lat. attenuare. O.Fr. soutilier. Compare sotilen with the abstract meaning, "argue subtly."—Piers the Plowman, ed. Skeat, Gloss.

⁵ Dufr. Gloss.: "Dracunculus, ulceris vel canceri species."

Apostym of þe 3erde & ballokis /

xij. c.

A windy
apostema of
the yard
occurs fre-
quently with
children.

[? If. 148, bk.]

R I3t^r as enpostyms comeþ in opere lymes, ri3t^r so þei comen in as bi þese signes þou mi3t knowe. Sumtyme a mannes 3erde swellip 4 with wynd, þat þou mi3t knowe bi enpostyms of wynd þat^r ben aforseid. & it^r fallip ofte to 3onge children,¹ & also þis enpostym þou mi3t knowe ²in þis maner, if^r þe place be hard & heuy & þer is no difference bitwixe þe colour herof & of þat^r oper partie of his 8 bodi.

A hot apos-
tema of the
yard and the
testes is
treated with
blood-letting,
a suitable
diet,

R
a hot plaster,

R
and dress-
ings.

[? If. 150]

¶ In an hoot^r enpostym of þe 3erde or of þe ballokis, þou schalt lete him blood in a veyne þat^r is clepid basilica in þe same side, & in þe .ij. dai lete him blood in þe sophene / Also þou schalt forbede 12 him wijn & fleisch & al maner swete metis þat^r engendriþ blood or colre. þan þou schalt leie þerto medecyns to putt^r awei þe mater, þat^r ben maad in þis maner. R^r, cortices granatorum, rosas siccas, & lentes & seþe hem in water til þei dissolue, & þan grinde hem in 16 a mortar wip oile of roses & a litil vinegre, & make herof an enplastre & leie it^r þeron hoot^r / Also take succi portulace siluestris, & olium rosarium & a litil vinegre, & wete heryn a lynnyn cloop & leie it^r aboute þe 3erde & hise ballokis / Whanne þe cours of þe mater 20 ceassip, þan do þerto mele of barley & of benis, or distempere þese wip þe 3elke of an ey & wip iuys of morel & oile of roses, & leie þeron. & whanne þe enpostym goiþ away, þan leie þeron enplastre of mele of benis ³& of fenigrec & camomille distemperid with gotis 24 talow / If þis enpostym gadere quittance & vlcers, þan cure it^r as þou schalt fynde in þe chapitre of vlcers of þe 3erde.

A cold apos-
tema of the
testes is
treated with
an ointment
and supposi-
tories.

R
A plaster for
an indurated
apostema.

¶ A coold empostym þat^r is in þe ballokis schal be curid wip anyoynting^r of þe matere wip medicyns or wip scharpe suppositorijs; 28 for þis drawip þe mater fro þe ballokis / If it^r be so þat^r þe enpostym be woxen hard in þe ballokis, þan leie þerto þis enplastre þat^r I haue ofte preued / Take bran of whete & grinde it^r wel in a mortar til it^r bicomme al poudre, & þan distempere it^r wip oximel 32 inaad of .ij. partis of vinegre & oon partie of hony, & dissolue þerinne gum armoniac & make herof an enplastre & leie it^r on hoot^r, & þis schal be remeued ofte. þis is auicens medicyna.

¶ If a mannes 3erde be swollen wip wijnd & þe cause be hoot^r, 36 þan lete him blood; if it^r be coold, þan leie þerto enplastris, & in þis caas among^r alle opere þingis þis is good / Take oile of roses iiij.

R

¹ Add. 26, 106, fol. 59 b.: accidit quibusdam iuuenibus calidis.

partis, of wex o part, melte hem togidere & þan waische hem in A plaster for
 coold water til it bicom as it were a whit oynement, & herwiþ apostema.
 1 anoynte þe place / If it be hoot, þan þou schalt make him caste, [¶ 12. 150, bk.]
 4 & þou schalt ȝeue him agnus castus,² & seed of rue & comyn & A plaster for
 anise & opere þingis þat waastij wijnd, & make an enplaster of apostema.
 þese þingis þat distriep wijnd / ¶ An enplaster þat gilbert made
 for swellyng of a mannes ȝerde & it is mitigatif .Rȝ, crummis of .Rȝ.
 8 whit breed & grinde hem in a mortar & tempere hem wiþ watir, & A lenitive
 þan boile hem til þei bicom picke, & do þerto a litil oile & a litil plaster of
 hony, & þan boile hem togidere & leie it vpon hoot // If a mannes Gilbert.
 ȝerde be swollen wiþ hete of liggyng bi a womman, þus þou schalt
 12 helpe him / Take leues of wipi & seþe hem in water & baþe his Rȝ
 ȝerde herynne & binde þerto þe leues // Also seþe lynseed & leues
 of malue & grynde hem togidere & make herof a plastre /

The cure of scrophularum & glandulum /³

16 CURE of glandularum & scrophularum is almoost oon, saue ¶ xij.
 herof is a difference / Scrophule comeþ þe moost part of Scrophula is
 malancoli & ben worse to dissolue. & glandule comeþ þe most caused by
 part of fleume, & ben lister to resolue / In boþe causis it is 4 neces- Melancholy;
 20 sarie to purge þe matere. & þe medicyn laxatijf maad of turbit is Glandula by
 good þerfore þat is aforseid in þe chapitre of allopucia, or in þis Phlegm.
 maner as .A. makij it / Rȝ turbit zinzi,⁴ zucare .3 .ij, & ȝeue þis [¶ 12. 151]
 ofte, or troiscus de turbit maad wiþ diarubarbe, & þou must sotile These apos-
 24 his dietyng, & he schal not ete to miche, & he schal drinke no tomas are
 water, & he schal holde his heed an hiz, & he schal kepe him fro treated with
 wepinge, & he schal not, whanne he is ful, slepe anoon þervpon, & purging.
 þou schalt anoynte þe place with oile of camomille, & wiþ oile of Rȝ
 The patient
 shall neither
 drink water,
 nor weep,
 nor sleep on a
 full stomach.

² Besides the names given in *N. E. Diet.*, s. v. Agnus castus, there are:
 "Agnus castus, frutex est, i. bischopeswort." *Sinon. Barth.*, p. 1. "A. c.,
 toutesayne." *Wr. Wü.* p. 562, 24 (xvth cent.). "Chastlambe" in *Maplet.* A
 greene Forest, fol. 39. *De Propr. Rer.* (Add. MS. 27944, fol. 216 a): "Agnus
 Castus is an herbe hoot and dryus and hap vertu to kepe men & women
 chaste a plinius seip. ¶ Perfore women of Rome vsede to bere wiþ hem
 þe fruyt of þis herbe in dyrige and service for dede men, whanne þey moste
 nedes lyre chaste for comyn honestee. ¶ Þis herbe is alway grene as dy-
 ascorides seip, and platearius also, and þe flour þerof is namelicke y-cleped
 agnus castus."

³ *Sl.* 2468, f. 97 (see p. 222, note 8): "Because þat þe cure of scrophules
 & glandules, as who seith, is bothe oone, but þer is a difference be as moche
 as scrophules ben for þe more partie of malancolye . . ."

⁴ MS. ZZ.

.Ry. lilie, & wip þis oile þat is apreued / Ry, radices electerij,¹ radices malue visci,² & kutte hem smal & leie hem in cold oile of oliuarum & do hem in a vessel of glas, & sette þis glas in a vessel of water, & make þe water to sepe, & be war þat þou saue þe glas fro breking. 4 & wip þis oile anointe him, & þan leie þeron wolfe vnwaiche / And if þis suffise not, make him a plastre of gotis tordis & oximel, or quik lyme & swynys grese þat it be freisch / & codd,³ or þis medicyne / Ry staphisacre, seminis lini,⁴ farini orobi, resine albe & 8 make herwip an enplastre wip ole & vinegre / Also anoþer þat is swiþe good. Take radices lilij, & seminis lini, ana,⁵ boile hem in wijn til þei dissolue, & þan do þerto of culuer tordis & make it a picke plastre, & þou schalt putte þerto culuer toordis more or lesse 12 as þou seest þat þe mater resolueþ more or lesse, as þou seest þat it nedip. ¶ Also diaculon⁷ rasis, & diaculon Iohannes Mesue þat schulen be seid in þe antidotarie, ben good for to resolue scrophulas / Whanne þou resoluest þe mater & sum þerof goiþ awei, & sum 16 þerof leueþ hard, þan þou schalt do þerto sumtyme mollificatiuis & sumtyme resoluyng pingis //

Use one of the following plasters. One prepared with goat's-dung.

.Ry. [15. 151, bk.] Ry

Another prepared with dove's-dung.

Glandula and Scrophula must be opened when they are quite ripe.

[10. 152]

¶ Glandule & scrophule ben parti of douce fleume or of blood; it is ful hard to make hem clene, for sum partie þerof wole leue 20 hard & wole not bicomme maturatif. þou schalt [not]⁸ haste to opene hem saue þou schalt leue if þou miȝt, til it be al rotid, & þan open it & leie þerto mundificatiuis / & in þis place it is good to leie þerto vnguentum apostolorum & poudre of affodille & opere 24 liȝt corosiuis. & þou schalt in no maner leie þerto realgar,⁹ ne noon violent¹⁰ pingis, & leie þeron a mundificatif in which be medlid rotis of lilie wel soden, for þis mundificatif makip clene & also quitturip þe remenaunt of þe matere / þou must take greet dili- 28 gence for to make clene glandulas & scrophulas, for þei ben ful hard

¹ Lat. elaterium, *ἑλατήριον*. *Alphita*, p. 58, "Elacterium succus cucurbitae agrestis idem. sed *electerides* sunt cucumeres agrestes tam fructus eorum quam ipsa herba." *Vigo Interpret.*: "Elaterium is the iuice of a wild cocumber."

² *malua viscum* = *Althæa officinalis*, marsh-mallow.

³ Some words omitted. Lat. : cum axungia porcina, sine sale antiquo.

⁴ MS. *staphisacre seminis. niri*.

⁵ *partes æquales om.*

⁷ "*Diaachylon*, a Plaister made of the Mucilages or pappy Juice of certain Fruita, Seeds, and Roota, whose Office is to ripen and soften." *Phillips*.

⁸ not om. Lat. : Non ergo festines in earum apertura.

⁹ *realgar*, Arab. See Skeat, *Et. Dict.* *Alphita*, p. 156, *Realgar* vel *risalgar* est uena terre." *Vigo Interpret.*, "Realgar is made of brymstone, vnslaked lyme, and orpimente. It kylleth rattes."

to make clene, & ofte per engendriþ þerof festris / ¶ If þou desirist
to cure glandulas & scrophulas wiþ kuttyng, loke wher glandula or
scrophula be neische, & be war of veynes & senewis, & loke þat
4 þer be no veine þere nyȝ. þan take him vp wiþ þi list hond &
drawe him vp as hiȝe as þou miȝt & kutte þe skyn endelongis þe
necke, & be war þou touche not þe clooþ þat he is folde þerinne, &
þane score¹ him & drawe him out al hool wiþ þe clooþ, & if þer
8 leue ony þing þerof, caste þeron poudre of affodille or sum oþer list
corosif, & þanne regendre fleisch & soude it vp / If it so be þat
glandula or scrophula be closid wiþ veynes or wiþ arterijs, þan
kutte him not in no maner, for þer miȝt come greet þerof.²

In extirpating
the apostema
take care not
to injure a
blood-vessel.

12 // *þe cure of þe cancre not vlcerid & his cure /*

CAusis & difference þou hast herd of a cankre³ & in what
maner þou schalt cure cancrum þat is not vlceratus / Rasis
seip, & it is soop, & I haue seen ofte tyme, þat whanne ony man
16 touchiþ a cancre wiþ iren or wiþ ony medicyn corrosif, but if þei
kutte him away clene wiþ alle his rotis, ellis þei makip þat þe
cancer is vlceratus / & for to make a cancre vlceratum, it ne fallip
for no goodnes, saue it makip þe patient haste þe fastere to his
20 deep, & schortip his lijf & bringip him in turment // ¶ þerfore if
a cancre be in a place þat he mai be kutt awai wiþ alle hise rotis,
whanne he is kutt awai, þan þou schalt brenne þe place wiþ an
hoot iren or wiþ gold, & þan þou schalt fulfille þe cure as it is
24 aforseid in þe chapitre of a cancre þat is vlceratus.⁴ ¶ If it so be
þat þe cancre be perfit & greet, þan þou schalt touche him wiþ
noon iren ne wiþ no medicyn corrosif, saue þou schalt kepe þe
patient wiþ good dieting, & he schal ofte tymes haue medicyns for
28 to purge malancolie wiþ gootis whey & wiþ epithimo, & sumtyme
lete him blood, & þou schalt anoynte þe place wiþ vnguentum rasis

¶ xliij. ca.
[¶ If. 152, bk.]

Rasis

Unless a non-
ulcerating
cancer is
removed
thoroughly, it
becomes an
ulcerating
one.

Use the hot
iron after
cutting.

A large and
fully deve-
loped cancer
shall neither
be cut nor
cauterized.

¹ *score*. Lat. *discarnare*.

² Sl. 2463, fol. 98: "But if þe glandule or þe scrofule be intrikes^a with reynes, arteries oþer synewes, so þat þei cleue oþer be faste knytte to hem, for nothing þou schall nyȝe hem noþer with Iren noþer with noone other corosyue medecyne."

⁴ A different opinion is expressed in Sl. 2463, fol. 115: "The cure of þe canker is done in two maners. The tone cure is for to kutte away all þe membre þat þe canker is inne, with all þe synnesse; and þis is an yuell cure and may be done, but it is not plesaunt." Ibid., fol. 115 b.: "And yf þer be noon oþer remedie but for to cutte hit away with alle þe rotes, me thenkith hit is more honest to leue hit þanne to do hit."

^a Lat. *intricata*.

[1 ff. 158] de thutia, þat is ¹ aforseid in cura cancri vlcerati. & þou schalt leie þeron colde leues, & alwei þis schal be þin entencioun, for to kepe þat þe cancre wexe not ne rotie not / I haue seen ful manye lechis þat hadden greet name in cirurgie þat founden cancris in men, and ⁴ wexe not, & þe cancris were not vlcerati & miȝte ful long tyme haue lyued if he hadde be kept aftir my teching in þis book; saue vnkunnyng cirurgians weneþ þat in kutting of a cancre þei schulde finde quittance & ben disseyued, & so disseyuen hem-silf & also þe ⁸ patient, & þan whanne þei han kutt þei fynde nouȝt saue fleisch corrupt wiþout quittance in þe maner of a sponge, wherfore þe lippis of þe wounde wole come aȝen worse þan þei were tofore & more stynking. & wiþ þe greet stynkinge þe spirit is schent, & makip þe ¹² patient þe rapere drawe toward þe deef / & if þe cancre were not vlceratus þe patient miȝte lyue longe þerwith.

Many patients would live a long time if they were not treated by unskilful physicians.

Bocium þat comeþ of humours corrupt.

¶ xv^o c^o. **B**ocium is a postym þat comeþ of humours, & principali it is ¹⁶ engendrid of fleume corrupt / Sumtyme it comeþ of ³ hote enpostyms, as whanne þei ben rotid & not opened. & þou þe subtil mater be drawen out, þat opere part bicometh hard & leueþ þere longe tyme / & sumtyme a rume⁴ fallip adoun of his heed into ²⁰ his necke & makip þe matere wexe more / þis maner enpostym haþ manie diuers signes / Sum maner þerof is lijk as it were cley, & summe is lijk schellia. Summe is as it were chese, & summe is as it were drastis of oile, & so þis enpostym in his corrupcioun takip ²⁴ manie diuers colouris /

This apostema is treated with drawing and caustic medicines.

.Ry.
A caustic medicine.

þis enpostym schal be helid wiþ drawynge pingis & wastynge þat schulen be taken bi þe mouþ & leid to wiþoutforþ / þou schalt ȝeue him bi þe mouþ a medicyn for to purge fleume, & þan þou ²⁸ schalt ȝeue him a medicyn for to waaste þe matere & is maad in þis maner / Ry *paruam plantam nucis a terra cum suis radicibus extirpatam id est* take a litil plauntein of a note & take it vp of þe ground wiþ alle hise rotis, & grynde it wiþ greynes of peper, so þat if þe ³² of þe notis .ȝ. iiij., þan do þerto of peper ȝ. j., & þis þou schalt boile

² In later hand at the bottom of the page: *contra fetorem cancri. R pulueris corticis quercus farine sileginis ana succi appii mell ana succus & mell inapissentur decoque super ynguem cum puluere farina. Item decoque puluerem corticis quersini in aqua et inde tepide laua canserem a fetore paliando.*

⁴ rume, rheum, O.Fr. reume.

in a quart of wyn ¹ of paris til it come to þe half, & þanne cole it, [16. 154]
 & herof þe patient schal take euery dai 3 ij. // ¶ Enplastris þat ^{A caustic plaster.}
 wastiþ ben enplastris þat enpostyms of fleume be wastid þerwith /
 4 If þou desirist for to cure it wiþ kuttyng, þan þou must loke, wher
 þe matere þat is wipinne be neische or hard. & wher it be among
 veynes & arterijs, þou schalt touche it wiþ noon iren in no maner /
 If it so be þat þe mater be neische & if þou miȝte kutte it for ^{In extirpating this apostema do not injure the integument wherein the tumour is situated.}
 8 perels þat ben forseid, þan kutte it & drawe out þe mater, & leie
 þerto mundificatiuis, & alle þingis as it is aforseid in þe general
 chapitre / If þe mater be hard & þe enpostym be hangynge & be
 fro veynes & arterijs, þan kutte þe skyn endelongis aboue, & be war
 12 þat þou touche not þe bagge þat bocium sittip þeron & scarre² it
 al abouteforþ & drawe him out with al his skyn. & if þer leue
 þeron ony þing of his skyn, þan caste þeron poudre of affodille, &
 make it clene wiþ poudre of sum list corrosif þerwiþ—vnguentum
 16 viride,³ & þan regendre fleisch, & þan drie it vp as it is aforseid /

¶ Of þe akyng of ioynctis.

[16. 154, bk.]

NOW it is seid pleyulier of alle enpostyms, now speke we of ¶ xvj. c.
 passiouns þat comeþ in ioynctis. & þis passioun is myche ^{Diseases of the joints are similar to apostemas,}
 20 lik to enpostyms in causis & signes & curis, & also it diuersiþ
 miche fro opere enpostyms / For þou þe place be greet to-swollen,
 it comeþ but late or neuere to quittance. Swellynge & akyng of
 ioinctis, þis passioun is vnknown to manie kunnyng lechis þat han
 24 greet name. Bi þe cause þat cirurgians ben clepid algate to þis
 manere passioun, þerfore I haue studied to make a general chapitre
 of passiouns of ioinctis. & I haue take miche þerof þe bokis of
 Rasis & of myn owne worching þat I haue proued. ¶ þe causis ^{Pains in the joints are caused by an evil condition of the limbs or the body,}
 28 þat makip akinge in ioynctis: or it comeþ of yuel complexioun of
 lymes, or it comeþ of hoot complexioun þat hetip, or it comeþ of
 coold complexioun þat cooldip / Drie ligaturis of ioynctis con-
 streineþ & makip akyng,⁴ & moistnes makip neuere akyng wiþ-
 32 outen oper⁵ mater / Mater þat makip akinge of ioynctis is ofte tyme
 haboundaunce of blood, & ofte tyme it is raw fleume, & moost
 principali colre or blood medlid with fleume / & it comeþ ful seelde
 of fleume, but if it be medlid wiþ ony oper þing as colre / In what

² *scarre*. Lat. *scarnare*.

³ *unguentum viride*. See Notes.

⁴ Lat. *sicca* (complexio) *ligamento junctarum astringendo dolorem aliquando generat*.

and frequently by phlegmatic humour.

The physician can easily be in error, and apply wrong medicines.

[² 12. 154, bk.]

Treatment, when the illness arises from a bad condition of the body.

If it is caused by the humours, soothe the pain.

Auicen

and Rasis differ in their treatment.



[² 12. 156]

Apply first a lenitive plaster or ointment, or give a medicine,

then let blood

maner þou schalt knowe which humour be in þe cause of akyng
of iointis, þou schalt finde in þe chapitre of allopucia & in þe
general chapitre of enpostyms, if þou takist good kepe of þe signes
of þe forseid chapitris, what humour is in cause of akyng of 4
ioinctis / Saue þis þou muste take hede, þat ofte tyme raw fleumatik
humours makip akyng of iointis as it is forseid, & þan þe colour
of þe lyme schal be but litil¹ chaungid þefore / & þan a leche but
if he be þe more expert þeron mai be bigilid. & sumtyme a litil 8
quantite of colre wole schewe vpon þe lyme, & þan þe leche wole
leie þerto coolde þingis, & þan þe mater of fleume wole bicom hard,
& so þe greuauunce wole be worse þan it was / þefore it is greet
nede þat þe leche be kunnyng & knowe wel þe² mater of passiouns 12
of ioyntis.

¶ The cure of akyng of iointis þat comþ of yuel complexioun
oonly, þou schalt remeue with þingis þat ben contrarie to þat com-
plexoun :³ as if þe mater be hoot, þan þou schalt remeue it with 16
colde þingis, & if þe mater be coold, þan þou schalt remeue it with
hoot þingis, & if þe mater be of drieness, þan þou schalt remeue it
with moist þingis, & with metis & drinkis þat makip fatt, & with rest⁴
& with gladnes ; for as faste as his bodi bicomþ fatt, he schal be 20
hool of þat passioun / þis passioun þat comþ of humours, is curid
with mitigacion of þe akyng, & I fynde diuers opiniouns þeron /
& þefore I wole schewe hem in þis chapter / Auicen seiþ : þat
whanne þou wolt worche in þis mater, þi principal entencioun schal 24
be for to do awei þe akyng / And Rasis forbedip þat þou schalt
leie þerto no repercussiu, ne noon resolutiu but if þe mater be
avoidid tofore / For to do away þe akyng : saue awoide þe mater,
or leie þerto a repercussif or a resolutif. & þan Rasis seiþ þat 28
þou schalt awoide him, & auicen forbedip þat / In what maner
schulen we worche þanne, whanne þou fyndist a man þat hap greet
akyng ? / First þou schalt leie a plastre to þe lyme þat it be
mitigatif or an oynement þat be mitigatif, & þe difference herof 32
schal be aftir þat þe mater is // Also þou miȝt ȝeue him sumwhat
bi þe moup for to aswage þe akyng. & þou schalt fynde greet
plente in þis chapitre of defensiuis & mitagnitiuis to defende þe
mater / And whanne þe akyng is perfiztli swagid lete him blood 36

¹ A second *litil* deleted.

³ Lat.: Cura doloris iuncturarum quæ ex mala complexionē sola est, non est nisi cum contrariis complexionis malitiam removere.

⁴ MS. *rest*.

if þe cause be of blood. & if it be of anoþer cause avoide it. & from the sound limb,
if þou letist him blood, þou schalt do it in a lyme aforzens. & if
þou wolt avoide þere matere, loke þat þou knowe þe cause / for þis or evacuate any evil matter:
4 is ful necessarie for a leche to kunne / Whanne þe mater is avoidid
& þe akyngce ceessid, þan þou schalt bigynne wiþ resoluyngce medi-
cyns þat ben forseid. ¶ Also in curis of akyngce in ioyntis be wel and attend to the patient's appetite and digestion.
war þat þou feble not his appetit, for þis sijknes cometh moost of
8 humours þat ben vndefied. & þerfore þou schalt in as miche as
þou miȝt make him haue good ap¹petite & good digestioun / If þou [11. 156, bk.]
fyndist oonly þe mater coold, þat makip ful seelde ony gret akyngce,
saue it makip þe lyme heuy. þis þou schalt wite þat in a coold
12 cause þat makip akyngce in iointia, þouȝ it be hard to do awei,
neþeles þou schalt zeue him no strong^t medicyn ne he schal not be Therefore do not give a strong purgative, but a mild one in several doses.
purgid hastili as manie men wenep, saue it schal be do wiþ a propre
medicyn þat is sure. & it schal ofte be zeuen, so þat þou mai
16 algate kepe his appetit, for þer is noon so strong^t medicyn þat mai
avoide þe mater al at oonys / And if þou zeuest him a strong^t
medicyn it wole afeble hise vertues. & þerfor þou must chese a
lizt medicyn þat mowe comforte þe stomac & þat it mowe be zeue
20 ofte //

¶ Of akyngce of ioyntis þou hast had general rulis; now we
mote speke of curis here after. ¶ If þou be sent after to a man
þat haþ arteticam,² þat is as myche to seie as a goute, first þou Arteticam.
24 muste loke wher þe mater be hoot or coold, or wheþer he haue
strong^t akyngce or lizt akyngce / & if his akyngce be strong^t, þan ³leie When gout is attended with [11. 157]
þerto mitigatiuis / In oon maner þou schalt zeue him medicyns bi
þe moup þat ben mitigatif for to take away þe akyngce, & enplastris pain, give lenitive medicines, and apply plasters.
28 þat ben mitigatif, & leie vpon þe place. ¶ A good medicyn þat
schal be zeue bi þe moup: Rȝ, glandes & leie hem in vinegre adai & R.
anyȝt, & after þat drie hem to þe sunne or in an ouene, & þan kepe
it / & whanne þou wolt zeue it, grynde it & zeue þerof ȝ .j. ; þis
32 medicyn makip blood greet & remeueþ þer from / Also take lentes

² *artetica*, *arthritica*, gout, *Trevisa De propr. rer.*, Lib. VII, Cap. 56 (Add. MS. 27,944, fol. 96 b.). "Arthetica is ache and ewel in fingers and tone wiþ swelling & sore ache / and whanne hit is in þe fyngres, hit hatte cyragra, and in þe toone hit hatte podagra, if hit is in þe whirlobones and ioyntes it hatte sciatica passio, and cometh of colerik blood & of fleumatik humours, & cometh most ofte of reumatik cause." The author of the Treatise on Surgery, preserved in Sl. 1736, mentions this disease as a hereditary one. Ibid. fol. 122 b.: "also yt ys often tymes sene þat þis arthetica passio gese by crytaunce as fro þe [fadyr] to the childur, and so forth to edyr."

A medicine
only to be
given in great
need.

excorticatas, semen coriandri, succum glandulum, hermodactulis¹
wip sugre & coold watir, saue herof þou must take kepe þat þese
medicyns schulen not be ȝeue but in greet nede, & whanne þe
akyng is so greet þat it mai not be take awei. & þei mai be 4
moost sotilly ȝeue whanne þe mater is subtil & scharp / & if þe
mater be greet & miche, þan þis medicyn schal not be ȝeue. ¶ If
R þe mater be coold & of greet akyng, þan take hermodactulis, thuris
ana xx. partis, cucumeri partes .x., & ȝeue þerof 3 .iiij. vpon þe 8
[¹ If. 157, bk.]
R place / If þe matere be litil & scharp ²& subtil / Rȝ, amigdalas,
camphore ana, grinde hem & tempere hem wip watir of roses /
R Also anopir in þe same kinde / Rȝ, mirre, panis albissimi & subtilis-
simi 3 j, opij 3 ſ, grinde hem wel & tempere hem wip milk of a 12
R cow, & leie it þeron whanne it is greet nede / Item Rȝ, opij, cortices
mandragorae ana .3. v, grinde hem & tempere hem wip þe iuys of
portulacae & oile of roses & a litil vynegre / Also an oynement for
to ceesse þe akyng / Rȝ, olium rosarum 3 .iiij, cere 3 j., melte þe oile 16
R
An oynement þat
senses ache
& þe wex togidere & waische it with oile of roses, & þan do þerto
citriini 3 j., opij 3 ſ / If þe mater be myche & be neiþer more in
quantite þan in qualite, & þou wolt defende more þe cours of þe
mater, þan do awei þe akyng.³ Rȝ, cortices granatoris, sandali⁴ 20
albi, & rue,⁵ & roses, boli armenici, ferrugine,⁶ opij, confice cum
succo mirtilorum vel foliorum salicis, or with a decocciun of hem in
watir wip a litil oile of roses & vinegre & make herof an oynement.
& whanne þe akyng is aswagid, þan dissolue þe mater of blood wip 24
letyng blood. & þat suffisiþ as it is aforseid. ¶ Colre þou schalt
dissolue in þis maner / Rȝ, mirabolanorum citrinorum .3. vj., ⁷grinde
R
[¹ If. 158]
hem & leie hem al anyzt in li ſ of sirup of viole, & 3 .iiij. of wijn
of pomegarnates þat ben swete, amorowe boile hem altil & do þerto 28
zuccare .3. ſ, hermodactylorum .3. ſ., & ȝeue it him in þe mornyng.
& if þou wolt make itt more coold, do þerto .3. .ij. of musilaginis

¹ "*Hermodactyla*, crawanleac." Wr. Wü. 137, 3.—"*Hermodactylus*, a round-headed Root, brought from Syria, which is of an insipid Taste; and gently purges Phlegm." Phillips.

³ Add. 26,106, fol. 63: Si uero materia fuerit multa et times plus de quantitate quam de qualitate, et uis plus prohibere materię cursum quam extinguere . . .

⁴ *sandali albi*, σάνταλον. The d in sandal is explained by influence of Arab. sandal (Devic). Matth. Sylvat. mentions three sorts of Sandal: album, ruffum et citrinum. See *Alphita*, p. 161. *whit saunders* and *reed saunders* are distinguished in Sloane MS. 2463, fol. 155 b (c. c. 1450).

⁵ *rue* for *rubidi*.

⁶ Lat. *foenugreci*.

- peillij or 3 .j. ¶ This is a good electuarie perfore .Ry, *citoniorum* li .Rk.
 ff., & make hem to gobettis, & leie hem in vinegre adai & anizt / & A good
 þan wrynge hem & grinde hem smal, & do þerto scamonie þat it be electuary,
 4 good .3 .j, cardamomi, cubube .3 .iij, spice nardi .3 .j, rosis .3 .v, to purge
 zuccare li ff, make herof a letuarie þat purgip wel colre & comfortip choler and
 þe stomac. þou schalt zeue herof .3 .ij. & þou miȝt scharpe it to strengthen
 more if þou wolt with a litil hermodactylis. ¶ Þese ben good the stomach.
 8 pelottis for þe same cause / Ry, aloes .3 .ij, hermodactylos .3 .j, .Rk.
 scamonie .3 ff, rosis .3 .j, make herof pelottis with sirupo violarum, Pills for the
 & þou schalt zeue herof .3 .j. Whanne þe passioun bigynneþ to go same pur-
 awei with þese medicyns, þan þou schalt leie þerto plastris þat ben pose.
 12 resolyunge: as of malue & bismalue, camomille, mellilotum, absin- Resolving
 thium, peratorie, semen caulium, aneti, fenugreci, ¹semen lini, [ff. 158, bk.]
 furfuris, & swynys grese, & gandris grese, & hennis grese, & oile of
 camfre, & olium aneti. & whanne þe cours of humours coessip,
 16 þan þou schalt vse oonly resolyunge þingis & make þerof enplastris /
 Also to do awaye residue of þe akinge, þis is a good medicyn / Ry, .Rk.
 olium camomille 3 .iij, cere .3 .j., seminis aneti & caulium, florum
 camomille ana .3 .iij. & make herof an oynement / Also in anoþer
 20 maner / Ry, fenigreci, semen lini, aneti, & tempere hem with iuys of .Rk.
 caulium. & herof þou must take kepe, þat as ofte as þou wolt vse
 clene resolutiuis, þou schalt algate waische þe lyme þat is to-swollen A lotion for
 wiþ a decoccioun of malue & bismalue, & florum of camomille & the limb.
 24 melliloti, absinthii & opere mo, & þe lyme schal be waische þerwiþ
 til it bicomme reed, & þan þou schalt anoynte him / And þis þou
 schalt wite þat as meuyng & baping greueþ þe passioun in þe firste
 bigynnyng, riȝt so þei ben in þe ende riȝt greet helping / For Moving and
 28 to stuwe & bape doiþ awei þe laste part of þe mater & makip bathing is
 a mannys lymes haue her meuyng as þei schulde haue. & also it obnoxious at
 is good whanne þe patient goip out of ²his stue, if hise iointis the beginning
 akip, þan frote hem wel wiþ salt grounde / If þe mater be coold þou of the illness,
 32 schalt diȝte him wiþ diazinziberis þat is aforseid in allopucia. & but usefull at
 þan þou schalt dissolue wiþ trocisco de turbit wiþ hermodactylis the end of the
 maad in þis maner / Ry, diazinziberis predicti 3 .j. & ff, turbit electi R
 .3 .j, hermodactulorum alborum solidorum 3 ff, & viij greines of
 36 anise, & make þerof a gobet wiþ a litil hony. & þis schal be zeue
 in þe mornyng. & þerafter he schal drinke a litil wijn hoot & a
 litil water; or wiþ þese pelottis / Ry, hermodactylorum, saturionis³ R

³ Saturion, iarus. See *Alphita*, p. 158.

sene ana .3 .v, ierapigre¹ þat entriþ in pululas cochias .3 .x, pulpe
coloquintide, centaurie. ana .3 .v, euforbij .3 .ij, turbit .3 .ij, cassie,²
sinapis, piperis, castorij ana .3 .j. & make herof pelottis with hony.
& þou schalt ȝeue herof .3 .j. at oony, & þis medicyn schal be 4
ȝeue manie tymes. & in daies bitwixe he schal take diazinziberum
of oure makinge þat is forseid. & if it be in winter, þou schalt
ȝeue him diatrion piperion³ or anoþer hoot eletuarie // ¶ Anoþer
electuarie þat dissoluiþ akyng in ioyntis þat cometh of raw mater. 8
.R. Rȝ, camedrios,⁴ centaurie minorum ana. 3 .vii, aristologia longa.
[¹ l. 159, bk.] ⁵gencian. ana. 3 .vj, agarici .3 .ij, vtriusque spice ana .3 .j, make
A lectuare þat dysolues
Ache in
Iunnotes
hem wiþ hony. þou schalt ȝeue herof þe quantite of a note eerli
& late. Men þat ben lene schulen not take þis medicyn // Whanne 12
þe patient is purgid sufficiently, þan þou schalt vse enplastris for to
R leie to þe place / Rȝ, oold swynis grese þat it be freisch li j., &
medle þerwiþ quyk-lyme & make þerof a plastre & leie vpon þe
R place / Also take stercus caprinum & distempere it wiþ vinegre & 16
R hony ana, & leie it þeron / Also Rȝ, aristologia, radices yrios,
elleborus, & piper, boile hem in oile & do þerto ȝelow wax & make
þerof an oynement. ¶ Also diaquilon maad of litarge & oile &
iuy of mustard seed. & if þou wolt haue mo remedies, go to þe 20
Rasis. book of Rasis, & þere þou schalt fynde in þe chapitre of ioyntis,
medicyns ynowe þerfore. ¶ Also if þou desirist to comforte þe
lyme & do awei þe coold mater wiþ repercussiuus, in þe laste chapter
of þis book þou schalt fynde repercussiuus & mollificatiuis ynowe // 24

/ Of sciatica passio⁶ /⁷

¶ xvij^o. 100
[¹ l. 100]
Pain in the
haunches

A kyng of haunchis schal be curid wiþ avoidinge of þe mater id
est laxatiuis, for repercussiuus ben not þerfore, for þe matere⁸ is
in þe depnes of þe lyme, &⁹ ne mowe not come þerto. Resolutiuis 28

¹ "Hiera Picra, a purging Electuary invented by Galen, and made of
Aloes, Spikenard, Saffron, Mastick, Honey, &c." Phillips. ² MS. camif.

³ diatrion piperion, a medicine composed of three sorts of pepper.

⁴ "Chamædrys, the Herb Germander, or English Treacle." Phillips.
Camædreos ance Teterwose. Wr. Wü. 569, 47 (xvth cent.).

⁵ MS. passis.

⁷ De Propr. rerum, Lib. VII, Cap. 57 (Add. 27,944, fol. 96 b.): "Gutta
sciatica is an yuel þat cometh of humours þat falliþ down into þe grete senone
þat is bytwene þe grete brannes of þe hanche as constantyn seip. ¶ And
cometh ofte of gleymy humours i-gadred togedres in þe holounes of þe ioyntes
& of þe haunche / somtyme of bledy humours i-medlid wiþ colera & alle þess
beþ ofte cause of ache þe whiche ache strecchith into þe legges & anon to þe
helo & also anon to þe litil [too]." ⁸ The subject is: repercussivus.

- ben not perfore, for þei mai not come to þe depnes of þe mater. & for þe mater is so greet, it schulde more drawe to þe place humours þan dissolue. Saue þou must aswage þe akinge, & þou schalt do
- 4 awei þe akyng with oile & hony & fatnes þat doib awei¹ akinge.
- ¶ If þe mater come of blood, þan lete him blood in a veyne þat is clepid basilica in þe same side, & in þe secunde dai lete him blood in a veyne þat is clepid sciatica, & principaly if þe mater descende
- 8 adoun wipoutforþ toward þe foot, for þan it mai principaly be holpen / If þe mater come of fleuma, þan purge him wip pelottis of hermodactylorum / Saue herof þou schalt take kepe þat bifore his purgacioun bineþe forþ² he schal haue a vomet. For if þou make
- 12 him a medicyn laxatif bineþeforþ & no vomet tofore, þan it wole drawe more þe mater toward þe place þan awayward / perfor first þou schalt make him a vomet, & aftirward a medicyn laxatif / And perfore medicyns laxatiuis summe ben propre for akyng of þe
- 16 haunchis, as colocintida, yrios, sarcocolla, ³centaurea, agaricus, & infusioun of aloes. For infusioun of aloes wole make blood passe fro him at his sege, & þan þe akinge wole go awei & he schal be hool / & whanne he is perfitli maad clene wip medicyns laxatiuis
- 20 þan þou miht leie þerto enplastris maad in þis maner / R̄, nasturcij,⁴ peretri,⁵ capparis, grinde hem & tempere hem wip lie maad of askis of a fige tree, & make þerof a picke enplaster as it were hony, & anointe þe place til it be ful of bladdris & þe bladdris ful of water,
- 24 riȝt as þe place were brent wip fier. & þan anynte þe place wip butter, & leie þeron caule leues þat þe bladdris soude not togideris anon; for þe lenger þat þei leueþ þeron, þe bettir it wole be. Eiper anynte þe place oonli with mel anacardi,⁶ & þat makip
- 28 bladdris. & what maner þou schalt make mel anacardi, þou schalt fynde in þe antidotarie þat techip to make medicyns & cauterijs / Saue herof þou must take kepe þat þou schalt not vse þese medicyns þat makip cauterijs, but if his bodi be wel avoidid wip medicyns
- 32 laxatiuis tofore; for if his bodi be ⁷not purgid, it wole drawe more

must not be treated with repellent or resolving medicines.

Use blood-letting, if the illness is caused by the blood.

Purge, if phlegm is the cause, and first give an emetic.

[7 ff. 160, bk.]

When the patient is well purged, apply plasters.

R
A blistering plaster.

.Nota.

Purge the patient before applying the blister.

[7 ff. 161]

¹ awei, above line.

² bineþe forþ, Lat. per inferius. See *N.E. Dict.*, s. v. beneath-forth.

⁴ nasturtium, a kind of cress.

⁵ peretrum, Lat. piretrum. Anthemis pyrethrum (Dunglison), "Piretrum . . . pelestre."—*Alphita*, p. 145. "Pyrethrum, Bartram, wild or bastard Pellitory, an Herb the Root of which is very biting and hot."—Phillips,

⁶ "Anacardus. Or after Ruellius *anacardium*: is the frute of a tre, growing in Sicilia, and Apulia, called vulgarly, Pediculus Elephantis. The tuyoe wherof is called *Mel Anacardi*, which is a ruptory medicine."—Halle, *Table*, p. 10.

.R.
A plaster of
Avicenna.

mater to þe place þan awayward. ¶ Also agens þe sciatica passio here þou schalt haue an experiment preued of *Avicenna*. Take gotis tordis & drie hem, & make hem to pouder, & distempere hem wip strong vinegre & made hoot, & make herof a plastre, & leie it vpon as hoot as þou maist suffre, & anoynte þerwip his haunch. ¶ Also a medicyn þat is forseid of *cameorios* & *centaurea*¹ is good þerfore, for it wole drawe awei bi vryne / ¶ Item: cauterijs maad in þe nexte welle vnder þe place of þe akings ben gode þerfor after 8 þe tyme þat his bodi is maad clene wip purgaciouns, & tofore þou schalt make him no cauterijs.

Of þe maner of dieting of hem þat han passions in
ioinctes /

11

¶ xvij. c. 60
A patient
with a disease
of the joints
shall abstain
from wine,

[¶ If. 161, bk.]

and if there
is hot matter,
from meat
and fish;

and if the
matter is
cold he shall
eat only once
a day.

IN what maner þou schalt diete men þat han passiouns in iointis. þou schalt wite þat þer is no þing so greuours to þis passioun as is wyn, & it is principali forbede in an hoot cause, & so it schal be in a coold cause; for whanne it is lit take, it persip litli to þe iointis, & makip wei to þe mater for to falle þerto / Saue if þe passion be coold, & þe patient mai not wel² defie his mete, þan þou schalt graunte him a litil wijn, & not to miche for þe causis þat ben forseid. ¶ In an 2^d hoot cause make him drinke þat is forseid in þe chapiter of dieting of woundis, or he schal vse *vinum granatorum* wip coold water. & þe pacient schal absteine him fro fleisch & fisch & vse *lactucis*, *portulacis* / & if he be gretli feble, þan þou schalt zeue him litil 2^d chickenys. & lete þou not him drinke wijn bi no maner if his passioun be hoot / & whoso hap þe coold passioun herof, he schal holde him wel apaied³ for to ete oonys adai & not to miche. & lete him drinke ydromel wel soden / for if he mai suffre hungur & 2^d þirst he mai soone be hool. & he schal in no maner ete, but if he haue wil þerto.

¶ The firste teching of egritudines of yzen, ouper
passioun & anothami /

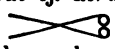
3:

¶ 10. c. 61

NOW wolen we make a tretice of passioun of lymes þat fallip for no woundis, & curis þerof comeþ ofte to cirurgians

¹ *centaurea*, written above *cauteris*.

² he schal holde him wel apaied, Lat. sit contentus. See *N.E. Dict.*, a. v. apaid. O.Fr. apaier. Compare: je m'en tieng bien paiez. (Littré.)

- handis¹ / I wole bigynne of sijknis of yzen & to speke of anatho-
miam þerwiþ þat was not forseid in þe .ij. book / þou schalt fynde
in summe bokis of auctoritees þat a mannes izen ben maad of .iiij.
4 humouris & of .vij. cootis. & in sum bokis ²þou schalt fynde þat
þe izen ben maad of .iiij. cotis or of .iiij. or of .vij. or of .x., & alle
þei seien soop. Saue þe .j. coote þat maketh þe schap of þe izen,
ben but .iiij. þat scheweth out in þe hole of þe izen, & þerfore me
8 mai seie .vj. & also þre³ / And fro þe brain tofore comen .ij. bind-
ingis þat ben not of nerues, saue þei ben of þe substaunce of brain,
& þat oon comen out in þe rihtside, & þat oper in þe liftside, & þen
schape as it were þe hedis of .ij. tetis, wherbi þe witt is take.⁴ &
12 after þese .ij. comen out ij. nerues, & ben fast to þe izen, & ben
schape in þis maner:  þan þat nerue þat wexiþ in þe
rihtside of þe brayn, whanne he goiþ out of þe scolle boon & entriþ
into orbitam, þat is þe holow place þat þe yze sitt on, & goiþ to þe
16 izen in þe liftside. & hi þes nerues comen þe spiritis of lijf & of siht
to þe yzen / Of þe substaunce of dura matris is engendrid rethina,
þat is þe pinne skyn þat goiþ without þe izen, þat is clepid þe vilm
of þe izen. And þis serueth of greet seruice, & þis vilm was maad
20 swiþe pinne þat it ne hurte not humouris, & þat it lette not þe
menynge of þe izen, and it ⁵byndiþ in al þe izen, & it defendiþ þe izen
fro harmynge of þe boon //⁶
¶ Þere comen manye sijkniss in þe izen, & summe comen of
24 causis wiþoutforþ, & summe of causis wiþinneforþ / Wiþinneforþ :
as of yuel complexiouns, or of yuel humouris; wiþoutforþ : as of
greet hete of þe eir, or of greet cooldnes of þe eir, or of poudre, or
of fume, or of wynd / And þere ben opere maner sijknis of þe izen,
28 & þat ben seid contagious : as obtolmia & blere ized, & alle þese
sijknessis comen to cirurgians handis. & obtolmia is clepid a whit
welke or a reed poynt,⁷ & icching & scabbe, sebel, vngula, cataracta,

The anatomy
of the eyes.The eye has
three
[² 1f. 162]
humours and
seven coats.Two pro-
cesses reach
from the
brain to the
eyes.Two nerves,
crossing
each other,
enter the
Orbitam,and confer
the spirit of
life.The eye is
enveloped in
the Retina
(film).[⁵ 1f. 162, bk.]The diseases
of the eyes
have partly
external,
partly in-
ternal causes.Obtolmia.
Icching.
Scabbe.
Sebel.
Vngula.
Cataracta.

¹ Lat. : Volentes tractare de passionibus membrorum particularium, que non sunt vulnera, quæ sæpe veniunt ad manus chirurgi . . . incipiemus ab ægitudinibus oculorum.

² The passage is corrupt, and the corresponding Latin phrase differs : Tunice tres quæ in oculi formatione tres præcedunt humores, in ordine causant ex ipsis tres alias, quare dici possunt sex et tres.

³ Lat. : quibus sensus comprehenditur odoratus.

⁴ Lat. : Facta fuit ergo retina valde subtilis, ne læderet humores : et ne motum ipsorum in dilatatione comprimeret. Et facta fuit sclerotica : ut oculum totum cum cornea ligaret : et defenderet ab ossis oculi nocumento. The translator omits the description of the Anatomy of the eye. See Notes.

⁷ Lat. : ophthalmia, vlcus, albula, macula simplex, punctus, rubedo. The SURGERY.

Dilatatio
Pulpe.
15 Inuersio
Palpebra-
rum.
Ordelius.
Grando.
Nodus.
Pilus.
Metala la-
crimalis
[³ If. 163]
ijj maner
obtolmia

1. Mild
ophthalmia.
The eyes get
red, and feel
burning, but
there is no
swelling.

Treatment.

Ry
Apply an
eye-wash,
Nota.

a fomenta-
tion, and if
necessary
bleed the
patient.

[³ If. 163, bk.]

2. Severe
Obtolmia.

dilatation pulpe,¹ inuersacion, palpebrarum, ordelus, grando, nodus, & pilus, fistula lacrimalis. ¶ Also þer ben opere manere sijknnessis of þe izen : as blind & hurtinge þat mowe not be curid /

It is forseid what þing is enpostym in þe general capitulo of 4 enpostyms. & it is forseid þat euery þing þat gaderiþ humour to-gidere & makip swellynge,² schal be clepid enpostym⁴ / In þe same maner obtalmia⁵ is clepid enpostym of þe ize. & þere ben .iiij. maners of obtalmia : as lizt, & strenger, & alþer strong. Lizt, as whanne 8 a mannes ize bicomeþ reed & haþ brennyng þerinne & prickinge, & þer is no swellynge þeron. & þis mai come of a cause withoutforþ : as of hoot eir or of coold, or of smoke, or of poudre, or of wakinge, or of traueile. & þe cure herof is but lizt ; for þis sijknnes mai be 12 curid in þis maner. Take þe white of an ey & scume⁶ it, & loke þat þere falle no filþe þeron, & leie it into his ize ; for þis is þe best medicyn⁷ among alle medicyns þat ben clepid colliries, for it wole make coold his ize & do away þe akyng. & it abidiþ þe lenger in 16 his izen, for it is viscous // ¶ If þe cause be cold,⁸ þan þis cure suffisiþ : þanne lete him drynke a litil sutil wijn, & make him a fomentacioun of rois & flouris of camomille, & fenigrec soden in water. & if þis suffise not, þan þou muste lete him blood, & awoide 20 awei þe humouris. & þou muste caste into his ize a whit collirium, & it is seid in opere spicis of obtolmia.

¶ Obtolmia þat is strong. þese ben þe signes þerof : greet reednes, & þe veynes of þe izen be ful replete, & þe corner of þe 24 ize schal watri, & he schal haue greet akinge & pricking, & sumtyme þere comeþ in þe first bigynnyng vlcera þeron, as it were

translator mistook this list of names of eye diseases for a definition of "ophthalmia." On the other hand he took the words "Dilatatio, Pulpe, Inuersatio, Palpebrarum" as names for four separate diseases.

¹ pulpe, for pupillae.

² On the bottom of the page: "contra obtalmia Recipe, the inner rynde off the ceritre, sethe yt in venyger, & hold a sponffulle in thy mowthe luche warme, so do oft in þ day."

⁴ Sl. 2463, fol. 84 b.: "As it is sayd of anctores in þe generall Chapter of enpostumes, þat euery flowyng of humore þat swellith a member ouer his kyndely beyng is an enpostume, rizt so obtalmia is cleped an enpostume of þe eye."

⁵ obtalmia, med. Lat. form of οφθαλμία, inflammation of the eye.

⁶ scume, despumare. Prompt. Par., p. 450. "scummyn lycurys, des-pumo."

⁷ Lat.: quod non dicitur vilipendi. quia est nobilior medicina. Sl. 2463, fol. 85: "and sette not liztly þerby. for it is þe nobelest medicyne."

⁸ MS. hoot. Lat. si causa sit frigida. Sl. ibid.: "and yf þe cause be of coide."

- white prickis or reed, & sumtyme þer ben noon sich pointis þeron
 þat a man mai se, saue al his iȝe is reed & to-swollen. & he schal
 haue greet akinge & pricking. & þou; þer be noon vlcera þeron, þe
 4 cure mai be do al in oon maner. ¶ If þe akyng be swiþe greet,
 þan acesse þe akyng, & þan lete him blood in þe heed-veyne¹ þat
 sitt in þe arme & in þat same side þat akip. & if he haue passioun
 in boþe his iȝen, þan þou schalt lete him blood in boþe his armys.
 8 & þou schalt lete him blood þe quantite after his elde & after his
 strenkþe; or sette a ventuse vpon his schuldris, & þat is more better,
 for þe mater comeþ more ² of blood þan of colre. & þat þou miȝt
 knowe bi þe signes of blood þat ben forseid // ¶ And if þe mater
 12 come of colre, þat þou miȝt knowe bi greet akinge & scharp, &
 litil swellinge. & þe mater wole be ȝelow aboute hise iȝen. & he
 schal haue but litil reednes. & þan þou schalt lete him blood in
 lasse³ quantite þan⁴ if þe mater come of blood. & blood leting is
 16 good in þis caas, for þe scharpnes of colre mai be take awei wiþ þe
 blood leting. & þan þou schalt purge him wiþ a decoccioun of
 fruitis with mirabolanis þat ben forseid in þe chapitre of allopucia.
 & if colre be medlid wiþ ony partie of gret mater, þat fullip ofte
 20 tyme, þan þer is no medicyn so good as cochie Rasis. & first he
 schal do þingis þerto for to acesse þe matere / Rȝ, a ȝelke of an eij,
 & as miche of oile of rosis, & as miche of iuys of verueine, & ȝ j.
 of saffron, & ȝ j. opij; medle þese togidere, & make þerof an en-
 24 plastre, & leie it vpon a sotil linnen cloop, & leie it on þe iȝe. & in
 his iȝe leie collirium album with wommans milk⁵ þat noryschip a
 maide child; for .G. made þis medicyn⁶ / Rasis made collirium
 album in þis maner, ⁷ & it is good þing, for I haue preued it ofte

The symp-
toms are
great pains
and swelling.

Treatment.
Soothe the
pain by
blood-letting

or by cup-
ping.
[² If. 164]

If choleric
matter is
the cause,
use blood-
letting and
purgings.

Purging
Pills.
Cochie Rasis

R
Mitigatum
optimum
contra dolo-
rem in oculis

Colirium
album
Galien.
Rasis.
[⁷ If. 164, bk.]

¹ vena cephalica.

³ Lat. maiori.

⁴ MS. þat.

⁵ The use of woman's milk for an eye-salve is mentioned by Galenus *De Compositione Medicamentorum*, Lib. IV. Cap. 3.

⁶ The translator has omitted the following prescription preserved in Sl. 2463, fol. 85 b.: and he cleped hit helpyng, for he, þat he made hit fore, was holpen by one leyng therto. ¶ Take iiij. 3. of cernse sarsed, and distemper hit wit water on a marbull stone tenne dayes, and kepe hit ruermore couered þat þer falle no pouder þerinne; thanne take .ij. 3. and an halfe of gomme arabik and putte hit in þe water, to þat hit be molten in þat water, and þanne cole hit and medele yt as well as þou may wit bi forayd cernse; and whanne þis medecyne is made liche paste, addo therto these thynges sotilly powdered and sarsed tryes or thryes thoruz a sotyll linnen clothe. Take amidum .iiij. 3. sarcocolle, safran, opium ana þe iiij. partie of a .3. grynde hem all wel togeder longe tyme, and make smale pillules and reserue hem, to þat þou haue nede, and whanne yt ys nede dystempere one of hem with (fol. 86) romannes mylk and administer yt.

R
A Collyrium
used by
Rhasis.

'pulis
citrinus

The patient's
diet:
He shall take
neither meat
nor wine;

[c. 11. 165]

he shall lie in
a dark room,

and take a
bath, when
the matter
has gone.

Bathing is
noxious,
when there
is a pustule.
Maturative
medicines:
Collyrium
thuris

tyme. Take ceruse waische .x. partis, sarcocolle greet .iiij. partis, amidi .ij. partis, draganti¹ .j. parti, opij .j. ʃ / Grinde alle þese togidere & tempere hem wip rein water, & make þerof pelottis as gret as it were a pese & kepe hem / & whanne þou wolt worche 4 þerwip, tempere oon þerof wip wommans milk þat it be as þicke as it were must,² & leie þerof in hise ȝen þre sȝis in þe dai. þis collirie accessiþ þe akinge. & in sumtyme it curiþ obtolmiam in oon dai as I haue preued itt manie tymes. & whanne he haþ slepe, if 8 hise ȝen cleue togidere, þan he schal waische hise ȝen wip water of rosis hoot, & þan leie in þe corner of his ȝe puluis citrinus, þat is maad in þis maner / Rȝ, sarcocolle x. partis, aloes, croci, licij ana partes .ij., mirre partem vnam, & make herof sotil poudre, & leie 12 herof a litil in þe corner of his ȝe /

& whanne þe reednes & swellyng of his ȝe is aweie, he mote be war of his dieting, for he mai ete no fleisch ne drinke no wijn, saue he mote ete colature of bran wip almaunde milk. & whanne 16 he lieþ in his bed his heed mote lie hiȝe, & he schal ligge ʒvpon þe hool side & not vpon þe soor side / & if boþe his ȝen ben soor, þan he mote diȝte him as sutilli as he may.⁴ & he mote ofte tyme hane þe sauour of water coold, & þe sauour of wiþi & campher, & he 20 mote lie in a derk hous þat he mowe se no liȝt. & whanne þe mater goiþ aweie faste & his bodi [is]⁵ þan clene, þan sette him in a baþ of swete water, & lete him be þerin but a litil while⁶ / If it be so þat þe akyng aswage not wip blood leting & colliries & laxatiuis, 24 þan it is a signe þat þere is pustula woxe þerinne, & it is nede for to make it maturatif; for þe akinge wole not goon aweie, til it be maad maturatif. & in þis caas baþinge is ful noious / For if akinge be go sumwhat aweie, it wole come aȝen wip baþing; þerfore thou 28 schalt attende for to make maturatif.⁷ & putte in his ȝe a collirie

¹ draganti, Lat. draganathi.

² must, Lat. mustum.

⁴ Sl. 2463, fol. 86: "and yef bothe eyen be sore he schal lye upward, his hodes muste be ryde." Lat.: caputia vestium non sint stricta.

⁵ is, omitted.

⁶ Sl. ibid.: "And yef it be plesant to hym lete hym abyde therinne, and lete hym foment his eyen and his heuede. And yf he were riȝt hoot in þe bathth, lete hym dwelle therein not passyng an houre, but þenne þe pacient schal be purged aȝen. ¶ And in þe laste ende of þe ohtalmia yt ys good to take hoot salt water, þat rosen haue be enfusyd inne, and lete hit droppe downe fro an hyȝe vpon þe hornes of his heued, þat yt mowe passe downe so by the eyen."

⁷ thou schalt attende for to make m.. Lat.: ergo in tendas ad maturandum. Compare O.Fr. s'attendre à faire qu. ch.

- of thus wip al¹ togidere til þe quittance schauwie, for þan þe akinge wole aceesse / For whanne pustula is to-broke, & quittance is gaderid, þan þou schalt putt þeron a collirie of leed. & þan þou schalt
- 4 fulfille alle þingis þat schulen be seid wip vlcibus / A collirie of thus þat is maturatif for ²pustulis is maad in þis maner / R̄, thuris ^[17. 166, bk.]
- albi gummosi grossi, partes .x, antimonij, sarcocolle ana. partes .v, R̄
- croci partes ij, & tempere hem wip muscilage of fenigrec; & make
- 8 þerof pelottis, & kepe hem for þin vs. & whan þou hast nede herof, þan tempere a pelot with þe forseid licour, & make it moist & binde it vpon his ize, & lete þis ligge til þe akyng go awei; & putte in his ize colirium de plumbo, þat is maad in þis maner / R̄, .R.
- 12 plumbi vsti, antimonij, zucare, eris vsti, gummi arabic, draganti ana partes .viii, opij partem ʒi, & make herof a sutil poudre, & þan tempere it wip reyn-watir & wip water of rosis, & make þerof pelottis. & whanne þou wolt vse hem, distempere oon þerof or
- R̄ 6 tweyne wip water of rosis, & binde it vpon his ize; for þis collirie soudiþ & gendriþ fleisch / Aftir þe tyme þat it is soudid, if þere leue a litil ampulle,³ þan þou schalt cure it as þou schalt fynde in his propre place. ¶ ffleumatik mater makip ful æelden ony
- 20 enpostym in þe ize, & malancolie myche latter; neþeles we wolen telle curis of hem. ¶ Signes of ⁴fleum ben þese: greet swellynge & manie teeris, & litil reednes ouþer noon; & þe cure herof is to purge him wip cochis or wip trocisco de turbit, saue cochie ben
- 24 more better. & þou schalt putte in his eere muscilaginem⁵ fenigrec, & putte in his ize zelowe poudre þat is forseid. & vpon his ize þou schalt leie enplastre maad of aloe, mirra, acacia, & croco ana, & distempere hem wip mussilagine fenigreci. & in þis caas good wijn
- 28 wole do him good, drunken in mesure / If it come of malancolie, þou schalt knowe bi blaknes of al þe bodi⁶ & leene, & bi drienes of hise izen, & ful litil reednes or noon in hise izen. & þe cure herof is for to purge wel malancolie, & baping⁷ & fomentacion wip rosis &
- 32 violet, & flouris of borage & buglossa. & þis þou schalt wite þat in euery maner of obtalmia, in þe ende þerof baping⁸ ben good.

Colirium
plumbe.

.R.

Apostemas
in the eyes
seldom arise
from phlegm.
[4 17. 166]In this case
purge and
apply a
plaster.
R̄Treatment of
an apostema
of Melancholy
is the cause.

Nota.

¹ Lat.: cum coto, donec super ootum sanies apparebit. The translator read "toto." Sl. 2463, f. 86: "with cotoun, to þat þe quytture schene vpon þe cottons."

³ ampulle, a tumour in the skin of the hands or the feet. See Tamm. Dict., s. v. ampolla. The Lat. has albula. Matth. Sylv.: "Albule id est macule oculi albe."

⁵ MS. ʒ inserted.

⁶ Sl. 2463, fol. 87: "All þe body of þe pacient ys blakkyssh."

If pain and swelling follow an injury, apply blood drawn from a living dove.

¶ If þat reednes of þe ize come of smyting & akyng, & swellynge come þerwip, þan it is necessarie for to haue a zongt culuer quyk, & lete hir blood in a veyne vndir hir wyng wip a nedle, & putte it in his ize as hoot as it comeþ fro þe culuer.¹ þis 4

[* If. 166, bk.]

doip awei ²þe akyng, & þe reednes & þe brennyng.

de vlcibus colorum.

These ulcers are accompanied with continual pain.

vij. maner vlcus

The symptoms of an ulcer are pain and a red point in the eye.

¶ Vlcera ben engendrid in a mannes ize. & þan þer comeþ greet akinge þerwip & abydyng, & þis mai not be doon awei wip collirium album, ne wip noon mitigatif / And þere ben vij. maner 8 vlcera, & of alle we wolen telle her curis schortli & profitabli, of curis þat I am expert of³ longe tyme. ¶ The signes of vlcera þat pustula comeþ þerof ben þese: grete akingis þat mai not be swagid wip collirium album, & þer wole in his ize appere a reed poynt or a 12 corn. & if al his ize be reed, þan þe poynt or corn wole be more reed, & þat point wole make greet agreuance, & greet swellinge,

Treatment:

Apply Collirium album to relieve pain;

and if this is insufficient,

& greet betyng, & manie teeris / It is greet nede in þis passioun for to sotille his dietyng, & do þerto þingis for to make mitigatif, as 16 collirium album, & lete him blood, & do al þe cure as it is aforseid / If þou miȝt not defende þe mater wip alle þese remedies ne aswage þe akyng, or þer wexe a corn þeron or vlcus, & collirium de plumbo ne wole suffice for to soude vlcus, þan þou schalt leie þerto mitiga- 20 tiuis for to do awei þe akyng. & do in his ize collirium ⁴eliser,⁵ for þat wole defende þat þe enpostym schal not wexe, þat is maad in þis maner / Rȝ, antimonij, emathitis,⁶ ana partes .x., acacie partes .iij., aloes partem .j., grinde hem sotilly & tempero hem wip iuyes of 24

¹ The use of blood taken from a vein under the wings of a dove is mentioned by Galen: De Simplicium Medicamentorum medicamentis, Lib. X., Cap. II. 3. Trevisa translation of *Bart. de Propr.*, Lib. VII., Cap. 16, (Add. 27,944, fol. 84), "Also philosophres telleþ as Constant, seiþ þat þe blood i-draue out of þe poynt of þe riȝt wyng of a culuer, ober of a sealow. ober of a leprink, & i-doo in þe bygynnyng eppon þat mole. clensip hit mixtyly / for þe blood of þese foules hetep and disuolreþ strongliche."

³ of curis þat I am expert of, Lat. curam quam sum expertus.

⁴ MS. *eliser*, Lat. *elesir*, the form of Arab. *eliksir* as preserved in Ital. *elisire*. It means in its pharmacological sense an alcoholic liquor, in which aromatic substances are dissolved. Devic (*Dict. Ét.*) states, that the Arabic word is merely a transcription of Greek *ἐξήριον*, dry. Lanfranc gives a curious explanation of the word in the present passage, which has been omitted by the translator: *collyrium elesir: quod est dicere penetrativum, quod egressum uveae prohibet*. Sl. 2463, f. 87 b.: "*collyrium eleser þat is þe seyne persyng, þe whiche defendith þe egression of ruea.*"

⁶ *emathites*, *hæmatites*, bloodstone. Mentioned as a stiptic and an eye-medicine in Galen (ed. Kühn, vol. X., 330); in *Bart. De Propr.*, Lib. XVI., Cap. 39 (Add. 27,944, fol. 199 b), "*Emathites is a reed stoon . . . & is good aȝeins þe flux of þe bladdre and to sore yhen.*"

corigiolo,¹ & make þerof polottis; & dissolve herof wip watir of
rosir, & binde it faste to his ize. þis collirium fasteneth his ize, &
makip þat þe enpostym may wexe no ferþero / ¶ Macula² is a wem
4 in a mannys ize, & summe be white þerof & sittip vpon þe sizt of
þe ize,³ & summe bisidis þe sizt. & þis cometh of an oold obtalmiam.
& herto principali is good collirium album of .G. þat is forseid. &
þis collirie is good þerfore / R̄y, aloes, croci. ana partes viij, eris vsti
8 waischen, gummi arabici, opij, ana partes vj., mirre xij. partis,
climie⁴ partes iiij., thurus partes .iij, grinde alle þese sotilly & tem-
pere hem wip swete wijn, & make þerof pelottis, & kepe hem : &
wip þis collirie I temperid collirium album. Galien & I haue curid
12 wip þese .ij. colliries, & wip cauterijs, & kuttingis of veynes, manye
men / & I curide þerwip a man þat was clepid sir Reynold Manesyn.
& he hadde obtolmiam id est postym in his ize longe tyme tofore,
& þerof came manye wemmys in his ize; summe þerof weren white
G & summe þerof weren reed, & maden þat he miȝte not se, &
anoþer man ledde him. & þouȝ þer were leid mete tofore him vpon
þe boord, he miȝte not se þerof / & þo I lokide to him; & wipinne
a monþe he miȝt se to pleie at þe tabler.⁶ & I dide awei alle þe
O wemmys of his izen, so þat he miȝte se as wel as euere he dide
tofore / & þere tofore he hadde manie opere lechis, & leiden in his
izen stronge collirijs, & algate his sijknes was more & more: & so
his sizt was binome him þre ȝeer. ¶ Collirium .G. is good for
4 obtolmiam, as I haue apreued manie siȝis; & it is good for vlcera
þat ben newe & not olde, & for wemmis.
& sumtyme sich a maner pricke cometh of smytynge, or of greet
crijnge, or of blood as þoruȝ brekyng of a veyne, & makip a poynt
28 in a mannes ize, & þerfore blood letyng is good. & do in his ize

Macula is a
white spot on
or near the
pupil of the
eye.

Galien
Collirium
album

Galien

A nobleman
who had lost
his eye-sight
[⁵ lf. 167, bk.]
was treated
by Lanfranc,

and after a
month he
could play
backgam-
mon.

Collirium
Galien.

If a 'point'
in the eye
is caused by
an injury,
use blood-
letting,

¹ "*Corrigiola*. So called of the Apothecaries, and of the Frenche men Corrigiole, is oure common knottgrasse, called in Greke polygonon, in Latine Seminalis and Polygonum mas." Halle, *Table*, p. 29.

² *macula* as a name for an eye-disease is not used by the Latin authors. It occurs in *Bart. de Propr. rer.*, and is translated by *webbe*, *mole*. See p. 248, note 3.

³ *þe sizt of þe ize*, Lat. cornea. "The sight of the eye, that is, the hole of the skinne called Ragoides, out of which the vertue visible worketh his operation." Cooper. Compare O.E. *sðu*, f., O.H.G. *seha*, f., the black of the eye.

⁴ *olimie*. Matth. Sylv. "Klimia. Cadimia. alkimia *Auicenna*. est fumus seu fuligo adherens superioribus fornacis in purificatione cuiusque metalli. sioria vero est fex descendens ad inferiora."

⁶ *tabler*. Lat.: vide ipsum ludentem in vespertis ad tabulas cum taxillis. "*Tabler*, or table of play or game." *Prompt. Parv.*, p. 485.

and apply the
blood of a
dove and a
woman's
milk.

[² If. 168]
Redness of
the eyes
causes itch-
ing and vice
versa.
Both occasion
scab and
vngula.

Galien

Scabies.
The eye-lids
are full of
pimples.

Collirium
rubeum
R

[² If. 168, bk.]

Collirium
viride
R

blood of a culuer, & waische his izeñ wip wommans milk warm, as
it comeþ out of þe tete.¹

¶ *Rubedo id est* reednes, *pruritus id est* icchinge, sebel, sca²bies,
& vngula, goiþ al in oon cours.³ & oon herof is cause of anoper / 4
For of long reednes tofore comeþ icchinge, & sumtyme icchinge is
cause of reednes, & of þese .ij. comeþ scabbe in þe ize liddis; & if
it gadere togidere in þe corner of þe ize, þan it is clepid vngula /
þerfore þou must first cure hastily þe reednes & þe icchinge of his 8
izen, lest þer come ony oper sijknes þerof / Reednes may be curid
wip þe white of an ey & with collirium album / Galien seiþ: icch-
inge may be curid wip whit wijn, in which be grounden aloes, &
leid in his ize wip soft linnen cloþ, & bounden þerto. ¶ *Scabies* 15
is whanne þe ize liddis ben reed & to-swolles, & ful of reed pinplis.
& þis passioun makip greet icchinge & brennyng, & manie teeris /
þe cure herof is þis: waische hise izeñ wip wijn in which be
resolved grene coperoze, þat is clepid vitriolum romanum.⁴ & if 16
þis suffise not, þan þou schalt make collirium rubeum in þis maner /
R̄, emathitis, vitrioli adusti ana partes tres, eris vsti partes duas,
mirre, croci, ana partes x., piperis longi partem ʒ; temper alle þes
wip old wijn, & make þerof pelottis, & kepe hem; and whanne 20
þou wolt vse hem, distempere hem wip oold wijn, & do it in his
ize / If þe mater be greet & strong, þan þou muste vse collirium
viride, þat is maad in þis maner / R̄, floris eris partes tres, vitrioli
vsti partes .vj., arsenici rubei, baurac, spume maris, ana partes .ij., 24
armoniacum dissolued in iuys of rue; & grinde alle þe opere sotilli,
& medle hem þerwip also & make þerof pelottis, & dissolue oon

¹ *Trevisa l. c.*, Lib. VII., Cap. 17 (Add. 27,944, fol. 84 a), "Also it happip
þat blood mooseþ out of veynes & of pipes & comeþ to þe yzen, & veynes brekeþ
or be i-hurt in þe kertil þat hatte coniunctiue, & þan suche enhiȝtnes of þe
yze comeþ of blood þat comeþ so to þe yze. ¶ Culuir blood or turtil blood
dissolueþ & departeþ þis blood þat is so i-ronne as constantinus seiþ, & so doþ
womman melk wip ensens, & so doþ freisch chese i-medlid with honey wip-
outen salt, if it be laide þerto."

³ *Trevisa l. c.*, Lib. VII., Cap. 16, "De lippitudine albugine de panno
sive de macula. Another erel of þe yzen þat we clepiþ a nebbe, & Constan-
tinus clepiþ it albugo, & brediþ in þis manere. ¶ ffirst a renne rennep to
þe yzen, & þerof comþ an ycel þat hatte obtalmia, a schreweð blereynes
& ache & aposteme; & if it is erel i-kept þerof leteþ a litil mule & infec-
tioun, & longtyme turneþ & growiþ into a nebbe & picke, & occupieþ more
place þan al þe blacke of þe ize. ¶ This nebbe turneþ into cloþ by more
piones & occupieþ more place, for it ocupieþ al þe blake of þe yze, & at þe
last it turneþ into þe kynde of a nail of þr honde."

⁴ *Vitriolum Romanum*. "The one growyng of it-selfe in the earth by
concretion, and is vulgarly called Coppa rosa." Halle, *Table*, p. 139.

- þerof in watir of rue distillid & leid in his ize // ¶ **Sebel**¹ is seid, Sebel, an inflammation of the veins of the eye.
 whanne þe veynes þat ben ioyned togidere in þe ize,² ben ful of blood & wexip greet, & sumtyme a cloop þat is in a mannes ize. For
 4 to cure þis passioun collirium rubeum is good þerfore, or collirium viride þat ben forseid // ¶ **Vngula** sittip in þe corner of þe ize þat Ungula, a web in the eye, sometimes covering the whole eye-ball.
 is next þe nose, & goop forþ vpon þe ize til it hile al þe ize; & sumtyme it comep of a superfluite of fleisch þat wexip in þe corner
 8 of a mannes ize, & wexip forþ abrood as it were a cloop. & þer ben manie maners þerof, & oon is sotil & pinne, & goip ouer þe ize. & of sum men þat is clepid a cloop, & þat ofþer maner is more fleischi & picke, & is clepid vngula / þe cure ³herof ben collirium viride & [11. 169]
 12 rubeum, þat ben forseid: & if þis suffisip not, þan it mote be kutt away wiþ instrumentis as miche as me mai kutte awei þerof, & If Collyrium prove insufficient, cut away the growth.
 aftirward cure him wiþ collirijs / In þe kuttinge of vngulam be war þat þou kutte not þe fleisch in þe corner of þe ize to depe; for
 16 if it were kutt to depe, his ize schulde watre, & be ful of teeris al þe while he lyueþ. ¶ Also in scabbe, sebel, & vngula, purgacioun is good, & blood leting; & þe patient schal absteine him fro alle swete þingis & scharp, for al þese forseid passiouns comep of blood
 20 corrupt. ¶ **Cataracta**⁴ is water þat fallip doun bitwixe þe .ij. skynnes of þe ize & abidiþ tofore þe place þat is clepid pupilla, þat is þe poynt of þe ize. & þan it defendip þat a man mai not se; & it is clepid cataracta, bi þe liknes of an instrument þat is a
 24 mille / & sumtyme þis passioun bigynneþ, & sumtyme it is confirmed / Signes of þe bigynnyng ben þese / It semeþ to þe patient þat he seep briht þingis tofore him, & him pinkip þat oon þing is .ij. þingis or þre / & sumtyme it semeþ to him þat þing þat he seep
 28 to be ful of holis / & sumtyme þese þingis ⁵mowe come of yuel [11. 169, bk.]

¹ "Sebel idem quod Serasif l. vene rubee que sunt in albo oculorum." *Sinonima Serapionis*, ed. Venet. 1497. Arab. Pera, zabêl, Dung, a dried gourd, basket. (Johnson.) Fr. sêbile, basket.

² Lat.: Sebel dicitur quando vena conjunctivæ et corneæ, quæ sunt in earum superficie — replentur sanguine. The translator mistook 'conjunctivæ' for 'conjunctæ.'

⁴ *Cataracta*. The Latin authors used this word for 1. waterfall, 2. flood-gate, sluice of a river (Scheller *Dict.*). In its pathological meaning, it is first found in *Platearius*, xiiith cent. (*Practica*, Lib. II., Cap. VII., fol. 209 b, Lugd. 1525, quoted by Hirsch, *Klin. Monatsbl. f. Augenheilkunde*, 1869, p. 284). The explanations vary according to the above-mentioned Latin significations. Lanfranc adopts the meaning 'gate.' Lat.: "et dicitur cataracta per similitudinem illius instrumenti, quod est apud molendina: quod quando eleuatur, currit aqua per canalem: quando deponitur nihil currit." *Molendinum*, "a mylle." Wr. Wü., *Voc.*, 596, 27.

Cataracta.
Cataract is a water between the two skins of the eye.

At the beginning of the disease the patient sees double.

This irregularity may arise from a disordered stomach, and then it is easily cured.

When the Cataract is developed, a spot on the pupil of the eye is discovered.

[17. 170]
The Cataract can be cured by medicines at its early state.
Regulate the patient's diet, purge and apply a Collyrium prepared with the gall of several animals.

R

R
A Collyrium prepared with lye.

[17. 170, bk.]

Cure of Cataract by operation: Dilate the pupil of the

disposicioun of þe stomac, & þan it is not so greet drede þerof; for whanne þe stomac is curid, þese signes wolen go awei / In þis maner þou schalt wite wher it come of þe stomac or of þe iʒe / If þese signes comen whanne þe stomac is ful, & whanne he is fastyng⁴ & þei come not, it is a signe þat it comeþ of þe stomac / And if it is in hise iʒen contynuelli, þan it comeþ not of þe stomac, but it is sijknes of þe iʒen / ¶ Also purge him oones wiþ pululas cochias, & if it is neuer þe bettir, þan þou miȝt wite for certeyn þat þe 8 passioun comeþ of þe stomac. And if þis passioun haþ longe durid in a man, & if þou miȝt no þing se in his iʒe, þan þou schalt wite for certeyn þat it is a bigynnyng of cataracta / Whanne cataracta is confermed, it schal not be hid to a mannes witt þat is vsid in þe 12 craft. & in þis manere þou schalt knowe it: þou schalt se a maner colour vpon þe poynt of þe siȝt of þe iʒe, þat wole sumtyme be whit, & sumtyme in þe colour of askis, & sumtyme a litil grene: & þis stoppiþ al a mannes siȝt //

16

þis maner siknes¹ schal be helid wiþ phisic or it be confermed. & whanne it is confermed, it mote be curid wiþ a mannes hand. þe patient mote absteine him fro sopers² & fro al maner fatte potagis, & from al maner moiste fruitis, & fro al maner fruitis þat 20 engendriþ moistnes / saue he schal vse hote þingis, & he schal ofte be purgid wiþ pillis cochie rasis, þat is þe beste þing laxatif þat mai be for iʒen, & þan make a collirie of gallis of beestis þat is maad in þis maner. R, fellis grue, fellis stelionis, fellis hirci, fellis 24 anticipitris,³ fellis aquile & perdicis, & alle þese gallis ben drie, & take herof .x. partijs, euforbie, colloquintide, ana. partem .j, grinde alle þese & tempere hem wiþ þe iuys of fenigreci & make þerof pelottis. & whanne þou wolt worche þerwiþ, resoluē oon þerof wiþ 28 water of fenel distillid, & leie it in his iʒe twies on þe day ./

¶ Anoper liȝt medicyn þat is preued / Take askis of vynes & sarce hem & make þerof lie wiþ good whit wijn, & lete it stonde in a glasen vessel, & lete it clarifie þerinne. & þis is a good collirie 32 þerfore, for þe more cold þat cataracta is, þe bettir þis medicyn is þerfore / And if cataracta be⁴ so confermed þat it stoppe al þe liȝt, þan it is incurable wiþ medicyns, & also þer ben manie opere incurable. ¶ And if it so be þat he se not, þan make him close 36 his iʒen togidere, & frote al softe vpon þe iʒe lid þat is sour; & if it be in boþe his iʒen, þan serue so boþe, & þan lete him opene his

² *soper*, *cœna*. See Skeat, *Et. Dict.*, s. v. supper.

³ *anticipiter*, med. Lat. for *accipiter*. Dufr. Glasa.

- izen sodeinli anoon, & loke if þe poynt of þe ize bicomē whit,¹ & if it bicomē not whit, þan it is of .ij. þingis; ouþer it is opilaciou² of þe nerue, þat comēþ fro þe brain & is holow & defendiþ þe siȝt, or it is cataracta þat is greet & stoppiþ þe nerue, & stoppiþ þe weie of þe spirit þat it mai not come to þe poynt of þe siȝt þat is clepid pupilla / If þou frotist his ize as it is forseid, þan lete him do vp his ize hastili, & þou schalt se þan vpon his ize a whit þing³ as it were a peerle, þan þou miȝt sureli worche wiþ instrumentis of cirurgie² / First þou schalt make þe pacient sitte vpon a stool tofore þee, & þou schalt sitte a litil hiȝer þan he, & his ize þat is hool þou schalt bynde faste þat he ne mowe no þing se þerwiþ, & þan þou schalt haue in þi mouþ a fewe braunchis³ of fenel, & þou schalt breke hem a litil wiþ þi teēþ, & þan þou schalt blowe in his ize .ij. sipis or iij. þat þe fume of þe fenel mowe entre into his ize / þan þou schalt haue an instrument of siluir, schape in the maner of a needle, and it schal sitte in a greet hafte þat þou mai þe bettir hold it wiþ þin hand, & þan þou schalt bigynne aforȝens þe lasse corner of þe ize, & þou schalt putte in þin instrument anoon to þe corn þat is in þe ize, & whanne þou seest þe point of þe instrument vndir þe corn,⁴ þan lete þe point of þin instrument goon anoon to þe water þat is gaderid tofore þe ize / And whanne þou hast broken þe place þat þe water was ynne, þan presse it adounward, & drawe out al þe watir þerof clene,⁵ & if þer come more watir perto, þan þou must reherse þis werk aȝen. & if þer come no more watir perto, þan þou schalt leie vpon his ize a plastre maad of þe zelke of an eij wiþ þe white, & bole leid vpon lynnen cloop & binde vpon his ize, & lete þe patient be in a derk place, & he schal heere no

eye by rubbing the eyelid.

It will not dilate, if there is an obstruction in the nerve.

In the dilated pupil a white spot like a pearl is seen.

Then bandage the sound eye.

[S. 171]

and pass a silver needle through the eye-ball until it reaches the white corn and the cataractic water.

When you have pressed out this water,

apply a plaster to the eye, and let the patient be in a dark room,

¹ whit for *vid*, Lat.: vide si pupilla dilatatur.

² Lat.: quod cum videris manum ullatenus non apponas. This method of testing, whether a cataract is fit for operation or not, has already been proposed by Galen, as mentions *Paulus de Aegina*, Lib. VI., Cap. 21. We find the same in *Hali Abbas*, Lib. IX., Cap. 28, fol. 279, ed., Lugd. 1523. See Magnus H., *Geschichte des grauen Staars*. Leipzig, 1876.

⁴ corn, a mistake; the translator did not know the meaning of "cornea." Lat.: et impellas instrumentum usque ad corneam: quia tunc videbis illum. Cum autem instrumentum videbis sub cornea illum impellas vsque ad aquam quæ est coram pupilla.

⁵ & drawe out al þe watir þerof clene, an insertion of the translator. The operation which he describes is the dislocation of cataract by depression. A fuller and more accurate account of it is given by John Vigo, who begins his description with the following words: "And yf the cataractes cannot be healed, when they are confirmed, then we must turne to handy operation. And though we counseyled to leave it to y^e tothdrawers, yet we wyl declare y^e maner therof." Traheron, *Vigo*, fol. 136^b.

and in perfect rest, for 8 days.

[¹ If. 171, bk.]

An obstruction of the pupil from internal causes is difficult to cure.

pigra Rasis

If the obstruction arises from external causes, let blood

and apply a plaster.

R

greet noise, & he schal not traueile wipinne .viij. daies, & he mote be kept so þat he cowze not ¹& fro wrappe / Sumtyme þe poynt of þe ize sigt is stoppid wipinneforþ, & þan he schal neuere be curid þerof; ouper it wole be greet maistrie for to cure it. & if it mai be curid, þis is þe cure þerof: þou muste purge him with pigra rasis, & wip pululis cochijs þat rasis made, & þei muste be ofte zeue, & þou muste do in his izen drijnge collirijs & opere drijng medicyns / Ouper it mai come of causis withoutforþ as of smitynge & þat mai liztli be curid / First þe patient schal be lete blood, if age mai suffre it & opere particlis þat be forseid, for blood letyng wole helpe for to auoide awei þe enpostym, & þan þou schalt make him an enplastre wip oon of þese medicyns, & it schal be bounden þerto softli / R, mele of beenis þat be sotil & grinde it wip wipi leeuës smal / Also take mele of beenys & flouris of camomille & þe rote of altea .3. ij., & also biteine .3. j., absinthium .3. j. & seþe hem in water & make þerof an enplastre & lete þe patient reste, ¹⁰ *probatum est.*

Hordeolum is a swelling in the eye-lids,

[² If. 172]

and affects new-born children.

¶ *Ordecilus* is a litil swellinge, & is long & smal & cometh to a child whanne it is bore, & þis passioun wole sitte in ²his ize liddis / þe cure herof is for to lete hem blood & purge him of humours corrupt, & do þerto þis medicyn: medle aloes with licio³ & make þerof a poude / Also þou schalt anoynte him wip storax liquida & anointe him þerwip / ¶ Also resolue a litil opoponac in water, and make an enplastre þerof & leie vpon the place, & þe same þing doþ ²⁰ diaquilon, & or þou leie ony plastre þervpon, þou schalt make a fomentacioun wip hoot water.

Grando. A knot in the eye-lids.

¶ *Grando* & *nodus*. *Grando* is as miche to seie as an hail stoon, & *nodus* is a knotte, & þus cometh in þe ize liddis, & sumtyme it wole schewe wipinneforþ, & sumtyme wipoute. & whanne it schewip wipoutforþ, opene it & leie þeron diaquilon & opere þingis for to consume þe mater. & if þis suffise not, þou schalt take it wip þi .ij. fyngris & drawe it harde, & þan kutte þe skyn þeron & drawe ³⁰ him out, & þan þou shalt soude it wip þe white of an eij & opere þingis þat ben soudinge //

fistula lacrimalis

¶ *fistula lacrimalis*,⁴ þat is as miche to seie as a feestre wip

³ "Lycium. Is the Juice of a thorny tree, growing chiefly in Capadocia and Lycia, of three cubites heyght." Halle, *Table*, p. 68.

⁴ Sl. 2463, f. 90: "A ffystule in þe wyke of þe eye, hit comyth of concours of rennyng of humores to þe corner of þe eye beynde þe nose, & because of her multitude & gretnesse þey may nat passen out but abyden there & maken an emynence, as hit were a lupyne; & therefore of sume hit is cleped *lupinus*."

- teeris / þis comeþ in þe corner of þe iȝe next þe ¹ nose, & engendriþ ^[¹ If. 172, bk.]
 þere & makip a þing¹ as greet¹ as it were a pese. & if þese humours
 leue þere longe þei wolen rotie & þei wolen make vlcus þere, & þer
 4 wole come manie teeris þerto, and þei mai not be maad drie, & þis
 mai leue þere so longe þat þer wole engendre a feestre þerof. & ^{gives rise to a}
 but if þat feestre be curid while it is freisch, it wole rote þe boon, ^{fistula and}
 & þe lenger þat it wexip oold, þe worse it wole be for to cure. ^{finally affects}
 8 ¶ þe firste bigynnyng of þis cure is for to awoide þe heed wiþ ^{the bone.}
 cochijs & wiþ pigra, þan do þeron þis collirium / Rȝ, aloes, thuris, ^{Apply a}
 sarcocolle, sanguinis draconis, balaustie, antimonij, ^{powder,}
 aluminis, ana, ^R
 floris eris a litil, as miche as wole be þe fourþe part of oon of þe ^{pulvis contra}
 12 forseid. & make of alle þes sotil poudre & distempere hem wiþ ^{statala}
 reyn water or wiþ water of roses, & caste it in þe corner of his iȝe, ^{lacremali.}
 but þe place schal be maad drie first. & þan þou schalt do þerto
 oon of þe mundificatiuis þat schulen be seid in þe antidotarie, or
 16 þis medicyn þat is aproued / Take clene mirre .3 .ij. & make þerof ^R
 poudre & make it picke wiþ þe galle of a boole, þat it be as picke
 as it were an oynement, ² & leie it vpon lynnen cloof & leie þis þer- ^[² If. 173]
 vpon, for þis wole soude þe place & make it clene / ¶ If it so be
 20 þat it be not curid with þis medicyn, þanne it is a signe þat þe
 boon is rotid, & þan þou muste opene þe skyn & vnhiþe þe boon, ^{If the disease}
 & touche þe boon wiþ an hoot iren as fer as it is rotid / & þanne ^{has affected}
 leie þervpon buttir or grese þat þe scar þer mowe falle awei, & þan ^{the bone,}
 24 þou muste reherse þe cauterie aȝen. & þanne leie þervpon buttir, ^{use the hot}
 & þus þou muste do til þe boon be clene, & þan leie þervpon oile of ^{iron repeat-}
 rosis hoot medlid wiþ ȝelke of an ey til al þe brennyng falle away. ^{edly until the}
 & þan drie þe place with drijng medicyns, & þan regendre fleisch & ^{diseased part}
 28 soude it, & þou schalt wite þat þer is noon so good maner medicyn ^{of the bone is}
 as þis is / For if þou wolt leie þerto ony corosif water, þat wole ^{removed.}
 brenne forþere þan it schulde / & also it were greet perel for þe iȝe
 & þerfore it is good for to worche as it is aforseid / ³

¹ The end of this chapter, omitted by the translator, is given in Sl. 2463, fol. 90 b.: "¶ Also he^a seyth þat yf þe bone be schauen with Instrumentis þat all þe corrupcion is seldome taken awaye, wherefore þe corrupcion comyth aȝen bycause of þe partie whiche lenyth behynde corrupt. ¶ He seyth also þat alþouȝ the corrupcion be taken away neuer so well, yet nature departith a litell follikell þerfro aȝerne þat þe flessch mowe be faste knyt other soudid to þe bone and what tyme þe bone is touchyd with an hoot Iryn, þanne all þat is corrupt dissouerith fro þat ys hool, and þe complexion of þe place is tempered."

^a Lanfrank.

Of þe passioun of eerts.

¶ 1^o. 60.

Nerves go to the ear from the brain.

[¹ 1^o 173, bk.]

The sound is conveyed to the brain through the ear passage.

This passage is curved.

The ear is made of cartilage, that it may both sustain itself and be pliable.

The diseases of the ear belong partly to Surgery, partly to Physic.

[² 1^o 174]

All these diseases may be comprised under "aching of the ear."

Simple aching arising from a hot complexion is treated with oil of roses, and some opium.

If caused by a cold complexion it is treated with hot oil of lilies.

AS it is aforeseid þat nerues comen fro þe brain to þe ize / in þe same maner nerues comen from þe brain & goiþ into þe eris & makij heerynge & ben instrumentis of witt. ¹þe hoolis in a mannes eeris ben maad in a deep holowe boon, & it was bi þis skille þat it schulde vndirstonde sownynge, & þat þe sowne schulde not come into þe brayn anoon, but altil & altil bi degree, & also for þis skille þat þe coold eire ne þe hoot eire schulde not sodeinly entre yn; & þe wei þat goiþ into a mannes eere, ne goiþ not ríht forþ, but hidir & pidir, for if þe weie were ríhtforþ, it wolde þe rapere be hurt of al maner þing / þe eere was maad of cartilaginij þat is hardere þan fleisch & neischer þan boon, þat it miȝte be pliaunt. & if þei schulde be maad oonly of fleisch, þei schulde haue noon sustentacioun for to bere hem vp. & if þei hadden be maad oonly of hard boon, þei miȝten not haue be meued, & þefore itt was moost nede þat þei weren cartilaginous: þat is as miche to seie as maad of gristle þat is neischer þan boon & hardere þan fleisch. To þis lyme þer comeþ manie sijknnessis, & summe þerof falliþ for cirurgie as apostimes & vlcera, & summe falliþ to phisik as greet sownynge in þe eeris & sibillus, & ²defaute of heeringe & deefnes.³ Akyng of þe eeris sumtyme is an yuel, & sumtyme harme fallynge þerto / & þefore it is mi purpos for to speke boþe of sirurge and of phisik in þis chapitre. ¶ Alle þe sijknnessis of þe eeris moun be take in þis maner, as akyng of eeris. Ouper it is apostym & without vlcera, or it is wiþ enpostym & vlcera; þan it is of yuel complexioun & hoot;⁴ þat þou miȝt knowe bi scharp akyng & reednes of þe place. & þan þou schalt cure it wiþ castynge into þe eere oile of *rosis*, boylid hoot as he mai suffre, wiþ þe .iiij. part of vinegre / & if þe akyng go not awei in þis maner, þan þou schalt do þeron a litil of opium / And if it come of yuel complexioun þat it be coold, as coold wynd or of coold eire entrid þeron, þis þou miȝt knowe bi greet cooldnes in þe place, & þan þou schalt cure him wiþ þingis þat schal be cast into þe eere, watir of maiorana, or oile of lillie, þat þou schalt fynde þe composicioun in þe antidotarie. & in þis maner hoot oile schal be putt in his eere &

³ MS. *deefnes*.⁴ The translation is corrupt. Lat.: aut est sine apostemate vel ulcere aut cum apostemate et ulcere. Si sine apostemate et ulcere: tunc aut est propter malam complexionem calidam — aut propter malam complexionem frigidam.

no coold þing, & þou schalt stuwe þe pacient¹ / Sumtyme it cometh ^[1 If. 174. bk.]
 of sum þing þat falliþ in his eere as a worme or a corn or a stoon, ^{Aching caused by a foreign body in the ear:}
 or watir; þis þou schalt knowe bi þe tellinge of þe pacient; for if
 4 þer be ony þing wipiune, me mai se it. If it so be þat þer be ^{If it is a stone, cast hot oil into the ear;}
 falle yn ony stoon, þan caste into his eere oile of rosie, or oile of
 almaundis, & if þer be falle yn ony corn, þan þou schalt do noon ^{If it is a grain use an instrument,}
 oile in his eere; for it wole make þe corn wexe greet. Make a
 8 litil instrument of tree or of sum oper þing & wete it in terbertyn ^{or try the cupping-glass.}
 & putte it into his eere, & touche þerwiþ þe stoon, oupir þe greyn, &
 þan it wole cleue þerto, & þan drawe it out / ¶ Also smite his eere ^{If it is a worm, apply warm water.}
 wiþ þe pawme of þin hand, & bi hap it wole falle out þerwiþ / Also
 12 sette a ventuse wiþ fier vpon þe hoole of his eere, for þis sumtyme
 wole drawe out a corn ouþer a stoon.² ¶ If þer entriþ ony worme
 into a mannes eere, þan fille his eere ful of flact watir,³ & þan drie ^{If the pains are caused by an apostema,}
 it / And if þis suffisþ not, fille his eere ful of oile of almaundis
 16 þat ben bittir; & if þis suffisþ not, þan do in his eere iuy of
 calamynte.

¶ If þe akyng come of humouris gaderid to apostym, þat þou
 4 miȝt knowe bi greet akyng, & akyng of his pous,⁴ & bi þe ^[1 If. 175]
 20 swellunge of þe place, þan þou muste bigynne for to aswage þe
 akyng wiþ oile of rosie, & lete him blood in þe heed veyne in þe ^{bleed the patient from the Vena Cephalica, or scarify his shoulders;}
 same side. If it so be þat he mai not be lete blood, for sum cause
 þat lettþ, þan garse him vpon his schuldris, & putte in his eere oile
 24 of rosie wiþ a litil vinegre. If þee pinkiþ þat þe mater cometh of
 colre, þat þou schalt knowe bi signes þat ben forscid, þan purge
 him wiþ a decoccioun of mirabolanorum / If þe mater be not ^{if this fails to soothe the pain, apply a poultice and a plaster, until supuration begins.}
 aswagid, ne þe akyng do awei, þan bigynne for to leie mussillaginis
 28 of fenigrec & of lynseed, & rotis of altea, wiþ wommans milk, &
 do it flat⁵ into his eere / & vpon þe eere leie an enplastre þat it
 hile al þe eere, maad of lynseed, & barli, & rotis of altea, & of
 lilie, & medle hem with gandriss grese & grese of an hen. & þis cure
 32 þou schalt contynueli do, til þe quittance come out of his eere, & þe

² The translator has omitted the case when water is in the ear. Sl. 2463, fol. 83 b.: "And yef þe water enterid into þe ere, doo Galyenys experyment. ¶ Take a rodde of wilowe othyr a twigge of þe ryne and putte þe tone ende in þe patientis ere, & laype wez aboute þe tother ende and sette hit on fyre, for by þe vertu of þe fyre þe water schal be clene dried vype."

³ flact watir. Lat. flaccidus. O.Fr. flaccide. N.E. flat water. Compare flacid. Skeat, *Et. Dict.*, and *Flaisch*, p. 265, note 1, *flasch*, p. 266, note 3. O.Fr. flasque, Lat. flaccidus, another form of flaccidus.

⁴ Lat.: per fortem dolorem et pulsationem.

⁵ flat, Lat. tepidus. See above, note 3.

akynges acesse.¹ & þan þou schalt cure it riȝt as vlcera of þe eeris
 ben curid, þat schal be seid here aftir / Also if þe mater þat makith
 þe enpostym come ²of cooldnes, & þat fallith ful seelde, but if it
 come in an old man, & þat þou miȝt knowe bi þe akynges & bi þe
 cooldnes of þe place, þan þou schalt bigynne to avoide him wiþ
 pillulas cochie & wiþ a clisterie. & caste into his eere oile of lilies,
 & resolue in þe same oile ʒ .ʒ. euforbij oupir .ʒ. j. de turbit, &
 anoynte al aboute his eeris wiþ þe forseid oile of lilies, & leie þer-
 vpon wolle vnwaischen, & make him a fumigacioun to his eere wiþ
 hoot water in which schal be soden maiorana & calamynte. & if þis
 suffisith not, leie þer-vpon an enplaster or an oynement, & of garleke,
 & rotis of lillie soden to-gidere & grounden wiþ butter, & do þerto 12
 leuayn, & do þerto oile of lillie or of camomille, & a litil vinegre, &
 make an enplastre and leie vpon his eere, for þis enplastre roliþ
 coold mater & drawith it out, & if þou miȝt se ony place in þe eere
 þat quittance is gaderid on, þan it is good to opene þat place & 16
 drawe out þe quittance as it schal be seid heraftir. & þan þou schalt
 cure it riȝt as þou schalt cure vlcera þat schal be seid herafter.

[¶ If. 176]
 Sumtyme akynges of eeris comeþ of gret³ wynd & sound in þe
 eere, & noise & wynd þat comeþ of þe heed & fallith into þe eeris.⁴ 20
 þis þou miȝt knowe liȝtly, for wiþ þe akynges he schal haue a maner
 noise in his eeris & pipinge / & þe cure herof schal be avoidinge of
 greet humours, & þou schalt caste into his eere oile of rue, & in
 þe same oile schal be dissolved a litil castor, & he mote kepe him 24
 fro al þing þat engendriþ wynd.

If the pain
 is caused by
 ulcers in the
 ear,
 a stinking
 pus will be
 discharged.

Instill oil of
 rue.

If the pain
 is caused by
 ulcers in the
 ear,
 a stinking
 pus will be
 discharged.

The mudi-
 ficatives.

.Galen.
 A noxious
 ointment.
 .Galen.
 [¶ If. 176, bk.]

¶ Also akynges of þe eeris comeþ of vlcera þat ben wiþinne in
 þe hoole of þe eere, & sumtyme þei comen of an enpostym goinge
 tofore. & þe signes herof ben akynges & cours of quittance þat 28
 stynkiþ. & þe more stinking þat þe quittance is & þe more departid
 fro whit colour, þe worse it wole be to cure / first þou schalt make
 clene his heed with cochijs & wiþ pigra, & þan þou muste do mudi-
 ficatinis to his eere & drijng þingis. & be war þat þou worche not 32
 as .G. seiþ þat summe worchip: þei leide þerto an oynement þat
 was good for woundis, & alwey þe patient hadde þe more penaunce,⁵
 & þe sijkenes woxe more & more / & perfore .G. axiþ what is good
 perfore / And .G. seiþ: who þat seiþ þat it schal be curid wiþ 36

¹ *accese*, O.Fr. *acesser*.

⁴ Lat.: Fit etiam dolor auris propter grossam ventositatem ad aures de capite descendentem.

⁵ *penaunce*, Lat. *dolor*; *penaunce* usually means "penitence."

drijnge pingis, he seiþ fals ; for drijnge pingis constreineþ, & apostym
 is constreynyng¹ / And summen han now newe rulis : þat wiþ con-
 trarijs contrarie pingis schulen be curid / In þis maner þou schalt
 4 worche. Make poudre of mirre, & of aloe, & olibani, & sanguis ^{Ry}
 draco ana, & take oon tent & wete it in hony, & folde þe tent in ^{for vlcera in þe eere}
 þe poudre, & putte þe tent in his eere anon to þe botme / & if þe ^{A powder that is applied to the ear by a tent.}
 tent mai not come to þe botme þerof, þan dissolue þe forseid poudre
 8 wiþ watir & hony, & caste it yn / If it so be þat vlcus be swiþe
 cold, þan þou schalt cure him in þis maner / Take þe rust of iren, ^{Ry}
 & grinde it smal, & leie it in an erþen vessel with vinegre, & boile ^{A preparation of rust heals the ulcer, dries the moisture and allays the pain.}
 hem togidere, til þe rust bicomme drie. & þus þou muste do ofte tyme.
 12 & þan þou muste poudre it aȝen, & seþe it in vinegre aȝen til it
 bicomme picke as hony, & þan do þis in his eere, for þis wole hele
 vlcera, & þis wole drie þe moistnes þerof, & þis wole do away þe
 akyng / And take hony .3. .x., vinegre 3. viij., & boile hem liztly ^{Ry}
 16 at þe fier til it be wel skymed,¹ & þan do þerto 3 .ij. of vert de ^{An application for old ulcers.}
 grece, and ²medle hem wel togidere, & wete herynne a tent, & ^[2 lf. 177]
 putte it in his eere, & þis is good for vlcera þat ben oold.

¶ If a man be deaf, þan it cometh of summe of þe forseid causis,
 20 & principali of longe akyng; also it cometh of child bering, & ^{Deafness resulting from child-bearing is incurable.}
 þanne it is incurable / Also if it cometh of humours þat stoppiþ
 nerues, & þe cure herof is for to purge him wiþ cochijs & pigra, &
 caste in his eere oile of bittir almaundis & opere medicyns þat ben ^{If it is caused by the humours, purge and instill opening medicines into the ear.}
 24 openyng. & oon þerof is þis / Take pulpe colloquintide .3. j.,
 castor, aristologia rotunda, succi absinthij ana 3. ſ, euforbij .3. j.,
 costi grana .xv., & make herof smale pelottis, & dissolue oon herof
 wiþ oile of almaundis þat ben bittir, & do it in his eere ; saue þou
 28 schalt make him a fumigacioun tofore wiþ a decoccioun of sanbuci,
 absinthij, sticados / Also take whit oile .3. j., & grynde hony &
 oile togidere / If þe passioun cometh of defaute of spiritis, þanne
 putte herof in his eere, & þanne he schal be bapid & haue reste, &
 2 vee metis þat engendriþ good blood, & he schal heere sotil voicis for
 to make him haue heeryng / & summe seien þat þe fatnes of grene
 3 froggis, þat lyuen among trees ;⁴ take hem & seþe hem, & gadere
 þe fatnes of hem & caste in his eere, for þis hap vertu for to make
 6 men heere. ¶ Also take a litil garlek & make it clene, & do þerto
 þe .iiij. part of tartre, & grinde hem smal togidere, & boile hem in
 vinegre, & whanne it is coold þan coole it, & of þis vinegre leio
 hoot to his eere /

¹ skymed. Compare *scume*, p. 242, note 6.

⁴ Some words like *is good* are wanting.

Of þe passioun of þe nose & anothamia.

¶ iij. co.
The nose has
two holes
through
which the
brain is
purged.
Air is
gathered in
the "cola-
torium,"
and there is
the seat of
smelling.
The nose has
two bones,

AS we haue bifore seid þat þer ben .ij. hoolis in þe nose þat þe brayn is purgid þerbi of superfluite. & þe nose is not nernous, & þe nose is a propre instrument for to smelle. & þese .ij. hoolis in þe nose ben maad fast in þe scolle. & in þat place is ordeyned a þing þat is clepid colatorium,¹ & eir is gaderid þerinne þat makip vertu of smellynge. & þoruþ þat place þe superfluitees of þe brayn ben pourgid, & þer is oon hoole þerof þat goip toward þe moup. & 8 þe nose is maad of .ij. boones in þe maner of a triangle in þis maner. Δ Δ. þe scharpe eendis þat ben aboue ben ioynynge wiþ þe boones of þe iþen. & þe boonys of þe nose þat ben bineþe ben cartilaginous for þe causis þat ben forseid.² 12

Latin Original.

and three
cartilages.

[In parte vero inferiori vnum quodque illorum duorum ossium habet quandam cartilaginem propter iuuamenta que sciuiti. In medio vero habet aliam cartilaginem, quæ nasum in duas partes diuidit, 16 quæ durior et fortior est duabus aliis, quæ sunt in nasi fine. Iuuamentum vero illius medie cartilaginis est, ut si vni parti nasi nocumentum acciderit, pars alia totius suppleat iuuamentum. Duo autem ossa nasi coniunguntur ad inuicem : & fit nasi forma, quæ cum his quæ 20 dicta sunt, plures habet vtilitates. Prima, vt sit tutamen & cooperitorium superfluitatibus : quæ de cerebro diriuantur. Secunda, vt aerem recipiat, qui est ad receptionem odoratus necessarius mediator. Tertia, quod quamuis maior pars aeris que attrahitur vadat ad pul- 24 monem : tamen aliqua eius pars per nasum tendit ad cerebrum. Foraminis autem quod est inter nasum & os, iuuamenta sunt tria. Primo vt cum os clauditur, possit aeris fieri attractio ad pulmonem.

The nose
provides the
brain with
air.
The nasal
cavity com-
municates
with the
mouth,
1. that one
may breathe
through the
nose,

¹ *os colatorium*. I could not find this name in the ancient authors, but it occurs frequently in the Latin translations of the Arab authors. The idea that it is the function of the nose to purge the brain is an old one. Compare A. C. Celsus de Medicina Lib. IV. Cap. V., ed. Daremberg : "Destillat autem humor de capite interdum in nares, quod leue est, interdum in fauces, quod peius est ; interdum etiam in pulmonem, quod pessimum est." Avicenna mentions the "*os colatorium*" in connection with this theory in his Canon Lib. I. Fen. I. Doctr. V. Cap. 1., ed. Venetiis, 1527, fol. 9. "Ossa autem porosa facta fuerunt . . . propter additionem necessitatis causa, rei alicuius, que necesse est ut in ea penetret sicut odor, qui cum aere attrahitur in osse, colatorio simili, et cerebri superfluitates, que per ipsum expelluntur." We find the same theory in the French name for a cold : "rhume de cerveau," and for the same reason "Hellebore" is called "brain-purging." *N. E. Dict.*, s. v. brain.

² Three leaves or four are wanting, and I insert the Latin text from the *Editio Argellata Ven.*, 1546, f. 239, bk., and Add. 26,106, f. 71.

- Secundo, vt per illud cerebri anterior ventriculus expurgetur. Tertio, 2. to purge the brain; 3. it helps in the articulation of words. ad intercisionem adiuuet literarum, & voces melius explicandas: quoniam cum in loquendo sit necessarium vocem temperare: literas
- 4 incidere: syllabas solidare: ad hoc saepe labia clauderentur & dentes: si non esset alia via, per quam posset aer superfluous exalare apud literarum incisionem totus conculcaretur aer, qui literarum incisionem & syllabarum prolationem sua multitudine impediret: & vocem etiam
- 8 generatam non claram emitteret: facit ergo in verborum & vocis prolatione foramen hoc quod facit foramen fistulae superius,¹ quod in vocum et tonorum modulationem remanet absolutum: quare voces & toni inde magis exeunt absoluti.²
- 12 In naso vel naribus plures concurrunt egritudines. Nam ibi fiunt pustulae, vlcera, caro superflua,* polypus, cancer, fluxus sanguinis, fetor, & olfactus priuatio.
- Pustulae** fiunt vt plurimum ab adustis humoribus, et sunt cum Pustulas and Ulcers are treated with bloodletting and an ointment.
- 16 punctura & ardore. Et cura est phlebotomia & corporis euacuatio, et iniectio albuminis oui cum oleo ros. in simul agitatis. Pustulis fractis, fiat vnctio cum vnguento albo Rasis.
- Vlcera** quoque si calida fuerint, curantur eodem modo. Si
- 20 frigida, cum lauatione vini et mellis, & cum vnguento apostolorum, et cum vnguento viridi dicendorum.
- Caro superflua** remouetur cum instrumentis chirurgicis; si non Proud flesh is removed with an instrument. potest tota cum instrumentis remoueri: remouetur residuum cum
- 24 puluere asfodillorum & cum vnguento viridi, & apostolorum, & cunctis mundificantibus: & remotis superfluis cum unguentis solidantibus compleatur.
- Polypus** dicitur a polypo pisce: cuius malitiosa est astutia: quia The polype is a disease, so called for its similarity with the animal.
- 28 quando vult piscibus saturari, ascendit saxum quod est in litore maris: & ipsi multum assimilatur, pisces fatigati videntes saxum, non aduertunt de polypo propter similitudinem: sed volentes quiescere, salliunt de mari: polypus illos absorbet: & in eius conuertit
- 32 nutrimentum. Sic iste morbus cum naso magnam habet affinitatem: quoniam eius materia est catarrhosa frigida grossa descendens a capite: & in via propter eius grossitiem & tenacitatem haeret naso seu substantiae nasi inuiscata: et humores capitis agitatione moti naturae
- 36 volentes descendere, & exire, materiam ibi recipiunt congregatam:

¹ Add. 26,106, fol. 71 b., on margin: gallice flaute.

² The whole preceding passage about the utilities of the nose, and especially the utility of the "nares posteriores," i. e. the communication between the nasal cavity and the pharynx, is taken from *Aricenna*, l. c. Cap. 4.

There are
two kinds of
polype:

1. The incur-
able one has
the nature of
a cancer.

2. The cur-
able one may
be treated
like proud
flesh.

quæ humores illos in suam conuertit malam naturam: et ex ipsa
quotidie augmentatur. Differentia vero est inter polypum & carnem
superfluam: quoniam caro superflua, non habet profundam tenacita-
tem cum nasi substantia: nec cum ipso naso nimis assimilatur: 4
immo potest de facili segregari: polypus vero firmiter adheret cum
naso: & non sine violentia separatur. Quorum scilicet polyporum
aliquis est curabilis: aliquis incurabilis. Curabilis est substantiæ
mollis & tractabilis: nec nasum reddit durum: nec in colore nigrum 8
seu fuscum: nec est multum supra circa cerebri confinia inuiscatus.

Incurabilis vero nasum reddit durum, liuidum seu nigrum: &
magnam profunditatem tenet, quam quanto magis videris maiori
nigredine maiorque participari duritie, maioremque profunditatem 12
occupare, tanto plus ab eo existima fugiendum: quoniam naturam
tunc tenet cancri: quanto plus eum curare niteris tanto plus videbis
eius malitiam augmentari.

Curabilis vero cura est secundum quod diximus in cura super- 16
fluæ carnis quæ ibi consurgit cum ablatione sive cum instrumentis
& cum vnguentis mundificativis: & aliis quæ nouisti: præcedente
semper corporis et capitis purgatione: sicut multoties est ostensum.
Cauteria quoque secundum quod audies, multum valent ad polypi 20
materiam consumendam. Eius vero quem incurabilem diximus,
non assumas curam. Si tamen rogaris nimis, palliatium curam
adhibe: sicut in cura cancri recolimus ostendisse.

De anatomia oris, & contentorum in ore, & passionibus doctrinæ 24 tertiae tractatus tertii

Cap. iiii.

The mem-
brane lining
the mouth is
continuous
with the in-
tegment of
the stomach.

The organ of
voice is com-
posed of three
cartilages.

Totam vero oris concauitatem interius circundat panniculus qui
continuus est cum meri, & cum stomacho: quare accidit quod
multæ res tangentes palatum prouocant vomitum. Ad oris concaui- 28
tatem duæ perueniunt viæ: quarum anatomiam superius habuisti;
in earum summitate est epiglottis: quæ est creata ad perficiendum
vocem: et ut seruet aliquid de aere attracto ad anelitum. Hæc
epiglottis ex tribus est composita cartilaginibus: vna est eminens 32
ante & dicitur clypealis & a laicis dicitur guttur vel nodus gulæ: alia
est posterius cum osse laudæ continua et uocatur nomen non habens.¹
Tertia vocatur cymbalaris siue cooperturalis:² & continuatur cum
nomen non habente: & cooperit clypealem: et ista cymbalaris 36
mouetur per eius musculos: quare cum homo comedit, viam claudit

¹ Cartilago cricoidea.

² Cartilagine arytenoidæ.

canne pulmonis: & viam aperit oesophagi. Cum autem homo loquitur, aperit viam canne pulmonis: & claudit viam oesophagi. Quare multoties accidit, quod si homo comedens dicere vellet
 4 aliquid ignoranter: quod aliquid viam intraret canne pulmonis: quare natura moueretur ad tussendum: nec cessaret, donec quod cannam intrauerat, esset ad extra expulsum.] ^[11. 178] til þat mete be out of his prote, saue algate he schal couze til it be oute. & þan aboue
 8 þis instrument is vuula þat is þe palet² of þe mouþ & helpiþ for to make soun / For þe wynd þat comeþ of þe lungis reboundiþ³ azens þe palet & makip þe more soun. In þe holownes of þe mouþ is maad fast þe tunge, þat is maad of whit fleisch, & neische, & of
 12 nerues, & veynes, & of arterijs, as it is necessarie þerfore / And in þe prote of þe tunge ben .ij. wellis þat spotil is gaderid þeron, & holdip alwei þe tunge moist / Also in a mannes mouþ ben .xxxij.
 teep, & þerof sittip .xvj. in þe cheke boon,⁴ & summen han but
 16 .xxvij. / And for to hile a mannes teep ben ordeined lippis, & ben as it were þe dore of an hous, & helpiþ forto speke & to pronounce wordis / Now to alle þese lymes þat ben forseid: as þe palet of þe mouþ & a mannes tunge & þe teep & þe gomis & þe lippis, alle
 20 þei han diuers passiouns.

The mouth contains the epiglottis, the uvula, which helps to make sound,

the tongue, made of white flesh, nerves and blood-vessels,

32. teep.

and the lips, by whose help words are pronounced.

Diseases in these parts.

¶ Vuula sumtyme wip cours of humouris sumtime gaderip an enpostym, & sumtyme vuula wexip to long,⁵ & sumtyme apostym of þe palet comeþ of hoot cause, þat þou schalt knowe bi þe reednes
 24 of þe place & bi brennyng; & þanne in þe cure herof þou schalt bigynne for to lete him blood in þe heed veyne, & purge colre wip a decoccioun of fretis.⁷ & herof þou schalt make him a gargarisme, & þerwip he schal ofte waische his mouþ: R̄, lentes, balaustias,
 28 psidias, gallas, rosas, sumac, & boile þese wip .ij. partis of water, & oou part of vinegre, & herof make a gargarisme / Also þou schalt leie to his palet poudre of rosas, & sandalis,⁸ & balaustiarum & a litil of camphre / þis is a good help þerfore whanne þe palet is
 32 woxe long wip hoot humouris. ¶ If þer come an enpostym of coold humouris, ouþer þat þe palet wexe long wip coold humouris, & þat þou miȝt knowe whanne þe place is not reed, & if þer be

Vuula.

[11. 178, bk.]

In case of a hot apostema on the palate (uvula) bleed, purge and use a gargle.

Gargarismus.

R̄

If cold humour cause the apostema,

² *palet*, palate. See Skeat, *Et. Dict.* The erroneous identification of uvula and palatum is not in the original.

³ *rebound*, O.Fr. rebondir. See later references in Skeat, *Et. Dict.*

⁴ Lat.: XVI in utraque mandibula.

⁵ Lat.: Vuula namque propter humorum decursum aliquando apostematur aliquando solum elongatur.

⁷ *fretis*, fruit.

⁸ MS. inserts *ſ rosas*.

purge and use
a gargle.
R miche spotil in his mouþ, first þou schalt purge him wiþ cochijis & pigra, & þan make him a gargarisme wiþ þis decoccioun: R, aceti partes duas, mellis partem vnam, boile hem togidere & do þerto poudre of mirtillorum¹ & þe seed of rosis & peletre² & zinzibere, & 4 þan make him poudre of pepir³ & sal armoniac, & make herwith a fumigacioun wiþ enbotum.⁴ & if it be greet to-swolle, & þan þou muste make consumynge þingis as diameron & sappa michum⁵ / If þe palet be recchid along, & if it be so long þat it lie vpon þe 8 tunge, þan þou muste kutte awei as miche þerof as þee pinkip good, so þat it be nomore þan it schulde be; & be war þat þou kutte not to myche þerof, for þer miȝte come greet perel þerof: as his vois miȝte be apeirid þe while he lyuede, & contynuely couzinge, & his 12 lungis miȝte be þe worse þerfore & also his piys.⁶ & þerfore it is greet perel for to kutte a mannes palet.⁷

¶ The tunge suffrip manie sijknessis as pustulas and swellynge & kuttynge, & ofte tyme a mannes tunge bicometh schorter þan it¹⁶ schulde be. And þer is anoper passioun þat is clepid fili ranulam⁸ & spasmus, & sumtyme a mannes tunge wexip to long.⁹ ¶ The curis of pustulis & vlcera schulen be seid heraftir / If þer come an enpostym or ony swellynge to a mannes tunge, & it come of hoot²⁰ humours, þanne þou schalt bigynne þe cure þerof in þis¹⁰ maner / first lete him blood in þe heed veine, & þanne make him a decoccioun & a waisching as it is aforseid in apostym of þe palet: & he schal holde in his mouþ þe iuys of letuse. & in þe same maner þou²⁴ schalt cure swellynge of a mannes tunge / If þer come apostym or

the tong¹
suffers from
many dis-
eases.
Ranulam.
In case of an
apostoma in
the tongue,
[3 lf. 179, l. k.]
bleed from
the head-vein
and use a
wash.

¹ MS. over *mirtillorum* is written *mirtelberys*.

² *pelletre*, Lat. *pyrethrum*. "*Pyrethrum*, Bartram, wild or bastard Pellitory, an Herb the Root of which is very biting and hot." Phillipa. See *Pelletier* Cath. Angl. and Note *ibid*.

⁴ *enbotum*, Lat. *embotum*. See *Dufr.* = *infundibulum*. Fr. *embut*, a surgical instrument, a funnel.

⁵ *sappa michum*, Lat. *saramitum*.

⁶ *piys*, Lat. *pectus*. O.Fr. *pia*.

⁷ Gulielmus de Saliceto, Lanfranc's teacher, uses a cautery instead of cutting. I give the quotation from an English translation, MS. Sloane 277, fol. 1 (beginning of 15th cent.): "*Be þe grape cutt wiþ a brennyngre yren kernynge, & be it putt in by a pipe to þe grape, þe mouþ holden open. Be þe grape receyued in þe hole of þe pipe. Whicher receyued, be putt in þere þe brennyngre yren in þe pipe, & be þe grape canteried.*"

⁸ *Ranula*, a tumor, which forms under the tongue. (Dunglison.) See Vegetius, *De re veterin.* 4, 5, 1. Gr. *βάρπαξος*. Fr. *grenouillette*.

⁹ The passage is corrupt. Lat.: *Lingua quoque multas patitur segritudines, pustulas, inflationem, scissuram, breuiationem filii, ranulam, spasmus et relaxationem.*

ony swellynge of coold humouris, þan purge him with pillulis þat be forseid of .G[aliens]. makinge. ¶ Ther was a man þat his tunge was so swolle þat it mʒte not be conteyned in his mouþ. & first

4 I made him purgaciouns & waischingis, & þan I made him con-
sumynge þingis; & in þis maner he was curid. ¶ Scissure is a
passioun in a mannes tunge þat is as it were kutting. & þat schal
be curid wip þe iuys of malue soden wip psillium & medlid wip
8 sugre & sode, & herwip he schal waische his mouþ. & he schal
drinke water of barli, & his mete schal be hoggis feet wel soden, &
wip þe nerues of þe feet he schal frote wel his tunge. ¶ Also þer
is a þreed¹ vndir sum mannes tunge þat he mai not put out his
12 tunge as he schulde, & also it lettþ him to speke. þe cure herof
is for to kutte þat þreed, ²& þan brenne him. & it is better for to
make an instrument of goold & brenne it þerwip, & kutte also wip
þe same instrument / ¶ Also þer comeþ an enpostym vpon a mannes
16 tunge of fleume³ & also of malancolie, saue of malancolie an en-
postym comeþ but selden / þese ben þe signes if it come of
malancolie: þe place wole be ledi ouþir blak. & þan do þou no
cure þerto / If it come of fleuma, þanne frote wel his tunge wip
20 salt, til þe blood come out þerof. & if þis suffise not, þan frote it
wel wip vitriol / If þe spasme come in a mannes tunge þat wole
constryne þe tunge inward, þe cure herof is for to holde oile of
anete in his mouþ & of camomille hoot as he mai suffre, & make an
24 enplastre herof medlid wip hoot water, & leie it vpon his heed &
vpon his nolle hoot / If his tunge bicomе neische, þan þou muste
purge him wip pillulis fetidis,⁴ or with trocisco de turbit. & þan
do þerto þis medicyn: Rʒ, grana vij. numero, recentis & lucidi
28 euforbij,⁵ & take vij. figis & pare awei þe ryndis þerof & grynde
hem wel togidere, & do þerto as miche raw hony ⁶& medle hem to-
gidere, & make herof þe maner of a letuarie; & herof he schal take
as miche as a bene, & leie it vndir his tunge, whanne he were

If the apos-
tema is
caused by
cold humours
use the purg-
ing pills of
Galien.

"Scissure"
is a fissure in
the tongue.
Use a wash,
and let the
patient feed
on barley-
water and
hog's-feet.

When the
"frenum
lingue" ex-
tends too far,
cut it with
a golden
instrument.
[¶ If. 180]

When the
apostema is
caused by
melancholy,

try no cure;

if it is caused
by phlegm,
rub the
tongue with
salt or vitriol.

Against
cramp in the
tongue use
anet-oil and
a plaster.

If the tongue
becomes soft,
use purging
pills and an
electuary.

Rʒ

[¶ If. 180, bk.]

¹ þreed, Lat. filum. Usually filetum. Fr. filet de la langue.

² Lat.: Ranula quoque fit sub lingua. Sl. 2463, fol. 93: "Ranula is an emynence vnder þe tunge toward þe forther teth in maner of an enpostume, & whanne þe tunge is lift vp þer schewith as it were a nother tunge vnder þe tunge."

⁴ pillule fetida, pills composed from fetid things.

⁵ Halle, Table, p. 85. 'Euphorbium, Εὐφορβιον: is the gum or teares of a tree called Euphorbia growinge in Lybia, found out (by the testimonye of Dioscorides) in y^e time of Iuba: and was called by that name (as saith Ruellius) of his Phisicien."

fastynge / Wip þis medicyn þe abbot of seint victor was maad hool ; for he miȝte not speke, & herwip his speche come aȝen.¹

Toothache

¶ Akinge of teep : sumtyme it comeþ of vijs of þe teep,² & sumtyme of þe gomis, & sumtyme it comeþ of vijs of þe stomac, & 4 sumtyme it comeþ of hoot mete, & sumtyme of coold mete. & if

caused by hot
meat is
treated with
cold water,
by cold meat
with hot oil,
by sour
things with
cheese and
puralane.

If it arises
from the
head or gums
let blood.

it come of hoot mete, make him holde coold watir in his mouþ, & þat wole cure him anon. & if it come of coold mete, þan he schal holde in his mouþ hoot oile. & if a mannes teep akip for sour 8 þingis, þan he schal ete chese & portulacas, or he schal gnawe wip his teep hoot wex³ / If it come of vicis of þe heed or of þe gomis, and þe cause come of hete, þat þou miȝt knowe bi reednes of þe place & bi þe hete þerof, & þan þou schalt lete him blood in þe heed 12 veine, & þan þou schalt lete him blood in þe veine þat is vndir his tunge ; & þan he schal holde in his mouþ oile of rosis, medlid wip

[⁴ l. 181]

To soothe
the pain,

R̄

apply to the
tooth a pre-
paration of
hyoscyamus
and opium.

watir, ⁴ouper coold watir & vinegre / If þe akyng be so greuou þat it mai not be take awei, þan aswage his akyng wip þis 16 medicyn : R̄, seminis iusquiami albi⁵ opij ana ʒ .j, seminis apij ʒ .j, grinde hem togidere & tempere hem wip vinegre, & make þerof pelottis in þe greetnes of a pece, & leie oon herof vpon þe toop, & þis wole do awei þe akinge þerof. & after þe fourþe dai lete him 20 holde in his mouþ oile of rosis, in which is dissolued masticia.

If the pain
is caused
by cold
humours,
purge,
use an
electuary
and instill a
medicine into
the ear.

R̄

¶ If þe akyng come of coold humouris, þat þou miȝt knowe if þe place be not reed ne to-swollen, þan purge him wip cochijs or wip pigra. & aftir þis he schal holde in his mouþ tiriacam diatessaron.⁶ 24

¶ Also do þis medicyn in his eere in þe same parti þat akip / R̄, olum oliuarum .ʒ ij., aceti .ʒ j., coloquintidae, piperis ana .ʒ j.,

¹ Lat.: cum hac medicina fuit restituta loquela dominæ abbatisse sancti victoris ad ultimum, quæ propter linguæ mollificationem non poterat uerbum intelligibile bene loqui ; dedi ei hanc medicinam, et cito locuta est expedite.

² of viis of þe teep, dentium vitio. viis is used synonymously with defaute. Sometimes both expressions are used. Sloane 277, f. 12 b.: "These seknesses be maad of vice or defaute of þe norischinge strengþe."

³ This is evidently a way of filling the hole of a tooth.

⁵ Halle, Table, 52. "Hyoscyamus. Henbane is called in Greeke Ὑοσκιᾶμος ; in Latin: Hiosciamus, Apollinaris, Faba suilla et Altercum ; of Apuleius: Symphoniaca ; of others also Fabidum and Fabilonia, and of some Cassilago or Caniculata ; of the Apothecaries Iusquiamus. Of Henbane there are three kyndes: the blacke, the yelow and the whyte."

⁶ diatessaron, an electuary into the composition of which entered four medicines. "Among Farriers Diatessaron is taken for Horse-treacle ; —. Also an Electuary made of Gentian, Bay berries and Birth-wort, of each two Ounces, all beaten to a very fine Powder, and work'd in like manner with two Pounds of Honey in a Stone-mortar."—Phillips.

- & boile hem in a double vessel, & distille it in his eere flaisch¹ /
 Sumtyme a mannes teef ben frete & ben holow, & þis cometh of
 humours corrupt þat falliþ to þe teef. & in þis maner þou schalt
 4 cure it / R̄, olium .ʒ j., sansuci² sicci,³ seminis sicute ana ʒ ʒ. If the teeth
are hollow
R̄
cauterize the
hole with the
hot iron.
[¹ ff. 181, bk.]
 boile hem togidere, & þan þou schalt haue ⁴a cauterie wiþ .ij.
 pointis, & þou schalt haue þe schap herof herastir, & þou schalt
 make þe same instrument hoot in þe fier, & þan putte it in þe for-
 8 seid oile, & þan putte it in þe hole of his toof, & be war þat þou
 touche not his gomys wiþ þe iren ne his lippis: & þis medicyn þou
 muste reherse ofte tymes / þis medicyn wole bringe water out of
 þe teef, & it wole do awei þe akyng. ¶ If þou desirist to drawe
 12 out ony mannes toof wiþouten iren: R̄, cortices radicum mori &
 piretrum ana, distempere hem wiþ vinegre & grinde hem wel
 togidere, & drie hem in þe sunne, & departe litzli þe toof & þe
 fleisch of þe gomis & leie of þe medicyn bitwixe þe toof & þe
 16 fleisch / Also lac titimalli⁵ distemperid wiþ flour of amidum / Also
 make poudre of peletre & lete it lie in vinegre in þe somer tyme, &
 kepe it; þis makith neische, þat þe toof mowe be drawe out wiþ-
 outen ony iren / If a mannes teef ben blac, in þis maner þou schalt
 20 make hem whit / R̄, farinam ordeï, sal ana, & leie hem in hony, &
 make þerof past & folde it in paper ⁶or in linnen cloof, & brenne
 it in a furneis. & þan brenne schellis of eiren, & ciperi, aluminis
 ana partes duas, corticum citri siccorum, camfer ana partem vnam,
 24 make herof poudre, and frote þerwiþ his teef & hise gomis, & þis
 wole do awei þe blaknes of a mannes teef /

Of þe passioun in wommen brestis /

- 28 **G**Od almiȝti made in a womman tetis for þe norischinge of a ¶ v. c.
A woman's
breasts are
made of
glandular
flesh, blood-
vessels and
nerves,
and the blood
is turned to
milk in them.
 child. & a wommans tetis ben maad of fleisch þat is glandu-
 lous, & of veines, & of arterijs, & of nerues, & ben but veines þat
 comen fro a wommans lyuere to hir tetis & þe maris, as it is seid
 here tofore, & in what maner blood turneþ into milk it is forseid.⁷

¹ *flaisch*, tepidus. See p. 255, note 3.² "*Samsucus*, maiorana," et cet. *Alphita*, p. 161.³ MS. *succi*.⁴ *lac titimalli*. *τιθιμαλος*, euforbia.⁷ Lat.: et ad ubera veniunt venae concavae a matrice, per quas, ut scivisti, pars sanguinis attrahitur menstrualis, et sicut chylus camellinus veniens a stomacho, cum a hepate recipitur, colorem recipit rubeum: sic sanguis a matrice veniens rubeus albescit. Compare *Avicenna*, Lib. IV., Fen. XII., Cap. 1, f. 209. "Nam epar rubificat chilum album et facit ipsum sanguinem. Et mamilla albificat sanguinem rubeum et facit ipsum lac."

Egidius. ¶ In a wommans tetis cometh manie passiouns / ffor, as Egidius seip, þat sumtyme þer cometh þerto apostym of milk, & sumtyme vlcera / And comounly enpostyms cometh of blood þat is drawe to þe tetis & mai not turne into milk, or if a womman haue to miche blood, & it cometh of febilnes of vertu as it is aforseid in þe general chapitre of enpostyms. ¶ þe cure of an hoot enpostym in þe tetis / first þou schalt lete hir blood in Basilica, or sette a ventuse vpon hir schuldris. & if þe cause come of retencioun of menstrie, þan þou schalt ȝeue hir medicyns for to bringe out þe menstrie, or þou schalt lete hir blood in þe sophene, & anointe þe place wip oile of rose, & þe fourþe part of vinegre. & if þis suffise not, þan wete a linnen cloof in þe iuyes of solatri,² & whanne þou hast anoyntid þe place wip oile & vinegre, þan leie þis cloof þervpon. & loke þat alle þingis þat þou leist þerto be flasch hoot;³ for þer schal no coold þing be leid þerto for þe place is neruous, for coold þing wolde greue it. If alle þese medicyns suffisen not, saue þe mater bigynneþ to drawe to quittance, þanne leie þerto maturatiuis. & if þou miȝt not do it aweil wip repercussiuus ne wip resoluynge þingis, & þou ne miȝt not make it maturatif, þan it is drede lest þe womman bicome in a passioun þat is clepid Mania.⁴ þan hir heed mote be schaue, & ȝeue hir confortif þingis for hir heed, & ȝeue hir sotil dietynges, & sche schal drinke no wijn ne ete no fleisch. & þou muste worche ful sotilli, ffor I say a womman þat hadde an enpostym in hir brest & come of blood, & so I tauȝte hir for to do as it is aforseid, & þo þer come a lewid cirurgian & repreuede me, & he leide þervpon maturatiuis: & þe more þat he leide þervpon maturatiuis, þe more þe mater wexide greet & þe more brennynges. & þe same cirurgian wolde not heere my counseil / & þe wommans freendis took more hede to þe lewid cirurgian þan to me, & wipinne .iiij. daies Mania come to hir and was oute of hir witt, & so þe frenesie fil on hir / & þis pronosticacioun I seide in þe bigynnynges, but þei wolde not leue mi wordis⁷ / If it so be þat it make quittance, þan opene it & do out þe quittance, & þan leie þerto a mundificatif,

Apostemas are caused by blood in the breast, which cannot be turned into milk.
Treatment of a hot apostema.
[If 182, bk.] Use blood-letting and cupping.
In case of retention of the menstrual blood, bleed from the Saphena: use an ointment and a compress, which must be lukewarm.

If suppuration is imminent, apply maturatives, and if they fail there is danger of Mania.
Shave her head,

[If 182] and let her abstain from wine and meat.

A woman with an apostema in her breast was treated by an unskilful surgeon, with maturatives,

in three days she fell into Mania and frenzy, as I prognosticated.

If it suppurates, open it.

² Halle, *Table*, p. 119. "Solanum hortense, which doubtlesse Lanfranke meaneth by Solatrum, doth Galen also call Esculentum."

³ flasch hoot, tepidus. See p. 255, note 3.

⁴ De propr. rer. lib. V. cap. 84. Add. 27,944, fol. 53 b.: "ypocras seip þat in women in þe wiche superfluyte of blood turned to þe pappis, it bodeþ madnes."

⁶ do, above line.

⁷ Lat.: mea tamen prognosticatio multum exaltata extitit.

- & be wel war þat þou putte þerinne no greet tent ne long, as manie
 foolis doon; for a wommans tetis ben ful of nerues, & if þe nerues
 were pressid wiþ ony tent, it wolde make gret akynge, & wolde
 4 lette þe cure þerof. ¶ Also þer ben manie foli lechis, whanne þei
 fynden ¹in a wommans tetis fleisch þat is glandelous, þan þei wene
 þat it be wickid fleisch, & ben þeraboute for to drawe it out, &
 þan þei schendip al þe substaunce of þe brest. þou schalt worche
 8 wiseli & þou schalt remeue noon herof, for as it is aforseid, al þe
 fleisch of þe tetis is glandelous. & whanne þat is clensid wiþ
 mundificatinis þan þou schalt regendre fleisch, & þan þou schalt drie
 it / If it be so, þat cold mater gadere to enpostym in a wommans
 12 brest, & þat comeþ ful selde, loke if þis mater come of fleume, &
 þan anoynte þe place wiþ oile of camomille, & oile of lillie, & oile
 of anete, & a litil vinegre medlid þerwiþ. & if it be ony nede first
 make hir a purgacioun, & if it resolute not, þan leie þerto matura-
 16 tiuis, & þan do as it is aforseid / & if it so be þat þe mater turne
 to hardnes & blak or ledi, þan þou muste be war þat þou leie þerto
 no medicyns þat ben to hoot, for þer mai engendre a cancre þerof
 ful liztli. & if it be so, þan be þou not þeraboute for to make it
 20 maturatif, & do þou no cure þerto. & summen seien þat a womman
 mai be curid for ²to kutte off al þe brest, & þat is al fals. Saue
 þou schalt kepe þe place wiþ vnguentum de tutia, & sche mote ofte
 be purgid, þat sche mowe lyue þe lenger. ¶ I-leue þe wordis þat I
 24 seie; þou; I haue curid manie men of diuers empostyms, I mizte
 neuere cure a verri cancre, but it were in a fleischi place þere I
 mizte kut al awei wiþouten ony hurtyng of senewis & of veines ³ /
 & a wommans brest is ful of senewis & veynes & arterijs. ¶ Vlcera
 28 þat ben in a wommans tetis schulen be curid as it is aforseid in þe
 general chapitre, saue herof þou muste be war þat þis lyme may not
 suffre so harde corosiuis for þe greet tendirnes þerof, saue þou
 schalt do þerto medicyns þat ben mundificatif & drierige / It fallip
 32 to summe wommen þat þe point of hir tete ne goip not out, but
 ben al hid in þe tete so þat a child mai not take it in his mouþ for
 to souke / In þis maner þou schalt helpe it / Take þe cuppe of an
 acurne, & þat is lyk to þe point of a wommans tete, & do þeron
 36 terbentyn or pich, & make it hoot & leie it vpon þe point of hir
 tete & binde ⁴it þerto faste, & þis wole drawe out þe point of hir

Be ware
not to use a
greet tent,
as many
fools do.

Many foolish
physicians
[1. 1. 183, bk.]
remove the
glandular
flesh, mis-
taking it for
corrupt flesh.

If cold matter
gathers into
an apostema,
apply an
ointment

and matura-
tives.
If the matter
becomes
hard, it may
easily become
a cancer.
In case of
cancer,

[1. 1. 184]
operation
does not help;
but apply an
ointment
and prolong
the patient's
life.
I have only
cured a true
cancer in a
fleshy part.

Ulcers in a
woman's
breast are
treated with
mundificative
and drying
medicines.

If the nipples
are hid in the
breast draw
them out with
an acorn-cup.

Ry

³ There is no condition mentioned in the Latin original, under which the operation might be performed. Roy. 12. C. XIV. fol. 54 b.: de uero cancro nunquam curare potui, licet pluries cum meis uiribus laborauerim.

In case of
enlargement
of the breast
apply

Ry
the powder of
a whet-stone
and vinegar,

or a plaster
of cummin with
honey and
vinegar.

If the milk
becomes
hard, anoint
the breast
with oil
and apply a
solvent.

[² If. 185]

Ry

tete. ¶ Also it bifallip to maidenen þat her tetis bicomēþ more þan þei schulde be bi resoun, & þou schalt helpe hem in þis maner / Take stonys þat me whettip knyues on, & frote þese .ij. stones togidere in vinegre longe, til þe vinegre bicomē þicke þerof, & make it hoot & anoynte þer wiþ hir tetis, & þan binde hem / þis medicyn defendip þat þei schulen not wexe, & make hem bicomē litil til þei come to her owne propre schap. ¶ Also take comyn & make poudre þerof, & medle it wiþ hony & vinegre; and it worchip þe 8 more strongli if þou medle þerwiþ bole armoniac & terra sigillata; grinde hem & tempere hem wiþ vinegre, & make a plastre þerof & lete it lie þeron .iiij. daies, & þan þou schalt waische it wiþ coold water / And a womman be war herof þat sche haue no sich 11 medicyn, if hir brest schal wexe ony more.¹ ¶ If þat milk be gaderid hard in a wommans brest for hete, þanne þou schalt anointe hir brest wiþ oile of rosis & vinegre, & þou schalt make an enplastre as ²of solatri, portulace, for þese herbis han propirte for to 14 dissolue. ¶ þis is a plastre þat wole dissolue mylk þat is congelid hard, and it wole make þe mater of an enpostym maturatif / Ry, mice panis, farina ordeï, fenigreci & seminis lini ana. 3 j, radices malue visci & herbe veruce.³ ana. ʒ j.; seþe wel þese .ij. laste, & þan stampe hem wel alle togidere & tempere hem wiþ oile, & make þerof a plastre & leie it vpon flasch hoot /

ffor brekyng of þe siphac & of his laxyng.

¶ vj. 00/

If the
"siphac"
protrudes at
the navel or
the groins,

use a ligature
and a plaster.

[⁴ If. 185, bk.]

If the siphac
is broken a
gurgling
sound is
heard, on the
application
of pressure.

A Nothamia of þe siphac is aforseid / & sumtyme siphac is kutt, & sumtyme it recchip along, & sumtyme it to-brekip wiþ lepinge, & sumtyme for greet wepinge, & sumtyme for greet crijnge, & sumtyme for greet traueile. ¶ If siphac be recchid aboute þe nauele ouþer aboute þe heeris, þat þou myzt knowe in þis maner: þe place wole be to-swolle an hiȝ as it were an enpostym. & whanne þou touchist it wiþ þi fyngir, it wole goon yn aȝen. & sumtyme it wole come aȝen, & it wole make noon gurgulacioun / þe cure herof is but liȝt, & is wiþ a ligature & wiþ enplastre þat schal be seid in þe brek- inge ⁴of þe siphac. & if siphac be to-broke, þou miȝte knowe bi þe greet noise, whanne þou lest þin hond þervpon for to putte hem yn

¹ The translator has omitted the following passage: *Caueat etiam illa quæ non vult suas ingrossare mamillas: ne illas tangat vel tangi permittat.*

³ *herbe veruce*, Lat. *herba eruca*. *Brassica eruca* L., white mustard. The translator mistook it for *Verrucaria*.

3^{en}.¹ ¶ þe cure herof is hard in an oold man. þan make him a braccal² id est a boond þat it be þe brede of .iiij. fyngris. & it mote be maad of linnen clop maniefoold,³ & þou muste make a plate of iren, 4 as brood as þe brekyng is, & þat mote be fooldid manie foold in þe forseid ligature, & it schal not be round, but plain. & þou muste ordeyne þerfore fastnyngis tofore & bihinde & in hise flankis, þat it mowe be holde algate in oon place, and þou schalt make an enplastre 8 for to leie vpon þe same place vndir þe bindinge in þis maner / R^y, glutinum piscium vel carte .3. .iiij, picis grece .3. .iiij, picis naualis armoniaci ana. 3 ij, kutte þese alle to smale gobetis, & do hem in 3. ij. of vinegre, & 3 .iiij. of oile of mastics & lete hem lie þeron 12 adai & anyzt, & þan melte hem in a panne & cole hem. & heron medle poudre mastic & thus, & boli armoniaci, mummie, sanuins, draconis, dragaganti, farine fenigreci ana 3 ʒ. medle hem longe togidere / Oupir take ⁴scropholarie⁵ þe rynde þerof & grinde it 16 wiþ grese, & make þerof an enplastre, & of þe same rotis make poudre, & zeue him þerof eueri dai .3. j. & ʒ. wiþ wijn / Also zeue him euery dai .3. j. & ʒ. of poudre maad of þe rotis of valarian temperid wiþ wijn. ¶ And if hise guttis falle adoun into his 20 ballok lepir,⁶ þe cure þerof schal be seid in þe nexte chapitre //

Apply a bandage and a plate of iron firmly fastened on the place;

and beneath the bandage apply a plaster. R^y

[* 12. 186]

Of hernia⁷ of þe ballokis //

THIS siknes mai be seid in manie maners / In oon maner whanne ¶ vij. c^o/ a mannes bowels fallip into his ballokis leperia, & þan it is 24 clepid hernia intestinalis / Or þer fallip watir into þe same place as Scrotal hernias

¹ The distinction made between a simple protrusion and a rupture of the siphac is, in fact, one between a less or more developed hernia. The "gurgling sound" has already been noticed by *Avicenna Canon*, Lib. III., Fen. 22, Tract. 1, Cap. 3.

² *braccal*, Lat. *brachale* = *cingulum coriaceum* Dufr., from med. Lat. *bracæ*. See *breeches*, *N. E. Dict.* The use of the "brachale vel lumbare" is mentioned by Gulielm. de Salie, *Chirurgia*, Lib. I., Cap. 48. De crepatura in inguinibus. Engl. transl., Sl. 277, fol. 6 b. "Wipoute cuttyngs moost children & opere in whiche þe guttes comen not down to þe ballock odd, & whiche þat hadde but litel schewyngs wiþ a lumbare or a bandrike, & oure plastro & poudre manye in my tyme I curede þe lumbare or bandrike oweþ to be maad of linnen clop þrefold." Sl. 2463, fol. 123 b. says: "The cure without incision . . . is don with a gyrdell made for þe rupture, þe whiche a man may fynde to sylle."

³ *maniefoold*, Lat.: multis duplicationibus facta.

⁴ *scropholarie*, *scrophularia*, water betony, *medemort* written above. See Wr. Wül. *medmurt*.

⁵ *ballok lepir*, *testiculorum bursa*.—*Cath. Angl.*, p. 211. Ledyr; *birsa*. Sl. 2463, f. 123 b.: *þe purs of þe ballokes*. ⁷ MS. *hernia*.

Hernia
intestinalis,
hernia
aquosa,
hernia
ventosa,
hernia
carnosa,
hernia
varicosa.

1. Either the
Zirbus or the
[1 If. 186, bk.]
bowels fall
into the
enlarged
Didymus.

2. They fall
through a
rupture of
the Siphac
into the
Scrotum.
This latter
case can only
be cured by
operation.

Many unskil-
ful men dare
to try these
cures,

[2 If. 187]

whereas some
wise men are
afraid of
doing so.

These two
kinds of
Hernia must
be dis-
tinguished.

1. The bowels
fall out sud-
denly through the
broken
Mirac.

2. The bowels
descend
slowly,
with a gurg-
ling sound.

[2 If. 187, bk.]

it were a dropesie, & þan it is clepid hernia aquosa / Ouipir þer
comeþ wijnd into þe same place, & þan it is clepid hernia ventosa.
And sumtyme þer wexiþ fleisch aboute & is greet, & þan it is clepid
hernia carnososa / And sumtyme þer ben weynes pereaboute ful of 4
malancolious blood & wele be gret as it were notis, & þan it is
clepid hernia varicosa / The firste cause comeþ in þis maner: Din-
dimus, þat anathomia þerof is ¹forseid, wexiþ wide for sum moistnes
þat falliþ þerto, so þat zirbus, ouper þe bowels falliþ adoun in þe 8
same place; and þis maner is ofte seen. Ouper siphac is to-broke
in þe flank wiþ oon of þe forseid causis in þe chapitre tofore / &
þoruþ þe same brekinge þe bowels falliþ adoun oupir zirbus, & bitwixe
dindimus & mirac þei fallen adoun into þe ballok leperis. & þis 12
maner falliþ ful selden. þis laste maner is incurable wiþ ony
medicyns, but wiþ kuttynge it mai be curid & sewid. & who þat
vsiþ sich maner boondis aforseid, but if it be in children & in newe
causis, it is al traueile in idil, & þe patient haþ greet penaunce þerwiþ 16
wiþouten ony profit. ¶ The firste may be curid / & þe .ij. maner
is ful hard for to cure, & þerfore it is ful necessarie for a cirurgian
for to knowe alle þe maners herof & anathamiam as it is forseid
lest he falle in errour. ¶ þer ben manie men þat ben hardi for to 20
entermete of þese curis þat knowen not þe maner of þe sijknis ne
þe diffence þerof, & þerfore þei falliþ aldai in errour. & þe lasse
good þat ²þat þei kunne, þe rapere þei wole entermete of sich an
hard cause. & þis cause is ful perilous / I haue seen manie wise 24
men þat coude do þis cure ful wel, & zitt þei wolde not entermete
þerof / þerfore þou muste take consideracioun sotilli, where þe
bowels falliþ adoun þoruþ þe brekyng of siphac oupir þoruþ dindi-
mum, & þat þou schalt knowe in þis maner: ¶ In þe firste caas þe 28
bowels or zirbus falliþ doun sodeinli wiþ agreuance, & þan þou
mizt fele his bowels or zirbus in þe botme of þe ballok lepir, & þan
þer is but oon skyn to-broke, & þat is mirac. & whanne þou wolt
putte yn þe bowels azen, þou mizt fele in what place þei goon in. 32
& whanne hise bowels ben ynne, þan lete þe patient stonde vp, &
hise bowels wolen falle out sodeinli azen, & þan þou mizt fele in
what place þei comeþ out / In þe .ij. caas zirbus or þe bowels, or
boþe comen adoun altil & altil, & makip miche gurgulacioun, & þe 36
wei þat þei comeþ out is algate sumwhat greet in dindimo, & þat
wole not be put yn whanne þe bowels ben putt yn, saue ³wiþ greet
penaunce & in longe tyme. & whanne þe bowels falliþ þoruþ dindi-
mum, he makip þe ballok lepir neuere þe lengere, & þis is a good 40

- knowinge: whanne þou hast take kepe of alle þese priuitees, þan þou miȝt wite wherof þe cause is. ¶ Whanne þe bowels falliþ adoun þoruȝ a fissure, *id est* þoruȝ a brekyng, þan þou schalt not
- 4 traueile forto worche wiþ plastris & wiþ boondis þat ben forseid, but if it be in children & in causis þat ben newe. & if þe brekyng be but litil, þan þou miȝt make .v. cauterijs vpon þe skyn wiþoutforþ, so þat þe cauterie perse mirac, for þat wole make an
- 8 hard drowing vpon þe brekinge / & it wole not suffre þat þe bowels schulen not falle adoun þoruȝ þat place, so þat þe brekinge be but litil. If it so be þat þe bowels falle adoun þoruȝ dindimum, þan men haueþ diuers curis. Summen leien a corosif vpon þe ers wiþ
- 12 dindimum, a medicyn corosif, til þe skyn wiþout be frete, til þou mai se dindimum, & þan aftirward he fretiþ dindimum; & summen drawiþ awei a mannes ballokis, and ¹summen drawiþ not awei, but bi þe wei of þe corosif þe ballokis wolen rotie afterward / ¶ Also
- 16 summen maken punctual cauterijs in þe maner of a cros vpon dindimum, & þan aftirward heliþ it vp / Summen kутten þe hijer skyn wiþ a cauterie,² & þei streyneþ dindimum, & þei bindiþ it wiþ spago³ / Sum worchit⁴ in anopir maner: first, þei kuttiþ þe skyn
- 20 aboue, & þan þei makip cauterium aboue vpon dindimum in summe partie, & in sum parti þei leueþ hool. & þis maner is lasse worse þan þe toþer þat ben forseid / Summen ficchiþ .ij. nedlis in dindimum wiþ double þreed & crossiþ þe nedlis togidere, & þan þei takip
- 24 þe þredis & leiþ þervpon martencium,⁴ til al þe skyn þat was take wiþ þe nedelis be rerid an hij. & oþer men han diuers werkis þat I hadde not certeyn, for alle maners þat I heere þerof ben disseynable / For sumtyme whanne a man haþ miche traueilid þoruȝ, þing⁵
- 28 þat he haþ do brekiþ aȝen, & þan it wole be worse þan it was rapir. & among alle þe maners þat ben, þat is worst þat is doon wiþ medicyn caustica, for medicyns caustica for þe grete venym & malice
- ⁵þat it haþ, makip greet akyng, & is cause to make an enpostym in
- 32 dindimo, and þoruȝ þe agreuance þat dindimo haþ, siphac mai be agreued & diafragma. & fro diafragma it mai go⁶ to þe brayn, þat is þe welle of alle nerues, & so þe man mai falle in a spasme, & þan he is but deed. ¶ O þou wrecchid leche, þat for a litil money

When the bowels fall through a rupture apply bandages only in case of children. If the rupture is small, cauterise the skin above the Mirac.

If the bowels fall through the "Didymum," different ways of treatment are proposed. Some physicians use a Corrosive, [1. 188] some remove the testicles, some use cauteries, some tie a string round the Didymus.

All these cures are uncertain. *Nota.* a relapse may occur.

Cauteries are dangerous, [1. 188, bk.]

they may affect the Diaphragm and the brain.

A bad leech, for a little sum

² *wip a cauterie*, error for *wipout cauterie*. Lat.: *Alii sine cauterio superficiali cutem incidunt*.

³ *wip spago*, cum spago; med. Lat. *spacus*, thread. See Diez. s. v. *spago*.

⁴ *martencium*, Lat. *martentium*. Name of a cautery?

⁶ *go*, above line.

endangers a man's life, which is worth more than any gold or silver.

The author's advice is, not to cut, but apply the above mentioned bandage and plaster.

He treated in this way a patient who was sixty years of age.

[12. 189]

He wore the bandage during two years in perfect health.

Another patient who was forty years old, was cured by similar treatment.

The patient shall always [12. 189, bk.] wear his bandage, shall abstain from vegetables and new wine,

shall not leap, cry, or run,

puttist a mannes lijf in perel of deef / for þe lawe seiþ, it is better þan ony gold or siluer, for þou for a litil money makist him in perel of deef / For a man mai lyue vn-to þe tyme of his ende for þis passioun. & þerfore I wole counseile to kutte no man / Saue bi my 4 counseil þei schulen make a ligature as it is aforseid in þe brede of .iiij. fyngris of lynnē cloof or of sendel,¹ as I haue tauzt hertofore. & make þat enplastre þat is forseid, & teche him good regimen & good dietyng / & þou he be not curid wiþ þis medicyn he schal 8 lyue neuere adai þe lenger, ne þe lasse while þerfore / ¶ I say .ij. men þat hadden þe passioun, & þat oon was .lx. winter oold, & his bowels fel out as it is for seid, & it was ful hard² to bringe hem in 12 azen, & I made him sich a boond as it is aforseid & a plastre, & 14 tauzte in what maner he schulde diete him-silf. & I seide to him if he louede his owne lijf he schulde go to no man to kutte him. & he was glad of my counseil, & he bar þe forseid bond & þe enplastre .ij. 3eer continueli, dai & nyzt, & wipinne þat tyme he was hool, & 16 3itt I wiste not wher he schulde be hool or no / & þat opir man was .xl. wintre oold, & þer fel so greet plente out at his bowels, þat þei miȝte not be putt in azen, til þe pacient were sett in a baþ. & þo I putte hem in azen / & I toolde of þe perel of kuttinge, & 20 he bad me make sich a boond, & I made him oon & þe enplastre þat is forseid. & I tauzte him how he schulde kepe him-silf, and how he schulde diete him-silf. & wipinne a litil tyme he come to me, & seide þat he was almost hool, & þat he wolde were his boond no 24 lenger. & þo I repreuede him, & seide þat he schulde not be hool, but if he weride it lenger / In þis maner þou schalt teche him for to kepe him-silf: he schal algate were his boond & his plastre, saue if he haue greet penaunce 4þerwiþ whanne he goiþ to his bed an- 28 euen he mai vndo it / And he schal in⁵ no maner ete no growel ne raw fruit, ne no mete þat makij inflacioun / And he schal drinke no newe wijn, & he schal ete no greet saule,⁶ and whanne he haþ ete þan he schal reste him-silf. & he schal not arise, but if his 32 ligature be faste bounden, & he schal not lepe, & he schal not crie ne renue, & he lepe vpon an hors softli. & whanne he sittij at

¹ *sendel*, Lat. *sendon*, *σινδών*, a fine Indian cloth, muslin; *sendel*, O.Fr. *cendal* is derived from *sendon*. See Diez, s. v. *zendale*. See *sendalle*, *sendylle*, in *Cath. Angl.*, p. 329, and note *ibid.*

² *hard*, in margin.

⁵ *in*, above line.

⁶ Lat.: *ne comedant ad plenam saturitatem*. *saule*, O.Fr. *saoulée*, from *saoul*, Lat. *satullus*.

pryuy he schal not streyne him-silf to harde, & he schal ete no mete þat wole make him costif. & if he wole ony ping' traueile, he schal do it þe while he is fastynge. & if he wole holde alle þes ^{and avoid constipation.} *Nota*
 4 preceptis he mai be hool / & þis medicyne is certeyn, for he schal herfore lyue neuere þe lasse while.

- ¶ If hernia be watri, þis is þe signe þerof, þat his ballok wole be heuy & schynynge, & if þou pressist it wip þi fyngir þou schalt
 8 fele watrynes þeron / first þou must loke wher it be litil or myche¹
 — — & þan medicyns þat ben consumynge & drynge suffisiþ / þerfore þat þou schalt fynde here aftir in þe chapitre of þe dropesie.
 ¶ If the ²mater be greet, þan awoide awei þe mater wip kuttynge &
 12 wip cauterijs. But if þou make cauterijs, þe watir wole come azen þerto, & þe cauterijs wolen lette þat þer schal no more mater come þerto. ¶ If þe mater be of wynd : þat þou myzt knowe bi inflacioun þat is not ledi colour³ & bi felynge wip þi fyngiris, if þou felist
 16 no watrynes þeron, ne heuynes ; þe cure herof is with electuari maad of greynes of lauri & opere pingis þat schulen be said in þe chapitre of þe dropesi in tympanido.⁴ ¶ If it be superfluite of fleisch, þat þou myzte wite wip þi fyngiris, it wole be hard,⁵ þe cure herof mai not be
 20 do, but if þou kutte þe skyn þat is wipoute & drawe out þe mater, & þan soude it, & if it be in þe oon part hard & callous, & in þat oper part neische, þan it is better þat þou sette noon hand þeron, & principali if it be blac & ledi. ¶ Varicosa schal be curid wip
 24 gotis whey, & with epithimo, & wip purgaciouns of malancolious blood, & þan leie þerto pingis þat ben wastynge /

Watery hernia.
 The scrotum is heavy and shining,
 the water is felt on pressure.
 Use drying medicines,
 [2 lf. 190]
 or evacuate the matter with cutting and cauteries.
Hernia ventosa

is treated with an electuary.

Hernia Carnosa.

Cut the skin and remove the matter.

Varicosa.

¶ Of a stoon in þe bladdre & reynis /⁶

- A stoon in a man is engendrid of plente of grete humouris
 28 wipinne a man, as we moun se an ensample wipoutforþ of
 opere pingis, in þe maner þat men brennen tilis in a furneis. þei maken first þe tilis of strong' cley þat is viscous, & whanne þei han schape it as þei wolen, þan þei leie it in þe sunne to drie / &
 32 þan þei doon hem in a furneis wip fier. & þe stronger fier þat þe

¶ *vijs. 66.*
 [7 lf. 190, bk.]
 A stone in the bladder or the reins arises from a superfluity of the humours and great heat, as tiles get hard in the fire.

¹ Some words are wanting. Lat. : *quæ si sit parua, sufficit tibi medicamen consumens.*

² Lat. : *Ventosa cognoscitur per tumorem non lucentem.*

⁴ Lat. : in hydropisi tympanite. See p. 282.

⁵ Lat. : *Signum hernie carnosæ est . . . quod sentis, cum tangis, testiculos dura carne circumvolutos.*

⁶ Compare *Celsus Medicina*, lib. VII., cap. 26. The later authors followed more or less closely.

tilis han, þe stronger þei wolen be, & riȝt so in a mannes bodi, whanne a man haþ miche viscous matere in his bodi & mai not be putt out for febilnes of expulcioun, & þan scharp hete specialy in þe reines falliþ to þat mater & makith it hard, & in þis maner engendriþ þe stoon in þe reynes. ¶ Also in children a stoon engendriþ in her bladdre; for þe reynes of a child ben not so hote as a mannes / In þis maner þou schalt knowe wher þe stoon be in a mannes bladdre or in his reynes¹ / If þe grauel of his vrine be whit: þan þe stoon is in þe bladdre / And if þe grauel be reed, þan it is in his reynes² / ¶ Summen þat ben hardi wolen asaie for to cure a man wiþ kutyng þat haþ þe stoon in his reynes; for þei knowiþ³ not þe perel of woundis þat falliþ in þe reynes þat I haue⁴ aforseid, & þan þei doiþ no more saue bringe þe pacient to his deef. ¶ Now I wole teche in what maner a man schal kepe him þat is disposid to haue þe stoon, he schal ete no metis þat ben viscous ne to scharpe, & tofore alle þingis hard chese gaderiþ viscous⁵ mater & hard. & he schal ete no beef, ne no fleisch of a goos, ne no grete briddis þat swymmeþ in þe water, & he schal ete no fleisch of an hert, & he schal ete no swete breed,⁴ & al maner mete þat is maad of swete past, & he schal ete no whete soden, & he schal ete²⁰ no maner þing þat is maad of milk saue þe whey, & he schal drinke no coold watir, & he schal ete no fruitis þat ben of greet substaunce, as applis, peris, & he schal drinke no newe wijn, ne no wijn of greet substaunce, & he schal ete no þingis þat is to myche²⁴ salt, & he schal absteine him fro alle þingis þat engendriþ scharpe humouris & grete, & he schal not ete to greet sauly⁵ / In þis maner he schal diete him-silf, he schal ete breed þat is wel leueyned / &

Nota

The position of the stone is detected by the colour of the urinary sediments.

[II. 191]

Rules of dieting for a man, who is disposed to get a stone.

He shall abstain from sweet things, milk, cold water, apples, pears,

new wine, salted things.

He shall take well-fermented bread,

¹ Barth. *De propr. Trevisa*, lib. VII., cap. 54, indicates another symptom. Add. MS. 27, 944, fol. 96. "And if þe ston is in þe reynes hit is i-knowe by slepinge of þe fote and in þe ioyntes of þe left side, and if it is in þe bladder þe ache is in þe schare and þe twist bitwene þe genetras and þe hole at þe rigge bones ende."

² The translator omits the passage about the causes of stone in general, about the stone in the reins and its treatment. The following sentence, *þat I haue aforseid*, refers to this omitted part. The author says that he will speak about the causes and treatment of the stone in the reins, although it does not properly belong to surgery. Lat.: Ego vero, licet liber iste meus de cirurgia dicatur, et ad instrumentum cyrurgicum de lapide renum tractare non pertineat, tamen quoniam multum assimilatur in causis et curis, quamvis dissimiletur in signis et curis. Et quum ad curas lapidum renum multotiens sum vocatus, propter gratiam scholarium modum quo usus sum in utriusque lapidis curatione, causas, signa, et differentias ponere non postponam.

⁴ Lat.: a pane azymo. ἀζυμος, unleavened.

⁵ Compare p. 272, note 6.

- his breed wole be þe¹ bettir for him if it be medlid wip poudre [¹ H. 191, bk. 1]
 maad of fenel-seed & persil, & he schal drinke sutil wijn & cleer, mild wine,
 medlid wip fair cleer water / And if his reynes & his bowels weren
 4 hote, þan he mai drinke coold water þat be fair & clene, & he mai
 ete fleisch of capouns & hennes & chikenes, & partrichis, & of
 alle opere maner of briddis þat mouen in feeldis, & of hem þat
 woneþ in watir he schal not ete. & he mai ete pork & motoun &
 8 principali of beestis þat ben gildid, & he mai ete fleisch of .iiij.
 daies poudringe,² & he mai ete feel,³ & he mai ete eiren þat ben
 neische soden; fisch þat haþ no schellis & þe substaunce of him be
 greet & hard, he schal not ete þerof / Alle maner fisch þat haþ
 12 manie schellis, is better þan he þat haþ no schellis / And of erbis:
 he schal ete fenel, ache, persil, sperge, attriplicem,⁴ spinochia &
 boraginem, erucam, melones, cucumeris, & he schal be war þat he
 ete no substaunce of caul, & he schal ete no mustard / And he mai
 16 ete þese maner fruits: almaundis, auellanes, figis, notis, vuas bene
 maturas. & he schal not⁵ traueile to miche⁶ aftir mete, & he schal
 bere noon heuy birþuna, ne he schal not be girt to streite, & he
 schal not slepe vpon his reynes. & if his reynes ben to hote, þan
 20 he schal anoynte hem wip oile of rosi, medlid wip vinegre, & he
 schal anointe his reynes wip a lynnene cloof wet in iuys of colde
 erbis, & he schal absteyne him fro wommen, & he schal touche no
 womman to make him haue appetit þerto / for greet medlynge wip
 24 wymmen wip greet traueile achauft a mannes reynes & consumeþ
 her natural moistnes / Who so euere vsip þis regimen, he schal haue
 no drede of engendringe of þe stoon / Who so vsip þis regimen⁷ &
 is disposid for to haue þe stoon, with medicyns he schal do it awei
 28 or it be confermed. He schal vse sirupis durentikis⁸: as oximel
 diureticum & squilliticum,⁹ or he schal vse a sirup þat auicen
 made / R, aqua li. x, aceti li. ð, medle hem togidere & boile hem
 wip ʒ. iiij of rotis of ache, & rotis of fenel ʒ. iiij, and fenel-seed &

meat of
capons,
chickens.

pork, mut-
ton, gilded
beasts and
veal.

Fishes with
scales are
better than
those with-
out.

The herbs
and the kind
of fruit he
may take.

[¹ H. 192]

Nota

He shall
anoint his
loins and ab-
stain from
women.

If a stone be-
gins to form,
use a diuretic
syrup.

R

² *fleisch of iii daies poudringe*. Lat.: *porcos trium dierum salitos*. Compare *Liber Cure Coc.*, p. 6. *To powder befe within a nyght*.

³ *feel*, vitulus. O.Fr. veel.

⁴ *Attriplex*, *Chenopodium vulvaria*. *Alphita*, p. 16. "Attriplex agrestis, crissolocanna idem ang. mieldie." O.E. *melde*, Leechd. III. Gloss. Compare Germ. *Molten*, *Milten*. Dessen. ⁵ *not*, above line.

⁷ Lat. *Qui vero tali non utitur regimine*.

⁸ Traheron translation of Vigon's *Chirurgery*. Interpret.: "*Diuretika*. Diuretyke prouokyge vrine, or that hath vertue to prouoke vrine."

⁹ Traheron, *ibid.* "*Squylliticks* vinaygre is made with the rootes of the greates oynion, called squilla, or Scylla dryed, and with vynaygre."

ache ana 3. j, seþe hem alle togidere til þe .iij. part be consumed
 awei, & þan cole hem & do þerto li. x of sugre, & þan clarifie it &
 [11. 192, bk.] seþe it ¹ & kepe it for þin vs // The vs of þis sirip wole suffice for
 to do it awei; but if þe mater be þe more greet, & þan þou miȝt do 4
 þerto if þou wolt oximel squilliticum, or þou miȝt ordeine þe sirip
 wip modicis² erbis diureticis. ¶ þer is no þing so good for to
 The best way
 to purge the
 kidneys is
 vomiting.
 Rȝ
 Let the pa-
 tient take
 salted meats,
 wine,
 and first a
 preparation
 of radish with
 syrup,
 then put
 compresses
 on his eyes
 [11. 193]
 and give an
 enetico.
 If the stone
 is fully deve-
 loped, one
 may either
 soothe the
 pains or break
 and remove
 the stone.
 To soothe the
 pain apply a
 clyster of a
 Rȝ
 decoction of
 herbe,
 [11. 193, bk.] eruce, quatuor semina frigidorum, & impone mel, ⁷sal, oleum camo-

ache ana 3. j, seþe hem alle togidere til þe .iij. part be consumed
 awei, & þan cole hem & do þerto li. x of sugre, & þan clarifie it &
 seþe it ¹ & kepe it for þin vs // The vs of þis sirip wole suffice for
 to do it awei; but if þe mater be þe more greet, & þan þou miȝt do 4
 þerto if þou wolt oximel squilliticum, or þou miȝt ordeine þe sirip
 wip modicis² erbis diureticis. ¶ þer is no þing so good for to
 purge mater of þe reines as is castynge / for whi castinge curiþ
 vlcera of þe reynes / In þe somer þou schalt make him oonys in þe 8
 moneþe sich a maner of vomet / Take þe seed of raphani & make
 it cleue & kutte it ouerþwert in rollis, & lete þis lie in þe forseid
 sirup .3. iiij. adai & anyȝt / & þan lete þe pacient ete diuers metis,
 as chese, oynouns, salt fisch & þingis þat mai make him drinke 12
 wel; & lete him drinke diuers wynes, saue the while he is fastinge,
 lete him ete 3 notis of þe forseid rollis of raphani þat lay in þe
 forseid sirup, & whanne he hath ete his saule & drunke, þan binde
 vpon his iȝen neische lynet or flex, & streyne þou not it to harde 16
 but meneli. & þan take watir in which has been soden anetum
 til it bicomme reed, & take þerof li. j., & medle it wip þe sirup þat
 radix raphani lay þeriane, & make him ³drinke vp al togidere, &
 þan he schal caste vp al his mete & al his drink, & manye wickede 20
 humours þerwip. & þan make him gadere out þe foul mater of his
 nose, & waische his mouþ & his teþ; þis medicyn wole do awei þe
 mater of þe stoon & purge wel his reynes, þis is þe best medicyn
 þat mai be, for to kepe a man fro þe stoon. 24

¶ If þe man be not hool in þis maner, saue þe stoon is con-
 fermed fast, þan þe cure þerof mai be in .ij. maners: þat oon is for
 to aswage þe akynge, & þat oper is for to breke þe stoon & putte
 him out // Whanne a man haþ greet akynge in his reynes & in his 28
 bladdre, & þou wotist wel it ben signes of þe stoon, first þou schalt
 make him a clisterie wip a decoccioun of herbis þat ben mollificatif
 & dretik: as malua, violae, bismalue, fenigreci, paritaria, apij,
 fenicli, petrosilij scolopendrie, spergi, brusci,⁴ saune, ebuli, sambuci. 32
 & if it be in winter do þerto calamentum, pulegium, origanum, se-
 men fenicli, apij, petrosilij, carui, aneti, leustici,⁵ dauci, milij solis,⁶
 eruce, quatuor semina frigidorum, & impone mel, ⁷sal, oleum camo-

² MS. *modiu's*.⁴ *brusci*, *Ruscus aculeatus*, wild myrtle.⁵ *Alphita*, p. 98: "Leusticus, keisim idem angl. loueache."⁶ MS. *solus*. *Alphita*, p. 117, "*Milium solis*, granum solis, cauda pecorina idem. g^r. et a^r. gromel." Phillips: "*Milium solis*, the Herb Gromwell."

- mille*, & *scharpe* it' wip *benedicta*,¹ and make *perof* a clisterie, & þe patient schal holde it' wipinne him longe tyme, & after þis clisterie do him in to a particular baþ, & lete him sitte *peron* anon to þe
- 4 *nauele*, & in his baþ schulen be soden leues of *malue*, *peritorie*,
viole, *senacion*, *scutella panici pistati* & *cortice mundati*; þis maner
 baþ as I haue ofte preued, it' aswaged *akinge* / & whanne he goiþ
 out' of his baþ, make an enplastre of *mele*, *oile* & *watir*, as þou
- 8 schalt fynde in þe *antidotarie* in þe c°. of *maturatiuis*, & leie vpon
 þe place þere þe *passioun* is / If þou knowist wel þat þe stoon
 falliþ adoun of þe *reynes* toward þe *bladdre* bi þe *weie* of þe *vrine*,
 sette þan vndir þe place þere it' *akip*,² *sichiam*,³ wip fier wipout ony
- 12 kuttinge, for þis wole drawe adoun þe stoon. & as þe stoon
 discendiþ adoun to *sichiam* to sette it' lower til he come anon to þe
 bladdre, & þan al þe *akyng* wole go awei. ¶ Tofore alle *þingis*
 the *fildonium*,⁴ is good, þat þou schalt fynde in þe *antidotarie* of *auicen*,
 the *Philonium*.
- 16 for þat is a sure medicyn in þis caas. ¶ Anoper medicyn þat
 auicen made, & I haue preued it', and it' doip awei *akyng* þat is
 in *vlceribus renum*. R̄, *seminis iusquiami albi* .3. ſ, *opij*, *grana*
 .iiij, *seminum citruli*, *lactuce*, *portulace*, *ana* .3. j., *medle* al *togidere*
 R̄
- 20 & 3eue herof .3. ij. wip *sugre*. ¶ And þis þou muste wite þat þou
 schalt 3eue þe patient' no þing' for to make him *pissee* whan his
akinge is strong, & whanne his *vrine* is stoppid; for þat wole make
 þe more *akinge* / It is *perel* of þis *passioun*, for þe *akyng* is so
- 24 greet sumtyme þat þe patient' haþ þe *spasme* *perwip* & is deed *perwip*,
 saue þou schalt do awei his *akyng* wip *þapinge* & *enplastris*
 & *anoyntingis*, & þane aftirward þou schalt make him *medicyns*
 for to breke þe stoon & putte him out wip þe *vryne* / R̄, *cretani*
 A medicine to break the stone.
 R̄
- 28 *marini*,⁶ *scolopendrie*, *capillis veneris*, *spice celtice*, *ana* .3. ij., *radix*
fenicli, *apij*, *petrosilij*, *spergi*, *brusci*, *cicore*, *graminis*, *filipendule*,
genciane, *saxifrage*, *squille*, *asse*, *ana* .3. j., *iiij*^{or} *semina frigidorum*,
seminum fenicli, *apij*, *coriandri*, *scariole*,⁷ *granorum iuniperi*, *nucleum*

¹ *benedicta*. Lat. cum *benedicta Nicolai*.² MS. *mukip*. Lat. sub loco doloris.³ *sichiam*. Lat. *syciam* G. *σίκευς*, the common cucumber. "A figura vel formæ similitudine Cucurbitæ vel cucurbitulæ medicis dicuntur vascula illa, quæ cuti cum flamma affigi solent, cum vel sine scarificatione." Castell, Lex. medicum.⁴ *fildonium*. Lat. *philonium romanum*. Matth. Sylv.: "Filonium i. nouus amicus & est confectio quedam sic uocata." Galen, ed. Kuehn, vol. xvii. B. 331, *φάρμακον φιλόνειον*. An electuary with Opium, so called from Philo of Tharsus.⁶ Crithmum maritimum, L.
⁷ Sin. Barth.: "Scariola, lactucella, lactuca agrestis idem, an. sowe-thistel."

cerasorum, milij solis, ana .3. ℥. fiat sirupus cum duabus partibus
 zucari, & *tercia mellis squillitici*, & it schal be take wip a decoccioun
 of *tribulorum* & *cicerum rubeorum*, pis eletuarie is ¹of auicen
 makynge / R̄, cineris vitris, caulis, cineris leporis combusti, cineris ⁴
 scorpiionis, cineris testi oui, ²lapidis spongie, lapidis iudaici, sanguinis
 hirci sicci, gummi nucis acori, ana .3. j. *seminis petrosilij*, dauci,
 pulegij, gummi arabici, *seminis albi piperis* ana .3. j., auri .3. .iiij.,
 balsami .3. ℥., muscati .3. j., make alle pese wip good hony þat it ⁸
 be whit & clene, & þou schalt zeue .3. .iiij. þerof, & .iiij. tymes in
 þe woke. ¶ Also a good medicyn for þe stoon þat is comen to a
 mannes reynes & in his bladdre / Take a litil hare þat bledde
 neuere blood, & do him in an erþen vessel³ wel glasid wipinne wip a ¹²
 couercle of þe same mater, & stoppe it faste, þat þer mowe come out
 þerof no fume, wip good lute or wip past, & sette þis vessel in a
 furneis til þe hare be bicom al aischis, & þan grinde it & kepe it,
 & zeue him þerof .3. j. whanne he goiþ out of his bapinge þat is ¹⁶
 forseid, wip a decoccioun of *tribulorum*, & hony. I have preued
 þat þis medicyn is good, & also þou miȝt medle wip þis poudre,
 triacle / And þis schal be þin entencioun for to zeue him medicyns
 þat ben not strong for to breke þe stoon, as saxifrage & cantarides ²⁰
 & opere strong medicyns þat pilip þe reynes. & if þe pacient
 haue drie reynes & he be leene of bodi, þan in þis caas .3. j. of
 Rasis makynge is good / R̄, *semina melonum mundatorum* .3. xxx,
seminis citruli, *seminis portulace*, *seminis cucurbite*, *seminis papau-* ²⁴
eris albi ana .3. .iiij., *seminis iusquiami albe* .3. ij., zucari pondus
omnium,⁵ saue I do þerto þe double weizte of sugre /
 If þe stoon be in his bladdre, þan þou schalt worche in þis
 maner / First þou schalt take kepe wher he haue stranguria. þat ²⁸
 þou miȝt wite if he makip watir droppynli & a litil at oony, &
 hap greet penaunce in his bladdre. þan þe stoon is in þe necke of
 þe bladdre; þan þou schalt make him a clisterie mollificatif þat þou
 mowe awoide his bowels, & þan þou schalt frote his noseþrillis with ³²
 watir,⁶ & þou schalt presse liztly þe place of his ars þereaboute þat
 þou supposist þat þe stoon sittip. & if he remeue not in þis maner,
 þan þou schalt putte in siringam liztli in þe condijt of his zerde til
 he come to þe stoon. & if þou myȝt not putte it awei in þis maner, ³⁶

[1 ff. 194, bk.]

R̄
 A medicine
 made of
 Avicenna.

R̄
 The ashes of
 a hare burnt
 alive.

The medicine
 shall not be
 too strong,
 [4 ff. 195]
 as it might
 hurt the
 kidneys.
 A medicine
 of Rasis.

R̄

The patient
 suffers from
 strangury,
 if the stone
 is in the
 neck of the
 bladder.

Remove the
 stone with
 the finger as
 with a
 syringe.

¹ *testi oui*. Lat. *testæ oui*.³ Lat.: pone ipsum vinum in olla terrea.⁵ Lat. ad pondus omnium.⁶ Lat.: faciendo egrum leuare nates. The translator read: lauare nates.

- þan putte þi fyngir in ¹his ers, & þere þou schalt fele þe stoon, & [11. 195, bk.]
 helpe wiþ þi fyngir for to putte it away. Whanne þe stoon is
 remeued, þan þe pacient mai make watir, þan his akinge wole cesse,
 4 & þan þou schalt go to þe cure. First þou schalt make him a
 clisterie of duritikis / in which schulen be medicyns þat haue pro-
 priete for to breke þe stoon, & þan sette þe pacient in a baþ þat is
 forseid. & a litil tofore or he go out of his baþ, 3eue him of þe
 8 poudre of þe hare þat is forseid. & whanne he comeþ out of þe
 baþ, leie þis enplastre vpon þe place þat is clepid pectinis.² R̄, foli-
 orum nasturcij aquatici,³ & foliorum apij .ana. ʒj, & grinde hem and a plaster.
 wel wiþ grese. & whanne þei ben medlid togidere in þe morter, þan R̄
 12 hete hem a litil ouer þe fier & leie it vpon, & eueri dai in þre daies
 contynuely þou schalt sette him in þe forseid baþ, & leie vpon þe
 forseid plastre, & 3eue him of þe forseid poudre. þis cure is good
 & I haue preued it //
- 16 If alle þese medicyns availiþ not, þan þou muste drawe out þe
 stoon wiþ kuttinge or þe patient falle into etikis.⁴ & if þou wolt
 drawe ⁵out a stoon of þe bladdre wiþ kuttinge, þan þou muste ap-
 paraile ⁶alle þingis þat ben necessarie for þee : as sirupis & ligaturis,
 20 & þan þou schalt binde his hipis & his leggis faste, þat he mowe
 not meue, for to lette þee whanne þou wolt kutte him. & þanne
 þou schalt anoynte þi longist fyngir of þi lift hond & þi þombe wiþ
 oile, & þou schalt putte hem in þe pacientis ers, saue first þou schalt
 24 avoide him wiþ a clisterie mollificatif, & þou schalt sette⁷ þi rizt
 hond vpon his ers, and grope softli, where þe stoon be, & putte him
 to þe hedis of þi fyngris. & whanne þou myzt take þe stoon wiþ þi
 .ij. fyngris, þan þou schalt putte him to þe necke of þe bladdre
 28 toward þe ballokis as myche as þou myzt. & þan þou schalt fele þe
 hardnes of þe stoon bitwixe his ers, & þe ballokis þat is in þe necke
 of þe bladdre. þan þou schalt wiþ þi rizt hond take a rasour, &
 kutte faste by þe preed þat goiþ bitwixe þe ers & þe ballokis ende-
 32 longis, saue þou schalt take þe stoon wiþ þi .ij. fyngris þat þe stoon
 mowe come out. & þanne ioyne wel þe lippis of ⁸þe wounde to-
 gidere, þan þou schalt sewe [not]⁹ oonly þe skyn aboue, but þou

When the
stone is
removed into
the bladder,
try to break
the stone
with an
internal
treatment,
a bath,

R̄

If these
medicines
do not avail,
operate.

[⁵ 11. 196]
Prepare the
things neces-
sary for the
operation,
and bind the
patient fast.

First use a
Clisterie,

feel for the
stone,
hold it be-
tween the
fingers,

then cut out
the stone
with a razor.

[⁸ 11. 196, bk.]
and sew the
wound.

² Lat. : supra locum pectinis. Os pectinis, the share-bone.

³ Nasturtium aquaticum, watercress.

⁴ etikis, Lat. : antequam seger incurrat hecticam. O.Fr. étique. Med. Lat. Ethica uel Ethica febris. Dufr.

⁶ apparaile. See *N. E. Dict.*, s. v. apparel, v. 1., to make ready, prepare.

⁷ sette, above line.

⁹ not, wanting. Lat. : et labia vulneris optime conjungas non solum in superficie.

schalt sewe al þe depnes of þe wounde togidere, & þan þou schalt
springe þeron poudre þat is aforseid to woundia. & þan þou schalt
binde it with boondis & lynt til þe wounde be perfilti hool / In þis
caas þou muste take kepe of manye pingis / First þou muste take 4
kepe of þe age of þe pacient, for children þat ben xliij. wintir oold
ben moost able for þis cure,¹ for her lymes ben tendir ynow3, & in
þat elde þei ben strong ynow3 for to be maad hool, & her com-
plexioun is hoot & moist. Jonge children & olde men ben not able 8
to be kutt, for in þe kutyng of hem enpostyms wolen engendre
hastili, & þat wole lette þe vrine & make more akyng, & so þei
mizten falle in-to þe spasme, & so wiþ þe spasme þei miȝt be deed /
Summen seien þat olde men ben able to be kutt, for her blood is 12
miche laskid² & her hete, & þerfore þei ben not able to take an
enpostym; þerfore þei ben moost able to be kutt of þe stoon /
Summen seien þat her lymes ben to drie & her vertues ben to feble /
[³ If. 197] ³& þerfore þei ben not able to be kutt, & herwiþ I acorde / þese .ij. 16
pingis: engendryng of an enpostym, & if þe place þat is kutt
wole not soude, þese .ij. bringiþ perel of deep / Also þou muste
take kepe of þe schap of þe stoon, & what quantite þat he be, for
if þe stoon be .ij. forkid⁴ or cornerid, or so greet þat he may not 20
be brouȝt into þe necke of þe bladdre, þan þou schalt in no maner
kutte him, but if þou miȝt first wiþ þin hond breke þe stoon. &
þan if þou miȝt not bringe it out at oony, þan in diuers tymes
þou schalt gadere him out.⁵ ¶ And if þe stoon be so greet þat he 24
mai not be brouȝt into þe necke of þe bladdre, þan þou schalt in no
maner kutte him, forwhi he mai not be brouȝt out, but if þou
woldist kutte þe substaunce of þe bladdre & þat were mortal; but
þou schalt put him to þe botme of þe bladdre wiþ instrumentis, & 28
teche þe patient for to kepe him in þat maner þat þe stoon falle not
into þe necke of þe bladdre / Also if he be so sutil þat he mai not
be felid wiþ þin hond, þan þou schalt not kutte him neiper. & if þe
[³ If. 197, bk.] patient mai be hool in ony ⁶maner, [n]or kutt wiþouten passioun, it 32

Nota
Children who
are fourteen
years old, are
most fit for
this treat-
ment.
Younger
children and
old men are
not fit,

although
some people
say the con-
trary.

If the stone
cannot be
brought to
the neck of
the bladder,

you must
first break
it before
cutting.

Beware.

Do not cut,
if the stone
is small.

¹ De propr. rer. Add. 27,944, fol. 96: "*& somtyme þey schal be take to surgerye and namelich children and þan zongelinge. For in olde kernynge is perilous, for aftir forty yere þis euil is incurable as it is i-said in amphor.:*" *after forty yere he þat hap þe ston is nouȝt i-saued.*"

² Celsus Lib. VII. Cap. 26, ed. Daremberg, p. 307: "*As neque omni tem-pore, neque in omni ætate, neque in omni vitio id experiendum est: sed solo vere; in eo corpore, quod jam novem annos, nondum quatuordecim excessit.*"

⁴ *ij forkid, diffurcatus.*

⁶ Lat.: "*pluribus vicibus educatur.*"

^a Rhases, Aphorismi.

- is better þat¹ he be nouȝt kutt þan he be kutt.² for men þat ben so kutt schulen neuere gete children, but if it be þe more hap³; & also it is perilous for to kutte / & þefore I rede þee take þat wyn-
 4 nunge⁴ to opere cirurgianns. ¶ Ful ofte tyme men leie me to scorn, for I wolde not entermete me of sich curis, & seide þat I lefte siche maner curis, for I coude not do it, & þe same þei seide of men þat weren filme broke,⁵ & of men þat weren in þe dropesie. & I lefte
 8 þe curis þerof for perels þat miȝte folowe / ffor if a kunnyng man entermetid him of sich a cure, & if þer fil ony yuele happis to þe patient, þan wolen vnkunnyng lechis seie þat þei han do þat cure ful ofte, & so he mai be brouȝt into an yuel loos þerbi; for blame
 12 & for perels I wolde not vse kuttingis / þese ben yuele happis þat falliþ to a man þat is kutt: as greet akyng vnder þe nauele, & hise lymes bicomit⁶ coold, & atach of þe feure,⁶ & greet akinge in þe place þat was kutt, alle þese signes ben signes of deef / Good signes
 16 herof ben þese: strenkþe of vrine, & þat he mowe go to priuy wel & þat he haue good appetit to mete. ¶ Sumtyme it falliþ bi strenkþe, þe stoon is putt into þe ȝerde. & þat I say [in] a man, þat his vryne was stoppid .v. daies in þe same maner, & I drowe
 20 him out wiþ instrumentis wiþouten ony kuttinge. & if þe stoon sitte in þe canel of þe ȝerde, & þou maist not bringe him out wiþ þi fyngris, þan þou schalt binde his ȝerde bihinde þe stoon, þat þe stoon mowe not go into þe bladdre aȝen. & þan grope þe stoon softli
 24 wiþ þi .ij. fyngris, & kutte endelongis, as it is aforseid, a litil hole, as miche as þou miȝt drawe out þe stoon, & þane cure þe wounde as it is aforseid /⁸

People who are operated upon, never get children.

I was often scorned because I would not undertake these cures.

A good physician may get a bad reputation by some mishap.

Fatal symptoms after operation are: great pain, coldness of the limbs and fever.

Good symptoms are a

[7 ff. 198] strong urine, a good appetite.

Sometimes the stone is removed through the Urethra.

ffor to drawe out watir of men þat han þe dropesie /⁹

- 28 **T**Houȝ þis book be maad oonli of cirurgie, ȝitt it is myn entencioun to speke of þe dropesie, & principally þat ben wrouȝt ¶ *xx. c.*

¹ MS. þan.

² & if þe patient . . . þan he be kutt, an insertion.

³ Lat.: "Considera quoque quod sæpe per loci nominati incisionem generatio prohibetur."

⁴ þat wynnynge, Lat.: sed aliis cupidis chirurgis dimitte illa lucrari. *Cath. Angl.*, p. 420, "Wynnynge, Emolumentum, lucrum."

⁵ of men þat weren filme broke, Lat. de ruptorum incisura.

⁶ atach of þe feure, attack of fever. See later references in *N. E. Diet.*, s. v. attach, sb.

⁸ The translator has omitted one chapter: De clauso hermaphrodito & additione panniculi mulieris doctrinæ tertie, tractatus tertii, Cap. IX.

⁹ The four kinds of dropsy are mentioned in De propr. rerum, Lib. VII., Cap. 52, Add. 27,944, fol. 94 b.: "þe firste dropesye hatte leucofscuma, and

The dropsy is a compound disease, caused by superfluity of matter.

[¹ If. 198, bk.]
The men of Salerne distinguish four kinds of dropsy.

The Arabs only three:

yposarca,
Aschites,

Tympanites.

There is cold matter in all these kinds of dropsy, the exciting cause may be heat or coldness.

When the liver is diseased, cold phlegmatic matter is produced.

[² If. 199]

The Salernitans say that dropsy is caused by a debility of the liver, the stomach, or other organs.

Some physicians say that the urine will be red if there is a hot cause,

wij mannes hond. ¶ I seie þat þe dropesie is a sijknes compound in which superflue mater þat is coold swellip þe body / Men of salerne seiden þat þere weren .iiij. maner spicis of dropesie, & .iiij. maner dropesies. But auctours of arabie acorden alle at ¹oonys,² 4 & seien soop þat þer ben but .iiij. maner dropesies,³ & þat oon comeþ of rawe blood, of raw fleume medlid wij blood, & is bore into al þe bodi, & swellip al þe bodi, & is clepid yposarca. þat oper is of mater of zelow; water & fallip into þe holownes of þe wombe, 8 & is clepid aschites / þe .iiij. is engendrid of greet wynd resolved of coold mater, & fallip into þe holownes of þe wombe, & is clepid tympanites / Of þis ydropesie summen iugip liztli, & seien þat yposarca comeþ of coold alwei, & tympanites comeþ sumtyme of ¹ wynd & of hete, but moost comounli of cooldnes / Aschites comith moost of hete, & ful selden of cooldnes / but for to seie þe sope, alle þe spicis ben medlid with coold mater, & þerfore he seiþ soop þat clepip eueri ydropesie coold mater,⁴ for euery spice of þe dropesie le mai come of hete or of cooldnes goynge tofore. ¶ þer is no ping þat defendip, þat whanne þe lyuere is hoot out of hir propir hete, or if al þe bodi is distemp[er]id in hete, as in feueris, þe patient mai so miche be feblid þerwij, þat it may engendre coold mater & fleu- 20 matik / Ful ofte I haue had þis caas / ⁵þerfore auctouris seien þat þe dropesie comith of þe febilnes of þe lyuere / þerfore men of salerne seien þat it comeþ of defaute of digestioun of þe lyuere. & it comeþ of takinge of yuele metis & drinkis, & of febilnes of 24 opere lymes, as of þe stomak, & of þe reynes, & of þe maris, & of þe lungis, & of diafragma. & whanne þese lymes ben enfeblid, þan þe lyuere enfeblip // Therfore it is necessarie for a leche to wite⁶ wher it comeþ of causis goinge tofore hoot or coold / And summe 28 lechis halden hem paid for to haue a sizt of þe vrine, & iugip þe dropesie hoot & coold bi þe sizt of þe vryne / for if þe vrine be reed, þei wolen iuge þat þe cause is hoot, & in þis maner þei ben

comeþ of distemperaunce of coldnesse and driness, & hap þat name of white fleume for leucos is white. ¶ Þe secunde hatte yposarca opir anasarca, and comeþ of distemperaunce of coolde and of drynes. The þridde hatte aschites and comeþ of distemperaunce of hete & moisture. Þe ferþe hatte tympanytes & comeþ of distemperaunce of hete & driness."

² acorden alle at oonys, Lat. in una conveniunt. Comp. Reliqu. Antiqu. I. 293, accorde in one. (N. E. Dict., s. v. accord v. 5.)

³ Lanfranc follows Avicenna, Lib. III, Fen. 14, Tract. 4, Cap. 4, ed. Ven. 1527, fol. 238 b.

⁴ Lat.: omnem egritudinem ydropicam appellat materiale frigidam.

⁶ to wite, above line.

- disseyued / ¶ Forwhi, in what maner so þe lyuere be enfeblid of coold cause or of hoot, it wole make his vrine reed / For sumtyme a man mai not ȝeue a discrecioun¹ of blood fro vrine, for a litil blood colourid miche vrine, riȝt as a litil saffron colouriþ miche water / þerfor of what cause so it be þat his lyuere be enfeblid, his vrine mai schewe reed. ¶ Also þe signes of yposarcha & aschites & tympanite ben open ynow³. ²In þis maner þou schalt knowe hem /
- 8 In yposarcha al þe bodi swellip, as his face, & his armis, & his riggeboon, & his necke, & alle his lymes, so þat in what partie of his bodi þat þou pressist þi fyngir þere wole be a pitt. & whanne þe fyngir is aweie it wole arise aȝen / & it is a greet maistris for to
- 12 knowe wheþer yposarcha come of coold cause tofore goynge or of hoot cause / If it comeþ of coold goinge tofore, þan his ȝen wolen be discolourid as it were þe colour of askis, or pale³ / If it come of hete goinge tofore, þan his ȝen wolen be ȝelow³ or sumwhat reed /
- 16 & þou musta wite, wheþer he had a feucere tofore or haue þe feucere fortis þerwiþ / or if he hadde þere tofore an hoot enpostym þerwiþ, ouþer he haue enpostym þerwiþ / þese ben þe propre signes of aschites, þat his face, & his necke, & his brest, & his armis
- 20 bicomit⁴ smal, & his vois schal bicomie smal, & his wombe schal oonli swelle. & sumtyme in þe firste bigynnyng his feet & his leggis wolen swelle in þe firste bigynnyng, for þe greet strenkþe of þe mater þat makip it falle adoun. & if þou smite his⁵ wombe, he
- 24 wole sowne as it were a touȝt leþer ful of wynd⁶ / þese ben þe propre signes of tympanites: his wombe & þe regioun of his stomac schulen oonly be to-swolle, & alle his opere lymes, boþe his feet, & his leggis, & his necke, & his armis wolen bicomie smal, & if þou
- 28 smitist him vpon his wombe, it wole sounne as it were a tympan / & in þis passioun þer is lasse agreuance þan in aschite & more swellynge. & if þou pressist his wombe, þou schalt fynde it streite as it were a corde. & þou schal fele no meuyng of water, whanne
- 32 þe pacient turneþ him from o side to anoþer / Curis herof þou schalt fynde ynowe in bokis of phisik / For I nyle telle but fewe medicyns þerfore, I haue longe tyme vsid.

¶ Whanne þou wolt ordeine regimen on yposarcha, ȝeue him

¹ ȝeue a discrecioun, discernere.

³ Lat.: coniunctiva oculi est valde discolorata, cinericia vel pallida.

⁶ MS. his, twice.

⁶ Lat.: auditur quasi sonus vtris de corio vino pleni.

but a little
blood colours
much urine.

[² If. 199, bk.]

Signs of
yposarcha
are a general
swelling of
the body.

If the cause
is cold, the
eyes will be
pale;
they are
yellow or red,
if there is a
hot cause.

The signs of
ascites are
a wasting of
the limbs and
a swelling of
the belly.

[⁴ If. 200]

Signs of
tympanites.
They are the
same as in
ascites, but
there is less
pain and
more swelling.

Make the patient who suffers from Hyposartha sweat, in summer in hot sand or on a sunny hill, [² If. 200, bk.] in winter in a hot-house.

R_y
Prescription, how to make the decoction.

R_y
How to make the trochæ.

R_y
The Agaric-pills.
Treatment of Ascites.

The disease is almost fatal, if the cause is hot.

[² If. 201]
If there is a cold cause, and if the patient is strong,

give him rhubarb-pills;

trociscus de lactea¹ cum apozimate² de radicibus fro þe firste dai to þe .iiij., & ȝeue him pelottis de agarico. & whanne þe swellinge bigynneþ to go away, if it be in somer, þan þou schalt hele al his bodi in hcof grauel þere þe sunne mai ȝeue greet hete, or lete him sitte vpon an hiȝ hil þere þe ³sunne schineþ hoot, þat he mai swete wel, & þat his bodi mai wexe hoot wipoute & wipinne. & if it be in winter, putte him in a drie stowe, so þat þe watir come not niȝ him. þus þou schalt make apozima of rotis / R_y, corticis fenicli, 8 apij, [ana drac.]⁴ .x., seminum [apii] squinantum, ameos, ana. 3 .v., rosarum rubiarum, spicenarde ana .3 .iiij, sepe hem in li .ij. of watir til þei come to li .j., cole hem & kepe þe colature. & if þou doist þerinne a litil hony it wole be þe better / Trocisci de lacte ben maad in þis maner / R_y, rubarbe, lacte, ana [drac iii.], seminis apij, spice, ameos, amigdalum amarum, masticia, squinante, seminis iuni-p[er]i, costi amari,⁵ rubee succi, eupatorij,⁶ aristologie rotundæ, gencian ana .3. ß, make herof gobetis, þe weizte of 3 .j., & he schal take oon þerof wip .3. iiij. of þe forseid pelottis de agarico / R_y, agarici .3 .x., succi eupatorij, rubarbarum, aristologia rotundæ ana 3 .ij, zucare albe .3 .v, & make herof pelottis. & þou schalt ȝeue herof .3 .ij.

20

If þou seest þat þe cause þat ȝede tofore þis passioun was hoot, & he make litil vrine & reed, & if his vertu be feble of þe hete, & þou hast dispeir of him,⁷ & if he haue þe feure þerwip, it is so ⁸myche þe worse // If his vrine schewe þat þe cause is could, & if þe patient be strong ynow, loke if his wombe be hard. & þan make him vse sirup acetose maad wip seedis & sugre, & ȝeue him þe pelottis of rubarbe þat ben maad in þis maner / R_y, rubarberi, succi eupatorij, seminis endiuie ana. 3. iiij, agarici 3. v., make þerof 28

¹ *laotea*, Lat. *lacta*. "Lacca, a red transparent Substance made as some say, by winged Arts; as Hony by Bees, and gather'd from a Tree of that Name, in Bengala, Malabar &c. Also a kind of red Gum issuing from certain Trees in Arabia, of which the best Sealing hard Wax is made; often us'd in Painting and Varnishing." Phillips.

² *Apozima*. "Apozeme, a Physical Decoction, a Diet-Drink made of several Roots, Woods, Barka, Herbs, Drugs, Flowers, Seeds, &c., boil'd together." Phillips.

⁴ MS. *ß*.

⁵ Two kinds of *costus* are mentioned in *Alphita*, p. 46: *c. indicus*, and *c. arabicus*.

⁶ *eupatorium*. Add. 15,236, fol. 3 b. (cc. 1300), "*Eupatorium. salvia agrestis idem. G. eupatoris. A. wyldeyage. i. hyndekale.*"

⁷ þou hast dispeir of him, Lat. *de tali egri salute desperes*. Comp. þou schalt neuere þe lattere be in despeir of canteris. Lat. *neo propter hoc desperes*, p. 311, note 3.

- pelettis wip þe iuys of endiue. þou schalt ȝeue him herof at oonys .3 .ij., & euery wike þou schalt ȝeue it oonys / If it so be þat he be feble, & if he mai not take so miche, þan in þe place of þese ^{if the patient is feble, gobets,}
- 4 pelottis he schal take gobetis þat ben maad in þis maner / R̄, *seminis* R̄
endiue 3 .x., esule,¹ succi eupatorij, agarici, ana. 3 .ij., & .᠑ .j.,
rosarum, seminis citrulorum, ana 3 .ij., & make herof .x. gobettis
wip a decoccion of fenel in water: ȝeue him oon þerof wip sirupo
- 8 acetoso de seminibus. Enplastre² his wombe wip enplastre maad wip .ij. partis of oxis dounge, & oon part of gotis dounge, boli ^{and apply a plaster on his belly.}
armoniaci, sulphuris, & salis, & distempere hem wip strong vinegre /
- þis is þe cure of tympaniti þat is ful selde curid / & specialy ^{Treatment of Tympanitis.}
- 12 whanne it is entrid into diafragma & is conformed þere / first þou
schalt make him electuari de baccis lauri, & þou schalt make him ^[17. 201, bk.]
suppositorijs for to distrie⁴ wynd, & he schal suffre hungir as
miche as he mai, & he schal absteyne him fro þingis þat engendriþ
- 16 wijnd, & þou schalt frote his wombe ofte wip a scharp cloof / ^{Give an electuary}
Electuari de baccis lauri / R̄, *foliorum rute* .3 .x., *ameos, seminum*,⁵ R̄
nigille,⁶ *leuistici*,⁷ *petrocilij macedonici*,⁸ *origani*,⁹ *carui, amigdala-*
rum amarum, piperis longi, mentastri,¹⁰ *dauci, acori, baccarum lauri*,
- 20 *castore* ana .3 .iiij., *serapini* .3 .iiij., *appoponac* .3 .iiij., make herof a
lectuarie wip .iiij. so miche of hony, þis electuarie wip consumeþ.
- ¶ þus þou schalt make suppositorijs for to distrie wijnd / R̄, *cimi-* ^{and suppositories.}
*num, foliorum rute viridis*¹¹ ana. ᠓ .j., *radicis brionie, radicis mali* R̄
- 24 *terre, radicis rafani* ana .3 .ij., *sal nitri* .3 .j., & make herof supposi- ^{Supposito-}
torijs wip hony. ¶ Whanne þou knowist wel þat þe dropesie is of ^{ria.}
hoot cause, þan þou schalt not forȝete to helpe þe side þat is hoot;
& also if þe mater be coold, þou schalt helpe him wip hote þingis.

¹ "*Enula*, quedam species est titimalli, gallice yesele." *Alphita*, p. 50.

² *enplastre*, Lat. venter enplastretur. O.Fr. emplastrer. Sl. 277, fol. 1: "*be þe place emplastred wip a plastre maad þus*." Comp. *plasteren*, Prompt. Parv.

⁴ *distrie*, Lat. dissoluere, destroy. ⁵ Lat.: cimini.

⁶ *nigilla*. Add. 15,236, fol. 10, "*Nigella i. lollium. G. necl. A. cokel*," fennel flower.

⁷ *Ibid.*, fol. 4 b., "*Leuisticum. G. luuache*," lovage. See *E. P. N.*, p. 43, *luestiche, luvesche*.

⁸ *Alphita*, p. 108, "*macedonia vel macedonicum, petrocillinum idem, g. alisandre, a. stamerche*."

⁹ Add. 15,236, fol. 5 b., "*Origanum. G. Origane. i. pulgium. A. puliol reale*." See *Alphita*, p. 150, "*Pulgium. gallire puliol, a. Brotheruurt*."

¹⁰ *Ibid.*, fol. 7 b., "*Sisimbrium. mentastrum. G. mentastro. A. hors minte*."

¹¹ *Ibid.*, fol. 7, "*Ruta bissara. puganum vel pucanum. hermola idem. G. Rue. A. smalrede*."

If the cause
is hot,
[¹ lf. 202]
give a decoction
with
chickens,
and a syrup.


R̃
Prescription
for the syrup.

To be given
twice a week.

A plaster is
put on the
region of the
liver.

Finally use
a bath.
[² lf. 202, bk.]

Take care in
using drying
medicines
that the
patient does
not get con-
sumption.

 Operation
should not
be performed
on all sorts
of people;

patients
who are not
strong, and
old men, are
not fit.
One cannot
trust in the
strength of
an old man.

[⁴ lf. 203]

¶ His þing¹ is necessarie for to zeue a man þat hæþ þe hote dropesie, a decoction of solatrum & endiue; & in þat watir he ¹schal seþe chickenys for to ete, & first he schal drinke sirupum acetosum wip seedis / And I wole telle þee a cure, þat I curide in my tyme .ij. 4 men þat weren in aschite of hoot cause, þat it mowe be ensauple to þee / I made hem a sirupe of platearie² in þis maner / R̃, succi scariole li .ij., succi apij & petrosilij, ana. li .j., & boile hem wip .3. iiij. of esule, masticis, seminis fenicli, apij, ana. 3. ß, seþe hem in 8 watir til þei come to .li. .ij., & þan cole hem & do þerto .li. j. zucare, & boile hem til þei be perfit. & whanne þow doist adoun fro þe fier, do þerto rubarbe .3. ß., & lete it boile a litil, & þan kepe it for þin vs. & þou schalt zeue it him in þe morowe wip a decoction 12 of fenel seed, .ij. in þe wike. & þou schalt enplastre al his wombe, saue þe regioun of his lyuere, wip þe forseid plastris & dounge & vinegre. & vpon his lyuere leie an enplastre maad of .3. .ij. of 16 barli mele, & rosis, & sandalis albi & rubei ana. 3. ß, camphore .3. .ij., & distempere hem wip water of rosis & wip vinegre. & if he haue not þe feure, þan zeue him gotis milk fasting. And whan þe patient bicometh smal in his wombe, þan sette him in a bath, þat 20 be soden þerinne sulphur³ & salt, & he schal be þerinne but a litil 80 while. ¶ Herof þou muste be war: whanne water is dried in a man wip driynge wip medicyns, þan his lymes leueþ swiþe drie; wherfore þei fallip in etik & dien. þerfore þou muste in alle þes 24 þingis be wel war /

þe cure þat is wip iren fallip oonli in aschite, þat manie men doon hardili, & takip no kepe of þe particularis þerof, for þei knowen not þe science, for þei doon al oon maner to zonge & to olde, to stronge & to feble; þei kuttip þe skyn vnder þe nauel, & 28 alle men þat þei kutten ouper þe mooste weren perischid / Saue þou schalt take kepe of kunnyng, & worche bi resoun / for þow schalt take kepe wher he be strong⁴ or no; & if he be not strong, þou schalt do no cure to him. ¶ Also þou schalt do no cure to olde 32 men þat ben to-broke, for þou schalt not leue þe strenkþe of an oold man, for it is impossible for to fynde an oold man strong, whanne þe dropesie is confermed on him / If it so be þat he be 36 zong⁴ & strong, þan þow schalt haue good trust for to helpe him. ¶ Thanne þou muste enquire sotilly wher ⁴þe principal vijs be of

² Matthæus Platearius belonged to the school of Salerno about the middle of the 12th century. He wrote: "Liber de simplicis medicina," commonly called "Circa instans."

þe lyuere, for þan þou muste kutte him in þe splene side / And if it
 so be þat þe splene be þe principal of þe dropesie, þan þe kuttynge
 muste be in þe riȝt side. And if þe cause come of lymes aboue, as
 4 of þe stomac or of diafragma, þan þou muste kutte him vpon
 pecten. & if it be in a womman, & come of þe vijs of þe maris,
 þan þou schalt kutte hir aboue þe nauele. Whanne þou knowist in
 what place þou schalt kutte þe pacient, þan þou schalt opene þe
 8 place of þe pacient, & þou schalt presse his wombe adounward as
 miche as þou miȝt, & make him ete a litil of breed tostit¹ vpon
 coolis, & wet in wijn; & þan lete him sitte tofore þee bitwene a
 strong² mannes armys, þat mai holde him faste, þat he mowe not
 12 meue in þe tyme whanne þou wolt worche. And þan þou schalt
 take þe skyn þat is clepid mirac, wiþ þi lifthond in þe place þere þou
 wolt make þi kuttynge, & þat skyn þou schalt peerse endelongis
 wiþ an instrument þat is competent³ þerfore / And be wel war þat
 16 þou touche not siphac in no maner; and ²whanne þou hast kutt þe
 skyn aboue & mirac, þan opene þe place þat þou mowe se siphac.
 & þan þou schalt peerse a litil hole in siphac & sette þerto a canel,³
 & drawe out þerof as miche watir as þou seest good for to saue his
 20 vertu / & þan drawe out þe canel, & lete þe skyn þat is clepid
 mirac goon ouer þe openyng of siphac, for þat wole suffre no þing
 to go out / In þe morowe opene þe same skyn aȝen þat was kutt
 first, & putte in þe canel, & kepe his vertu as miche as þou miȝt.
 24 & þus þou schalt do til þou haue drawe out þe watir; saue þou
 schalt not drawe out al, for þou schalt consume it afterward with
 propre medicyns / Herof þou schalt take kepe in þe tyme, þe whilis
 þou drawist out þe water, as it is forseid: þe patient schal ete good
 28 metis, & drinke good drinkis & swete, þat mowe engendre in him
 good spirits & good blood: as good broþis maad of hennys & of
 capouns. & diȝt wiþ swete þingis, for eueri avoidinge laskiþ miche
 þe spiritis; & whanne þe spiritis falliþ, þan a mannes vertues
 32 failen /

The place of
the incision
depends on
which organ
—the liver,
spleen, sto-
mach, or
uterus—is
affected.

Let the
patient be
held by a
strong man;

cut the skin,
called *Mirac*;

[² 1f. 203, bk.]
pierce the
siphac,
and draw out
the water by
a cannula at
repeated sit-
tings.

Strengthen
the patient
during this
treatment
with good
food.

⁴Of ficus, & cancre, & vlcer in mannes⁵ ȝerde / [⁴ 1f. 204]

Ficus is a maner wexyng þat arisiþ vpon a mannes ȝerde tofore. ¶ xj^o. c.
 & sumtyme it wole be neische, whanne it is engendrid of
 36 fleume / & whanne it is engendrid of malancolie, it wole be hard;

Ficus is a
growth on a
man's yard;
it is either
soft or hard.

¹ breed tostit^{id}, Lat. panem tostum. *Prompt. Parr.*

² canel, Lat. cannula. See *N. E. Dict.*, s. v. canal 1.

⁵ MS. *manner*.

and may
become a
cancer.
Ulcers arise
either from
hot pustules

or from inter-
course with
diseased
women.

The fious
must be
removed by
a thread or
with cutting,
with mollifi-
catives;

[⁴ 1f. 204, bk.]
the surest
way is the
hot iron.

A cancer
must be re-
moved with
all its roots.

Nota.
If there are
ulcers in the
fore-skin,
remove the
growth.

Ry
be gren
water

[⁵ 1f. 205]

& if it rotie, it wole turne into a cancre. ¶ A cancre comeþ in a mannes zerde, rízt as in opere lymes of a man, & vlcera comeþ of hote pustulis þat comeþ þeron, & aftirward þei brekeþ it.¹ Ouper þei comeþ of scharpe humouris, þat makíþ vlcera in þe same place; 4 oupir it mai come of a womman þat a man, þat hadde þe same passioun,² hadde leie by hir tofore³ /

þis is þe cure of ficus þat comíth of fleume: þou schalt binde him wíþ a þreed, ouper kutte him al aweí; & þan þou schalt soude 8 it as it is aforseid in opere placis / If it come of malancolie, it mai be curid or þat it rotie, wíþ tempere mollificatiuis, as it is forseid in þe cure of sclirosis in þe general chapitre of enpostyms: þat whanne he is maad neische, þan þou schalt take him aweí wíþ 1¹ alle his rootis / saue it is more sure take aweí it wíþ ⁴an hoot iren, & þan leie þervpon butter, & zitt þou muste touche him wíþ an hoot iren azen; & þan leie buttir þervpon. & þus þou schalt do oftetye litil & litil til it be al wastid aweí / If it be a cancre, it 1¹ wole not be curid but if it be kutt aweí wíþ alle his rotis. And þer is no wei so sure to take him aweí as fier / Alle þe rotis of him musten be brent aweí, & þan leie þervpon a mundificatif of apium, & aftir þis þou muste leie þerto drijnge þingis / & in þis place þou 2⁰ schalt not forþete to leie a defensif vpon þe place þat is hool, for þis defensif schal defende þe place þat is hool fro swellynge. ¶ Vlcers þat comeþ in a mannes zerde: as whanne þe skyn þat is tofore in a mannes zerde bicomíth greet, & þis mai not be curid 24 but if þat greetnes be doon aweí. & þis medicyn is good þerfore / Take whit wíjn, & of verte grece .3.j, auripigment .3.ij; grinde þes .ij. sotilli, & leie hem in þe whit wíjn, & meue hem ofte, & kepe hem for þin vss. & þe more cold⁵ þat þis medicyn is, þe better it 28 wole be. & þan þou schalt wete a lynnen cloof in þis medicyn, ⁶& leie vpon þe zerde / For þis þing wole soude woundis & defende þat

¹ Lat.: que postea crepantur.

² MS. inserts þat.

³ Lat.: Ulcera veniunt . . . ex commixtione cum feda muliere, que cum egro talem habente morbum de novo coierat. *Hæser*, III, p. 230, gives a list of references, showing the early knowledge of venereal diseases in the mediæval ages. The earliest quotation is from Richardus Anglicus, *Micrologus* MS., xiiith cent.: "Ulcerantur utraque, virga scilicet et testiculi, tempore menstruum, ex coitu ex salsis humoribus et acutis et incensis, quod satis ex colore cutis et pustularum vel saniei, et ex pruritu et punctura et ardore perpenditur." Richardus gives the same preventative, which is mentioned by Lanfranc: "Ablutio cum aqua frigida et continua abstersio — et maxime si post ablutionem cum frigida aqua fiat roratio loci abluti cum aceto."

⁵ MS. cold. Lat.: quanto plus antiquatur tanto melius.

per mai wexe no cancre / If it so be þat a mannes 3erde be skynned, & be noon oper passioun peron saue þat, þan þou schalt leie per-
 vpon vnguentum album, ouper leie pervpon a lynnene cloof wet in
 4 watir of rosie. Also poudre maad of cucurbita & aloes is good
 þefore / If a man wole saue þis lyme algate fro corrupcioun,
 whanne he haþ leien bi a womman, & he haue ony suspicioun of
 vncleennes, þan he schal waische his 3erde wiþ coold water medlid
 8 with vinegre /

Of Emeroidis & fistule in þe ers /

- E**moroides ben veins þat endiþ in a mannes ers & ben .v.¹ ¶ xijo. co.
 þese veins sumtyme openeþ & sumtyme þei ben enpostymed. There are five
 12 Whanne þe blood þat is in þe same veins falliþ adoun & mai not hemor-
 out, þan it engendriþ apostym. & if þe blood is gret & fleumatik, they are
 þan it wole engendre ficus, & if þat blood be greet & colerik, þan sometimes
 it wole engendre moralem.² And if þe blood be greet & malan- they are
 16 colius, þan it wole engen[dre] condilomata / Sumtyme þer comeþ sometimes
 þerto ³so manie diuers humouris, & makip diuers enpostyms in þe [¶ 12 305, bk.] open, some-
 same maner as it falliþ in opere lymes, & ofte tyme of þis enpostym times they
 comeþ a festre, but if it be þe bettir holpe; þe blood þat comeþ to form tu-
 20 a mannes ers bi veynes þat ben clepid emoroides is grettere blood mours.
 þan ony blood of his bodi / & if it so be þat a man haue þe flux The blood in
 of blood of þe emoroidis, þou schalt not stoppe it, but it blede so these veins is
 myche þat it make þe pacient feble, saue þou schalt kepe him wiþ the thickest
 24 good regimen, & he schal vse no metis ne drinkis þat engendriþ in the body.
 scharp blood & greet // For bi þe flux of blood a mannes bodi mai Nota
 be kept from malancolious blood, & it wole kepe a man fro lepre & Hemor-
 fro mania, & fro al sijknis þat comeþ of malancolie / Also if a rhoidal flux
 28 man is woned to haue hem & þei be stoppid, þan þou muste zeue shall not be
 him medicyns for to bringe hem out / And if it so be þat a man stopped,
 haue so greet flux of hem þat his lyuere be enfeblid þerwiþ, þan as it keeps a
 he myzte falle in a dropesi þer þoruþ, for to miche flux of blood man from
 32 mai be cause of a dropesie / þefore if þou ⁴seest þat þe flux be to leprosey mania
 greet, þan þou schalt constreine blood wiþ medicyns þat ben con- and other
 strictif, & þou schalt fynde medicyns þefore in þe ende of þis diseases.
 chapitre / Wexingis þat ben clepid emoroidis, summe þei falliþ Emeroides

¹ *De propr. rer.*, Lib. VII., cap. 54. Add. 27,944, fol. 95 b.: "*Emorydis ben fyve veynes þat streccheþ oute at þe ers, of þe whiche veynes comeþ diuers passiouns and euolis, as boluyng & swellinge, withholdinge and flux.*"

² *moralis*, a mulberry form of tumour.

(piles) are
internal or
external.

flous
can be tied
away.

Moralis
consists of
many small
swellings,
like a mul-
berry.
[³ 1f. 206, bk.]
Bleed from
the Basilica
and the
Saphena,

relieve the
pains with a
medicine,

R̄

apply an
ointment,
or tent.

R̄
An ointment
to ripen an
apostema.

[⁶ 1f. 207]

R̄

wipoute þe hole of a mannes ers, & summe wipinne / Also summe
wexip in þe for side of þe ers, & summe in þe hyndir side. Sum-
tyme it wexip in þe forside toward þe rote of þe ballokis, & þan þei
makip greet akinge / for sumtyme þei letten þat a man mai not⁴
make vrine. If it be *flous*, þat þou miȝt knowe, for it wole be
wipoute hete¹ & neische, & þe cure herof is but liȝt. þou schalt
take a stronge þreed & knitte þere aboute, & euery dai þou schalt
streine it more & more, til he falle awei, & þan wip dryng⁸ medi-
cyns þou schalt drie it vp. ¶ *Moralis* makip greet akinge & hap-
manie smalle swellingis as it were mora celsi, & þe colour þerof wole
be reed & sumdel² purpur, & but þis haue help for to acese þe
akinge, it wole engendre an enpostym. þe cure herof is to lete him¹²
blood in þe veyne þat is clepid³ basilica & sophena al in oon dai,⁴
& in þe same side þat þe passioun drawip mooste þerto. If he is
wont to haue þe same passioun, þan make him haue þe same flux
of blood. & if he is not wont to haue it, þan þou schalt ȝene¹⁶
him no medicyns for to make him haue þat flux, & þan þou schalt
acese þe akyngē wip þis medicyn, & is good for thenasmon⁵ & for
alle þe passiouns of þe ers / R̄, thuris, mirre, licij, croci, ana partem²⁰
.ij, opij partes duas, grinde hem & medle hem with ȝelke of an eij²⁰
& wip þe iuys of pillij, & ole of roses, & make þerof an oyme-
ment / & if þe akyngē be wipinne in his ers, þanne anointe a tent²⁴
& putte into his ers, & if it be wipoutforþ, þan leie vpon lynnē
cloof & leie it vpon þe place. ¶ Also a medicyn of Haly þe²⁴
abbot / R̄, ceruse .3. v., litarge .3. iij., iusquiami albi .3. ij., mas-
ticis, grynde hem & tempere hem wip þe ȝelke of an ey & oile of
violet & make herof an oynement. & þis oynement is good
whanne þe akinge is wip an enpostym, for þis wole resolue & make²⁸
it maturatif, & doiþ away þe⁶ akinge / R̄, foliorum malue, florum
camomille, Melliloti⁷ ana .℥. j., fenigreci, seminis lini ana .3. iij.,
lenticularum excorticarum .3. x., seþe alle þes in water til þei
resolue & þe water consume awei, & þan putte hem in a morter &³²
grinde hem wel, & þan do þerto .ij. ȝelkis of eiren & oile of violet,

¹ Lat. : sine colore. The translator read "calore."

² *sumdel*, altered in a different coloured ink from *sumdei*.

³ Lat. : cura est flebotomia basilice lateris eiusdem in uno die, in alio de saphena eiusdem lateris.

⁵ Vigo, Traheron Interpret. : "Tenesmos is whan a man hathe greates pro-
uocation to the seege, but can do nothyng. It commeth of tissein, whych
signifieth to stretche."

⁷ Add. 15236, fol. 5: "*Mellilotum. Corona regia. idem. G. mellilot. A. hunisoke vel redclaure.*"

& make herof an oynement. ¶ If it so be þat in þis place of þe
 forseid þingis come an enpostym & gadere to quittance, þou schalt
 not abide til it breke him-silf, for þan it wole make a greet hole
 4 ynward toward þe guttis. þerfore þou schalt opene it hastili, or it
 wexe to miche ynward / If þe place of þe emeroide make no greet
 akyngne ne noon enpostym, & if þou wolt drie hem & waste hem,
 þan þou miȝt worche in .ij. maners, do þerto mel anacardi &
 8 vnguentum ruptorium,¹ or touche hem wiþ an hoot iren þat is
 bettere / If he be a delicat man or a feble, drie hem with fumy-
 gaciouns maad of pulpa coloquintida & seed of mirtillorum, & þe
 leeuës & þe ryndis of capparis, mirra, nux cipressi, & gallis, & make
 12 him a decoccoun of þese þingis in water ²& ³ lete him sitte þeron, [² 1f. 207, bk.]
 for alle þese þingis maketh þe emeroidis blak & makip hem falle
 away / I nolde neuere leie in þat place corosif medicyn /

If þer be greetnes of veynes ful of blood wiþout ony enpostym,
 16 & þe patient haue gret akyngne þerwiþ, & principaly if he was wont
 to haue þe flux of emeroidis wiþ blood, & he hadde it not longe
 tyme tofore, þan þou schalt ȝeue him medicyns to haue þe flux of
 blood, & þat þou schalt do in þis maner anoon, wiþ þe iuys of a
 20 strong oynoun, or wiþ ius of lekis, ouþer if þou makist supposi-
 torijs of hem & frotist þerwiþ þe place, & þis wole opene þe veyns
 of þe emeroidis / Also þe rotis of maluis wet in þe gall of a bole /
 Also take hony .ij. partis, & vert de grece oon part, & medle hem
 24 togidere, & herwiþ anointe a suppositorie maad of lynnē cloof &
 putte it yn / If it so be þat þe patient blede to miche & he bicomēþ
 feble þerwiþ, þan helpe him with trociscus de carabe⁴ þat ben gode
 for to restreine flux of blood of emeroides. & it is good for to
 28 restreine menstrues. R̄, carabe, gummi nucis, balaustie, lacte, succi
 barbe yrcine⁵ ana .3. v., thuris .3. ij., opij .3. iij., make herof [⁵ 1f. 208]
 gobettis wiþ muscillagine psillij, & make euery dai a gobet þe
 weizte of .3. ij., & þou schalt ȝeue oon þerof wiþ sirupo stiptico,
 32 & þou schalt make fumigaciouns of drynge þingis: as gallis, Use a fumi-
 balaustie, psidiorum & opere mo þat ben forseid / R̄, nuces cipressi, R

¹ *vnguentum ruptorium*. Vigo Interpret: "Ruptorie: that, that hath strengthe to breake."

² At the bottom of the page, in later hand: *contra emeroides vell bubo vell tenassmoun: R̄ mor 3 ij, olibani, ameos ana 3 j, oppij 3 f, gosium gres et [?], fiat decoctio cum mell vell cum pestello ellido et nido, fformetur suppositorum.*

⁴ Matth. Sylv.: "Caraba i. Karabe. Electrum." Fr. carabé Arab. Kahrabâ Devic Dict. Amber.

⁵ *Alphita*, p. 20: "Barba yrsina . . . a^o buckestonge."

When an
 apostema be-
 gins to sup-
 purate, open
 it quickly.

Nota

To dry hæ-
 morrhoids,
 use a corro-
 sive oint-
 ment, the hot
 iron,
 and for a deli-
 cate patient a
 fumigation.



If the veins
 are ruptured,
 provoke flux
 of blood.

If the patient
 loses too
 much blood,
 stop the flux.

R̄

[⁵ 1f. 208]

Use a fumi-
 gation.

R

A wash.

cupularum glandulum, corticas granatorum, kutte hem a litil & sepe hem in good wijn. & wip þis wijn waische þe place an euen & a morowe / Also a fumigacioun maad of tapsi barbasti¹ is good þerfore /

4

The great bowel is often pierced by an apostema and a fistula is formed.

It falliþ ofte tyme þat after þe flux of þe emeroidis, ouþer if enpostym be to longe maturatif in þat same place vnopened, þan it falliþ ofte tyme þat þe grete bowel² is peersaid. & sumtyme it makip a greet hole³ in þe same place, & þoruþ þat hole comeþ out 8 wijnd & sumtyme egestioun,⁴ & þis hole is cleped a festre of þe ers.⁵ Of þis cure manye men ben hardi & knowen not þe perels þerof, & makip þe same medicyns in þis place for a festre as þei doon in opere placis / But þou schalt take good hede of þis maner 12 enfestre; þou schalt asaie if þe hole of þe festre go to hiþe þat it touche þe place of þe lacertis of þe ers, þan þe festre is incurable, & þan a man schal not holde his egestioun, þat it nyle go out alwei / Also þou muste loke wher þere go out miche quittance ouþir 16 litil of þe hole of þe festre, or wheþir þe quittance þerof be whit or reed / Also þou muste take kepe wher he haue greet penaunce þerof or no / And aftir alle þese diuers þingis, þou muste diuerseli worche. For as it is aforseid, first þou muste acese þe akyng & þe swell- 20 ynge, þan þou schalt asaie wher þe festre go to þe lacertis; þat þou schalt knowe in þis maner / Putte þi fyngir as fer as it wole go, into his ers, & þan putte a pliaunt tent in þe feestre. & loke in what place þe tent mette wip þi fyngir, & þan say þat þe patient streyne 24 his ers, & þan þou miȝt wite wheþer þe festre go aboue þe braun or no. If þe festre go aboue þe braun, þan þe patient schal lete go out wijnd & egestioun at þe hole of þe festre. 7 þan þou schalt in no maner touche þe festre wip no medicyn corosif ne wip noon 28 hoot iren; but þou schalt teche him for to vse a waisching wip water & hony & mirre, & wip sum mundificatif, and in þis maner he schal kepe him þat þe malice of þe festre wexe nomore. ¶ O mi briþeren, manye lewid lechis haue I seen þat coude on ruptorie, 32 & þei supposide þerbi for to cure cancris & festris, & al maner crepa-

and great pain.

Try with a probe and the finger, how far the fistula reaches.

If the fistula passes above the brawn, [¶ If. 209] apply no corrosive, but only a wash.

Many unlearned surgeons,

¹ *Alphita*, p. 182: "Tapsus barbatus—g^o. molayne, an. catesteyl, uel feldwrt."

² *intestinum*, inserted in later hand.

³ *callid fistula testium*, inserted in later hand.

⁴ "*Egestion*, a casting forth, avoiding: In the Art of Physick, the discharging of Meat digested through the Pylorus, or lower Mouth of the Stomach, into the rest of the Entrails." Phillips.

⁵ *fistula*, inserted in later hand.

- turis, & þei supposiþ bi þis maner ruptorie¹ for to surmounte *Galien* knowing only
 in worchinge / And men þat han þis opinioun, in þe mo errouris apply it in
 þat þei falliþ, þe more wroop þei wolen be, & þe more þei wollip vse *Galien.*
 4 her ruptorijs / And þefore þis mai be ensauple to þee : if a man They do like
 haue no drinke but eysel, and haþ indignacioun for to fecche ony has no other
 oper but halt him þerto, & zeueþ þerof to men þat ben aþirst. & drink but
 if þe drinke agreue hem, & þei speke ony þing þerof, he wole be vinegar,
 8 wroop þefore, & he nyle noon oper drinke fecche, but algate zeueþ and gives it
 hem of þe same til her spirituals bicomie drie / And if þe same ^[2 lf. 209, bk.] man if he had
 hadde wijn ynow3 & knew wel þe vertu þerof, he wolde zeue no wine, he
 man eysel for to drinke nomore / þefore þou schalt vse medicyns would not
 12 þat ben appreued, & do awei al medicyns þat ben false, & holde give vinegar.
 þee apaid of þe medicyns þat ben aforseid /³

Of þe cancre⁴ and þe mormole /

- 16 **C**ancrene ben rounde vlcis þat falliþ in a mannes leggis, & ¶ xiij. 00 /
 malum mortuum also, & þei falliþ boþe in oon place, þefore I
 wole make difference þerof / ¶ Cancrene ben round vlcera & ben Gangrene is a
 foule & comeþ of dedinge of þe skyn,⁵ for þe natural spiritis comen mortification
 not þerto, & þefore þe place is corrupt / & if þe corrupcioun go If the bone is
 20 anon to þe boon, þan it schal not be clepid cancrenum, but it affected it is
 schal be clepid aschachiles.⁶ & if þe corrupcioun occupie al þe called
 lyme, þan it schal be clepid herpes esthiomenus, þat is as miche the aschachiles
 seie as etyng him-silf. ¶ þe signes of cancrenarum ben blac If the whole
 24 vlcera, & þe fleisch þerof wole be foule & of ledi colour, & þe lippis limb is
 þerof wolen be gret, & þe fleisch þat is in þe middil of vlcera wole affected
 be corrupt. & it be miche lik to a cancre þat is vlcera⁷, but The symp-
 þis is þe difference þerof þat a cancre comeþ of corrupcioun of toms of Gan-
 grene are
 black ulcers
 [7 lf. 210]
 similar to an
 ulcerated
 cancer.

¹ MS. *ruptorie*.³ The translator omits a short passage about "Fissure of the Anus."

⁴ *cancre*, a mistake. Lat. De cancrenis. Med. Lat. cancrenum, cancrena, is derived from Lat. canceroma, cancrema, canchrema, and has very early been confounded with Lat. gangrena, γάγγραινα. Vigo. Interpret. "Cancrena. Gangrena is when some parte of the body thorow great inflammation dieth, but is not yet perfittly dead; when it is perfectlye dead, and wythout felyng : it is called sphacelos in greke, whyche they have turned to aschachillos, sideratio in latine. Some saye, that Gangrena is whan a membre is apte to putrefye. Aschachillos, when it is putrified, but hath not all partes of putrefaction. Esthiomenas, when a membre hath al degrees of putrefaction."

⁵ of dedinge of þe skyn. Lat. : de cutis mortificatione.⁶ *aschachiles*, the Arab. corruption of σφάκελος. Fr. sphacile.

It is caused
by general
debility.

malancolie, & þis comeþ of lesynge of þe spiritis of lijf / Also þe lippis of þe cancre ben more reuersid and more grene, & a cancre fretiþ more / And þerfore þis passioun is clepid of summen a deed cancre /

4

Treatment of
Gangrene:
Purge the
body from
melancholic
matter,

þe cure of þis passioun is in þis maner / first þou schalt avoide his bodi of malancolie, & þou; it be not his principal cause as it is of a cancre / ȝitt þe mater þat falliþ to þe place is greet / þerfore it is good for to clense his blood of malancolie; for it is good þing in 8 vlcera þat ben olde, & principali whanne þei ben in parties bineþe-forþ / & whanne he is clensid, þan lete him blood in þe veyne þat is bitwixe þe leeste too of his foot & þe too next þerto, in þe same leg þat þe passioun is on. & vpon þe place þou schalt caste pouder 13 of affodillorum, ouþer remeue awei al þe deed fleisch / If þou wolt worche more surely & bettere, make him a cauterie, þat ¹it be myche & long^t as þe place is þat [is] corrupt, & wiþ an hoot iren make a cros vpon þe middil of þe passioun as depe as þe deed fleisch 16

Then apply a
plaster,

is. & þan þou schalt leie þeron a plastre maad of whete mele & iuys of ache, & þan cure it vp as þou doist opere vlcera, as it is forseid / And in þis caas þou schalt not forȝete in no maner for to leie aboute þe place a defensif of bole & terra sigillata; for þat 20 wole suffre no wickide mater to renne to þe place, & it defendiþ þe hool place fro corrupcioun. ¶ Malum mortuum is a maner scabbe, & comeþ of grete humouris brent, & falliþ to þe place. & sum part þerof leueþ in a mannys flank, & engendiþ glandulas & 24

and is treated
with purging,

swelliþ / þe cure herof is to avoide his bodi of greet humouris, þat ben brent; & lete him blood in basilica, in þe same side; & lete him blood in þe foot, as it is forseid / & þou muste dissolue glandulus, as it is forseid in þe chapitre of glandulus & scrophulis; 28

and an oint-
ment.


& þan þou muste anointe þe place wiþ drijnge medicyns. þou ²schalt anointe al þe place with psilatro,³ til al þe heeris falle awei wiþouten ony violence / Take þe grete titimalle & þe smale, & boile hem in vinegre & in oile, & do þerto a litil sope, & make þerof þe 32 maner of an oynement; & wiþ þis oynement þou schalt anointe þe place harde aȝen þe tier / Rȝ, olei aceti ana. 3 .ij., saponis mollis & saponis duri ana. 3 j.; medle hem togidere, & do þerto iuys mali terre ouþer brionie .3 .ij.; boile hem alle togidere, & anointe 36 þe place þerwiþ, & þou schalt fynde oynementis in þe antidotarie þat ben gode in þis caas //

Rȝ
an ointment
of titimall.

Rȝ
An ointment
of soap.

³ *Sinon. Barth.*, p. 35: "Psilotrum, depilatorium idem."

Of varices, þat ben veynes, and elephancia.¹

- U**Arices ben clepid veynes, þat ben grete, & grene, & purpur, & ¶ xliij. c./
 sittip aboute a mannes leggis. and þei comen of greet Varices are enlarged veins in the legs.
 4 malancolious² blood, þat fallip adoun. & also it comep of grete
 metis & of greet traueile, or it may come of greet fleume; & it
 wole make a mannes feet & his leggis al grete, & sumtyme his feet
 also³ // þe ⁴cure of varicum is in þis maner: þou schalt purge him Elephantia attacks the feet.
 8 wiþ gotis whey & wiþ epithimo, for þis purgacioun is propre in þis [¶ If. 211, bk. 1.]
 caas, or purge him wiþ pelottis of epithims. & lete him blood in The general treatment consists in purging, and in bleeding from the Basilic vein.
 þe veyne þat is clepid basilica, of þe arme in þe same side, & also
 in his foot. & he schal absteyne him fro metis þat engendrip
 12 malancolie / þis passioun þow myzt⁵ cure in þese maners⁶ / þis is þe Local treatments:
 first⁷ maner: loke in his hamme, vnder his knee. þere þou schalt 1. Apply a double ligature on the popliteal vein,
 se a greet veine; & alle þe grete veynes, þat ben bineþe in his leg,
 comeþ out þerof. þan þou schalt take vp þe same veyne wiþ a 
 16 nede. & loke þat þou peerse not þe veyne, & knytte hir wiþ a
 preed. & þe brede of þi fyngir aboute þat place, putte yn þi nede
 aþen, vnder þe veyne as þou hast do heretofore, & knitte in þe same
 maner wiþ a preed; & þan þou schalt kutte þe skyn ouer þe veyne
 20 endelongis; & þan take vp þe veyne & kutte hir bitwixe þe .ij.
 bindingis, & þan þe ende of þe veyne þat is aboute schal be brent cut the vein between the two ligatures,
 wiþ an hoot iren, & þe nepir side ⁸of þe veyne schalt be vnknit. [¶ If. 212]
 & presse out þe blood bineþeforþ of þe veyne, as myche as þou
 24 myzt. & þanne þe remenaunt þou schalt drawe wiþ medicyns þat
 ben consumynge. & þe fleisch þere þou madist þi wounde, þou
 schalt touche wiþ an hoot iren also; & þan þou schalt leie to þe
 place mundificatiuis, & þan soude as it is aforseid.⁷ ¶ Also anoþer and press the blood out from the lower part of the vein: after removal of the ligature.
 28 maner cure: lete him blood ouli in þe same veyne, & take out of
 þe blood as miche as þou mizt, & purge him ofte, & make him 2. Use blood-letting and purging.

¹ Lanfranc follows the description given by *Avicenna*, Lib. III, Fen. 22, Tract. 1, Cap. 15, ed. Ven. 1527. Avicenna's list of the occupations that are predisposing to this illness reminds us of the fact that he was a courtier himself. *Ibid.*: "Et plurimum quidem accidunt cursoribus, & viatoribus, & onera portantibus & coram regibus astantibus."

² MS. *humour*, deleted.

³ Incorrect translation. Lat.: "Elephantia dicitur quædam carnis augmentatio, in qua crus ultra mensuram debitam augmentatur cum pede toto, et fit ex grosso fleumate vel ex grossa melancolia non corrupta."

⁴ Lat.: *Locus autem tribus curatur modis.*

⁷ This mode of operation is the same as has been described by *Paulus Ægineta*, Lib. VI, 82, ed. Fr. Adams 1844, 2nd vol., p. 406, and by *Avicenna* l. c., Cap. 18.

3. Do not try a perfect cure, but purge and bleed several times a year.

[1 II. 212, bk.]

Elephancia can be cured at the beginning of the disease.

Use purging, blood-letting,

keep the legs bandaged before an exertion, use an ointment.

enplastris aboute his leggis wiþ drijnge þingis, & diete him as it is aforseid. ¶ þe .iiij. maner is þis: þou schalt go to no perfit cure þerof, but þou schalt lete þat blood falle adoun, & þan a fewe tymes in þe ȝeer þou schalt purge him; & þou schalt laske his greet blood wiþ blood-letyngis, þat ben forseid, & leie enplastris vpon þe place þat ben drijnge. & þus þou schalt do til al þe swellynge be goon away / & þis laste medicyn is þe beste for hem þat haue had þis passioun longe, & for hem þat ben olde / For if þou kutte a veyne in hem, þan þer wole engendre manie sijknensis aboue, & make þe pacient deed þe rapere / For I siz men þat her veynes weren so kutt þat weren algate sijk aftirward, & wiþinne a litil time aftir þat þei diede. ¶ Elephancia² is incurable whanne it is conformed; but bifore þat it is conformed, it mai be curid for to purge þe humouris þat ben in þe cause wiþ blood-leting, þat ben aforseid. & he schal absteine him fro grete metis, þat engendriþ greet humouris; & þan he schal not go ne ride, but if his leg & his foot be bounden wiþ a boond faste, & speciali in þe ioynct / But first þou schalt anoynte his leggis wiþ epithimo maad of acacia, mirra, aloe, ipoquistidos,³ & alym with vinegre. & whanne þe swellynge bigynneþ to goon awei, þan make him a stuwe, & lete his leggis be þeriane longe; & be it maad of askis of vines & caul-seed, sticados arabici, lupinorum, mirre, stercus caprini, fenigreci. Also anointe him, & binde him, as it is forseid. & in þis maner I haue curid men, þat ne weren not conformed þeron //

24

Of wertis in handis and in feet /

[1 II. 212]

¶ xv. c. /

¶ Porri⁵ ben engendrid of fleume þat is greet, & ben white; veruce⁶ comeþ of malancolie, & ben blake, & han mo rotis / Scissure⁷ comeþ of malancolie brent, & makip as it were kuttyngis; ²⁸

² The disease which Lanfranc describes is the Elephantiasis Arabum, commonly known as Barbadoes leg, quite different from the Elephantiasis of the Greeks, a general term for severe leprosy.

³ *Sinon. Barth.*, p. 25: "Ipoquistidos est succus fungi qui nascitur ad pedem rosæ caninæ." *ὑποκιστίς, ἰδος, ῆ*, a parasitic plant which grows on the roots of the *sieros*, *Cytinus hypocistis*. (= Holly Rose, *Gerard*, p. 1281.)

⁵ "Porrus, a Leak, also a kind of Wart." *Phillips*.

⁶ "Verruca, (Lat.) a Wart, a little hard brawny Swelling, which breaks out of the Skin, and breeds in any part of the Body." *Ibid*.

⁷ "Scissure, a Cut or Cleft, a Rent or Chap." *Ibid*.

- & if þei comeþ of cooldnes, þan þei schulen be clepid muge.¹ ¶ þe Treatment of
cure of *porrorum* is for to clense his bodi wip trocisco de turbit, & *porrorum*.
þan frote þe place wip medicyns þat ben consumptif; & frote hem Apply a can-
4 wip poudre maad of a gotis toord, & tempere wip þe iuys of mirti stic medicine.
- & wip þe ryndis of capparis / Veruce schulen be curid wip a *veruce*.
purgacioun maad of epithimi & gotis whey, & wip summe opere Use purging
medicyn þat is propriid for malancolie, & þan þou schalt vse stronge and a strong
8 oynementis / as *unguentum ruptorium*, ouþer mel anacardi or sum ointment,
opir corrosif, ouþer in þis maner is better / garse it al aboutforþ or tie the
binde it wip a stronge þreed, & streine wel þe þred & drawe him growth.
awei wip þe þreed, & þanne touche þe rotis of him wip a cauterie
- 12 punctual. ¶ *Sci-sure*. It is nede in þis passioun for to purge his *Sci-sure*.
bodi of humouris þat ben brent, & make ²him a bap of swete Use purging,
water. & þan þou schalt waische his lymes wip a decoccioun of [² 1f. 213, bk.]
bismalve in watir, & a litil oile þerwip; & lete him vse metis þat a bath,
16 makip moist & engendrid good blood, & þan anoynte him wip þis an ointment.
oynement / R̄, *olium rosarum*, cere citrine, adipis anatis colatus, R̄
Isopi humide,³ muscillagine seminis citoniorum, amilum, draganti, Muge.
ana, make herof an oynement / ¶ *Muge* schulen be curid wip oilis
- 20 & oynementis / first þou schalt aswage þe akinge wip oile, & þan Relieve the
leie þerto a mundificatif þat schal be seid in þe antidotarie, & þan pain;
soude it wip mirre / If þou sceest it at þe first bigynnyng, þan apply a mun-
make an enplastre of armoniaco, for þat wole resolute þe enpostym. didicative,
24 & þou schalt make þat he vse [not]⁴ streit schoon, & he schal a plaster,
anoynte his feet, & principali hise heelis wip þis oynement / R̄, and an oint-
olium de lilie 3 .vj., cere 3 .i., resine 3 .ij., armoniaci 3 .j., farine ment.
fenigreci 3 .i., thuris, mastice, ana 3 .ij., & make herof an R̄
28 oynement /⁵

¹ *Matth. Syluat.*: "Perniones vel rasulæ, sunt excoriationes quæ fiunt in nimio frigore in calcaneis, quæ *Muges* vulgariter dicuntur," probably allied to *mucus*, *mungere*, *muža*.

² *isopus humida*. Sloane 2463, fol. 159 bk.: "The fyfte, whiche is nother properly oynement nor enplastre, but atriwe two, & is cleped *ysopus humida*. Take wolle that is bytwize the thyen and the iowes of schepe, as moche as þou wilt, and put as moche water therepon as may covere hit, and lete hit stonde so aday and anyzt, and þanne boile hit with a lente fyre, and lete hit weze cold, and coile hit; and thanne boile hit eftesones in a tymed panno with a list fyre, and thanne lete hit weze cold, and coile hit: butt loke thou stere hit evermore with a spatule of tre till þat it be thikke as oynement."

³ not wanting. Lat.: iube ne calciamenta portet stricta.

⁴ *Gulielm. de Saliceto, Chirurgia*, Lib. I, Cap. 57. Sloane 277, fol. 19: "For cold in wynter þe leche may have two consideraciouns to þe heelyngs"

Of blood-letyng //

¶ xvj **B**lood-letyng¹ is a craft for to laske a mannes blood þat is in his
 [1 lf. 213^a] veynes / ¹And þis þou schalt wel wite, þat it falliþ for oure
 Blood-letting belongs to a surgeon's craft. craft, þouȝ we for pride take it to barbouris & to wommen; & ⁴
 blood-letyng falliþ principali for cirurgians / O lord, whi is it so
 greet difference bitwixe a cirurgian & a phisician, but for philoso-
 phoris bitoken þe craft into lewid mennes hondis / or as manie men
 haue dedignacioun for to worche wiþ her hondis / & ȝitt mani men ⁸
 wenep þat it is impossible þat oon man to kunne bope þe craftis² /
 But þou schalt knowe wel þis, þat he is no good phisician þat can
 no þing in cirurgie / And also þe contrarie þerof: a man mai be no
 good cyrurgian, but if he knowe phisik. ¶ Blood-letyng is vsid ¹²
 bi cause for to kepe a mannes bodi hool, & to remene awei sijknnessis
 fro a mannes bodi / But þus manye þingis þou muste take kepe in
 blood-letyng: tyme, & hour, & eir, & disposicioun of þe sike man /
 & þou muste take kepe þat þou lete no man blood but if he mowe ¹⁶
 endure itt // ¶ First a man schal be lete blood for to kepe him-silf,⁵
 & principali hem þat etip good fleisch ⁴ & drinkip good wijn, & etip
 metis for to engendre myche blood, & traueilip but litil, & princi-
 pali þe while a man is ȝongt, & also in eelde if he be myche vsid ²⁰
 þerto / Also þou schalt lete hem blood þat ben wont to haue
 akyng in her ioyntis, ouper a feuere þat is clepid sinocha⁵ or þe
 squinacie, ouper pleureses / Alle þese, tofore þe tyme þat þei ben
 woned to haue her passioun, þou schalt lete hem blood or her ²⁴
 passioun come, þat it mowe go away þerwiþ: & þis maner is clepid
 preuisiuus. ¶ þe iij. maner: whanne a man hap greet akyng in

Nota.
 Learned
 physicians
 leave it to
 unlearned
 men and
 women.

One ought
 to be both a
 physician and
 a surgeon.
 Blood-letting
 is used to
 keep a man's
 health, and
 to remove
 sickness.

[1 lf. 213^a, bk.]
 Bleed those
 who eat
 and drink
 much, and
 have little
 exercise.

Bleed in order
 to prevent a
 disease.

of swiche maner seknesses: oon of partie of defense þat it come not, & another of þe partie of remevyng of þe seknesse i-made. By þe reson of drefence that it come not, leue þe patient wiþ all his witt strengt schoyng, & haue he dombles schoos & large, & anynte he every nyȝt þe heele with an oynement þus maad."

² Lat.: "aut quum operari ut dicunt quidam cum manibus dedignantur, aut, quod magis credo, quum operationis modum quod apud scientiam est necessarium non nouerunt; et hæc abusio tantum valuit propter antiquam dissuetudinem, quod apud quosdam de vulgo credatur impossibile, quod unus hoc possit scire magisterium utriusque."

³ Lat. pro sanitate conseruanda.

⁵ Lanfranc, *Chirurgia Parua*, Cap. X, Add. MS. 10,440, fol. 25^a (xvth cent.): "blood þerfore, ȝif it ouer haboundep vpon al þe body. & it is hett with hete enflammyng or brennyng þe herte, & is corrupt, & nepoles it is not roten, þerof is maad a feuere clepid synocha continua. And ȝif he is roten, þenne is maad þerof a feuere clepid synochus continuus."

his heed wijpouten¹ a feure, or a squinantes plureses, periplumonia, Bleed in those
apostema calida, & eueri sijknese þat comeþ of to miche blood. In which are
alle þese causis þou schalt lete him blood; & þis maner is clepid caused by
4 curantes.² ¶ Now I wole telle alle maners in what maner a man abundance of
schal be leten blood / first, who schal lete þee blood / þe .ij., whanne
it is necessarie for to be lete blood / þe .iij., in whiche veynes a
man schal be leten blood for diuers passiouns, & in what maner þe
8 veyne schal be kut. ¶ A man þat schal be letere blood schal be zong,
3 & he schal be no child, ne noon oold man, ne he schal not quake,
& he schal haue a good scharp sizt; & loke þat he kunne knowe
veines, & þat he kunne knowe hem from arterijs; & he schal haue
12 manie diuers tool⁴ for to lete blood þerwiþ, & þei schulen be clene
and cleer, & not rusti; & summe of his tool schulen be longe, &
summe schorte, for to peerse aftir þat þe veyne is greet þerto / Also
children schulen not be lete blood, but if it were greet nede, & he
16 were so replet of blood þat he schulde be achekid þerwiþ; þat þou
mizt knowe bi þe streitnes of his breeþ & fulnes of his veynes, &
bi reednes of his face. þan it is necessarie þat he be leten blood;
but it is ful greet drede for to lete a child blood, þerfore I wyle
20 zeue no counseil þerto. & if it so be þat he be in perel of deef,
þan lete him blood / Now þou art war of þis perel, do as þou seest
þat it is to do; & þou schalt warne þe childis fadir & his modir of
þe perels þat ben aforseid, & saue þee fro blame. ¶ Also olde men
24 schulen not be lete blood, & zitt summe olde men ben strengier of
vertu þan summe zonge men; & þan þou schalt take hede to þe
rule in þis maner: þat þou schalt not lete hem blood whanne þei
arisþ out of her sijknese / ¶ Also wommen wiþ childe schulen not
28 be lete blood, & speciali not in þe .iij. firste moneþis, ne in þe laste
monþe / Also zonge men þat ben white & pale, & haue fewe heeris
in her browis, & haue smale veynes & priui, ne ben not couenable
to be lete blood; ne men þat han manie humours & litil blood, for
32 blood þat is in hem is tresour. ¶ Ffrench men doon hem-silf
miche harme in þis caas; whanne þei ben ful of coold humours &
corrupt þei letiþ hem-silf blood, & þan þei seen her blood corrupt &

Bled in those
diseases
which are
caused by
abundance of
blood.

.1.
.2.
.3.

1. The opera-
tor must have
[? lf. 214]
the proper
age,
know the
blood-vessels,
and have
good instru-
ments.

2. Children
ought not
to be bled
except in
urgent cases;

It is always
dangerous,

and the pa-
rents must be
warned.

Do not bleed
old men,
[? lf. 214, bk.]

nor pregnant
women,

nor young
men who are
pale and have
sparse hair
and small
veins.

Much harm
is done in
France by too
much blood-
letting.

¹ The Latin editions of Lanfranc read: "Tertio cum dolor fortis adest capitis siue febres fortes squinantes pleureses," ed. Ven. 1498, fol. 201 bk., Ven. 1546, fol. 249, but Add. MS. 26,106 (xivth cent.), fol. 88, shows the correct reading, which corresponds with the translation: "Tercio cum dolor fortis adest capitis sine febre, cum fortes squinantes, pleureses."

² Lat. curatiua.

⁴ tool, a survival of the O.E. tōl, N.A. plur.

Nota
Do not bleed
at the be-
ginning of
cataract.

[¹ If. 215]
Blood-letting
shall be used,
if a man eats
and drinks
too much,
in case of
gout—before
the illness
is quite de-
veloped—

in case of
synocha,

else the blood
may boil into
the breast,

and a vein
may break.

Nota

[⁴ If. 216, bk.]

The veins on
which phle-
botomy is
practised are
1. *Cephalica*.

which is cut
either near
the elbow,
or between
the thumb
and the first
finger.

2. *Basilica*.
is cut either
in the fold
of the arm,

or between
the little
finger and the
ring finger.

foul, & þan þei supposen þat þei han wel doon þat þei haue lete out
þat blood, & þe barbour wole seie þat he mote hastili be lete blood
azen / It were wel better to him þat he hadde kept his blood, &
þat þe corrupt humours hadde be voidid awei in oþer maner / 4
¶ Blood-letynge is not good for a man at þe firste bigynnyng of
cataracta, ne noon ventuse is not good for him / but in causis as it
is forseid, blood-letyng is good // And ¹if a man etip miche fleisch
& drinkip miche wijn, for þis wole engendre miche blood / And 8
þan but if a man lete him blood, þan þere wole engendre diuers
sijknes þerof, & ofte tyme sodeyn deep / Also men þat haue þe
goute of blood, he schal be lete blood tofore þe tyme þat he
supposip to haue his passiou; for ofte tyme þis wole take away 12
his akyng. & in alle sijknessis þat comen principali of blood, it
is good for hem to be lete blood / Also men þat haue synocham,
blood-letynge is ful necessarie to hem, til þei swowne. & þis wole
do awei þe feure, or it waastip so miche þe mater; & þan he muste 16
be holpen wiþ oþere medicyns, þat þou schalt fynde in bokis of
phisik ² / If he be not lete blood, þan þe blood þat is in him wole
boile vpward to þe brest, & gadere togidere in the brest, þat þe
patient schal be ful nyȝ stoppid. ³ & sumtyme a veine wole breke 20
in þe piyse or in þe lungis, & þan þat veine mai not be streyned ne
stoppid, & þan þe patient schal die þeron. ¶ In þis chapitre it is
myn entencioun forto speke oonly of openyng of veines ⁴ þat ben
in us, ⁵ & what vertu þer is þerinne. In boþe armis of a man þer 24
ben .iiij. veines þat ben in us for to be lete blood þeron / þe .i. is
clepid cephalica, & is þe higeste veine of þe arme, & sitt next þe
elbowe ⁶; & þis veine mote be kut large, & not to depe / If þat
veine be kut streit, þan ofte tyme it makip an enpostym / & also 28
þou muste be wel war þat þou touche no synewis / For þe same
cause þou miȝt lete a man blood vpon þe hond, bitwixe his pombe
& þe nexte fyngir þerto // Basilica sittip adoun aforzens þe elbowe,
vndir þe arme, & þis veine sittip ful nyȝ þe gret arterie: & þerfore 32
a man niote be wel war þat he touche not þe arterie veyne. & for
þe perel of þe arterie it is good for to lete him blood bitwixe þe
litol fyngir & þe fynger next þerto. & þis blood-letynge is good for

² & þan he muste be holpen—bokis of phisik, inserted. Lat.: “aut omnino phlebotomia febrem tollit, aut adeo materiam minuit, quod in putridam de cetero non mutatur.”

³ Lat. quod patiens suffocatur.

⁵ Lat. quæ sunt in usu.

⁶ Lat. prima cefalica que in duobus minuitur locis prope cubiti plicaturam aliquantulum supra.

alle þe placis vndir þe brest, & for þe lyuere. ¶ Of þis veine þat is clepid Basilica, & of þe veine þat is c[l]epid Cephalica, comeþ a veine þat is clepid Mediana / And whanne a man is lete blood in
 4 þis veyne, it is perel of ij. grete synewis þat liggiþ in boþe sidis ¹ of þe veyne. And whanne þou þinkist to avoide al a mannes bodi, þan þou schalt lete him blood in þis veine, & principali for þe herte & for þe brest. ¶ In Basilica, in þe riȝt hond, þou schalt lete a
 8 man blood for passioun of þe lyuere, & in þe lift hond for passioun of þe splene,² & in þe lifside of þe forheed³ it is good to lete blood for akyng of þe heed,⁴ & principali whanne sijknis is con-
 formed in a mannes heed. & þis I apreuede misilf / for sumtyme
 12 it doip awei þe frenesi. & I siȝ a womman þat hadde akyng in hir heed, þat it miȝte not be take awei, & I lete hir blood in hir hond as it is forseid & purgide hir, & þe veine in hir forheed þat was gretter þan ony oþer veine in hir bodi; & I openede þat veine,
 16 & anon riȝt sche was hool / But whanne þou wolt lete a man blood in þat place, þou schalt streyne þe necke & kutte þe veine eudelongis; & þis blood-letyng is good for tynea, þat is in a mannes heed, & for Saphati.⁵ & for demigrania þou schalt lete
 20 blood in þe templis of his heed. & þe same blood-letyng is good for passion ⁶ of a mannes iȝen / I hadde a ȝong man in my kepinge þat hadde demigrayn⁷ of hoot cause, & I purgide him ofte & lete him blood, and I knytte þe arterie þat was in þe same side of his
 24 heed, & þo he was cured for euermore / Also letyng blood in þe veynes bihinde hise eeris is good for þe dimigrayn & for tineam / Also letyng blood in þe tunge is good for þe squinacie, & for enpostyms, þat ben as it were almaundis, & for brancis;⁸ but he

³ Mediana is selected for general bleeding. [12. 216]

A vein in the forehead is cut against headache and frenzy;

as the author did in the case of a woman.

Blood-letting on the temples is good against megrim, [12. 216, bk.] and an eye disease.

Cut the veins behind the ear against megrim: bleed the tongue against squincy.

² *Regimen sanitatis Salerni*, transl. by T. Paynell (1530), fol. h. iiii.: "*Saluatella* is þat veyne betwene þ^e myddell fynger and the ryngne fynger, more deelynynge to the myddell fynger. Hit begynneth of *Basilica*. This veyne is opened in the ryghte hande for opilation of þ^e lyuer, and in the lefte hande for opilation of the splene. There is no reason why it shuld be so, as Auicen saythe, but experyence: whiche Galen founde by a dreame, as he saythe. He had one in cure, whose lyuer and splene were stopte, and he dreamed that he dyd let him blud of this veine, and so he dyd, and cured the pacient."

³ MS. inserts *fur*.

⁴ Lat. in capite flebotomatur vena frontis propter capitis egritudines.

⁵ MS. *sanaci*. The editions of Lanfranc read *saphati*, Add. MS. 26,106, fol. 89: *saffira*. *Matth. Sylc.*: "Saphiros. Sephiros idest apostema durum cui non associatur sensus." *Vigo Interpr.*: "Sephiros is an arabike word, and it is called in Greke scirros, in latyne durities, that is hardenes."

⁷ *demigrayn*, Lat. *emigranea*. See Skeat, *Et. Dict.*, s. v. *megrim*.

⁸ *brancous*, med. Lat. *Dufr.*, a throat-disease. *Isid.*, Lib. 4, Cap. 7: "branchos est præfocatio faucium a frigido humore." The editions of Lanfr. read: *brachiis*.

Bleed from the jugular vein against suffocation, from a vein in the lower lip,

from the 2 veins in the leg,

1. a vein under the knee,

[* If. 217]

2. a vein in the hollow of the foot called *Sophena*.

3. the sciatic vein.

If you intend to let blood more than once from the same place,

make a larger incision.

[* If. 217, bk.] If by blood-letting, you wish to draw the matter to the opposite part of the body, bleed repeatedly.

schal be lete blood tofore in þe heed-veyne. & it is good for þe ize, & it is good for icching & for pustulis in þe nose, & for scotomia þat comeþ of blood / Sumtyme a man is lete blood in veynes in þe necke, þat ben clepid gwide,¹ for drede of suffocacioun² 4 of blood; & sumtyme in leprous men, þat schulen be lete blood in her lippis bineþe.³ & þis is good for hote enpostyms in þe mouþ, & for hote passiouns of þe gommys. ¶ In a mannes foot ben .iiij., þat ben profitable to be lete blood for manie passiouns / And þer is oon 8 veyne in a mannes hamme vnder his knee, þat is good to be lete blood for passiouns of þe maris, & for to bringe out menstrie: & it avoidiþ al þe bodi. ¶ Also þer is anoper veine, þat sittþ bitwixe þe holowe of þe foot wiþinneforþ, & is clepid Sophena; & in þis 12 veyne wommen ben leten blood for passiouns of þe maris, & men ben lete blood in þe veine of þe same place for enpostyms of þe ballokis. ¶ þe veine þat serueþ for þe scie, is wiþoute bitwixe þe heele & þe holowe of þe foot wiþoutforþ, & blood-letyng in þis 16 veine is good for scia[ti]cam passionem, as it is aforseid in þe cure of sciatica. ¶ Herof þou schalt take kepe. If þou þinkist for to lete a man blood in .ij. diuers times, & not al at oonys, þan þou schalt do in þis maner; & in þis caas, whanne þou wolt lete a man 20 miche blood, and ne darist not do it al at oonys; þan whanne þou letist him blood, þou schalt make þe inscicioun of þe veine þe more long, þat it soude not hastili; & þan þou schalt binde his arme, & smite þe place þere þou wolt lete him blood wiþ þi fyngir, & make 24 him blede more, as myche as þou seest þat good is / ¶ Also whanne þou wolt wiþ blood-letyng make þe mater go to þe place aforzens; whanne þou hast lete out þe .iiij. part off blood þat he schal blede, þan þou schalt sette þi fingir vpon þe wounde, & make 28 him stonde vp & remeue⁶ him-silf, & lete him sitte adoun, & do awei þi fyngir & lete him blede more. & þus þou schalt do .iiij.

¹ Lat. *vene guidegi*.


² Phillips: "*Suffocation*, a suffocating, stifling, etc., a Stoppage."

³ This statement is due to a wrong interpunctuation in the Latin original. Add. 26,106: "*Aliquando flebotomantur uene guidegi colli cum suffocatio ex sanguinis timetur multitudine. & aliquando in quibusdam leprosis uene quæ sunt in labiis inferioribus interioribus minuantur propter acola calidum in ore — —.*" A full stop ought to be between leprosis and uene. Compare *Liber Rasis ad Almans*, Tract. VII, Cap. 21, ed. Ven. 1506, fol. 32 bk.: "*Sed due uene que dicuntur guidegi sunt flebotomande, cum anhelitus in lepre principio maxime angustatur.*" "*Vene itidem, que in labiis sunt inciduntur cum in aliquo multiplicantur alcola et ulcera in ore et gingiua.*"

⁶ *remeue him-silf* has the sense of M.E. *remuen*, O.F. *remuer*, to move, stir.

- sipis or .iiij., for in þis maner þe blood drawiþ more to þe partie
 aforzens, & þe vertu of þe pacient schal þe better be kept. ¶ Also
 if a man is wont to swowne in blood-letyng eouper falle down, þan
 4 lete him lie & be lete blood / Also or he be lete blood, lete him ete Give the patient a slice of bread and wine before the operation.
 a schiuer of breed toostid & leid in wijn of *granatorum*. ¶ Alle
 maner veynes in blood-letinge schulen be kutt endelongis / And
 whanne þou wolt lete a man blood in þe partijs aboue þe necke, þan Before operating cause the vein to swell, by bandaging the limb,
 8 þou muste binde þe veine,¹ til þe veyne arise þat þou wolt lete him
 blood on / And whanne þou wolt lete a man blood in his arme, þan
 þou muste binde his arme þe brede of foure fyngris aboue þe place ;
 & þou muste ²be wel war þat þou streyne not to faste, as manie [³ If. 218]
 12 men doon / Manie men binden so faste a mannes arm, þat he mai
 not fele his arm / Veynes of a mannes feet & in his houdis, if þou and by a warm foot-bath.
 wolt lete a man blood þeron, þan þou muste sette hem in hoot
 water, & lete hem achaufe þeron an hour ; & þan þou muste binde
 16 his foot oupir his hond aboue þe ioinet wiþ a boond, & algate his
 foot or his hond mote be in þe watir as longe as he schal blede /

Of kutyngis and bledyngis //

- S**iccia is sett sumtyme for kutyng & sumtime wiþoute kutyng, ¶ *xviij. c.*
 20 and sumtyme wiþ kuttinge.³ Wiþout kuttinge as vpon a mannes The Sycia is used against flatulence,
 wombe or wommans / ffor akyng þat comeþ of wijnd, & it is good
 for to waste wijnd / Also it is sett vpon þe wei of þe stoon þat to draw the stone from the kidneys towards the bladder,
 falliþ adoun of þe reynes, & þan it schal be sett a litil bineþe þe
 24 akyng þat it mowe drawe þe stoon lower & lower til it come to þe
 hole of þe bladdre / Also it is sett vndir a wommans tetis for to to restrain flux of blood in case of falling of the womb,
 restreyne þe blood of þe nose & of þe maris / Also it is sett vpon
 þe region ⁴of þe wombe for fallinge of þe maris, þat is clepid dislo- [⁴ If. 218, bk.]
 28 cacioun of þe maris : as if the maris falle adoun in þe rihtside, þan
 it schal be sett in þe lifside / And if þe maris falle in þe lifside,
 þan it schal be sett in þe rihtside / Also it is sett vndir a mannes
 eere for to drawe out a greyne or a stoon of þe eere þat is falle yn / to draw a stone out of the ear,
 32 Also it is sett vndir a mannes ers to drawe out þe emeroidis þat
 sittip hid fer yn / And it schal be sett in eueri place þere þou wolt
 make a greet attraccioun / Also it is good for to be sett vpon þe to draw out internal piles,
 bityng of a wood hound, & vpon þe biting of a venymous beest. on the bite of a mad dog. 

¹ Lat. *opus collum stringi donec appareant.*³ Add. 26106, fol. 89, bk.: "Siccia aliquando ponitur sine incisione aliquando cum incisione." The printed editions omit this passage.

Cupping with
previous
scarification
is used
instead of
blood-
letting.
If the patients
are either
very old or
very young.
[² If. 219]

Scarify on
the head, for
eye-diseases,
skin-diseases,
and tooth-
ache.

Scarify be-
tween the
shoulders for
swooning.

watir lechis

Bad leeches
have big
heads and
live in foul
water.

Good leeches
have red
wombs,
small heads,
live in pure
water.

Keep them
fasting before
use.

[² If. 219, bk.]

It schal be sett¹ þeron wiþ scarificacioun, also in causis þere þou lettist² for to drawe blood for febilnes, or for elde, or in children; & hem after .iiij. ȝeer oold we moun garcie, whanne blood leting³ is forboden hem, & speciali whanne we purposen for to drawe awei mater⁴ þat is vnder þe skyn / Also we moun garse a man bihinde in þe nol of þe heed — —¹ & for greuance of þe ȝen, & vpon þe .ij. corneris of þe heed for tinea & for pustules þat ben in þe heed vnder² a mannes chyn, for wennys of þe face & for vlcers þat ben in þe 8 mouþ & in þe lippis & for akyng of þe teep / Also if it be sett bytwixe þe .ij. schuldris for swownyng & for quaking of þe herte, & for hem þat han to miche blood in þat place. þis maner letyng blood avoidid a mannes bodi miche & makip him feble³ / 12

Also watir lechis⁴ drawip more blood þan þese / In þis maner þou schalt knowe whiche ben gode watir lechis & whiche ben nouȝt. þei þat han blac colour medlid wiþ diuers colouris, & þei þat hauep grete hedis & ben in foule styngyng watris & han miche spume on 16 hem ben nouȝt / And in þis maner þou schalt knowe whiche ben gode: þei þat han reed wombis & litil reed rewis in þe rigge medlid wiþ grene, & whanne þei hauep litil hedis & smale tailis, & whanne þei ben in good watir þat ben manie froggis yn. & or þou sette 20 hem vpon a man, þei schulen be kept⁵ al adai fastyng. & þan þou schalt ȝeue him a litil scharp blood for to ete, & þan þou schalt waische hem wiþ cleer water; & þan vpon þe⁶ place þat he schal be

¹ Some words are wanting. Lat.: propter grauedinem capitis.

² The sentence to which this statement refers is omitted. Lat.: "Que vero in poplitis plicatura valent ad egritudines renum, et matricis, testiculorum et omnium membrorum nutritiuorum ex sanguine."

⁴ Rhasia, Continens, Lib. XV. Cap. 6, ed. Brix, 1486, fol. CC. 3, bk., gives an interesting description of different kinds of leeches: "Sanguisugarum vna est venenosa, que est nigra vehementer ad modum antimonii, habens caput magnum & squamas ad modum piscium quorundam & habens medium viride, etiam alia, super quam sunt pili, habet magnum caput et colorem diuersum ad modum iris, in cuius colore sunt linee ad modum lazuli: que quotiens mordet, inde accidet apostema cum sincopi, febre, ebrietate, et laxitudine articulorum; tamen bona ipsarum est, que assimilatur colori aque in qua erit viriditas, habent super se duas lineas ad modum arsenici; sed blonde rotunde & ad colores epatis apte, que veloces sunt ad attrahendum sanguinem subtilem & que assimilantur caude muris, habentes odorem horribilem & similes locuste parvule et tenui & habentes ventrem ruffum cum nigrore & dorsum viride, sunt meliores; sed peiores erunt in aqua mala valde stabili, in qua sunt ranule multe, tamen bone sunt in aqua bona & optima." This account is copied by Avicenna, Lib. I., Fen. 4, Cap. 22, ed. Ven. 1527, fol. 62, bk. He differs in one point: "illas elige, que in aquis colliguntur, in quibus morantur rane. Neque attendas illud quod quidam dicunt, quod si sunt in aquis vbi morantur rane, sunt male."

sett, þe place schal be wel frotid tofore, þat it bicomē reed, & þan Draw the
 sette þervpon a ventuse for to drawe þerto blood. & þan anoynte blood to the
 þe same place wip blood, & þan sette þervpon þe watir leche. & place with
 4 whanne he is ful & þou wolt do him awei, blowe vpon þe place cupping,
 baurac, ouþer askis maad of paper. & whanne he is falle awei, þan before the
 sette þervpon a ventuse aȝen to drawe more blood to þe plase. & leech is set on,
 þan sette þervpon anoper watir leche, if þere gaderiþ þerto miche and use again
 8 mater. & þis maner is good for al maner blood þat is rotid, for it cupping,
 draweth it out / when the
 leech has
 dropped.

Of cauterium or brennyng of large & streite.¹

- C**Auterium is seid in ij. maners, þat is to seie large & streit. & ¶ xvij. c.
 12 cauterium is seid propurli a brennyng wip gold or wip sum A Cautery
 oper instrument þat is hoot, ouþer wip watir or wip oile, ouþer wip is any sub-
 medicyn caustica, ouþer wip herbis / And þer ben manie medicyns stance used
 for to make cauterijs, whiche þou schalt fynde pleyulier in þe anti- for burning.
 16 dotarie / A cauterie is clepid streit,² whanne it is maad wip an hoot In a narrower
 yren, wip gold, or wip siluir // Cauterijs þat³ ben maad wip medicyns sense it is the
 þat han vertu for to brenne / þer is seid a cauterie po[tentia]le hot iron, gold
 whanne it is not hoot in felinge / & þat cauterie preuailiþ wipouten or silver.
 20 brennyng as herbis / þer is anoper maner cauterie : actual, for so [¶ If. 220]
 miche as it brenneþ in dede / Of þis cauterie auicen⁴ spekiþ & seiþ, A caustic
 þat it is a medicyn, miche helpinge for to defende, þat mater schal medicine
 not departe into al þe lyme ; & it wole comforte þe lyme, & bringe is called
 24 it into good complexioun aȝen, & it wole dissolue mater þat is cor- potential
 rupt, & it wole streyne flux of blood. & auicen seiþ, þat a cauterie cautery.
 is oon of þe beste pointis of cirurgie / for þingis þat mowe not be The actual
 fulfillid in long tyme, wip cauterie þei ben fulfillid / As it is seid cautery is
 28 phisicians leueþ þis craft to cirurgians. & þerfore it is greet wondir really burn-
 if þer be ony good cirurgian founde, for þei ben alle lewid men. & ing.
 if a lewid man schal worche with cauterijs, þan he knowiþ not þe The effects of
 difference bitwixe a cauterie þat is clepid actual & potencial. & also cauterization.
 32 þei knowe not in what place of a mannes bodi þei schulen make Auicen
 hem. & þis is so repreued þat it is almoost out⁵ of vss / Also praises the
 summen maken cauterijs in vnclene bodies þat ben ful replet of cautery.
 The physici-
 ans leave its
 use in the
 hands of
 surgeons,
 who are all
 unlearned,
 and cannot
 distinguish
 the
 Cauterium
 actuale
 [¶ If. 220, bk.]
 and
 Cauterium
 potenciale.

¹ The translator misunderstood the meaning of the Latin, "large et stricte," in the following passage : Cauterium dicitur duobus modis, large & stricte.

² See the preceding note.

⁴ Lanfranc mentions Avicenna, who has a short chapter about cauterization, Lib. I., Fen. 4, Cap. 29 ; yet he chiefly follows Gulielmus de Salic., Lib. V., Cap. I., but with many additions and alterations.

Some
cauterize
a patient,
who is full
of bad
humours,
wherof a
cancer may
ensue.

Some use
Cantarides.

Auicén says,
the cautery
is the best
consuming
medicine,
if properly
applied, and
if there is not
too much
matter.

[1 If. 221]
As a little fire
has no effect
on a large
quantity of
wet wood,
so the cautery
is inefficient,
if the patient
is too full of
humours.

The patient
shall not bear
the cautery
longer than
three months.

Particulars
about
cauteries,
[4 If. 221, bk.]
and the shape
of the instru-
ments:

1. Nodulum,
an iron plate
with a hole,

through
which the
red-hot iron
is applied.

yuele humours, & þan cauterijs wolen do litil profit to passiouns þat ben forseid, but þer wole falle þerto so manie humouris, & make þe place of þe cauterie to swelle, & liztly engendre a cancre. & þan men þat ben vnkunynge ben agast herof & ben not hardi for to 4 make no mo cauterijs. & if þe patient hadde be purgid of grete humours tofore, þan it wolde not haue fare so. ¶ And summen vsen cantarides for to make cauterijs þerwiþ, & leggen it vpon men þat han hote complexioun & drie; & þis is contrarious & falliþ 8 greet agreuance þerof, & þan þei seien þat cauterijs ne ben nouȝt worþ / But auicén seiþ, þat a cauterie is good tofore alle medicyns for to waaste & consume mater / if þe cauterie be sett in place þere it schulde be, but if the mater be so miche þat þe cauterie mai not 12 consume it, as þou miȝt se an ensample herof: þat fier ouercomeþ alle þingis / but if þou doist a litil fier among miche wet wode, þer wole come smoke þerof. & the fier ¹ mai not ouercome to waaste þe wode, for water þat is in þe wode is more þan þe fier / In þe same 16 maner it fariþ of a cauterie þat is in a mannes bodi, if he be ful of humouris, þanne þe cauterie mai not worche. & þerfor þou schalt purge him wiþ laxatiuis tofore þe cauterie as it is aforseid / Also þou schalt make no cauterijs in a man þat is ful of gode humours 20 as of blood, for þan oonli blood-letyng suffisiþ / but if þe patient be strong & þe mater on him be coold & moist, þan a cauterie is good for to driue awei þe mater. & a man schal not bere a cauterie, but .ij. moneþis ouþer .iiij. at þe mooste. ¶ Now I wole telle þee 24 a good rule / If þou fyndist in a mannes body a lyme in wei of corrupcioun²: as herisipula, or herpes estiomenus, ouþer formica, or in yuel disposicioun of a wounde þat bigynneþ to encancre,³ & for al oþer corrupcioun, þan sette a cauterie in þe nexte welle to þe place, 28 for þe cauterie wole defende þe place fro corrupcioun. ¶ Now speke we of particlis of cauterijs þat falliþ in diuers placis of a mannes bodi, & wiþ diuers instrumentis þei schulen ⁴ be maad, whiche þou schalt se portraied⁵ tofore þe, & her signis forþwiþ. ¶ Þe .i. instru- 32 ment þat is comoun & moost in vs, is clepid *nodulum*,⁶ & is an instrument maad in þis maner / Take a brood plate of iren & make þeron an hole, & leie þat plate þere þou wolt make þi cauterie. & þan þou muste haue an iren maad long & smal & maad hoot, & 36 putte it in þat hole of þe plate / þis plate wole saue þe place þat þe

² Lat.: si membrum invenis in via corruptionis.

³ *encanore*, med. Lat. *incancre*; Dufr., Ital. *incancherare*.

⁵ The figures are omitted.

⁶ Lat. *anodulum*, *adnodulum*.

- cauterie schal be nomore but as þou wolt / & þat iren þat þou schalt make þi cauterie þerwiþ, schal haue a litil round knap tofore. & þat iren schal be maad hoot til it bicomē reed / & þerwiþ þou
- 4 schalt make þi cauterie, & whanne þou doist awei þin iren, þere wole be vlcus. & þan þou schalt leie þeron butter or oold grese, or grese stampid wiþ caul-leues, & þat is þe best of alle, & leie it þerto, til þe cruste falle awei þat þe hoot iren made. & þan þou
- 8 schalt do þerto a litil pelot maad of lynnen cloof round & hard. & þat pelot schal be anoyntid wiþ oile, & vpon þe place leie a caul-leef, or an yue-leef, or a vine-leef, & in þis¹ maner þou schalt holde it open as longe as þou wolt. ¶ The .ij. cauterie is clepid **round**, &
- 12 hap no knap at þe ende, but it is schape long, & whanne þou makist þi cauterie, þou muste be war þat þou touche no nerues ne veynes. & þis instrument schal be maad in þis maner, þat it make a cauterie in boþe endis, after þat þou desirist, greet or smal. ¶ The
- 16 .iij. cauterie is clepid **punctuale**, & is ful necessarie whanne þou wolt make a streit cauterie. & is maad in þis maner. ¶ The .iiij. is clepid **radiale**, & is smal & scharp, & is good for children, & is maad in þis maner² / ¶ The .v. cauterie is maad in þis maner, & is swiþe
- 20 comoun & is clepid **calcellare**.³ & þis wole make a long brennyng as ouerþwert þe heed, & whanne þou wolt make vlcera long þat ben rounde, þan þou schalt worche wiþ þis cauterie. ¶ The .vj. is clepid **subtile**, & is good for festrīs þat sittip in þe corner of a mannes iþe,
- 24 & it is good for yuel fleisch þat growip in a mannes iþe, & is maad in þis maner / þis sotille⁴ cauterie schal be maad hoot & putt in a canel in þis maner // The .vj.⁵ is clepid dactilare, for it is schape as it were þe stoon of a date. & herwiþ þou schalt make cauterijs in þe
- 28 haunche. & þere schal be an instrument schape as a table, & schal be leid to þe haunche in þis maner, & hap .vj. arisyngis þeron as hap a stoon of a date.⁶ & oon þerof is in þe myddil, & .ij. aboue, & .j. bineþe, & oon in boþe sidis in þis maner / Whanne þis instrument
- 32 is hoot, it schal be putt vpon a mannes haunche, & a table bitwixe maad of iren. & þis table schal be coold, & þer schulen be .vj. holis

After this operation an ulcer is left, on which cabbage-leaves are applied.

[1 If. 222]

2. The round cautery can be used at both ends.

3. punctuale.

Radiale is used for children.

4. Calcellare makes long burns.

5. Subtile, used for a fistula in the corner of the eye.

[4 If. 222, bk.]

6. Dactilare, used to cauterize the haunch, is an iron instrument of two parts, one a table with five holes, the other with five eminences fitting into the holes.

² The description of the *Cauterium radiale* is an insertion of the translator. Lat.: "tertium cauterium punctuale, seu radiale, & est necessarium ubi valde strictum uolueris facere cauterium, & est sic factum." Gulielm. de Sal. Sloane 277, fol. 45, bk.: "þe fyste is clepyd cauterium minutum, or radiale or viduale þat is a comoun instrument to children."

³ Add. 26106, fol. 98, bk.: "cutellare," printed ed. "cultellare."

⁵ The translator, forgetting that he counted the "radiale" as a separate cautery, follows again the numbers of the original.

⁶ Lat.: et habet v. eminentias sicut ossa dactilorum factas.

7. *Triangulare.*

8. *Actuale* is like a needle, and
[² If. 223]
used for the
eye-brows.
linguale.
Ceton.

The skin is
lifted up with
pincers, a
hole is burnt
through, and
some threads
of wool put
in.

[² If. 223, bk.]
When all
other medi-
cines are
ineffectual to
remove a
chronic head-
ache and
other diseases
arising from
the head,

use the
Cauterium
Cultellare.

þeron, schape after þe cauterie þat hæp .vj. arisingis out as it is afor-
seid. And þou schalt make .v. cauterijs vpon a mannes haunche,
& .ij. þerof schulen be aboue þe ioynct, & .ij. bi þe sidia, & oon
vpon þe ioynct, & .j. tofore þe ioynct. ¶ Þe vij. is clepid triangu- 4
lare, & þerwiþ þer mai be maad .iiij. at oony. & þis cauterie is good
for þe haunche also, & is maad in þis maner / ¶ The .viij. cauterie
is clepid actuale,¹ for sumtyme it is maad wiþ a nedle, & it is good
²for to make cauterijs þerwiþ in þe browis, & is maad sutil as a 8
nedele. ¶ The .ix. cauterie is clepid linguale, & it is schape as it
were a tunge of a litil brid in þis maner. & it is good for to make
cauterijs vpon a mannes browis / ¶ The .x. cauterie is clepid ceton,³
& is maad triangulis holowid.⁴ & in þe hole þerof þere may entre a 12
scharp instrument þat hæp a fenestre⁵ as it were a nedele, & it
schal be holde wiþ coold tenaculis, also þe place þat þou wolt
make þi cauterie on. þou schalt take vp þe skyn wiþ tenaculis, &
putt in þin hoot iren þoruþ þe hole of þe tenaculis, & brenne þe skyn. 16
þan þou schalt make a corde of wollen þerne & wete it in blood, &
drawe it þoruþ þe holis, & þan þou schalt knytte þe .ij. endis to-
gidere, & in þis maner þou schalt holde it open as longe as þou wolt.
þis is a comoun cauterie, & þis cauterie mai be maad in þe moup of 20
þe stomac, & vpon þe lyuere & þe splene, & vpon þe ballocke-leþeris /
Now þou knowist alle þin instrumentis, for to make cauterijs wiþ,
her names / Now telle we in what maner & in what place þou schalt
make hem / In oold heed-akyng, ⁶whanne purgaciouns & laxatiuis 24
& gargarismis & snesyngis⁷ & clisterijs & opere maner of avoid-
yng, & wiþ enplastris & wiþ anoyntyng⁸, whanne þe akyng of a
mannes heed wole not go awei wiþ alle þese, ne þe epilencie,⁹ ne
noon passioun þat comeþ of þe heed, ne passiouns of þe izen, & 28
passiouns of þe eeren, & of þe noseþrillis, & oold couze, & flux of
þe wombe þat comeþ of þe reume. ¶ For alle þese passiouns þou
schalt make cauterie þat is clepid cultellare in þe welle of þe heed⁹

¹ *actuale*, a mistake for *acuale*.

² *ceton*, med. Lat. seto, sedo; Fr. sêton; Ital. settone, "seton." Add. 26, 106, and the printed ed. read: dicitur ad sectionem.

⁴ Lat.: fit cum tenaculis perforatis.

⁵ *fenestre*, Lat. fenestra; "la fenestre de la cannule," Paré; see *Littre Dict.*

⁷ *sneryngis*, Lat. sternutationes.

⁸ *epilencie*, O.Fr. epilence. Plinius: epilepticus. See Dufr. Matth. Sylv.: Epilensia .i. morbus caducus.

⁹ Lat. in capitis fontinella. Phillips: "Fontanella, or Fonticulus, a little Well, or Spring: In Surgery, an Issue, or little Ulcer, made in sound parts of the Body, to let out bad Humours, and to Cure, or prevent Diseases. In

- bihinde. & first schaue awei þe heeris, þere þou wolt make þi cauterie as it is aforseid with an hoot iren, & herof þou schalt be ware þat þou lete not þat iren be þere to longe, but þou schalt hastili make it, & hastili do awei þe iren, & þan þou schalt do
- 4 awei þe cruste þerof wip butter, or wip oold grese, or wip leeuës of caul, as it is aforseid. ¶ þis cauterie schal be holde open wip litil pelottis as it is forseid as longe as þou wolt, til þe patient be hool / But or þou make þi cauterie, þou muste be wel ware, as it is afor-
- 8 seid, þat þin iren lie not to longe, ¹but hastili take it awei, for if it were þere longe his brayn myzte be harmed þerbi. ¶ Wip þis cauterie I helide a womman þat hadde passiouns in hir heed manie diuers, & I mizte not make hir hool with no purgaciouns, ne wip
- 12 noon anoyntingis, & wip þis cauterie I made hir al hool. ¶ Also þou muste make a round cauterie & touche oonly þe skyn þerwip, & do þerto seto. þis cauterie is good for passiouns of þe izen, & for epilenciam, & for opere sijknëssis of þe heed; but þis cauterie is
- 16 not so good as þat oper tofore. ¶ Also þou mizt make a cauterie in a mannes necke bytwixe þe boonys & þe skyn aboueforþ²; þis cauterie is good for þe spasme. ¶ Also whanne a man is woundid in þe heed, þis cauterie is good for drede of þe spasme; for herwip
- 20 þe mater schal be consumed, þat nerues ben redi for to take.³ ¶ Also in þe welle vnder þe eeris & bihinde þe eeris þou schalt make cauterijs for passiouns of izen and for akyngë of þe teep. ¶ Superfluite of fleisch þat is vpon a mannes browis, þou schalt do
- 24 awei wip a cauterie þat is clepid lingual, ⁴schape as it were a tunge of a brid. & þou schalt make þerwip cauterijs vpon his browis, but þou muste be war þat þou touche not þe natural substaunce of þe browis. & þou schalt make cauterijs þervpon with
- 28 cauterium punctuale, & for to do awei superfluite of fleisch þat is in þe corner of a mannes ije. ¶ Superfluite of fleisch þat is in a mannes nose, it mai be remeued awei wip cauterium acutum ouper punctuale, for to touche þerwip þe fleisch a litil & a litil til al þe
- 32 superfluite be take awei. & if þis superfluite be fast þeron & be fer yn, þan þou muste vse a sutil cauterie, & putte it in þe nose-þril

The iron must not be too long on the head.

[C. 12. 224]

The round cauterie is good for passiouns of þe izen.

A cautery applied on the neck is good for spasms.

The cauterium linguale is used to remove a growth on the eye-brows.

A growth in the nose is removed with the Cauterium acutum.

Anatomy, the mould or root of the Nose." It was further a name for the place where these ulcers were produced, especially for a place between the sutures of the skull. Compare *Somd. of Babyl.* 2951: [he smote hir] ouer the founte throughout the brayn.

¹ Lat.: *autem superficialiter tangendo.*

³ Lat.: *nam materia per hoc consumitur, per quam neruorum inhibitiō expectatur.*

þoruþ þe canel, þat þe hete ne mowe not harme þe substaunce of þe nose, but oonly brenne þe superfluite of þe fleisch. ¶ Also þou schalt make a round cauterie vndir a mannes chyn. & þis cauterie is good for wennys þat ben in þe skyn of his face, & for þe place,¹ 4 & for þe palet, & for sijknys in a mannes moup, & in þe gomys, & in þe teep. ¶ Also þou miȝt make .ij. cauterijs in boþe a mannes armys, wiþoutforþ þe arme, in þe welle þat is vpon þe grete braun a litil² bineþe þe schuldre. & þis cauterie is good for sijknys þat ben 8 in þe partie bihinde of a mannes brayn as for þe litarge,³ & also it purgip wel þe nerues of þe necke / Also þou miȝt make anoþer in þe welle vndir þe grete braun, and is good for þe brayn wiþinneforþ as for scotomia & vertigine, & for water þat fallip adoun fro a mannes 12 heed to hise ȝen, & it is good for al passiouns of a mannes ȝen / Also þou schalt make a cauterie cultellaria⁴ bitwene a mannes fyngris / And þese cauterijs ben gode for passiouns ciragra / Also þou schalt make cauterijs in þe brest wiþ a round cauterie, and is 16 good for asma⁵ / Also þou miȝt make a cauterie toward þe forke of þe brest aboue for disma⁶ / Also þou miȝt sumtyme make cauterijs in þe brest, þat ben clepid cultellaria, bitwixe þe ribbis, & þese cauterijs been good for empima,⁷ *id est* apostyme wiþinne / Also þou 20 miȝt make cauterijs punctualia in þe rigboon for gret akinge þat a man haþ in þat place / Also þou miȝt make cauterijs wiþ a round instrument vpon þe regioun of þe stomak, for long febilnes þat a [i. 225, bk.] man haþ had in his stomak / Also þou miȝt⁸ make cauterijs vnder 24 þe nauele & vpon þe lyuere & vpon þe splene, ffor colicam passionem & for þe sijknys of þe lyuere & vpon þe splene & for dropesia. And alle þese cauterijs wolen be maad best wiþ seton / Also þou miȝt make .ij. cauterijs in þe haunchis as it is aforseid / Also þou 28

The round cauterie is applied beneath the chin for skin-disease.

A cauterie applied on [i. 225] the arme is used against lethargy.

A cauterie on the fingers is used for chiragra.

Cauteries are used for asthma,

empyema, for diseases of the rig-boon,

the stomach,

the liver, and the spleen,

they are best made with a seton.

¹ place for plague? Lat.: saphati et pustulas.

² litarge, lethargy. Compare *Leechd.* I., p. 200: "wiþ þa adle ȝe man litargum hateð. þat ys on ure gepende ofergytulnys coweden."

⁴ Lat.: "Fiunt cauteria cutellaria superficialia inter digitum et digitum in cyragra. De propr. rer. Lib. VII., Cap. 29, Trevisa, Add. 27,944, fol. 87 a: "Difficulte & hardnesse of breþinge hat asma & comeþ of double cause of drynes þat streyneþ þe lungen."

⁵ asma, med. Lat. asma, ἀσθμα.

⁶ disma, Add. 26106, fol. 89, bk.: "propter disimiam." Dufr., "dyspnia, δύσπνοια." Simon. Barth., p. 18: "Disma est species asmatia, sed disma fit ex siccitate, asma ex humiditate."

⁷ empima, Lat. empimia. Simon. Barth., p. 19: "Empima, i. sputum saniosum ex pulmonis infectione proveniens." De propr. rer. Lib. VII., Cap. 30, Add. 27,944, fol. 87 a: "empima is a passioun, whan me spetip quittir."

- miȝt make .ij. cauterijs vndir þe knee, for þe akyng of þe knees & of þe ballokis & of þe maris. Also þou miȝt make .ij. cauterijs vndir þe kne, wiþoutforþ for remedie of al þe bodi, for it avoideþ
- 4 wel alle partijs of a mannes bodi / & I haue seen manie men þat han maad cauterijs in þat place, or his bodi were purgid, & humouris fel so myche þerto þat his leggis & his hipis to-swollen al greet. & if he hadde be purgid tofore, he schulde not haue fare
- 8 so. & aboue þe ancle ben maad cauterijs for sijknes of þe ballokis. & also it is good for wommen / Also bitwixe þe toos ben maad cauterijs for þe potagre¹ / Also if þou purgist a man or a womman wiþ medicyns laxatiuis, & þan makist a cauterie as it is aforseid.
- 12 & if þe passioun go not awei at þis oon doinge, þan þou schalt neuere þe lattere [not]² be in dispeir of cauterijs,³ but þou schalt bigynne to purge⁴ him aȝen & make him a cauterie aȝen. & if it so be þat he be miche feblid herwiþ, þan þou schalt restore aȝen wiþ
- 16 gode metis & drinkis þat engendriþ good humours. & whanne he is restorid aȝen, þan þou schalt bigynne & purge him aȝen, & þan make hise cauterijs aȝen, & in þis maner þou schalt worche wiþ þi cauterijs. ¶ ffor manie men makip oon cauterie or .ij, & if þei seen
- 20 þat it profitip not, þan þei leueþ of & worchip nomore. & manie men contynuede þeron til þe pacient be brouȝt al doun & liztli deed / & in þis maner ne schulde not a leche worche / ffor G. seip: it is a feble leche, þat can not helpe þat is able to be helpen. &
- 24 defaute herof is þis: þat manie lechis ȝeueþ medicyns, & ne makip no space to bringe þe patient into good staat aȝen⁵ / Alle þese rulis þat G. seip þou schalt attende in þis maner: if þe patient be maad feble wiþ medicyns laxatiuis & wiþ cauterijs, þan þou cesse of þi
- 28 medicyns & ȝeue him comfortatif metis & drinkis for to releue him aȝen, & þan þou miȝt worche wiþ þi medicyns aȝen. & þus þou miȝt do perfitly þe cure / And heron manie men erriþ þat ben holden ful kunnyng⁶ / & þefore I haue sett it in þis place þat it mowe be
- 32 ensaumple to þee / Also þou schalt make a cauterie vpon rotid fleisch, til þou haue take awei al þe corrupcioun þerof. & in þis caas we mowen vse hoot feruent oile for to springe vpon þe corrupcioun,

Cauteries on the knee are used for the genital organs of men and women.

The patient must be purged before being cauterized.

If the disease is not cured at once, [4 lf. 226] repeat the purging and cauterizing.

Many surgeons use the cauteries wrongly.

Galen. Allow the medicine time to work.

Galen.

[4 lf. 226, bk.] Cauterize corrupt flesh with hot oil.

¹ *potagre*, Lat. *podagra*. *Hamp.* 2984: "for slenthe als þe *potagre* and þe *gout*." De propr. rer., Trevisa, Add. 27,944, fol. 96, bk.: "Arthetioa is ache and evel in fngres and tone wiþ enellinge & wre ache, and whanne hit is in þe fygngres hit hatte *cyragra*, and in þe toone hit hatte *podagra*."

² *not*, omitted. Lat.: nec propter hoc desperes.

³ See p. 284, note 7.

⁵ Add. 26,106, fol. 93: si plus dant, non interponunt spacium nutriendi.

so þat it ne touche noon hool¹ place, & þis maner is ful good to take awei corrupcioun of fleisch, & it is bettir þan medicina caustica / Whanne þou wolt worche with medicyns caustica, þan do as it schal be seid in þe antidotarie of þis book / 4

Of þe cure of brennyng wiþ fier ouþer with hoot watir or with oile.

¶ xix. 00 /
Burns and
scalds are
treated with
cold medi-
cines,
before blisters
are formed,

with styptic
in case of
ulceration.

[¶ 1f. 227]
Simple medi-
cines applied
in the first
case.

Medicines ap-
plied in the
second case.

Ry

A Mannes lymes ben brent wiþ fier, watir, ouþir wiþ oile / In þis caas þis is þe firste entencioun : or þe place bigynne to 8
bladdre,² þou muste haue medicyns þat ben colde / And if it so be þat þe place be vlcera³tus, & þou were not at þe firste bigynnyng, or if þe brennyng be so miche þat þou miȝt not defende, þat vlcera ne come not þeron, & þan þou must haue medicyns þat ben 12
lasse coold, & medicyns þat ben clepid stiptica not fretynge / þese ben symple medicyns ³in þe firste caas / Take marbil stoon & grinden smal, & alle þe sandalis,⁴ & solatrum, & watir of rosis, & watir of cucurbita, & water of virga pastoris, & of alle þese þingis make 16
a þing for to leie þeron / Also oile of rosis, & þe zelke of an ey ben good þerfore / Also bole armoniac temperid wiþ vinegre is good þerfore. And it muste ofte be remeued & ofte leid to aȝen, for þe cooldnes of ofte remeuyng schal defende it fro bladdring / 20
Natural medicyns þat ben gode in þe secunde caas : / But vnguentum de calx maad in þis maner / Ry, calcis viue bene cocte þat ben maad of an hard stoon, and waische it wiþ coold watir til it lete al his scharpnes, & þan wiþ oile of rosis & wex make an oynement / 24
Also vnguentum album Rasis þat is maad in þe antidotarie is good þerfore / I nyle for þis cure sette no mo medycyns. þoruȝ þe grace of god almiȝty þe þridde tretis is fulfillid //

Here endiþ þe þridde book, and bigynneþ þe fourþe 28
book // Of brekyng of boonis,⁵ & sumtyme of brusyng of boonys, and a general techyng for alle //

¹ MS. *hool*, Lat. : quod loca sana ulterius non attingat.

² *bladdre*, vesicari.

⁴ Lat. omnes sandali.

⁵ MS. *bookis*.

⁶ Lat. heading : "Explicit tractatus tertius huius libri. Incipit quartus, qui est de algebra, et continet duas summas. Summa prima tractatus quarti septem continet capitula. Capitulum primum summæ primæ tractatus quarti, de fractura ossium sermo generalis." The translator has kept the heading of the first chapter, but left out the chapter itself. His first chapter,

- 1 **A** Mannes nose is sumtyme to-broken,² & sumtyme pressid [1f. 227, bk.]
 adoun. & if he be hastili holpen his nose mai be restorid ¶ 1f. 66/
 azen, & if it be longe or he haue ony help, þanne he A broken
 4 schal be maymed for euermore³ / If þou comest at þe nose, unless
 firste bigynnyng⁴ þou schalt do in þis maner / putte yn þe fingir of soon re-
 þe lifthand anoon to þe brekyng⁵, þi leeste fyngir or what⁶ fyngir adjusted,
 wole best yn, & wip þi riȝthond presse vpon þe brekyng⁷, & arere remains de-
 8 vpward wip þi fyngir withinneforþ, & presse wip þin hond wipout- formed.
 forþ & bringe it as it schulde be. þan make a strong⁸ tent⁹ & so Restore the
 longe þat he mowe passe aboue þe brekyng¹⁰, & þan þis tent¹¹ schal nose by mani-
 be diȝt wip a litil wex hoot¹² & a litil sotil poudre of mastik & pulation.
 12 sandal, & schape þerof in þe maner of a candel, & þan putte it into Plug the nos-
 his nose, wipoutforþ leie of consolidatiuis þat schulen be seid in þe trils with a
 antidotarie, & abouteforþ þou schalt leie a defensif¹³, & þou schalt strong tent.
 binde his nose wip boondis,¹⁴ & leie sutil linnen cloof in boþe sidis [1f. 223]
 16 of his nose as ¹⁵it is aforseid in þe chapitre of woundis in a mannes [1f. 223]
 face / If þou miȝt not putte yn þi fyngir in his noseþrel, þan make
 a tent of tre & hile it wip linnen cloof þat it be oold & neissche,
 & þan anointe þis tent wip oile of rosis, & putte þis in his noseþrel
 20 in stide of þi fyngir, & þerwip arere vp his nose wipinneforþ,¹⁶ &
 wip þin hond wipoutforþ make his nose euene til þe boon be brouȝt
 in his propre place þat is to-broke. ¶ Of his dietyng¹⁷, & blood- Take care of
 letyng¹⁸, & ventusis, & clisterijs, ouþer suppositorijs, do as þou seest the general
 24 þat it is to do, & as it is aforseid. treatment.

¶ If a manes cheke-boon¹⁹ in þe liftside be to-broke, þan putte If the cheek-
bone is
broken,

which has no heading, is Lanfranco's second one: Capitulum secundum summe prime de fractura ossium faciei.

² Compare: *Paul. Ægin.*, Book VI., Sect. xci., ed. Adams, vol. II., p. 443, and *Avicenna*, Lib. IV., Fen. v., Tract 3, Cap. 3, ed. Venet. 1527, fol. 365 b.

³ Gul. de Sal., Sloane 277, fol. 34: "Thou schalt wite þat þe boon of þe nose is operwhile depressyd & operwhile broken, & zif sopely it be depressyd, þat is to sey born down or broken withoute wounde, anoon in þe firste visitacion, be þe seknesse restoryd, whil it is newe, for zif it were hard, ouþer þer schal dwelle euermore snattydnesse or euil schapp." *snattydness*, translates med. Lat. *similitas σιμύτης*, snubbiness. ⁴ MS. *broondis*.

⁵ Gul. de Sal., Sloane 277, fol. 34: "And zif þou may not do þat wip þi fyngir, putte in þe hole of þe nose on þe hurt syde a softe round sticke maad euene & semely, & anoynted with oyle of rosis . . . and þou maist also lappe þilke sticke in a clone linnen clout & anoynte þe clout wip þe same oile, & þanne þe sticke schal be þe more tretable."

⁷ *Avic.* Lib. IV., Fen. v. Tr. 3, Cap. 2, *ibid.*: "Si frangitur mandibula dextra, tunc intromitte indicem, et medium manus sinistre in os infirmi, et oet." Gul. de Sal., Lib. III., Cap. 2. Sl. 277. fol. 34 b: "zif sopely þe boon of þe oppere charuel or of þe neþere were maad²⁰ withoute wounde, putte þi ryȝt hond in þe moup of þe seeke." ²⁰ Sl. 6. fol. 115 b, broken.

re-adjust it
by manipula-
tion, and
hold it in
position by
tying the
teeth to-
gether,

[1. 1f. 228, bk.]

and by apply-
ing a band-
age.

The patient
shall only
take meat fit
to be sipped.

yn þi strongist¹ fyngris of þi lifthond tweyne & bringe þe boon in-
to his propre place azen, & presse wiþ þi riȝthond wiþoutforþ; & if þe
cheke-boon be to-broke in þe riȝtside, þanne putte yn .ij. fyngris of
þi riȝthond, and bringe þe boon to his propre place azen, as it is afor-
seid. & whanne þe boon is brouȝt as it schulde be, þat þou miȝt
knowe if his teef sittip euene as þei schulde do, & þan binde hise
teef wiþ a strong¹ þreed wexid¹ & bounden bitwixe his teef, & leie
þervpon oon of þe consolidatiuis & binde him in þe same maner, þat⁸
þe boond be maad fast bihindeforþ in his necke. & þan it schal be
turned azen to his forheed, & þou schalt binde him wiþ þi boond
manyfoold, þat þe boon þat is to-broke mowe be holde in his propre
place / And þe patient schal ete no metis but pingis þat he may
soupe / For if he chewide, it wolde make þe boon falle out of his
place azen, & in .xx. daies þis boon mai be restorid azen //

ffor brekyng of þe forke of þe prote and of þe brest //

¶ 1j. ca.
The upper
jaw-bone is
immovable,
for three
reasons.

[1. 1f. 229]
The lower
jaw-bone con-
sists of 3
bones;
joins with the
upper jaw-
bone by
ligaments.
Nerves con-
vey the motor
phenomena
from the
brain and
spine.

The cheke-boon aboute meueþ not, & þat¹ is for .iiij. causis: oon 16
is þat þe cheke-boon bineþe is more liȝt & more able þerfore,
þe .ij. cause is þis: þe cheke-boon is niȝ noble lymes, & if þe cheke-
boon aboute meuede, þe noble lymes miȝten be enpeirid þerbi. þe .iiij.
cause is þis: if þe cheke-boon aboute meuede, þe nolde be noon 20
strong¹ coniuncciuu bitwene hem / þerfore þe cheke-boon aboute is
fast maad to þe boonys of þe heed, as it is aforseid in anothomiam.
¶ The cheke-boon bineþe is maad of .ij. boonys ioyned³ togidere
in þe chyn. & þis boon is maad fast with þe cheke-boon aboute wiþ 24
ligaturis þat¹ ben stronge & recching¹ & wiþ lacertis, & maketh þe
cheke-boon meue whanne a man wole, for summe þerof comeþ
adoun fro þe boonys of þe heed, & ben ioyned wiþ partijs of nerues
of þe heed, & of nuche, & closip togidere þe cheke-boon. [Summe 28
comeþ⁴] bineþe aforȝens þe brest, and ben medlid wiþ nerues of
nuche & openeþ þe cheke-boon, & summe comeþ fro þe sidis, &

¹ Lanfranc divides the fourth book into two "doctrines," the one dealing with fractures, the other with dislocations. The scribe of the present translation omits this division and the first chapter of each doctrine. He also puts the chapter on dislocation of the jaw-bone, which was originally the 2nd chapter of the 2nd doctrine immediately after the chapter on fracture of the jaw-bone, still retaining the heading of the 3rd chapter of the first doctrine: "ffor brekyng of þe forke of þe prote and of þe brest." The two tables of contents show the same order as the original.

⁴ Summe comeþ, wanting. Lat. Add. 26106, fol. 96 bk.: "alii veniunt ab inferius versus pectus." The prints differ.

meueþ þe cheke-boon round, whanne a man couwid.¹ & þis cheke-
 boon bineþe mai be brouzt of þe ioynct fro þe cheke-boon aboute in
 .ij. maners: ouþer it goiþ of þe ioynct bihindeward, & þan þe teep
 4 þat ben in þe cheke-boon bineþe goiþ wiþinne þe teep of þe cheke-
 boon aboute. & þan he may not opene his moup, & it goiþ out of þe
 ioynct forward, & þan þe teep þat ben in þe cheke-boon bineþe goiþ
 forþere out þan þe teep aboute. & he mai not close his moup
 8 togidere² / These signys ben certeyn whanne þe boon is out of his
 ioynct / It is greet nede for to helpe a man hastily in þis caas; for
 if þe cheke-boon be out of ioincte longe, þere ben manie nerues &
 lacertis & arterijs & veines aboute þat place, & for þis cause it
 12 wexiþ hard anon. & þis place wole soone take enpostym for
 divers humours þat wolen falle þerto. & if þer falle an enpostym
 in þis place, þan, for þe brayn is so niz, þer comeþ a frenesie þerof
 & ofte tyme dieþ / & þerfore if he be hastili holpen, þe boon wole
 16 liztly into þe ioinct azen. & þerfore þat ioinct haþ lizt meuyng /
 ffor eueri ioinct þat haþ hard meuyng, & he be out of þe ioinct,
 it wole be hard for to bringe yn azen / If it so be þat þe cheke-
 boon be out of ioinct hindeward, þan þou schalt take þe boon
 20 first wiþ þi .ij. hondis, & lete a man holde his heed & drawe þe
 boon forward.⁴ & if it so be þat his moup be closid togidere, þan
 þou schalt opene his moup wiþ þin hond or with sum oþer instru-
 ment, & þan take faste þe boon & drawe it to his place azen. & in
 24 þis maner þou schalt knowe whanne it is in his propre place azen,
 if his teep sitten euene, & if he may opene his moup / ¶ If þou
 miht not bringe þe boon to his propre place in þis maner, þan þou
 muste take a strong boond, & sette it vnder his chyn, þere þou
 28 settist þi fyngris, & anoþer man mote drawe þe boond strongly &
 euene, & wiþ a wagge þou muste opene his moup. In þis maner

The disloca-
 tion of the
 lower jaw is
 either back-
 wards

or forwards.

Help must
 come soon,
 [s. 1f. 229, bk.]
 or the place
 gets indur-
 ated,
 and an apos-
 tema may be
 formed.

If the disloca-
 tion is back-
 wards, draw
 the bone
 forwards,

if necessary
 by means of
 a strong
 bandage.
 [s. 1f. 230]

¹ Lat.: in masticando.

² Gul. de Sal. Lib. III., Cap. 18. Sl. 277, fol. 42 b: "The tokenes of þe dislocation inward ben þat þe moup leueþ opene, & þat þe tep of þe neþere chanel goon tofore þe tep of þe vppere chanel. ¶ The tokenes of þe dislocacion outward ben þat þe mouth is schut & in no manere may be openyd, & þe seeke may not cheere & þe tep drawe vp toward þe palett, & þer schewiþ in þe vttere party in þe place of þe dislocacion an opene outberynge out of mesure, & þe speche is bynomen hym."

⁴ Gul. de Sal. Sl. 277, fol. 42 b: "The dislocacion knowe, wherþer it be to þe innere party or þe vttere, a wyse leche onep to putte his þumbes wiþinne þe moup of þe seeke, & festene hem vpon þe mango-tep of þe neþere iowe of þe seeke, & wiþ þe oþere four fyngres he schal take þe iowe dislocate fro þe vttere, & þat tyme he schal haue a mynystra, which schal holde fast þe henyd of þe seeke."

pou openynge his moup, & he drawing wip þe boond as it is afor-
seid, al at oony's wipouten drede þe boon wole come into his ioynct.¹

If the disloca-
tion is for-
wards,
let an assist-
ant draw the
bone back-
wards,

and open the
mouth by a
wedge.

¶ If it be out of þe ioinct forward, þan pou schalt sette a strong
boond vpon his chin, þat it hile al þe chin, & lete a man stonde
bihinde him & halde þe boond in hise hondis, & he schal sette his
knees vpon his schuldris, & he schal drawe þe boon to him wel &
euenly. & pou schalt putte a wegge in his moup, & whanne he
drawip þe boon pou schalt opene his moup wip þe wegge al at oon
tyme, & in þis maner þe boon schal falle into his ioinct. Whanne
þe boon is ynn, þan binde it faste wip a ligature & with enplastre,
& lete him haue souping metis, & he schal chewe no mete til þe
place be al fast. ¶ If it so be þat pou were not at þe first bigyn-¹²

In case of
apostema use
ointments

[² ff. 230, bk.]

to remove the
apostema and
the fever,

and then
reduce the
dislocated
bone.

nyng, & þe place is enpostymed, & he haue þe feure & akyng of
his heed, þan schaue his heed & anynte it wip oile of rosis & a
litil vinegre medlid þerwip. & pou schalt² anynte his heed with
sum mollificatif, or wip dokis grese or wip hennya. & pou schalt¹⁶
worche as miche as pou miȝt for to acesse þe enpostym, & for to
cure þe feure, & for to comforte his heed, þat þe frenesie ne come
not to him / Whanne þe feure & þe frenesie & þe enpostym be
remeued awei, þan cure him as it is aforseid //

20

ffor brekyng of þe forke of þe prote and of þe brest //

¶ ff. 231.

The cure is
easy if no
part of the
broken bone
is pressed in.

THe forke of þe prote is clepid of summen patena, & of sum-
men cathena.⁴ Sumtyme it is to-broke & nouþer part of þe
boon ne is not ypressid yn, & þan þe cure þerof is liȝt ynow.²⁴
But if þat oon ende of þe boon be pressid adoun vnder þat oper,
þan it is ful hard for to bringe it yn agen. Whanne nouþer partie
is pressid adoun, þan it is noon oper nede for to haue no medicyn
but stupis wet in white of eiren; & leie it vpon þe brekyng of þe²⁸
boon, & binde wel þe place wip ligaturis; & his arme of þe same
side mote be hongid to his necke, & in his arme-pitt pou schalt leie
a bal of lynnyn cloop. & pou muste binde his arme þat he mowe not
meue his arm⁵ toward þe forke of þe brest, & in þis maner he mote³²

Apply band-
ages and tie
the arm on
the injured
side to the
neck.

[³ ff. 231]

¹ Add. 26106, fol. 97: ita quod tu aperiendo et minister trahendo vna
hora locum suum intrat, quia sic sine dubio restaurabis.

² *Paul. Aegin.*, Book VI., 93, ed. Adams, vol. ii. p. 447. *Avicenna*, Lib.
IV., Fen. 5, Tract 3, Cap. 4, ed. Ven. 1527, p. 365 b.

⁴ *patena*, *cathena*, names for the *furcula*, as it seems peculiar to Lan-
franco. The *furcula*, taken to be one bone, comprises the sternal bone and
the clavicles. "Catena," chain, is synonymous with "clavicle;" and *patena*,
med. Lat. = plate, is a proper denomination of the sternal bone.

be kept til þe boon be al hool. ¶ If it so be þat oon ende of þe boon be pressid adoun, þan a man mote drawe his oon arme, & anoper man his opere arme, & þou schalt wip þin hondis drawe þe boon to his propre place. þan þou muste haue a medicyne consolidatif, & wete þerinne a lynnene cloop, & hile al þe brekyng of þe boon þerwip, & leie þervpon faldellas¹ wip white of an ey, & þan binde him as it is aforseid, and his arme to his necke, & in þis maner he schal be kept til he be hool.

If one end of the bone is pressed in, replace it, and apply a medicine.

¶ Of brekyng of rigboonys /²

Rigge boonys for her schortnes & for her strongnes ne ben not to-broke, but if it be wip greet smytyng, & sumtyme þei ben brusid, & þat makip greet akyng. Also þer fallip manie perels of þe boonys of þe necke if þei ben hurt, lest nucha be hurt also, & þan it is perel of þe brayn as it is aforseid / If þou seest yuel signes in þat caas, go awei þerfro. & if þou seest noon yuele signys, þan anointe þe place wip oile of roses hoot & leie þervpon wolle, and þanne ³terbentine medlid wip a litil mastic, & þis medicyne þou schalt vse til þe place be al hool /

¶ iiiij. c. If the rig-bone is broken, there is danger that the spine be hurt. Flee in case of evil symptoms, else apply an ointment. [3 lf. 231, bk.]

¶ The noubre of a mannes ribbis is aforseid in þe anothamie / A mannes ribbis ben to-broke sumtyme wip smytyng or wip fallyng / Also þei moun be plied inward & not to-broke. ¶ In þis maner þou schalt knowe wheþir a mannes rib be to-broke or no / Sette þi fyngris vpon þe place & grope softli & presse a litil vp & down, & if his rib be to-broke, þou schalt heere hym sownie,⁴ & he schal haue couzinge & akinge in his side. ¶ It is ful hard for to restore a rib þat is to-broke, for sumtyme þat oon parti plieþ inward, & þan it is hard for to bringe him into his propre place aȝen / And summen seien þat þe pacient schulde ete metis to swelle him þat engendriþ wijnd, & wole make þe rib goon into his propre place aȝen. & summen seien þat me schulde sette a ventuse, & wip

One knows that a rib is broken by the sound which is heard on pressure.

Some men propose that the patient should take food which produces wind.

¹ *faldella*, med. Lat., diminutive of *falda*, thread.

² Lat. de fractura spondillium et costarum.

⁴ Gul. de Sal. lib. III., Cap. 5. Sl. 277, fol. 36: "ȝif it happe þe rybbis to be broken in oo place or in two þat þou schalt wite by touchyng, for þei þat of pristynge down of þe hond vpon þe place or places, þou schalt heere a sown & with þat þe seeke schal suffre penaunce or lettynge of brep, & principally þe tyme of drawyng of wynd." The sound, "crepitus," produced by pressure of the hand on the injured place, as a test whether a rib is fractured, is already mentioned in *Paul. Egin.*, Book VI., 96, ed. Adams, vol. ii., p. 452.

anoyne þu hond wip terbenne. & loke if þou miȝt take vp þat is pressid adoun. & þin oþer hond þou schalt sette vpon place þat is not pressid adoun. & wip þin hond þat is anoynd arere vp his rib. & loke þat þe .ij. endis of þe ribbis þat is to come euene togidere, & þan make þe patient to couȝe, for þe beste maner for to bringe him yn² / If þou dredist nouȝt³ replecioun of his bodi, þou miȝt opene a ventuse whanne þe is ioyned. & þan þou schalt binde wip a boond, & vnder þe boond schalt leie lynnet⁴ or sum oþer neische þing. & þou schalt lode him in sich a maner þat þe rib þat is to-broke ne mowe not rene falle adoun aȝen. & þe patient schal vse liȝt mete as pult caudariso,⁵ de amido, de tritico, wip penides, & he schal d

[f. 12. 232, bl.] swete wijn temperatli, & þou muste defende⁴ him fro wrapþe crijnge, & fro alle þingis þat wolen make a man to couȝe. ¶ so be þat þe akynge acceſe not, & þou ne miȝt not bringe lode as he schulde be, & if he haȝ greet cowȝynge & acces of þe lode whanne þou haſt lete him blood, þan þou muste kutte þe aforȝens þe rib þat is to-broke, & vnhile þe same rib of fleisch, & þan wip instrumentis & wip þin hond þou muste vp þe rib, & bringe him in his place as he schulde be. & þou schalt cure þe wounde as it is aforseid / // His dietynge as of pluretiȝi til þe feuere & al þe passiouns ben goon awaȝe

readjust the broken rib,

let the patient cough.

Apply a bandage.

If there is strong fever, readjust the rib by operation.

Of brekyng of þe helpers of þe rigboon

¶ v. 12.
Fracture of the arm bone near the joint is dangerous.

A Diutorium is to-broken ful ofte ouerþwert² wip þe lode nere þat it be þe ioyned, þe more perilous it is, for to cure / In þis place I wole telle þee in what maner þou knowe a brekyng, & in what maner þou schalt

² Gul. de Sal. SL 277, fol. 36: "make lode place brest down or broken, þou schalt..."

³ Sim. de Janua: "Caudarum allicam dicunt, quidam Oan"

⁴ acces of þe fever

and splints
secured by
a cord,
which shall
be strained
but moder-
ately.

[³ IL 224]

A tight bandage may
cause spasm,
and prove
fatal.

Nota.
Keep the limb
so bandaged
for 10 days;
then look if
the bone is
adjusted,
and bandage
it again.

[³ IL 224, bk.]

Sometimes
one or both
the bones of
the fore-arm
are broken,

or the bones
of the fingers.

vje. 60 /
In case of
fracture of
the hip-bone
or any bone
of the leg,

pou schalt leie *pi splentis*¹; & wip a corde *pat* be brood, & not round, *pei schulen* be bounden *pervpon*. & pou schalt streyne middilly,² & not to faste / Herof pou muste be war, *pat streynynge* *pat* is in *pis place* & in *opere placis* ne schulen not be so harde *pat* ⁴ *pe place* bicomme blak, ne *pat* he mowe fele his lyme / Ther ben summen *pat* streynen so faste a manya lyme, *pat* *pe spirit* of *meuyng*, ne *pe spirit* of *lijf* mai not come *perto*. & *pan* *pei seep* *pat* *pe place* is to-swolle, & askip of *pe patient* wher he haue miche akyng. ⁸ & *pei* supposen to do awei *pe akyng* wip *pe greet binding*, & in *pis maner* *pe lyme* wole rotie, & in *pis maner* *pe patient* mai falle into a feuer & *pe spasme*, & manye men dieþ *peron* / But pou schalt worche in *pis maner* / Whanne pou seest *pis caas*, vnbinde *pe lyme*, ¹² & as miche as pou miȝt do awei *pe swellyng* & *pe akyng*. Aboue *pe brekyng* towardis the schuldre leie a defensif of bole // If *per* come noon akyng ne swellyng, *pan* pou schalt lete it sitte so boounde .x. daies in winter, & .vij. daies in somer / & *pan* vnbinde ¹⁶ it softly *pat* *pe lyme* ne meue not / & loke *pat* *pe boon* sitte wel; & *pan* binde it al togidere aȝen as þow didist first. Whanne *pe boon* is wel soudid, *pan* pou schalt take stupis & wete hem in good wijn hoot,⁴ & leie *pervpon*. ¶ Whanne it is soudid, if *per* leue ²⁰ ony *ping* of hardnes in *pe same place*, *pan* do it awei aftir *pe teching* *pat* pou schalt fynde in *pe antidotarie* /

Sumtyme *pe boonys* of a mannys arme ben to-broke ⁵ *bope*, & sumtyme *pat* *oper*. & whanne *pei* ben *bope* broken, it is *pe more* ²⁴ worse / If it so be *pat* *per* be to-broke but oon boon, *pan* it is no nede for to do but *astellas*,⁶ for *pe boon* *pat* is hool wole saue *pe* *ligature* wel ynow; / The boonys of a mannes fyngris ben sumtyme to-broke, *pan* pou schalt sette euene *pe boon*, & binde him wip ³² *astelles* *pat* ben wel maad *perfore*. & þou; *pe fyngr* ne be but a litil lyme, ȝitt pou muste haue good kunnyng & good witt for to dizte it wel / Dietyng in alle brekyng of boonys schal be first sotil, & aftirward more greet, as it is aforseid //

Of breking of pe boon of pe coxe.

Whanne *pe boon* of *pe coxe* is to-broke or ony boon of *pe foot*, *pan* pou schalt worche in al maner *pingis* as it is aforseid in *pe chapitre* of adiutorie & of *pe fyngr* / But *pis* pou

¹ MS. *splotis*.

² *middilly*, mediocriter.

⁴ Lat. : in bono vino calido.

⁶ Lat. : non est tibi necessarium astellas ponere.

muste adde more *perto*, *pat* whanne *pou* hast brougt yn *pe* boon of
pe leg, *pan* *pou* muste make an instrument, *pat* is clepid *album* apply a splint
ouper coutelle; & it schal be schape in *pe* maner of a cros.¹ & formed to the
shape of the
leg.
4 *peron* his leg mote be sett, so *pat* his leg mowe ²bowe to no side / [² 11. 235]
Also it is necessarie *pat* *pe* patient ligge also stille as he mai
wipouten remeuyng, til *pe* boon be fast // But *pou* muste be wel Take care
that the leg
does not get
shortened.
8 *pou* muste be war in *pe* soudyng, *pat* oon leg be not shorter *pan*
pe oþer / But *pou* schalt mesure hem algate boþe lich long, & in *pe*
same mesure kepe hem /

Of *pe* cure whanne a man is smiten in *pe* rigbon
12 or ribbis.

16 **I** T bifallip sumtyme *pat* a man is smyten or a man fallip, & ¶ vij. c. /
Tender bones,
especially
those of chil-
dren, become
bent instead
of breaking.
pan tendre boonys as *pe* cheke-boon & ribbis, & [in] children
boonys of her arme & of her leggis, for *pe* tendirnes of *pes*
lymes, *pei* wolen folde & not breke / In *pis* maner *pou* schalt
bringe hem azen / In *pis* maner anynte *pin* hond wip
terbentyne, & take *pat* boon & presse it as it is forseid in *pe* Straighten
them by pres-
sure,
brekyng of a boon.³ & if it be a rib, *pan* *pou* schalt presse
20 him vpward, as it is foreseid. & if it be in *pe* arme ouper
pe leg, *pan* *pou* muste make ligaturis *perfore* & instrument by bandaging
the limb to
a wooden
splint,
of tree, *pat* be euene, & *perto* his arme ouper his leg schal be
bounden & pressid, for to make him euene. & or *pou* do þus, *pou*
24 schalt make a ⁴vomentacioun of camomille, malue, & bismaluo, [⁴ 11. 235, bk.]
fenigreci, *seminis lini* soden in water; & *pan* anynte him wip oile
of lillie, or wip gandris grese, or hen-grese, & *pan* presse his arme
as it is aforseid. Also *pou* miȝt vse *pis* medicyn, *pat* is aproued
28 ofte tyme / leie a plate of yuer⁵ in *pat* side *pat* *pe* boon is aplied, & or lay a plate
of ivory on
the limb,

¹ Lat.: in albiolo seu coutella que sit ad modum cruris formata. The translator read "crucia."

albiola, (alveolus) *um*. "ventre, panier, benne, flancs d'un navire."—Dufr.

coutella. κοτύλη, anything hollow, the cup of a joint, especially of the hip-joint. It.: cotila. Tomm.

Paul. Ægin., Book VI, Sect. 106, ed. Adams, vol. 2, p. 470, describes the way of arranging a fractured leg by means of "a canal either of wood or earthenware." Adams l. c. gives references from Hippocrates, Celsus and Galen, for the use of these machines.

³ Lat.: Si maxilla fuerit, manum seu digitos in os pone, premens ad extra sicut diximus in fractura, manum aliam termentina uel pice illinitam suauiter ab extra preme et citius eleua.

⁵ O.Fr. yvoyre.

by whose
attraction
it becomes
straight.

þe vertu of þe yuer wole drawe þe boon as it schulde be, & bringe
þe boon into his propre plite /

Of þe greuounes of þe rigboon whanne he is out
of ioyncte /

4

¶ iij.º. /
viiij

The liga-
ments on the
neck are
weak,

and the bones
are easily
dislocated.

Dislocation
of the 1st
vertebra—
decollation—

[¶ If. 236]
causes death
by want of
breath.

If the 7th and
8th vertebrae
are out of
joint, the
ways of food
and breath
are stopped.

The bone
must be
replaced im-
mediately
after the
accident.

Nota

Treatment:
Press down
the shoulders,
and draw up
the head.

The displace-
ment may be
inwards

[¶ If. 236, bk.]

or outwards.

Dislocacioun of þe rigboouns is a greuoun sijknis. It is aforseid
in anathomia how manie boonys ben in þe necke & in þe rig.
& it is aforseid in what maner / The firste boon in a mannes necke
is bounden with manye feble ligaturis, & þe ligaturis þerof ben 8
recching¹ & feble, þat þei ne schulde lette þe meuyng of þe heed /
þe boonys þat ben in a mannes necke beþ more feble þan ony oþer
rigboouns, & þerfore þei goiþ listly out of þe ioyncte, & it is ful
greet drede þerof / If þe hizeste boon of þe necke be oute of þe 12
ioynct, it is clepid decollacio, & it sleeþ a man anoon; for þat oþer
boon þerof pressiþ yn & stoppiþ a man²nes breeþ anoon, & in þis
maner it sleeþ a man anoon / And if þe ioynct þat is bitwixe þe
vij. boon & þe .viij. be out of ioyncte, þan it wole stoppe þe weie 16
of his mete, and it wole lette þe weie of a mannes breeþ also / And
if ony boon of þe rigboon þat is bineþe þe .viij. boon be out of
ioyncte, but if he be þe rapere holpen, he schal lese his meuyng
for euermore³ / And þerfore it is necessarie as faste þat a mannes 20
rigboon is out of þe ioynct, þat it be brouzt yn azen anoon, &
principali þe firste boon of þe necke, for disiunccioun of þat boon
wole sle a man anoon, as it is forseid / If þou be in þe place, take
þe patient bi þe heeris, & sette þi feet vpon his schuldris, & so þou 24
schalt drawe vpward wiþ þin hondis, & presse adoun wiþ þi feet, &
bringe þe boon into his ioynct azen / Whanne þe .vij. rigboon⁴ is
out of his ioynct fro þe .viij. rigboon, itt mai ful litil tyme lenger
abide. & if it so be þat þis boon be pressid swiþe ynward, it wole 28
sle a man hastily, & it wole ful late be curid / If it so be þat it
mai be curid, þer is noon oþer cure þeron, but presse adoun his
schuldris & drawe vp þe heed, as it is aforseid / If it so be þat
ony of þese boonys be out of þe ioynct outward, þat falliþ ful 32

¹ Lat. : hec ligatura fuit magis aliis laxa.

² Gul. de Sal., cap. 19. Sl. 277, fol. 42 b. : "And of þe spondiles of þe
brest, for lettynge brouzt in in þe lacertis & muscules kyndely & wilfully
menynge þe brest, þe lunge is lettid in his menynge, & þer falliþ hasty reynid
& litel, & ytterlyche dep. Of þe dislocacion of þe oþere spondiles, þat ben 4,
þer falleþ anoþer greuaunce in þe reynes & þe bladde, & akke in þe
membris, & peyne of pyssynge or lettynge of þe weyes of þe vryne, & apostemes
in þe place, & fevere, & dep."

⁴ rig, in margin.

- seelde, þan sette þe boonys euene, & drawe his heed & presse adoun
hise schuldris / If it so be þat ony rigboon bineþe þe .viiij. boon of
þe necke be out of ioyncte, if þe boon go ynward, it nile take no
4 cure til it sle him / And if it ne be not al out of þe ioyncte, but
it pressip nucha, alle þe lymes bineþe schulen lese her meuyng / If
it so be þat þe boon be out of þe ioyncte & go outward, it is in-
curable, for he schal be euermore gibbosis, *id est* broken-riggid. þis
8 is þe cure þerof, if it mai be curid / Arere vp þe boon & presse it¹
als so miche as þou miȝt, wiþ þin hond, ouper presse it yn with a
playn tree, & studie þou in þi witt as miche as þou miȝt for to
presse it in aȝen; & leie þerpon oon of þe consolidatiuis, & binde
12 it faste / If it so be þat þere leue ony hardnes after þe tyme þat
þe place is soudid, þan make an enplastre of mollificatiuis þerto, þat
þou schalt fynde in þe antidotarie; & anoynte him wiþ oynementis,
þat þou schalt fynde² in þe same place in þe chapter of molli-
16 ficatiuis /

An inward
displacement
below the
8th vertebra
causes either
death or loss
of motion.

In case of
outward dis-
placement,
the patient re-
mains hump-
backed.

Try to reduce
the bone by
manipula-
tion.

If some hard-
ness is left,
apply a
plaster and
an ointment.
[³ ff. 237]

Of þe schuldre out of his place.³

- A** Mannes schuldre mai go out of þe ioynct in .iiij. maners /
Oon maner is þis, whanne þe heed of þe boon of adiutorie,
20 þat is þe poynt of þe schuldre, fallip adoun vnder þe arme-pitt; &
sumtyme he goip of þe ioynct forþward, but þat fallip ful selden /
The .iiij.: he goip out of þe ioynct vpward; & bakward he ne mai
not out of þe ioynct, for þe schuldre boon holdip itt faste in.⁴
24 ¶ The .j. maner þou miȝt liȝtliche knowe bi touching & bi siȝt, &
þou schalt fele þe boon in his arme-pitt, & þan þere wole be a greet
pitt aboue. ¶ If he be out of the ioynct forþward, þan his arme
wole sitte bacward, & tofore þou schalt se a greet pitt / ¶ If he be
28 out of þe ioynct vpward, þat þou schalt knowe in þis maner: his
elbowe ne mai not be drawe along fro his body. & if þou wolt
drawe him along, þou schalt fynde an obstacle / The .j. maner if it
be a child, þan þou schalt take his arme wiþ þi lifthond, & sette þi
32 riȝthond vnder his⁵ arme-pitt, & drawe his arme wiþ þi lifthond, &
presse þe boon into his ioynct wiþ þi riȝthond; & in þis maner þou
schalt bringe in þe boon of a child wel ynow. ¶ If it be a miche

^{ix}
¶ iiij.º. /
The head of
the humerus
is dislocated,
1. downwards
into the arm-
pit;
2. forwards;
3. upwards.

The signs
are an out-
ward depres-
sion.

and an ina-
bility to use
the arm.

Treatment:
1. Reduction
is effected by
extension of
[⁵ ff. 237, bk.]
the arm and
pressure on
the shoulder.

¹ MS. *pressid*.

³ Compare *Paul. Aegin.*, Book VI, Sect. 114, ed. Adams, vol. II, p. 485.

⁴ Gul. de Sal., Sl. 277, fol. 43 b.: "For þe ofteste þe heued of þe adiu-
torie is dislocate in þe schuldre toward þe place þat is called titillicum to þe
for-party, & to þe hynder party anentis þe spawde-boon, it is dislocate in no
maner."

Reduction
in a grown-
up man is
effected by
means of a
wooden ball.

Another way
of reduction.

2. The
shoulder is
drawn up-
wards with
[1 lf. 238]
a towel, and
the arm is
drawn down-
wards.

3. Reduction
is effected in
a similar way.

When the
bone is
reduced,

leave the arm
bandaged
through 10
days.

[2 lf. 238, bk.]
If you come
some time
after the ac-
cident, the
patient must
take a bath
before reduc-
tion is tried.

man, lete him ligge adoun streijt, & take a round bal of tree, & folde him wiþ a cloop, & leie it vnder his arme-pitt, & binde him pere faste, & take his hond & drawe it adounward, ouper lete anoþer man drawe it adounward, & helpe þou wiþ þin hond for to 4 bringe yn þe boon, so þat þou schalt presse, & þe man drawe al in oon tyme / If it ne mai not be doon in þis maner, þan ordeine a long perche, & make it fast in .ij. wallis of þe hous, ouper .ij. postis of þe hous; & in þe middil of þe perche make a pitt, & in þe same 8 pitt leie þe forseid bal, & þe hiznes of þis perche schal be hizer þan a man is long, & þan sette vnder his feet a stool. & loke þat þe same bal sitte vnder his arme, & lete a strong man holde down his arme and his hond, & take awei þe stool vnder his feet, & in þis 12 maner þe boon wole come into his ioynct / ¶ If it be out of þe ioynct forþward, þan take a strong towail, & leie him vnder his arme, & lete þe oon ende go forþ bihinde his rigge, ¹ & þat oþer ende forþ bi his brest, & lete a strong man holde þe .ij. endis of þe 16 towail, & þan binde his arme wiþ anoþer boond aboue þe elbowe; & take it anoþer strong man, & lete þese .ij. men holde & drawe al at oonys; þan þou schalt with þi .ij. hondis, whanne þei drawiþ, presse þe boon into his ioynct / Whanne þe boon is in his ioynct, 20 þan þei schulen leeue her drawyng softly. ¶ In þe same maner, whanne he is out of ioyncte vpward, he schal be bounden, & oon man schal drawe him abacward wiþ þe towail, & þat oþer man schal drawe his arme adounward, & þou schalt helpe for to presse yn þe 24 boon wiþ þin hondis. & whanne þe boon is in his ioynct, þan wete a pece of lynnene cloop in oile of rosis, & þan þervpon leie a medicyne consolidatif, & þan leie þervpon faldellas wet in gleire of eiren, & binde him faste with boondis þat his arme ne mowe not 28 out of þe ioynct azen, & so he schal be bounden .x. daies. And if þer come ony enpostym or icching, þan þou muste vnbinde him azen, & do awei þe icching ouper þe enpostym, and binde it azen as it is forseid. ¶ If it so be þat ² þou ne were not at þe firste 32 bigynnyng, þan þou muste make þe patient a baþ of malue & bismalue, fenigrec, lynseed. & whanne he is wel bapid in þis baþ, þan anoynte him wiþ an oynement laxatif. & in þis maner he muste be bapid manie daies til þe place be wel moistid; & þan 36 bringe þe boon into his ioynct, as it is forseid. ¶ If it so be þat þou come at þe firste bigynnyng, whanne a boon is out of þe ioynct, þan þou schalt not baþe þe lyme in hoot water in no maner.

- ¶ A mannes arme wole out of þe ioynct liȝtlich at þe elbowe,¹ & liȝtly it wole be brouȝt into his ioynct aȝen / But he mai be out of þe ioynct in .ij. maners, as forþward & hindeward, & boþe haueþ diuers cure / In þis maner þou schalt do whanne he is out of þe ioynct forþward: sette stupis in þe folding of his arme,² & þan binde a boond þervpon, & lete a man drawe þat boond bakward — —,³ & þan lete a strong man holde adiutorium, lest his schuldre go out of þe ioynct. & þan anoynte þin hond wiþ oile of rosis, & lete þe .ij. men drawe al at oon tyme, & þan presse yn þe boon into his ioynct wiþ þi .ij. hondis, & þan hange an heuy peis at his hond. & if þer leeueþ ony greet þing, lete it be til anoþer tyme.
- 12 & þan anoynte þin hond & presse it in aȝen, & þan þou schalt binde him wiþ boondis & faldellis, & oile of rosis & consolidatiuis, as it is aforseid / But of þis caas þou muste be war: but if his arme be brouȝt into þe ioynct hastili, þere wole engendre in þe place an hoot enpostym, & þan aftirward it wole be ful hard to bringe it into his ioynct aȝen.
- ¶ Rasceta, þat is þe ioynct of þe hand / as it is forseid in anathamia, is conteyned of manie boonys & of manie recchinges ligaturis,⁴ as it was necessarie for þe grete meuyng of þe hond. þis place wole liȝtly out of þe ioynct, & liȝtly it wole come yn aȝen.
- ¶ But if a mannes hond be out of þe ioyncte longe, þe place wole enpostym, & þan it wole be hard for to bringe it in aȝen. ¶ In þe firste bigynnyng take his arme wiþ þi lifthond, & sette þe boon into þe ioynct as it is aforeseid, & binde it in al maners as it is aforseid in opere ioinctis. ¶ Also if a mannes fyngir be out of ioyncte, it is but liȝt for to putte it in aȝen / In þe same maner þou schalt binde a mannes fyngir as it is aforseid in opere placis / Ther ben

Nota.

Dislocation of the elbow may be forwards or backwards.

Treatment of a dislocation forwards,

of a dislocation backwards.

[¹ ff. 230]

If the arm is not soon reduced, an apostema will be formed.

Rasceta has many bones and ligaments.

The wrist-joint is frequently dislocated.

Dislocated fingers are easily reduced. [² ff. 230, bk.]

¹ The Original says just the contrary: difficile dislocatur, et ita difficile restauratur. The translator further leaves out a passage similar to the following one, quoted from the Engl. translation of Gul. de Salic.: "*The dislocacioun or restorynge of þis place is ryȝt dredeful, for þe makynge of it. For whi, þer ben smale boones & harynge schapp of a rolle or polyne, to drawe with water of wellis, whiche sumtyme, ouper wiþ difficulte, or in no manere ben restorid.*"

² Lat.: in curvatura vbi brachium plicari solebat.

³ Add. 26,106, fol. 98: "& fac quod minister trahat stupham seu bindam ad posteriora firmiter et suaviter: et tu manum quam errexeras, plica violenter: vt oppositum tangat pluries humerum: quoniam tunc sine dubio est reducta. Si vero fuerit ad posteriora, fac quod fortis minister teneat adiutorium. et. cet."

⁴ Lat.: multis ossibus composita et ligamentis pluribus tamen laxis coniuncta.

Do not put
the limb in
hot water
at the first
beginning.

manie men þat whanne a mannis lyme is out of ioynct, þei wolen sette þe lyme in hoot water, & seien þat it wole þe better come in to his ioinct agen / But þou schalt wite þis, þat hoot watir in þe firste bigynnyng makip þe lyme recche, & febliþ it & drawip þerto 4 manye humours / & þerfore þou ne schalt do in þis maner, but þou schalt comforte þe lyme wip oile of rosis, & sette him into his ioinct anoon, & defende as miche as þou miȝt, þat þere come noon enpos- tym þerto / But if it so be, þat þou ne come not at þe firste 8 bigynnyng, & þe place bicometh hard, þan make him a fomentacioun wip a decoccioun of þingis þat makip moist & resolueþ as it is aforseid /

Of the haunche out of his place.¹

12

^x
¶ v. c.
The hip-joint
is subject to
four disloca-
tions,
arising from
internal or
external
causes.

[¶ If. 240]

1. Internal
causes.

When too
much fluid
gathers in
the box of
the haunch,
the thigh-
bone is easily
dislocated.

The acetabu-
lum is more
or less con-
cave, the
concavity
prevents
dislocation.

2. External
causes.

Symptoms of
dislocation
inwards,

[¶ If. 240, bk.]

of dislocation
forwards,

AL þe coniunccioun of þe haunche is tofore seid in þe chapitre of anathamia. And þis place mai go out of þe ioinct in .iiij. maners: as ynward & outward, forþward & backward; & sum- tyme it cometh of causis wipinneforþ, & sumtyme of causis without- 16 forþ / ²Of causis wipinneforþ: as humours of longe tyme haue falle þerto, as it is aforseid in þe chapitre of dolour of ioinctis / Ther is in þis place a greet box, & conteneþ a greet place, þat berip al þe bodi, & it is a place þat takith miche moisture & greet superfluete 20 of humours, & whanne þer fallip manie superfluetees to þat place, & þe pacient is not purgid þerof, & traueilip, þan humours rotip in þat place, & þe ligaturis recchip along, & in þis maner vertebrium goip out of his ioinct / And þis caas in diuers men hap diuers 24 causis / for summen haueþ a box in her haunche swiþe holowe, & þat wole not fullȝtliche out of þe ioinct / And summen ne haueþ not so holowe boxis, & þan if þe place be ful of yuele humours, þan þe boon wole lȝtliche out of þe ioincte, & it wole lȝtli into þe 28 ioinct agen, & þan it wole lȝtly out agen. ¶ Of causis wipoutforþ, as of wrastyng or of smityng or of sum oper þing þat makip ver- tebrum goon out of þe ioynct wip violence. ¶ This is þe signe whanne it is out of ioyncte ynward: whanne þou myȝt fele þe 32 poynt of þe boon in his flank, & his feet ³& his knee turned out- ward, & þe pacient schal not opene his leg ne his hipe // If it goip out of þe ioynct forþward, þan his leg wole wexe miche shorter, & he schal not bringe his hele to grounde, but oonly his toos. ¶ If 36

¹ Compare *Paul. Agin.*, Book VI., Sect. 118, l. c., p. 498. *Ariceana*, Lib. IV., Fen. 5, Tract 1, Cap. 24.

it be out of þe ioynct backward, þan his hele wole wexe long, & his
toos schorte, & he schal bringe no þing of his foot to grou[n]de,
but his hele //

- 4 Ther ben manie maners of diuers menys for to bringe boonys
into her ioynct azen, but among alle I holde þis maner þe beste for
þis place: take a long schete þat be not brood, & do bitwixe þe
patient leggis, & lete þat oon ende go bifore his brest, & þat oþer
8 bihinde his rigt, & make þe .ij. endis fast to a post, & þe patient
schal ligge vpon a plain place, & þou schalt binde al his hipe aboue
his knee, & þan þe leg softly adounward, & to alle þese boondis
make faste a corde, & lete þe moost fastenyng be in þe hipe aboue
12 þe knee, & þan lete oon strong man or ij. drawe þe corde euenlich
& harde withoute ony pluching.¹ & þan þou schalt wiþ þin hondis
putte þe boon into his ioyncte. & whanne þe ²boon is ynne, þan
bidde hem lete go þe corde softli azen, & leie hise feet euene togidere.
16 for if hise feet wollen ligge euene togidere, it is a certain signe þat
þe boon is in his ioynct. & if hise feet wolen not sitte euene in þe
ioynct, it is a signe þat þe boon is not in his ioynct / whanne þe
boon is in his ioinct, binde faste his hipe, & lete þe patient ligge
20 stille til he be al restorid / In alle curis of dislocacioun þou hast
pleiner teching.³

- ¶ Dislocacioun of þis place þat cometh of causis wiþinneforþ, it
is ful hard for to bringe it in azen. & þou þe boon be brougt in
24 azen, wiþ a litil cause it wole goon out azen. & þerfore þer is no
cure þerof, but awoide his bodi, & make him cauterijs as it is afor-
seid in þe chapitre of cauterijs.

- ¶ A mannys knee is sumtyme out of ioyncte, & sumtyme þe
28 round boon þat is þervpon goiþ out of his place / Signys whanne
a mannes knee is out of ioyncte ben open ynow3. & if þe round
boon be out of his place, þou miȝte liȝtlich knowe it. ¶ In þis
maner þou schalt bringe a mannes knee into his ioynct azen / Lete
32 a strong man holde faste his hipe, and ⁴anoþer man his leg. & þou
schalt wiþ þin hondis presse faste þe boon into his propre place. &
if þe place be enpostymed, first þou muste do awei þe enpostym, &
þan bringe þe knee into his place azen. ¶ If þe round boon be out
36 of his place, sette þe boon into his place, & þan binde faste wiþ
boondis, & þan binde his leg faste vp to his hipe bi an hour, & þan

and back-
wards.

The best way
of reduction.
A towel put
under the
thigh is fixed
to the wall
(to effect
counter-ex-
tension),
whilst exten-
sion of the
leg is made.

[1 ff. 241]

There is no
radical cure
for a disloca-
tion arising
from internal
causes.

Sometimes
occurs a
Dislocation
of the knee-
joint, and a
Dislocation
of the Patella.
Reduction
is accom-
plished by
[* ff. 241, bk.]
pressing the
boon into its
place.

In the same
way reduce a
dislocated
patella.

¹ Lat.: non ductu violenti nec tractu.

³ Add. 26.106, fol. 99: In omnibus aliis curam consequentibus est in precedentibus bene doctus.

vnbinde his leg^r fro his hipe, & þan binde faste þe round boon þat it ne moue not fro his propre place, & in þat maner lete it sitte, for it wole bicomme fast^r anon.

Reduction of
Dislocation
of the Ankle-
Joint.

¶ If þe ioynct^r of a mannes foot be out of ioyncte or his toos, þou schalt do þe cure in þe same maner as it is aforseid in þe hond & in þe fynggris.¹ ¶ þoruȝ þe help of god wipout which is no ping^r fulfillid, þe .iiij. tretis is fulfillid. ¶ Now I wole bigynne þe .v. tretis þat schal be clepid þe antidotarie of this book. //

[¶ If. 242.]

No man could
enumerate all
the medi-
cines, only
God knows
them.

IN þe fifte tretis clepid þe antidotarie of þis book, I pinke to putte medicyns boþe symple & compound / þat falliþ for cirurgie & beþ necessarie þerfore / But I ne mai not sette alle, for þer is no man þat can telle alle þe noumbre of medicyns but oonli 12 god / Neþeles I wole sette medicyns in þis antidotarie þat I haue longe vsid, & I lernede hem of wise doctouris & of philosophis, & alle þei ben aproued /

Here bigynneþ þe tretise of repercussiuus // 16

¶ eo jo
Repercus-
sives are used
for hot aposto-
mas, espe-
cially if they
are in a noble
limb.

REpercussiuus bifalliþ for hoot apostymes, & principal whanne it bigynneþ in a noble lyme: as in þe herte, oupir in þe brayn, oupir in þe heed, oupir in þe lyuere, þe splen & þe stomac, reynes, ballokis, & in þe bladdre // It schal alwei be pin 20 entencioun for to putte awei greuous mater fro a noble lyme into anoþer place. ¶ Whanne þou wolt worche wip repercussiuus, þou muste take hede to .x. condiciouns þat ben sett in þe .iiij. tretis in þe general chapitre of enpostyms / ¶ Repercussif is seid in .ij. maners: 24 as large & streit³ / large is seid: as eueri medicyne maad of coold herbis for to aquenche hoot⁴ causis. Streit is seid, whanne it putt awei þe mater & is not swiþe coold // Of repercussiuus þere ben manie degrees of cooldnes / Ther ben summe so coold, þat a man 28 mai not fele his lyme, & þan it is clepid stupefactiuus⁵ / & þis þou schalt vse whanne þer is ping^r þat greueþ more þan þe mater. ¶ Whanne þou ne dredist not hoot qualite oonli, but þou dredist

Repercus-
sives are
understood
in a wider or
stricter sense.
[¶ If. 242, bk.]

Some are
very cold,
and are called
Stupefacti-
ua.

Some are less
cold but dry:

Stiptica.

þe mater, þan þou schalt vse medicyns þat ben coold & drie, þat 32 þei mowe tempere þe complexioun of þe lyme, & wip þe vertu of stiptica þei wolen comforte þe lyme,⁶ & þese ben propirli clepid repercussiuus / Whanne þou hast entencioun oonly for to make

¹ MS. repeats this sentence.

³ large & streit. See p. 305, note 1.

⁵ Vigon transl. *Traheron Interpr.*: "*Stupefactivo*. That, that hathe strengthe to astone, and take awaye felynge."

⁶ Lat.: et sua stipticitate uirtutem membri confortant.

- coold, þan it is no force þouȝ þi medicyn be not stiptica / But
 whanne þou wolt make ony repercussiuus, it is necessarie þat þei
 be coold & drie. ¶ Medicyns þat ben coold & repercussiuus, summe
 4 ben simple & summe ben compound / Of simple medicyns, summe
 ben of herbis, & summe ben of trees, & summe ben leues, &
 summe ben rotis, & summe ben seedis, & summe ben flouris, &
 summe ben greynes¹ of minerals, & summe ben watris, & summe
 8 ben oilis. And summe þerof I wole sette in þese bokis þat ben
 greetli in vss toward us / And þere ben medicyns coold & moist² [¶ 11. 243]
 þat þou miȝt vse for to atempere þe complexioun of lymes þat ben
 distemp[er]id in hete & drieness. ¶ Malua, capillus³ veneris, pail-
 12 lium, portulaca, atriplex. Mercurialis,⁴ Rapa, cucurbita, Melones,
 Citruli,⁵ Semen malue, seminis iij^{or}. frigidorum, Semper uiua, lactuca
 ortulana⁶ ¶ Iusquiamus, Mandragora, Papauere, argentum viuum,
 f. & h. in iij.⁷ ¶ Oilis coold & moist: Oleum violacium, Oleum
 16 nenupharinum,⁸ Oleum de lilijs albis, Oleum mirtinum. Istis⁹
 medicinis potest vti quum intendis in frigidare sine expulsiōe ut
 dictum est // þese medicyns þou miȝtist vse whanne þou entendist
 for to make coold wipouten expulsioun of þe mater as it is forseid.
 20 ¶ Medicyns þat ben symple coold & drie, þat ben clepid verry
 repercussiuus ben þese / Solatrum, crassula maior & minor,¹⁰ virga
 pastoris / vmbilicus veneris, cicorea, Endiua, Gramen, Epatica,¹¹
 Ipoquistidos, veruene, Semper uiua, Corigiola,¹² Sanguinaria, Edera,
 24 Acetosa, Scariola, plantago maior & minor, Nenuphar. De granis

Repercussive
 medicines are
 either simple
 or compound.
 The simple
 medicines.

Herba.

Oilis.

Medicines
 that are cold
 and dry, or
 Repercus-
 sives in a
 strict sense.

¹ The translator misunderstood the Lat. genera mineralium.

² MS. capillis.

³ Add. 15,236, fol. 4 b.: "*Linachites, mercurialis, idem. G. mercuria, A. smerenourth.*" Compare *Alphita*, p. 116: "*linozostis g^a mercuris. a^a secundary.*"

⁴ Phillips, "*Citrull*, a sort of Cucumber or Pumpkin of a Citron-Colour."

⁵ Halle, *Table*, p. 57: "*Lactuca sativa, or Hortensis, þat is garden letuce.*"

⁶ frigidum et humidum in quarto gradu.

⁷ *nenupharinum*, Arab. Pers. nltufar, ninūfar (Littré). *Nymphaea alba*. Add. 15,236, fol. 5 b.: "*Nennfar .i. flos vngule, caballine aquatice A. water-lilye.*" Compare *Alphita*, p. 124; *Barth. Sinon.*, p. 31.

⁸ MS. istius.

⁹ Add. 15,236, ff. 11: "*Crassula maior G. crassegetine vel orpine, Crassula minor G. terce de soris A. stoncrop.*"

¹⁰ Add. 15,236. Cf. 3 b.: "*Epatica G. coper A. liuerwort.*" Ibid. ff. 11: "*Epatica G. epatik vel coper A. liuerwort.*"

¹² Add. 15,236, ff. 3 b.: "*Corigiola. Centinodia. lingua passerina. G. Coriogiola.*" Halle, *Table*, p. 29: "*Corrigiola.* So called of the Apothecaries, and of the Frenche men Corrigiole, is oure common Knottgrasse, called in Greke polygonon, in Latine Seminalis and Polygonum mas."

[¹ If. 243, bk.] **seminibus, fructibus.** Ordeum, Silligo¹; auena. ²Spica, Lolium, ffabe, Mirtilli, Berberis, Sumac, Pira, Poma, Sorbe, mespila, Castanea, Glandes, Galle, Maiorana, Mora matura, vua acerba, Capreoli, vitis.³ ¶ **De floribus folijs & corticibus** / Balaustie cortices,⁴ Cortices mali granata, Cortices arborum stipticorum⁴; Rosa, Nenufar, flos spine, ffolia pirorum, pomorum, sorborum, rubij, & spine. ¶ **ffolia** / Salicia, Populi, Tremuli, Papiri, Canne.⁵ ¶ **De linia** omnes sandali. ¶ **De mineralibus & lutis** / Saphirus, Bolus arme-⁸ nicus, Marmor, Alabastrum,⁶ Cathinia, Litargirum, munda⁷ ferri, Ematistes, Corallus, antimonium. ¶ **De lutis.** Terra sigillata, Argilla, lutum⁸ omne, cimolea,⁹ Camfora, Cerusa. **De gummia.** Gumma pruni,¹⁰ cerase, amigdale, Acacia, opium. **De olijs.** Oleum¹² rosarum, & eueri oile þat' is maad of coold þingis & drie, of flouris, leeuës, & ryndis þerof / Also watir of rosis, & water þat' is maad of alle þingis þat' ben coold & drie, and distillid¹¹ / If þou be sent' after into a cuntre, þere ben noon apotecarijs, þan if þou canst¹⁶ make þese medicyns þat' ben forseid & medicyns þat' schulen be seid heraftir, þan þou miȝt' fulfille þi purpos¹² & do þi cure. þou miȝt' make¹³ of þese þingis: oynementis, epithima, cathaplasmata, emplastra, enbrocaciouns, pultes, encatismata. Of þese names manie²⁰ men takith oon for anoper, & þerfore I wole telle þe diuersite of vnguentum. ¶ **vnguentum** is maad of .iiij. 3 of oile & 3 ß. of wex in winter, & 3 j. in somer, & 3 j. of þingis þat' þin oynement' schal serue þerfore.¹⁴ and oynementis schulen be algatis colid. ¶ **Epithima** is þis, whanne þingis ben sotilli poudrid & temperid wiþ water of roses, ouþer wiþ vinegre, ouþer iuys of ony herbe, so þat' it' be temperid in þe þiknes of hony & leid vpon þe place, & hilid wiþ lynnene cloop, ouþer wiþ leþer, þis is clepid epithimum. ¶ **Cataplasma** is, whanne herbis ben grounde & soden ouþer raw, & al þe substaunce of þe herbe þerwiþ & medlid wiþ mele & grese, & it' ne schal not' be hard ne neische, but' in þe meene, & it' schal be leid

A physician is sometimes obliged to prepare himself his medicines.

[¹³ If. 244]

¹ Silligo, a kind of very white wheat.

² MS. Spata, Spleta. Lat.: Add. 26,106. fol. 109, "spaca"; ed. 1498, fol. 207, "spica." The preceding words show that spica is the correct reading.

³ Capreoli vitis, the tendrils of vine.

⁴ MS. stipticoris.

⁵ MS. panne.

⁶ med. Lat. alabastrum.

⁷ Lat.: murga uel merda.

⁸ MS. litum.

⁹ cimolea, a kind of earth, so called after Cimolus, an island in the Cretan sea, where it is found.

¹⁰ MS. Summa pruna.

¹¹ Lat.: omnis aqua ex rebus siccis et frigidis distillata.

¹² Lat.: de quo tuum poteris propositum adimplere.

¹⁴ et 3 .i. pulueris rerum puluerizandarum, que ponuntur in unguento.

- flasch hoot vpon þe lyme. ¶ *Emplastrum* is seide, whanne manie *Emplastrum*.
 diners þingis, as poudris and gummis & fatnessis, wax, talow, &
 oile ben soden togidere til þei bicom hard, & maad in gobetis &
 4 kept. & þan it schal be maad abrood vpon leþir, & leid vpon þe
 place þat þou wolt¹ haue it: as diaculon, apostolicon,² oxirocroce- [17. 244, bk.]
 um,³ & opere manie. ¶ *Pultes*⁴ & cathaplasma ben al oon, but pro- *Pultes*.
 pirli pultes ben clepid, whanne þer is mele, watir, & oile wijouten
 8 herbis, & it schal be clepid cataplasma, whanne herbis ben medlid *Cataplasma*.
 þerwip. ¶ *Embroca[tio]* is seid, whanne a mannes lyme is putt in *Embroca*.
 hoot watir, wijouten ony decoccioun of herbis þeron, & þat hoot
 watir schal be cast vpon þe lyme from an hiz, & so it schal be do
 12 longe, & þis is clepid embrocare.⁵ ¶ *Encatisma* is seid in .ij. *Encatisma*.
 maners: sumtyme it is seid for a clisterie, & sumtyme for a par-
 ticular [þap],⁶ anoon to þe nauele & non aboue þe nauel /
- ¶ Medicyns þat ben compound togidere: Whanne þou entendist² 2. Compound
 16 for to make a lyme coold, & not putte awei þe mater, þou schalt *Medicines*.
 take iys of herbis þat ben coold þre partis, olei rosie oon part,
 of vinegre half a part, & medle hem togidere. If þat þou wolt
 þat it worche more strongly, þan do þerto argillam rubeam / til it
 20 be as picke as it were epithima, & leie it to þe place. & herof þou
 must take kepe, þou schalt vse þingis þat ben able for a mannes *Choose the*
 complexioun / In þis maner if þou leist coold þingis to a place, & 6 & *medicines*
 ne hast not þi purpos þerof, þan þou schalt leue þe coold medicyns, *[5 leaf 245]*
 24 & make medicyns þat ben competent to þe same complexioun / for *according to*
 sum medicyne is for peter þat is not good for poul, for þe diuersite *the patient's*
 of complexioun. & al þis teching þou miȝt fynde generalich in þe *constitution.*
 tretis of enpostyms. / for if peter be of complexioun hoot & moist, *Some medi-*
 28 & poulis complexioun be coold & drie, oon repercussiouȝ wole not *cine is good*
 serue hem boþe in oon point. & for þis cause þou muste diuerse þi *for Peter and*
 medicyns; for þis is al dai preued bi experiment as þou miȝt se *bad for Paul.*
 ofte tyme, þat crassula maior is a good repercussif for coold mater, *Nota.*

¹ See p. 125, note 3.² *oxirocroceum*. Lat. *oxiracroeum*. Matth. Sylv.: "*oxirocroceum*, i. *emplastrum compositum ex aceto et croco*."³ *pultes*, Lat. plur. of *puls*, *tis*. This plur. form used as sing.: Add. 10,440, fol. 23: "*be þer sopen a pinne pultes or gruel of barley*." Compare the plur. form *pultesses*, Gasc. Steel Glas 997 (Skeat, *Et. Dict.*). For *poultice*, see Ital. *pultaceo*.⁴ *embroche*, Traheron Vigo Interpret.: "*Embroche commeth of embrocho, whyche signifyeth to raine. And it is an embrocation, when we drop downe liquour from a hyer place, vpon some parte of the bodye, and vpon the head*." See p. 339, note 1.⁵ Lat.: *dicitur enim clistere, aliquando dicitur particularis balneatio*.

& vmbilicus veneris is coold in þe same degre, & ȝitt it is not so good repercussif for þe same mater /

A medicine if there is a hot diacrasia.

.Ry.

Ry.

.Ry.

[² If. 245, bk.]

If after the use of repercussives, the place becomes livid, apply a cold resolving medicine.

An example how to use repercussives.

Cold matter must be removed with [³ If. 246] hot and dry medicine.

This is a good medicyn repercussif þere þat þer is miche diacracia hoot & litil mater / Ry, sandali albi, spodij, acacie, ana .3. ij, 4 camphore .3. j., opij .3. ß, distempere hem wip þe iuys of a coold herbe, & oile of violet, & a litil vinegre / Item anoþer. Ry, ossa sicca & combusta, cerusam,¹ amidum, ana .3. ij., tempere hem as it is forseid / Item anoþer þat is comoun þat is recordid in manie 8 placis. Ry, boli armenici .3. j., olei ros. 3. ij., aceti .3. j., þat is þat defensif þat is aforeseid in manie placis for to kepe a lyme fro corrupcion. ¶ Also enplastris & epithima, þat ben forseid in doloribus iuncturarum of hoot cause ben good. þerfore ioynne hem wip þese. 12 ¶ Herof þou muste be war, þat whanne þou leist repercussiuus to a place, þere þat þer is miche mater, & if þe place bicomme ledi, þan þou schalt contynue nomore wip pure coold þingis; but do þerto iuys of coriandre grene & barli mele, for þis makip coold & resolueþ. 16 ¶ If þer be no ledi colour but þe mater is greet, & nyle not be doon awei wip repercussiuus, whanne þe flux of humours is acesid, þan biginne for to medle þerwip resolutiuus; ȝitt þou schalt contynue wip repercussiuus þere þat þer is greet akyng / an ensaumple 20 hereof / If þe akinge be in a mannes knee, þan þou schalt first leie medicyns vpon þe knee, & þan aftirward þou schalt not leie it rizt vpon his knee, but a litil aboute his knee, þat þe ende of þe medicyn mowe touche þe firste parti of þe akyng. 24

¶ Coold mater as it is aforeseid, ne schal not be putt awei wip repercussiuus, but wip medicyns þat ben hoot and ³drie in tempere, þat þei mowe wip her heete chaunge þe coold complexioun, & wip her dreines comforte þe vertu of þe lyme, & defeude þat þer 28 come no more mater to þe lyme, & if þe mater be litil, putte it awei, & if þou ne wolt not putte it awei, defende þe place þat þer falle nomore mater þerto⁴ / And alle þese ben hote wip a maner bittirnes: as absinthium, squinantum, abrotanum, polium, sticados, 32 centaurea maior & minor,⁵ aristologia longa & rotunda, mauribium,⁶

¹ MS. *ceresaris*. Add. 15,236, lf. 3: "*Cerusa. flos plumbi id. G. blonc plome A. wyt lede.*"

⁴ Lat.: "*materia ne ad membrum veniat prohibetur et etiam plerumque repellitur si sit pauca, sed etsi non omnino repellitur tamen locum ita deffendit, quod tanta non potest in ipso materia congregari.*"

⁵ Add. 15,236, lf. 3: "*Centaurea. fol terre idem .G. centore .A. oristes laddir.*" ? In Britten and Holland's English Plant-names *Centaury* is at p. 96. *E. P. N.*, p. 37: "*eorð-gealle.*" These names refer to *Centaurea minor*, see *Alphita*, p. 37. *Centaurea maior* = *narce vel gentiana*, *Ibid.*

⁶ *mauribium*, Corp. Gl. M. 43: "*Marubium. bionryt vel hune.*" *Wr.*

- mirta, mastix, lupini, oleum de masticis, & de absinthio / Herof þou shalt take kepe: manie men seien, & it wole liztly be leeued of lewid men, & þat is yuel ping for to leie a repercussif to ony mater
- 4 for to driue it awei, but it is bettir to drawe out þe mater wip enplastis, & if þer comeþ out þerof miche quitture, þei seien þat a mannes bodi is wel purgid þerwip, & schal be longe þe holer þefore / And if þe mater be doon awei wip repercussiuus & þe enpostym
- 8 be defendid, þan if þe same man be sijk aftirward, þan men wolen seie þat it was defeaute in þe leche, for if þe enpostym hadde be maad maturatif ¹ & þe quitture drawe out, þan þe man hadde be hool, & alle þese opiniouns ben false / And þou schalt wite þis cer-
- 12 teynli: if þou takist kepe of þe .x. consideraciouns þat ben forseid in enpostyms, & principali whanne his body is maad clene wip laxatiuis þat ben competent þefore / It is bettir to putte awei þe mater wip comforyng of þe lyme, þan lete þe mater conferme / for
- 16 if þou kepist wel þe condiciouns þat ben aforseid, the mater mai be putt awei, & þe man schal not be peirid //

Many men say, one ought not to remove bad matter by a repercussive, as suppuration purges the body;

Nota

[1 lf. 246, bk.] but they are wrong,

for it is better to strengthen the limb by removing the matter, than to allow the matter to gather.

Of þe maner of resolutiuis.

- 20 **W**Hanne oon strong, or² manye feble of .x. causis lettif repercussiuus, oupir whanne þou hast a repercussif, & þou ne mizt not putte awei þe mater, þan þou muste leie þerto resolutiuis. & as it is aforseid of repercussiuus, in þe same maner I seie of resolutiuis: whanne a man haþ akyng eoupir greet swell-
- 24 ynge, þou schalt leie þerto no resolutiuis, or þou haue maad him a competent purgacioun. ¶ fforwhi, as it is aforseid, enpostym ouper greet akyng comeþ of causis wipinneforþ, þan it mote ⁴ nedis come of repleccioun of þe bodi. & þan if þou leist þerto resolutiuis, þat
- 28 wolde drawe to þe place more mater / for þer is no resolutif, þat ne it is hoot / & eueri ping þat is hoot, is attractif / What schal we do in þis caas? ¶ first þou schalt lete him blood, oupir make him a medicyn laxatif, oupir boþe two, as þou seest þat it wole spede /
- 32 And þan þou schalt bigynne for to resolue wip medicyns resolutiuis þat been hoot & sotil⁵ // This is þe difference bitwixe resolutiuis & maturatiuis: ¶ Resolutiuis haueþ tempere hete wip sotilnes & open-

¶ eo ijo 3 If you cannot use Repercussives, use resolvent medicines.

First give a purgacioun.

[4 lf. 247]

Every resolvent medicine is hot and "attractive," therefore use first blood-letting or purging.

Nota bene.

Wü. 136, 12 (XII. cent.), "*harhune*." Add. 15,236, lf. 5: *Marubium prasi-um idem. G. marole. A. horehune. vel horehound.*"

² MS. of.

³ MS. omits.

⁵ Some passages are omitted, in which Lanfranc quotes from his "*Chirurgia parva*."

ynge.¹ ¶ Maturatiuis haueþ *tempere* hete wiþ *viscosite* / þerfore it
 falliþ ofte tyme, þat whanne þou leist *resolutiuis* vpon miche mater
 & greet, it makip þe mater sotil & hoot, & þan þe kindly hete
 wiþinne is *comfortid* wiþ þe hete wiþoutforþ, & it bifalliþ ofte tyme, 4
 þat medicyns *resolutiuis* in þis caas makip þe mater *maturatif* /
 Also if þou leist *medicyn* *maturatif* vpon litil mater & sotil it
 hetip þe mater, & þe natural hete wiþinne is *comfortid* þerwiþ, & so
 [¶ If. 247, bk.] þe heete multipliþ, & in þis maner þe heete ²mai be resolved. 8
 ¶ The maner of resoluing: Make a decoccioun of herbis of whiche
 þow wolt make þi *medicyn*, & kepe þe watir þat þe herbis ben
 soden yn, & wiþ þe same watir þou schalt waische þe lyme, til it
 bicomme reed, & þan leie þervpon þe *medicyn* *resolutif*. ¶ Herof 12
 þou muste be war, þat ofte tyme a *medicyn* *resolutif* resolueþ þe
 sotil mater, & þat þat is greet, bicomme hard, & þan þe more þat
 þou art aboute to resolve, þe more it wole bicomme hard / þerfore
 þou muste be bisi in þis caas & leie þerto *mollificatiuis*, & þan þou 16
 schalt go to *resolutiuis*, & in þis maner þou schalt worche it til it
 be al resolved. ¶ Of *medicyns* *resolutiuis*, summe ben simple: as,
camomilla, *Mellilotum*, *paritaria*, *malua siluestris* & *alia*,³ *volibilis*,⁴
fumus terre, *caulis*, *anetum*, *vtica*, *enula*, *borago*, *sambucus*, *kebu-*
lus, *valeriana*, & alle herbis þat ben hoot in *tempere*,⁵ wiþ sotilnes.
 ¶ De *seminibus* / *Semina* *caulium*, *aneti*, *vtice*, *malue*. *Semina*
diuretica: *cantabrum*,⁶ *omne*,⁷ *farina orde*, *orobi*, & *fabe* / *Pinguede*
 [¶ If. 248] *porci* & *anser*, *anatis*, *galline*, *aquile*. ¶ De *gummiis* / ⁸*Mastix*, 24
olibanum, *opoponac*, *asa fetida*, *mirra*, *serapinum*, *armonicum*, *bdel-*
lium, *galbanum*, & alle maner sotil *gummiis*: *lapdanum*, *ysopus*
humida, *terbentina*, *cera*, *swetyng* of *bestis*, & *buttir*. ¶ *Medicyns*
resolutif & *compound* of þe forseid, simple þou schalt fynde in þe 28
 nexte chapitre here tofore / þis is an oile resoluinge / & makip hoot
 & *aceessiþ* akyng / R̄, *florum camomille recencium*, *fenigreci seminis*
 ana .ḡ ij., leie hem in xx .ḡ j. of oile of oliue in a glasen vessel,
 & lete it stonde to þe sunne .xl. daies in somer, & þan kepe it for 32

Use the de-
 coction, made
 to prepare
 the resolvent
 medicine,
 first as a
 wash.

Simple re-
 solvent medi-
 cines.

Compound
 resolvent
 medicines.

A resolving
 oil.

R̄


¹ Lat. cum subtilitate aperitiua.

³ The Prints read "siue alba." Add. 26,106, siue *alba* corrected to *alia*. The correct reading is either *alta* or *alte*. Add. 15,236, lf. 5: "*Malua viscus. bismalua. Altea idem. G. Wymauve A. mersmauve.*" *Alphita*, p. 110: "*Malva silvestris, malva viscus, altea . . . alta malva idem.*"

⁴ MS. *volibilia*. *Alphita*, p. 192: "*Volubilis, corrigiola idem, arbores parvas et herbas ligat. gall. [corrigi]ole, angl. berebinde.*"

⁵ Lat. temperate calida.

⁶ *cantabrum*, bran. Add. 15,236, lf. 3: "*Cantabrum .i. grossum furfur tritici vel frumenti .G. la grose breue.*" ⁷ Lat.: omne amilum de ordeo.

- pin vss. If þou haddist nede herof & if it¹ were in winter, þan take þe flouris of camomille dried & fenigrec & oile, as it is aforseid, & sette þis glazen vessel in a caudroun ful of watir, & make fier
 4 vndir, & loke þat þe water ne boile not, & so it schal stonde al a dai in hoot water / & whanne it is coold cole it, & kepe þe oile for þin vss / And in þis maner þou miȝt make oile of *rosis*, if þou hast nede, & oile of *absinthium*, & of rue, & of oþer mo þat þou hast
 8 nede of // **Anoþer oile** þat is resolutif / R̄, olei antiqui .li. j., ^{Another resolving oil.} *seminis aneti nouiter in vmbra siccati* .ʒ. j., putte him in a viol R̄
 fourti daies to þe sunne, ouþer sette it in hoot water ^{as it is aforseid.} [ʒ lf. 248, bk.]
 ¶ Anoþer oile þat is resoluynge and makip hoot & accessip akyng, ^{Oil of lilies.}
 12 & is good for to achaufe a mannys reynes & a wommans maris, & it is clepid *olium de lilio compositum* / R̄, olij antiqui .ʒ. xx., *florum* R̄
liliorum alborum, & kutte awei þerof al þat is zelowe, *cassilaginis*,³ *costi*, *masticis*, *carpobalsami ana* .ʒ. i.,⁴ *cinamoni ana* .ʒ. ʒ., putte alle
 16 pese in a glazen vessel, & lete hem stonde in þe schadowe al a moneþe, & þan do away þe lillie flouris of þe oile, & kepe þe oile for þin vss. ¶ Anoþer oile þat is clepid *olium mastice*, & is swipe ^{Nota}
 resolutif, & is good for febilnes of þe stomac, & it is good for
 20 akyng of a mannes stomac / R̄, *olium oliuarum mediocriter maturarum* .li. ij., *masticis* .ʒ. vj., boile hem togidere in a double vessel, R̄
 til þe mastix & þe oile be dissolued, & kepe it for þin vss. ¶ This þou muste knowe, þat whanne þou wolt make þat, þat schal be
 24 *repercussif* & coold & comfortyng for þe lyme, þan þou schalt chese oile þat is not to ripe, as for to make *olium rosis*, *olium mirtinum*, & oþer mo. If þou wolt make oile þat schal be resoluynge, ouþer
 persyng, þan þou schalt chese oile þat is ripe / And in þis maner ^{Nota}
 28 þou schalt knowe, wheþer þe oile be ripe or no. Oile þat is not ^[ʒ lf. 249]
 ripe, wole be grene, & þat is ripe wole be whit, & þat þat is in þe ^{How to distinguish ripe and unripe olive-oil.}
 meene, wole be meene colour bitwixe þe two. ¶ Oynementis þat
 ben resolutif ben maad in þis maner: of iiij .ʒ. of⁶ oile of camo-
 32 mille ouþer of sum oþer oile & ʒ. j. of wex in somer, & ʒ. ʒ. in  winter, & ʒ. j. of poudre of seedis of aneti, *caulium*, flouris of camomille. ¶ *Ysopus humida* is a good oynement resolutif, & is ^{ysopus humida.}
 maad in þis maner: / Take of þe smal wolfe þat is bitwixe þe
 36 schepis leggis, & take þerof a good quantite, & take as miche water,

¹ if it, above line.² Add. 15,236, lf. 3: "*Cassilago, Tusquiamus idem G. geliner A. henodel. vel henedan.*" The Lat. has *Cassio lignea*, see *Alphita*, p. 35.⁴ *carpobalsamum*, "balsames blood." Wr. Wü., 199, 41 (X cent.).⁶ MS. of twice.

& lete þe wolle ligge in þe watir adai & anyȝt, & þan boile hem a litil wiþ lent fier, & þan cole hem, & whanne þei ben coold, wrynge hem þoruȝ a clooþ, & do þe water þerof into a leden vessel, & boile it wiþ lent fier, & algate meeue it wiþ a spatire til it bicomē picke 4
 as it were an oynement. ¶ Of enplastris þe beste þat is diaculon
 R̃y Rasis þat resoluē scrophulas & glandulas, & makip carbunculis ma-
 turatif & is swiþe comoun / R̃y, olij antiqui de oliuis maturis vncias
 [11. 248, bk.] quinq̃ue, litargiri .ȝ j., & þou schalt poudre þe litarge in a morter & 8
 do þerto ¹þin oile & medle hem togidere, & þan do hem in a vessel &
 boile hem togidere, & meeue hem algatis wiþ a spatire, & do þerto
 de muscillagine seminis lini, fenigreci, ana .ȝ ij, & muscillaginnem
 malue visci .ȝ j, & þan boile hem til þei bicomē picke, & make þerof 12
 gobetis & kepe hem to þin vss, & if þou wolt worche þerwiþ, take
 þerof as miche as þou wolt, & plane it vpon leþer or vpon linnen
 clooþ, & leie vpon þe place. ¶ Diaculon Iohannis Mesue is better
 þan þis / & worchip more strongli. þat þou schalt finde in paruo 16
 compendio. ¶ Also anoþer plastre þat is resolutif / R̃y, maluarum
 siluestrium, paritarie, flouris of camomille, Melliloti ana ʒ. j.,
 boile hem in watir til þei be wel soden, & þan stampe hem, & take
 of þe same watir .iiij. partis, & of sum oile þat is resolutif oon 20
 parti, seminis caulium, aneti partem ʒ., furfuris, farine ordeï, ana
 partem j., boile hem alle togidere & make þerof as it were pultes,
 & þan do þerto of þe herbis þat ben soden as miche as of al þe
 remenaunt, & leie it vpon þe place þat þou wolt, sumdel hoot as 24
 [11. 250] it is aforseid, & seke medicins resolutiuis ²þat ben in paruo com-
 pendio, & do it to, & þan þou miȝt haue medicyns resolutiuis
 ynowe /

A resolving
plaster.

Iohannes
Mesue

R̃y
Another
resolving
plaster.

Of þe tretis of þe foure maturatiuis.

28

¶ If
If resolving
and repercus-
sive medi-
cines have
no effect,
then bring
the matter to
maturation.

Maturing
Simples:

WHanne þou hast resolved mani daies ouþer leid þerto reper-
 cussiuis, & ne is nouȝt worth, saue þe mater wole bicomē
 maturatif, þan if his bodi be avoidid as it is aforseid, þan [begynne]⁴
 for to leie þerto maturatiuis / Eueri medicyn þat is maturatif is 32
 hoot in tempere wiþ a maner viscosite þat wole not suffre þe vapour
 to goon out, but it holdip him wiþinne til it be maturid; & ben
 þese: Malua viscus, branca vrcina, radix brionie, radix lappacii

³ MS. om.

⁴ Lat.: "Quando pluribus resoluisti diebus aut forte percussisti, nec valet, sed materia desiderat maturari, tunc premissis evacuationibus necessariis vel possibilibus, incipe maturare."

- acuti,¹ baucie² Radix, farine frumenti, semen lini, fenigreci, ficus sicce, & alle þat ben forseid in þe nexte chapitre tofore, if þat þei beþ medlid herwip. ¶ This is a good maturatif compound of
- 4 manie pingis þat makip hoot mater maturatif. R̄, foliorum malue nigre, id est comoun malue pinguis seu ortolane, brance vrcine, radix brioni, radice malue visci ana. ʒ .j., seþe hem alle in watir & stampe hem, & þan do þerto malua visci, & þan take of þe same
- 8 watir a pound³ & freisch grese .ʒ .ij., & sotil mele of whete .ʒ .iij., & sotil mele of lynseed & of fenigrec ana .ʒ .j. & ʒ., medle hem togidere & boile hem perʒtli, & make þerof cataplasma, & þan do þerto of þe foreseid herbis & rootis wel grounde, & medle hem
- 12 togidere, & loke þat þei be not to picke / for it schal be algate þin entencioun, þat cataplasma, þat schal be resolutif or maturatif or mundificatif, ne schal not be hard; for if it be hard, it wole make akyng to þe lyme, & þan it wole anoie more þan profite. ¶ Item,
- 16 if þou dredist woodnes of mater, þan þou ne schalt do þerto no fenigrec; for it is swipe hoot, & þerwip þe mater wole be as it were a feuere.⁴ & þerfore I counseile þee þat þou do no fenigrec þerto / If þou dredist, þat þe mater is swipe hoot / if þer be wip þat
- 20 mater ony gretnes or ony coold mater, þan make of þe forseid cataplasma .ij. partis, fermenti de frumento⁵ partem .j., & medle hem togidere. & Isaac seiþ: þat þis is good for mater þat is medlid wip hoot cause & coold cause togidere. ¶ Also a good maturatif / Take
- 24 hony & butter ana, & medle hem with mele til þei be as picke as it were pultes. ¶ Item embrocaciouns in resoluciouns & maturacioun, & is good for akyng of woundis of concussioun in þe heed / concussioun is as miche to seie as smiten wip a staf / R̄, olij ʒ .ij.,
- 28 cere albe ʒ .j., cimini, rute, arthemesie ana. ʒ .ʒ., absinthi, paritarie, brance vrcine, ana ʒ .ij., grinde wel þe herbis & þe grese togidere in a mortar, & þan do þerto poudre of comyn, & oile, & medle hem wel togidere. ¶ Also pultes þat wole make an enpostym
- 32 maturatif: R̄, foliorum malue, bismalue, paritorie, volubilis maioris, iusquiami ana ʒ .ij., seþe hem in a litil watir, & þan presse hem & staumpe hem wel, & þan medle hem wip ʒ .iij. of þe same watir þat þei weren soden ynne, & medle þerwip ʒ .j. of grese, þat it be cold,
- 36 & þarli mele þat suffisip / In þis maner þou schalt make a coold

A compound
maturing
medicine.
R̄

[³ 1f. 250, bk.]

Nota.
Caution
against
Fennil, if
there is any
danger, that
the matter
may get
inflamed.

Isaac.

R̄

[⁶ 1f. 251]

R̄

R̄

¹ MS. *lappa acuta*.

² *baucia*. *Alphita*, p. 21: "pastinaca, angl. widleskirwit."

⁴ Lat.: et cito per illum inflammatur materia.

⁵ MS. *fermento*.

- R̃y mater maturatif / R̃y, cepe unum¹ album, item de capitibus allij, & sette hem vndir askis, & distempere hem wip þe .iiij. part of buttir, & do þerto mele of fenigrek, & of lynseed, & make þerof an enplastre. & do þerto .ij. zelkis of eiren soden hard, & 3 j. off 4 malui visci preparati, & 3 ij. of fermenti. ¶ Also a maturatif of greet mater & coold & hard. R̃y, bdellij, serapini ana 3 j. & fi, & [p. 11. 251, bk.] dissolue hem in vinegre / ²& stampe hem wel, & do þerto .3 j. of terbentyne, & dissolue hem to þe fier / But loke þat it ne boile 8 not, & do þerto oile of lilie .3 ij., & make it picke wip sutil mele of lupinis, & of fenigrec / Item 3 fl. of olibani, & fenigrec maad to poudre sotili poudrid, & medle hem wip .li. fl. of hony ; þis wole be a good maturatif for coold causis. ¶ Also vnguentum tetrafarm- 12 acum,³ & it is clepid of Auicenne basilicon,⁴ & þus manie men preisþ þis medicyn. Galen, Auicen, Serapion, Iohannes Mesue, & Haly þe abbot ; & it makþ enpostymas maturatif, & it is good for woundis, & for vlcera þat ben bicomme hard / R̃y, cere, resine, picis, 16 cepe vaccini,⁵ ana, & olij quod suffisþ / Summen in stide of cepum, þei putten buttir, & summen in winter þei doon þerto oon parti of bdellium, & summen taken oonli ceram, picem, & rasinam ana, & olium ; & þis is basilicon minus. ¶ Also a good maturatif for 20 antracem / & is good for to make a wickid enpostym maturatif, as I haue aforseid in his place / R̃y, ficus siccas bene pingues, numero .vj., vue passe⁶ de corinthio .3 j., duas spicas allij mundatas, piperis grana .xij., salis nitri .3 .ij., stampe alle þese & do þerto coold oile 24 3 ij., aceti 7 3 j., fermenti acerimi as miche as is þe half of alle togidere. ¶ Also a maturatif for antracem / but if he be swiþe hard & malicious, an enplastre maad of hony is good þerfore & of oile of violet. ¶ Also for to make antracem & carbunculum 28 maturatif / R̃y, fermenti acris, lactis mulieris, mellis, vitellorum ouorum ana, medle hem togidere. If þou wolt worche more strongeli, do þerto galbanum dissolued as myche as þe haluendel of oon. & if þou wolt make it more strong, for to make it maturatif, 32 & for to make it breke, þan do þerto culueris dounge & of hennis ana, as miche as wole be .iiij. part of oon, as it is aforseid / baurac,

¹ MS. *vinum*. Add. 26,106, fol. 103 b.: "cepe unum album."

³ MS. *cetrafarozatum*.

⁴ Phillips: "*Basilicon*, a Royal Ointment or Plaister, otherwise called Tetrpharmacon, because it is made up of four Ingredients, viz., Pitch, Rosin, Wax, and Oil."

⁵ Lat.: sepi vaccini.

⁶ *vue passe*, dried grapes, i. e. raisins.

vj. part of oon & ß.; pese .iij. maturatiuis suffisip þee / ¶ Also þis is a rule þat is ful profitable for þee / whanne þou wolt leie ony maturatif to a place: first þou schalt make embrocam¹ to þe lyme
 4 wip a decoccioun of herbis maturatiuis, soden in watir, & wip þat hoot watir þou schalt baþe þe lyme til þe lyme bcome reed, & þan leie þeron a plastre of maturatiuis þat ben forseid oon þerof, for þou hast sufficientli ynowe, & loke þat þe enplastre be not to hard, ²& [¶ 11. 252, bk.]
 8 as hoot as he mai suffre it þou schalt leie it þerto / ¶ Thou hast herd sufficientli of maturatiuis, ynow it is nede to speke of mundificatiuis. For whanne an hard matir is maad maturatif, it is nede for to leie þerto mundificatiuis as it is forseid in þe worching of
 12 enpostyms /

¶ Of þe tretis of mundificatiuis /

Mundificatum is as miche to seie as clensyng, & doiþ awei ^{A mundificative medicine,} hore. & eueri þing þat doiþ awei hore in woundis & super-
 16 fluite, may be seid a mundificatif / A mundificatif may be seid in .ij. maners / As a medicyn þat is taken bi þe moup, ouþer þat is put in bineþe wip a clisterie, ouþer wip a pessarie³ for to make clene ^{may either be taken inwardly or applied by a clyster or pessary.} a mannes lymes wipinne. & of þis kinde ben sirupis maad of
 20 seedis þat makip clene a mannes lymes, & weies of þe vrine / And þer ben summe medicyns þat makip clene a mannes blood as cassia fistula, manna,⁴ tamarindi; & al medicyns laxatiuis mowen be clepid mundificatiuis, & herof is not entencioun in þis caas /
 24 ¶ Anopir. I wole speke of medicyns mundificatif in cirurgie.⁵ & þat is propirli seid a medicyn, þat doiþ awei greet superfluite ouþer gret greuance ^{of} quittance, ouþer remeueþ⁷ awei harde crustis [¶ 11. 252]
 in woundis, ouþir in vlceribus, & makip clene woundis & vlcers of
 28 þat superfluite / ffor as it is seid in anoþer place: In eueri wounde þat is holow, þat is as miche to seie as whanne it haþ lost substance of fleisch þeron, þan bi skille⁸ þer schulde be engendrid þeron .ij. superfluities, þat oon schal be greet, & þat oþer schal be
 32 sotil. & pese wollen lette þe souding of a wounde, & þei wolen

¹ Lat.: prius locum embrocaa. Matth. Sylv.: "Embroca id est infusio quam nos dicimus fomentum & embrocatio id est infusio sed quando ab alto infunditur." See p. 331, note 5.

³ Traheron, Vigo. Interpret.: "Pessarie. Pessus is woll tossed, and made rounde after the fassyon of a fynger wherewith medicines are receyued and conueyed into the matrice."

⁴ MS. manci.

⁵ Lat.: Alio modo loquimur de medicina mundificatiua in cyrurgia.

⁷ MS. renewed.

⁸ Lat. necessario.

lette þat þe fleisch mai not wexe. ¶ þan medicyn mundificatif remeueþ greet superfluite. Of drynge medicyns, we wolen speke in þe chapitre next / This maner medicyn schal go bifore regeneracioun & consolidacioun, of whiche we wolliþ speke hereafter; 4 þouȝ aggregatiua or conglutinatiua come sumtyme for to soude wiþouten þat, þat þis medicyns ne goiþ not tofore, as whanne woundis ben sewid & ben maad hool wiþouten regeneracioun of quittance. þis medicyn makip clene, & driep sumwhat, as water & hony 8 whanne vlcera virulenta bep waischen þerwiþ, ouþir woundis in which agendriþ miche quittance; & sumtyme it is more strong, as [11. 258, bk.] whanne þer bep medlid þerwiþ poudris corosiuis þat han litil ¹vertu of corosiuis, & helpiþ for to make clene, & whanne corosiuis ben 12 seid for to take away yuel fleisch þat ne mai not be taken awei with medicyns /

Therefore I wole sette medicyns bi rule, & first I wole speke of medicyns þat ben simple / ffor as me seiþ .x. sipis rehersid liketh a 16 man.² ¶ Thou schalt wite þis þat woundis þat ben freisch, þer it is no nede for to engendre quittance whanne þer is noon concussiou, neiþer of nerues, ne of boon, ne prickynge, ne þer is noon akyngne þerwiþ / þan it is no nede for to leie þerto mundificatiuis, but onli 20 consolidatiuis / But whanne a wou[n]de is chaungid wiþ þe eir or enpostymed, or greet akyngne, þan þou muste leie þerto maturatiuis; & whanne þe akyngne & þe opere accidentis ben awei, þan þou schalt bigynne for to leie þerto mundificatiuis as it is aforseid in his 24 chapitre / This is a coold mundificatif for to make clene woundis þat ben freisch in which is good quittance. R̄, mellis rosati colati .ḡ. iij., farine subillissime ordeī .ḡ. j., & do þerto a litil water, & seþe hem softli þat þei ne brene not, & algate þou schalt ³meue it 28 wiþ a spatule, & þan make it abroad vpon a clooþ, & leie it vpon þe wounde / This makip clene & comfortiþ / If it so be þat a wounde be in nerues placis, þan it is good for to do þerto a litil ter bentyn waischen, whanne it is doon adoun fro þe fier / for ter- 32 bentyn schal not boile, whanne itt schal be putt into enplastris, for it wole lese his worching in þe boilyng. ¶ Anopir mundificatif þat makip clene duram matrem whanne a man is hurt in þe heed, & whanne dura mater is bicome blac / R̄, mellis rosati 36 colati ḡ j., olij ḡ fl., medle hem togidere. ¶ Anoper mundificatif

If a wound is fresh and not complicated with any contusion, apply only a consolidative medicine. In any other case apply first a maturing and then a "mundificative" medicine.

R̄

[11. 254]

Nota

R̄

² Add. 26,106, fol. 104: "et quum medicine simplices raro ponuntur ad mundificandum, ideo ponam medicamina composita per ordinem, denumerando medicinas simplices, non curando, quoniam decies repetita placebunt."

- pat makip woundis maturatif pat ben to-swolle & ben not to bren-
nyng hoot, but sumwhat toward cooldnes / R̄, mellis rosati colati R̄
.li. ſ., farine fenigreci .ḡ ij., farine ordeī .ḡ j. ¶ **Anoþer mundifi-**
4 catif for vlcera pat beþ newe in enpostyms / Take ʒelkis of eiren R̄
rawe, & medle þerwip whete mele as miche as wole suffice; þis wole
make clene & do aweī þe akynge, & make þe place coold / ¶ **Also**
anoþer mundificatif pat wole make maturatif þerwip, & is good
8 whanne a man wole ¹kutte an enpostym tofore his tyme. & it is [r. 254, bk.]
a propre medicyn for to make clene antrasem & carbunculo & alle
maner pustulis pat ben venymous aftir þe tyme pat þei ben opened,
& it is good for to make clene, vlcera pat ben oold / R̄ mellis albi R̄
12 boni .li. ſ., farine subtilissime tritici .ḡ iij, medle hem togidere in
a panne. & whanne þei ben wel medlid, þan do þerto iuys of
apium .ḡ vij., & þan medle hem wel togidere vpon lent fier, & boile
hem til þei bicomē as it were pultes. & þan do hem adoun of þe
16 fier & stire hem wel, & kepe hem for þin vss / If it so be pat þou
dredist of a cancre or of a festre in vlceribus pat ben oold, & if
þou wolt make a mundificatif þerfore, þan in þe stide of apium do
absinthium, & it wole be good. ¶ **Anoþer mundificatif in vlceribus**
20 pat ben rotid, & whanne þer engendriþ þervpon greet rotyng / R̄, R̄
mellis li. j., farine siliginis .ḡ iij., farine fenigreci, orobi, lupinorum,
mirre, ana .ḡ j., succi absinthij li. j., medle hem alle togidere, &
poudre þingis pat schulen be poudrid, & boile hem sotilli til þei be
24 perfiʒtli boild; & whanne þou doist hem adoun of þe fier, þan do
þerto of terbentyn .ḡ iiij., ²& medle hem wel togidere / Alle þese [r. 255]
mundificatiuis schulen be maad abrood vpon a cloof of lynnen, &
leid vpon vlcus for to make it clene aftir þe tyme pat þei beþ
28 waische, as it is aforseid in þe chapitre de vlceribus / ¶ **A poudre**
pat is mundificatif of crustis & greet fleisch pat is engendrid in
oold vlceribus, & wipoute greet violence of fretyng / R̄, succi affo-
dillorum .ḡ vj., calcis viue .ḡ ij., auripigmenti .ḡ j., medle hem
32 togidere, & sette hem in þe sunne in þe moneþe of august, & on
nyztis do it out of þe eir, & in þis maner þou schalt do til it be
drie, & make herof gobetis, & þan drie hem in þe schadowe. &
þou schalt kepe hem in a vessel of tree in a place pat be not to
36 drie, ne to moist. & whanne þou hast nede þerto, grinde oon þerof,
& leie it vpon þe place. ¶ **Also a good mundificatif for vlcera is**
vnguentum viride, pat is maad of oon part of vert de grece, & .ij. vng^m
partis of hony, medlid wel togidere. ¶ **Also a good oynement for**
40 to make clene, vlcera pat ben hori, & festri, & polipum, & wickid

vng^m
viride

vlcera, & is clepid vnguentum veneris, ouþer vnguentum apostolorum. & it is good for to remeue awei fleisch in vlceris / ¹Ry, cere albe, rasine albe, armoniaci ana .3. xiiij., bdellij, astrologie, olibani gummosi ana .3. vj., galbani, mirre ana .3. iiij., litargiri .3. viij., ⁴ opoponac, floris eris ana. 3. iij.; þe gummys schulen be maad neische in vinegre, & dissolued wip fier þat be lent, & þan do þerto wex dissolued wip li. ij. of oile in somer, & iiij. in winter. & whanne þei ben molten, do þerto þi poudris, & make þerof an oynement. ⁸ ¶ Anoper oynement clensij wel nerues & drawij out þe quittance, & it is clepid mundificatium rasina² / Ry, rasine, mellis, terbentyn ana .li. ð., mirre, sarcocolle, farine fenigreci, seminis lini ana 3 j., dissolue þe rosyn, hony & wex togidere, & þan do þerto þi poudris, ¹² & make þerof pultes. ¶ Also we moten vse medicyns þat ben more strong, & ben clepid medicine cauterizantes, for to make clene vlcera þat ben yuel in neruous place. & þe teching herof þou schalt fynde in þe chapitre de medicinis facientibus opus cauterij. ¹⁶

Of medicyns regeneratiuis & consolidatiuis.

Restorative Medicines

[¹ lf. 256]

are differently named by different authors.

Auioen.

Auioen.

IT pinkij bi þe maner of speche þat þe medicyns þat ben seid in þis chapitre ben al oon, but þer is miche difference bitwixe / ffor ³of summen alle þei ben clepid consolidatiuis. ²⁰ But aggregatiue & consolidatiue ben al oon / And regeneratiue, & incarnatiue, & facientes carnem nasci, ben oon to seie; & þer is greet difference bitwixe hem þat ben forseid & þese / And sigillatiuis, & cicatriatiuis, & consolidatiuis ben al oon; nepeles ²⁴ alle þese names ben not propirli take of alle auctouris / But oon herof is taken for anoper ofte tyme / But for to seie þe soþe, a medicyn þat is clepid aggregatum or conglutinatum, & A. in diuers placis taketh diuersli þese names of medicyns: & I suppose þat it ²⁸ were for defaute of men þat translatid þe science / But for to seie þe soþe, aggregatiua or consolidatiua is a drie medicyne, & hap gummosite in him; & whanne it is leid to þe lyme, it wole resolute wip his drieness. It drieþ vp superfluite of moistnes þat is bitwixe ³² þe lippis of a wounde, wip a litil ligature or sewing it soudij togidere.⁴ & A. clepiþ þis incarnatiuam, & summen clepen it consolidatiuam, & ben þese / Sanguis draconis, calx, thus masculinum

² Lat.: mundificatium de rasina.⁴ Add. 26,106, fol. 105: "superfluam siccat humiditatem que inter duo vulneris labia, per medicum ligatura sola vel sutura conducta, reperitur."

- folia pirorum, pomorum, porri, lilij cortices, palme,¹ arnaglossa, Consolidative
caulia, folia cipressi, folia vitis ²albe, nux recens, folia acetose, [? If. 254, bk.]
pulis molendini, ordeum vstum, flos sorbe, lac acetosum, & opere Simple.
- 4 manie þat ben vnkownen for us / Sumtyme men maden grete Compound
woundis & leiden þervpon manie herbis, & weren hool in þe same Consolidative.
dai; & þei camen for to take of þe same herbis, & ne miȝten noon
fynde þat wolde do so more / **A good medicyn for þis entencioun :**
- 8 Rȝ, frankencense partem vnam, sanguis draconis partes duas, calcis Rȝ
viue partes tres, & make herof poudre; & leie ynowȝ vpon þe .ij.
lippis of þe wounde þat is sewid togidere, as it is aforseid in þe
chapitre of woundis. ¶ Anoper poudre þat is good for þis enten-
- 12 cioun; but in placis þat is myche fleisch aweie, it is nede for to
leie þerto þingis to regendre fleisch, þat we wollip speke þerof soone
heraftir. Rȝ, olibani lucidi, aloes, sanguis draconis ana, make þerof Rȝ
poudre. ¶ Anoper comoun for to streyne blood, & for to soude
- 16 woundis: Rȝ, sarcocolle partes duas, sanguis draconis, balaustie ana Rȝ
partem vnum,³ olibani lucidi partem ſ, & make herof poudre.
- ¶ Medicyns forto regendre fleisch haueþ propriete forto conpile
blood, þat comeþ to þe place wiþ tempere drienes, & makip þerof Medicines
20 ⁴fleisch, & makip clene superfluite þat wexip þeron. & þis is in which pro-
diuers maner / ffor whi, if a lyme be woundid in þat maner þat it mote the
be nede for to regendre fleisch þeron, & þe place is drie, & þer is regeneration
miche quittance in þe wounde, þan it is nede þat þou haue swipe of flesh.
24 drijng⁵ medicyns. ¶ If þat he haue litil quittance & his bodi be Simple
moist, — — alle þese techingis þou hast had tofore.⁵ ¶ Medicyns incarnative
þat ben liȝt þat þou schalt vse þere, þat þer is litil quittance yn mild medi-
moist bodies: Rȝ, thus minutum, mastix, farina ordeï, fenigreci. Rȝ cines,
- 28 And þese beþ sumwhat more drier: aristologie, yreos, & orobum,
aloes, mirra, pix greca, farina fabarum; & more strong⁶ þat þou strong medi-
schalt vse in bodies: astrologia, yreos, farina lupinorum, dragantum cines.
adustum, vitriolum adustum; for if it be brent it wole be þe lasse
- 32 bityng⁷, & his drienes ne schal not be alaskid. ¶ For .vij. causis Nota
diuers þingis ben brent: Summe ben brent, for sum vertu in hem
schulde wexe / And summe þat þe malice þerof schulde goon awei: Substances
as mirabolani, þat haueþ vertu of laxatif, & virtutem stipticam, for are burnt for
36 whanne it is brent his vertu laxatif is maad lasse; & his vertu þat medical use
is clepid stiptica, is neuer þe lasse, but it is þe more. In þe same for several
reasons.
.1.

¹ MS. pullmo.³ sic.⁵ Lat.: si vero pauca fuerit sanies, & membrum & corpus fuerint humida, medicina tunc indiges minus sicca, sicut superius habuisti.

[¶ If. 257, bk.] maner ¹vitriolum lesiþ his scharpnes, & his drieness is not lost /
 .2. The .ij. is pis, þat his greet substaunce mowe be maad sutil, as
 .3. cancri *id est* crabbis þat ben brent / The .iiij. cause is pis, þat it mowe
 gadere scharpnes, as stoonys, oistris, & schellis of eiren, þat ben 4
 .4. brent þat me mai make lyme of hem / The .iiij. is, þat it mowe be
 aparailid for to be grounden, as seta sericum² / & among alle
 medicyns þat ben for þe herte þat mowe be grounde, ben þe beste
 as gold & siluir³ / In pis maner þou schalt digte hem for to grinde / 8
 Seþe hem in sulfur in leed, þat þei mowe þe bettir be grounde /
 .5. The .v. cause is pis, þat þe wickidnes þerof mowe be take awei:
 as of scorpions þat ben brent, þat we mowe vse hem in medicyns,
 .6. þat ben for þe stoon. The .vj. cause is pis, þat his vertu mowe be 12
 maad þe more, as squillis whanne þei ben brent, her vertu wole be
 þe more / The .vij. cause is pis, þat his vertu mowe be take fro
 him: as psillium, whanne it is brent / his vertu wole be þe lasse //
 .7. In what maner þou schalt go fro medicyn to medicyn, þou hast it 16
 [¶ If. 258] pleynerli ynow; in þe first tretis, ⁴boþe simple medicyns & also
 compound / þe whiche þou miȝt vse as þou seest best to done / If
 þou wolt regendre fleisch in a deep put þat vlcus is, take poudre
 of thuris, whanne vlcus is⁵ maad clene, & fille ful þe hole þerof, for 20
 it wole engendre fleisch wel. ¶ In þes vertues, & it is moost
 competent to consolidatif medicyns.⁶ & his gummosite þat is clepid
 thus masculinum ouþer olibanum, & þat is best for medicyns þat is
 conglutinatif, þat ben forseid in þe bigynnyng of pis chapitre. & 24
 þe poudre of him, whanne it is maad smal & falliþ adoun of a
 sarce, is clepid minutum thuris, & þat is best to regendre fleisch.
 Bi pis maner distinceioun þou schalt gadere þe difference of þre
 medicyns þat ben in pis chapitre, & of summen þei ben clepid alle 28
 [consolidatiues]. ¶ The .j. þerof þat is seid conglutinatif, þat
 makip þe lippis of a wounde soude togidere / The .ij. it driþ &
 makip clene, & helpiþ blood for to turne into fleisch / The .iiij. it
 driþ wiþ vertu þat is clepid stiptica, þat makip hard fleisch to 32
 arise in þe stide of skyn. ¶ This is a good medicyn for to regendre
 [¶ If. 258, bk.] fleisch, þat is clepid litargirum nutritum, þat is norischid ⁷as it is

The best
incarnative
medicine
is thus.

One uses its
bark,
its gum;

It is further
used as a
powder,
*Minutum
thuris*

Three kinds
of consoli-
dating medi-
cines.

.1. Conglutina-
tives,
.2. Incarnatives,
.3. remedies pro-
ducing cicat-
rization.

² Lat.: sicut seta aut sericum.

³ Add. 26,106, fol. 105, bk.: quod inter medicinas cordiales fit, quod assa-
tur ut teri possit, et aurum & argentum, que decoquantur cum sulphure . . .

⁵ is, above line.

⁶ Lat.; Et nota quod de thure tria sunt, sive cortex, & illud est siccius
omnibus, & convenit plus in consolidatiuis medicinis facientibus pellem &
cicatrizantibus, quas ita habebis.

- aforseid in þe chapitre de vlceribus. ¶ **Anoper poudre þat engen-** An incarna-
tive powder
and ointment.
driþ fleisch / Take thuris minute, masticis, fenigreci ana, fiat
 puluis. þis poudre regendriþ fleisch wel & drawiþ, & nyle not
 4 suffre þat vlcus schal stynke, but it makþ for to haue a good
 sauour. ¶ **Also an oynement þat is good for to regendre fleisch** /
 R̄, litargiri nutriti ʒ .ij, puluis thuris, sarcocolle, galbani, colofonie,¹ R̄
 ana ʒ .j, medle hem alle togidere, & make þerof an oynement. R̄
☞
 8 ¶ **Anoper poudre**, R̄, radicem malui visci, þat summen clepen²
 sanaticlam,³ & sumen clepiþ it vngaria; & waische it & drie it in a
 furneis in sich maner þat þou ne brenne it not. & þan grinde it &
 make þerof poudre, & leie þerof a good quantite in vlceribus þat
 12 ben holow / for off his owne propriete it engendriþ fleisch, boþe
 bi him-silf & also whanne it is medlid wiþ opere þingis / **Also** R̄
 take of þe forseid poudre ʒ .j, of thus þat be smal ʒ ʒ, vernicis,⁴
 aloes, sarcocolle, masticis, fenigreci ana ʒ .ij, medle hem wiþ þe
 16 þingis aforseid, & þou miȝt make þerof an oynement wiþ oile &
 wex; & do ʒ .j. of þe poudre in ʒ .iiij. of oile, & ʒ ʒ of wex. R̄
⁵And þis þou schalt knowe, þat þere þou puttist poudris, þou [⁶ ff. 250]
 schalt putte none oynementis for to regendre fleisch / But whanne
 20 poudre ne mai not come þerto to þe botme þerof, þan þou muste
 leie þeron oynementis, for þe moisture of þe oile makþ þe poudre
 peerse to þe botme. ¶ **Also þis oynement is good, for it drawiþ**
out quitture / R̄, olij li. ʒ, resine ʒ .j, cere ʒ .ʒ, minute thuris, R̄
 24 fenigreci ana ʒ .ʒ, make herof an oynement & cole it. ¶ **Also**
anoper oynement þat is good for þis entencioun. R̄, consolide R̄
 maioris & minoris, cinoglosse, pilocelle,⁶ plantaginis maioris & mi-
 noris, ana. ʒ .j, vermes terrestres longos, qui dicuntur lumbrici,
 28 li. ʒ; kutte alle þes smale,⁷ & leie hem in li. j & ʒ of oile of oliue,
 & lete hem ligge þere .viiij. daies, & þan boile hem a litil & þan cole
 hem, & do þerto schepis talow maad clene id est molten & colid,
 picis naualis li. ʒ, picis grece ʒ .iiij, armoniaci, galbanum, opoponaci,
 32 terbentine, masticis communis minuti, ana ʒ .ʒ. In þis maner

¹ colofonio, see *Alphita*, p. 42.² clepen, above line.³ sanaticla. See Wr. Wül., 554, 8: "Saniculum, i. sanicle, i. wude-
merch." *Minshew* quotes the following proverb: "Celuy qui sanicle a. de
Mire affaire il n'a. Et qui a du bugle & du sanicle, fait au chirurgien la
nique. He that hath Sanicle, respects not the Poticarie, and he that hath
Sanicle and Cumfrie, makes a iest of the Surgeon."⁴ Halle, *Table*, p. 134: "Out of the Iuniper tree sweateth certeine teares,
in the spring tyme chiefly and therefore called *Vernix*, quasi Vernus roa."⁶ Lat. pilosella. See Wr. Wül., p. 556, 18.⁷ MS. *permale*.

Ry þou schalt make hem : Take armoniaci, galbanum, opoponaci, & dissolue hem in vinegre, & aftirward dis'solue hem in caziola.² & whanne þei ben dissolved, do þerto oile, wex & pich, & þan do þerto alle þe opere þat ben maad to poudre, & þan cole hem & kepe 4 hem for þin vss. ¶ If þou leist þis oynement in þe botme of a wounde, it wole drawe out þe quittance & aswage þe akyng, & it wole make clene & regendre fleisch in vlcera. ¶ This þou muste knowe, þat þou; I sette proporcioun of poudris, & oile, & wex, 8 nepeles þou schalt proporcioun þi þingis more or lasse as þou seest þat þou hast nede þerto. ¶ If a wounde haue miche quittance, & be in a drie place, þan þou schalt do þerto þe more poudre, & þe lasse oile & wex / If it so be þat a wounde be in a moist place, 12 þan þou schalt do þerto þe lasse of þe poudre, & more of þe oile & of þe wex, as it is aforseid. ¶ Medicina consolidatiua, cicatrizatiua, & sigillatiua ben al oon ; & þat ben medicyns þat drieþ þe moisture of a wounde, & makip a rynde aboue vpon þe fleisch, & makip a 16 strong' keueryng' for³ to defende þe fleisch fro harm / And A. seip, þat in vlcera þat is holow, þat þere ⁴ne schal neuere be no skyn engendrid þeron, for þe skyn in a man is engendrid of þe spermis of þe fadir & of þe modir / And alle þe partijs of a man þat ben 20 engendrid oonli of sperme, & þei be kutt' awei, þei schulen neuere wexe azen / And alle þese þingis in a man ben engendrid oonli of sperme, as a mannes skyn, & boonyes & senewis ; & þerfor & þer be ony gobet' kutt' awei of þese, þei ne mowe neuere be regendrid 24 azen, as .A. seip, & it is soop / But in þis caas medicynes mowe helpe for to engendre hard fleisch aboue, & schal be in þe place of skyn, vpon which place nyle neuer wexe here afterward⁵ / ¶ Simple medicyns þat ben in þis caas makyng' skyn vpon a soor þat is 28 clene / **Cortices** arboris, pini, cortices thuris, centaurea combusta, ossa combusta, abrotanum combustum, balaustie, galle, cipressi, psidie, cucurma, rubea maioris combusta, lumbrici terrestres adusti, cathinia argenti & auri, alumen sissum, folia fici, stercus canis 32 comedentis ossa siccata,⁶ aristologia longa & rotunda combusta, es vstum lauatum, & ius medicina⁷ / ⁸Sumtyme we medlide medicyns

The physician has to use his own discretion as to the dose.

Remedies which produce cicatrization.

Amoer

[⁴ If. 280]

Skin which has been destroyed cannot be reproduced.

Amoer

It may be replaced by a hard substance.

Simple medicines.

² Matth. Sylv. : "*Cazola* est quoddam vas." See Ital. *cazuola*. *Tomma. Dict.* ³ MS. *fro*.

⁵ Lat. : "*medicina ista namque adiuuat, vt nascatur caro calosa dura, que est loco cutis, super quam non nascitur pilus.*"

⁶ MS. *sucatum*.

⁷ Lat. : "*et omnis (abbr. ois) medicina, que fit in duabus actiuis propter temperamentum.*"

- conglutinas wiþ a fewe corrosiuis, þat schulen be seid in þe nexte chapitre here aftir / But for to medle medicyns in þis maner, þer mote be miche kunnyng for to proporcioune hem, & summe þerof
- 4 þou muste haue bi experience, & summe of þe knowing of þe mannes complexioun, boþe of his bodi & also of his lyme / Of þe forseid simple medicyns þou miȝt vse hem in powdre, & if þou wolt þou miȝt make oynementis of hem, as it is aforseid / But þe oile
- 8 þat þou wolt make þese oynementis wiþ, schal algate be stipticum, as *oleum rosaceum* & *mirtinum*. ¶ A good composicioun þat þou schalt vse in somer in woundis & in vlcibus þat ben hote, & in euery place þere þe skyn is aweie in a mannes bodi, of riding, eiþir
- 12 of pustulis, or of fier, or off hoot watir, & it is clepid vnguentum *Rasis* *vng= Rasis*
Rasis, þat is maad in þis maner: Rȝ, oliȝ ro. ȝ iiij, cere ȝ ß, in þese Rȝ
 regionns þat ben hoot &¹ in somer ȝ .ij, & aftir þe region þou schalt do þerto dyuers quantite of wex, ceruse ȝ .j, camphore ȝ .j,
- 16 þe whitis of ij. eggis. þou schalt make it in þis maner / first þou schalt grinde .ij. almaun²dis blaunchid & stampid in a morter, & þan do out þe almaundis þat ben to-broke of þe morter, & make clene þe morter; & þan leie þeron camphore, & grinde it smal; &
- 20 þan do þerto ceruse, & grinde it smal; & þan do þerto oile, & grinde hem wel togidere wiþ þe pestel. & whanne it is almoost coold, þan do þerto .ij. whitis of eiren, & meue hem wiþ a sclise longe, for þe more þat þei ben stirid togidere þe bettir it wole be /
- 24 Summen doon þerto ceruse wiþ þe forseid quantite of oile & wex, and camphore & whitis of eiren ȝ .v, litargiri ȝ .iiij. & þis is a good consolidatif, but it makip coold. & if þou wolt do þerto litarge, do more or lasse as þou seest þat it is to done // ¶ This is a
- 28 good poudre for þis entencioun / Rȝ, aloes, *balaustiarum*, cathinie *Rȝ*
argenti, eris vsti triti,³ & lauati partes equales; make herof sutil poudre, & herof leie vpon þe place þere þou wolt haue þe skyn. ¶ Anoper poudre þat is more strongr þan þis / Rȝ, aloes, Rȝ
- 32 *cucurmie*, *vermium terrestrium combustorum*, *balaustiarum*, mirre, *gallarum*. ¶ A good oynement / Rȝ, fecem *argenti* ȝ .xxx, Rȝ
merdam ferri, cymolie ana ȝ .vij ⁴& ß, cathinie *argenti*, ceruse, [⁴ ff. 261, bk.]
litargiri, *plumbi vsti* ana ȝ .v, argille rubie ȝ .x; medle hem alle
- 36 wiþ oile of ro., & make an oynement, & it is clepid vnguentum de palma. ¶ Also anoper þat G. made, þat wole soude vlcera þat ben coold & yuel for to hele / Rȝ, *adipis porci antiqui sine sale id est* Rȝ
freisch swynys grese molten, & colid þoruȝ a cloop / oliȝ li. j & ß,

¹ MS. om. *ȝ*.³ MS. *certis*.

Compound medicines.

An ointment to be used in hot countries and in summer.

Direction how to make it.

[⁴ ff. 261]

Two powders.

Consolidating ointment prescribed by Galien.

- litargiri li. ß, calamenti¹ 3 .iiij; make it in þis maner: grinde
 R̃y litargirum & calamentum in a morter, & do þerto a litil & a litil of
 oile & grese, molten togidere / ¶ Also: R̃y, spatulam id est quæ fit de
 palma viridi, & þe middil þerof aboue kutt smal to gobetis, & do it 4
 in þi medicyn, & wiþ þe half of þe opere medicyns medle þis
 medicyn; þis is good for to regendre & soude togidere. ¶ Anopir
 medicyn þat is good for to regendre fleisch & make clene &
 soude, & is clepid medicamen Iohannis Mesue, þat is maad in 8
 þis maner / R̃y, pistatiue & resine,² panni albi vetusti 3 .j, opopo-
 nacum 3 .ij, vini, mellis, olij ro. vel mirtini 3 .x, litargiri, aloes,
 sarcocolle, mirre, ana 3 .ß, make herof an oynement; þis wole
 [¶ 12. 262] regendre & hele woundis þat ben ³wickid & yuel for to hele, & þis 12
 medicyn is as good as þat, þat is sett in þe chapitre de vlceribus
 virulentis; þis makip clene, & driep & regendriþ fleisch, þerfore
 ioyne þat & þis togidere. ¶ Also an oynement þat Maister
 R̃y william someris⁴ made / R̃y, rasinam albam & liquefactam in vino 16
 Ointment of
 resin.
 acerimo, & cole þe wijn & þe rosyn togidere into coold watir, &
 anoynte þin hondis, & tempere it wel in þin hondis, & kepe it, &
 if it be in somer do þerto half so miche of whit wex; make þis
 abroad vpon a lynnen cloof, & leie it vpon þe wounde, & þis wole 20
 R̃y drie wel. ¶ Item: R̃y, olij ro. 3 .iiij, rasine 3 .ij, cere 3 .j, nucis
 Direction for
 the applica-
 tion of con-
 solidative and
 regenerative
 medicines.
 cipseissi, cucurmie ana 3 .j, make herof a gobet & kepe it; þis
 is more worþ þan apostolicon Nicholai. ¶ The maner of worching
 of þese medicyns, þat of summen ben clepid consolidatiuis, schal 24
 be do in þis maner / The firste dai þat a wounde is maad, & þou
 hast brougt þe lippis of þe wounde togidere with sewinge ouþir wiþ
 sum oper maner, þan leie þerto of þe firste medicyn, þat is clepid
 conglutinatif, vpon þe place þat is sewid, & leie þerof ynow 3; & 28
 [¶ 12. 262, bk.] þan þervpon leie a lynnen cloof ⁵wet in whitie of eiren, & þan leie
 þerto defensiuus & opere necessarijs til þe lippis of þe wounde be
 soudid togidere faste. ¶ The .ij. medicyn, þat is clepid regenera-
 tium, þat schal be leid in vlceribus & in depe woundis, for to 32
 regendre fleisch. ¶ At þe laste þou schalt leie consolidatiuis, or þe
 fleisch wexe to hize; & but if þou do þus, þou muste leie corosiuis
 for to frete awei þat fleisch þat is woxe to hize, & þat is double
 traueile & also vnkunnyng of þe leche. ¶ Thou muste knowe wel 36

¹ *calamentum*, a mistake for *calcantum*. Phillips: "Calcanth a Chymical word, being the same as Vitriol."

² Lat.: rasure vel pistature.

⁴ I cannot find a physician of this name. Perhaps it is *Gulielmo Corri*, author of the *Tractica*, who was a friend of Lanfranc. *Hæser* I, p. 710.

where & whanne þou schalt vse þese medicyns, & in þis maner þou schalt folowe þe riȝt rule of medicyns, & þan þi medicyns wolip worche as þei schulde /

4 ¶ Of medicyns cauteratiuis & corrosiuis /

- C**Orrosiuis & cauterizatiuis we vsip in cirurgie in manie causis, Simple caustics. & of corosiuis summe ben feble, & summe ben strong, & summe beþ more stronger / These ben feble, hermodactilis, aristologia, brionia, gencina,¹ vitriolum adustum, & þese haueþ moost vertu in moist bodies. ¶ More strong ben þes : vitriolum not combustum, tapsia, pees milui,² ^{Strong caustics.} ^[? If. 263] apium rampnum,³ cortex viticelle⁵ / And þese ben more strong : flos eris, viride eris, es vstum, arsenicum, sulphur. ¶ Also þese ben more strong : calx viua maad of stoonis, & of schellis of eiren & oistris, & strong lye, & arsenicum sublimatum, & watir maad of þese þingis ; & of þese medicyns þou miȝt make medicyns boþe simple & compound, whiche þou miȝt vse whanne þou wolt take awei deed fleisch, more strong & lasse strong as þou seest þat it is nede þerto. ¶ Of medicyns þat ben compound I wole telle þee a fewe, for of simple medicyns þou miȝt compound manie. ¶ **A poudre þat wipouten ony greuance & 12 liȝtli fretiþ awei deed fleisch /** R̄, viride eris, hermodactulorum, aristologia rotunda, make þerof poudre & kepe it in a drie place, & whanne þou wolt do awei deed fleisch / Take lynet eiþer lynnyn cloop, & wete it with þi spotil & leie it in þe poudre, & turne it vp 24 & doun, & leie it vpon þe place. ¶ Thou schalt attende superfluite of fleisch⁶ in .ij. maners / In oon maner superfluite of fleisch as of clene fleisch þat wexiþ tofore aboue a wounde, & þis is ^{Innocent ex-} ^{crecences.} ^[? If. 263, bk.] clepid superfluite of good fleisch / In an oþer maner we clepiþ superfluite of 28 fleisch þat is medlid wiþ quittance, & is liquide, & þis cometh in defaute of þe leche, whanne he leiþ regeneratiuis to a wounde ouþir to ony þing til it be perfitli clene, so þat þe newe fleisch & þe quittance wexiþ forþwiþ / In þe firste cause is noon nede of oþer 32 medicyn, but a simple corosif⁸ þat fretiþ wipouten violence awei þe fleisch þat is woxen to hiȝ aboue þe wounde. ¶ In þe .ij. cause it is necessarie for to haue a medicyn corosif & clensynge as it is

¹ Lat. : gentiana.

² MS. *vulpi*. Pes milui "crow-foot."

³ *Alphita*, p. 11: "*Apium ranarum* siue *apium rampnum* crescit in pratis . . ." See *rampinus*. uncus.—Duf.

⁵ Wr. Wül., 138, 28: "Viticella, wipwinde."

⁶ *fleisch* in margin.

⁸ MS. *corosip*.

⁷ Each requires its own treatment.

A corrosive
powder of
caustic lime
and arsenic.

R̄

aforseid in þe chapitre off mundificatiuis. ¶ Anopir good poudre þat remeueþ awei superfluite of fleisch & rotid fleisch & crustons¹ / R̄, calcis viue ʒ. ij, arsenici ʒ. ij., succi affodillorum radice ʒ. vj., medle hem togidere & make þerof gobetis & kepe hem & 4 drie hem in schadowe & kepe hem in a drie place, for in a moist place it wole rotie anoon. & whanne þou hast nede for to vse ony herof, þan make þerof poudre & leie it vpon þe place. ¶ Also an oynement þat is clepid vnguentum viride & is a list corrosif, & 8 makip ²superfluite of rotid fleisch & is maad in þis maner. R̄, mellis partes .ij., viride eris partem vnam, & medle hem togidere.

vag^o viride
[² ff. 264]

R̄

An ointment
to cleanse
ulcers.

R̄

¶ Also anoþer vnguentum viride þat makip clene & regendriþ good fleisch in vlcibus þat ben olde, & fretiþ awei wickid fleisch wipouten violence / R̄, celidoyne radice, alleluya,³ folia centrum⁴ galli, leuistici agrestis, scabiose, ana ʒ. j., grynde wel alle þese herbis togidere wip .li. j. of schepis talowe & .li. j. of oile, medle hem togidere, & lete hem ligge .x. daies & rotie, & þan do 16 hem to seþing on þe fier til þe herbis falle to þe botme, & þan cole hem, & do þerto wex, terbentyne, ana ʒ. ij., colofonie ʒ. j., masticis, olibani, ana ʒ. ʒ. ʒ. viridis eris ʒ. j. þat schal be do in in þe ende of þe boilyng, & medle hem wel togidere, & make þerof an oynement. 20

An ointment
to be applied

R̄

on fistulous
and cancer-
ous sores.

¶ If þou wolt make a stronger medicyn for to alee a festre & a cancre / R̄, vitri albi combusti, sulphuris viui, viridis eris, galle, attramenti, vitriole viridis, ana ʒ. ʒ. ʒ. auripigmenti foliati ʒ. ij., make herof poudre, & distempere hem wip strong vinegre & lacte 24 anabulle⁵ til it be as picke as it were hony, & sette it to þe sunne

[² ff. 264, bk.]

⁶in somer, & lete it drie. & if it be in wintir þou miȝt drie it wip lent fier, and whanne it is drie poudre it aȝen, & tempere wip þe forseid licour, & þan drie it aȝen, & þus þou schalt do .iiij. siþis ouþir 28 .iiij. & þan make poudre þerof & kepe it in a drie place. ¶ Anoþer poudre þat driep a cancre & a festre, & remeueþ superfluite of

A corrosive
powder.

R̄

fleisch / R̄, radices brionie ʒ. v., tapcie, laureole, esule, ana ʒ. ij., ciclamini, yreos, aristolochie, longe & rotunde, hermodactulorum, 32 affodillorum radice ʒ. j., & herbarum celidonie, leuistiche agrestis, buglosse, summitates oliuarum, & mirte ana ʒ. j., tempere þe herbis & þe rotis in vinegre bi .iiij. daies, & þan seþe hem & cole hem, & take þat licour þat comeþ þerof, & seþe it & caste þeron quik lyme 36

¹ crustons, O.Fr. *croston*.

² *Sin. Bart.*, p. 10: "Alleluia. i. *nodesour*."

⁴ *Alphita*, p. 38: "*Centrum galli gallitricum* . . . *nux muscata*." Wild Sage, Cancerweed.

⁵ *Matth. Sylv.*: "*Anabulla* est species titinalli." Compare *Alphita*, p. 9.

- poudrid sotilli li. j., & medle hem wel togidere, & at þe laste do þerto auripigmenti ʒ. iij., & medle hem wel togidere, & make þerof gobetis & kepe hem in a drie place, & whanne þou hast nede þerto, 4 grynde oon þerof, & leie þe poudre þerof vpon þe place þat þou wolt haue frete. ¶ **Anopir poudre of þe same kynde.** R̄, arsenici rubri & citrini, calcis viue, aluminis¹ de pluma, gallarum nouarum ana, grynde hem with vinegre² & medle hem & drie hem, & kepe hem 8 as it is aforseid / ¶ A strong medicyn þat is as strong as oni fier, & vnquenta ruptoria þat mortifieþ quyk fleisch & etip it, & oon herof is riztt strong & is a poudre maad bi sublimacioun. R̄, limature ferri, vitrioli viridis, alumen iamini, antymonij ana ʒ. ij. salis armoniaci, 12 arsenici citrini, sulphuris viui³ extincti cum salia, & tempere hem wip vinegre, oupir wip watir, oupir wip strong lye, & þe lie wole be þe bettir if it be maad wip bene scelis, & þan drie it & putte it in alutel⁴ & sublime it / This is þe maner of sublimacioun / loke þou 16 haue a strong vessel maad of glas þat it mowe dure in þe fier, oupir a vessel of erþe wel glased wipinne, & loke þat þe couerle þerof & þe bodi be wel closyng, & do þerin þi poudre, & lute it wip good lute, & sette it in a furneis & make lizt fier half adai, & þan 20 do out thi fier, & whanne it is coold opene-it, & þat, þat leueþ in þe botme of þe vessel caste it out, & þat, þat cleueþ faste to þe couerle aboue, take it & kepe it, & if þou wolt worche þerwip þou muste worche ful quentliche, for it wole⁵ brenne as strongli as fier, 24 & wole make impressioun in depnes þan fier. þis poudre wole cor- rumpe & brenne þe place þat it is leid vpon, & þe same doiþ realgar sublimed, & if þow wolt ouercome þe wickidnes of it, make poudre of it & distempere it wip þe iuys of lactuce & plaunteyn til it be 28 in pickenesse of hony, & þan drie it, & þus þou schalt do manye tymes / & in þis maner þou schalt take awei greet malice, & it wole worche neuer þe worse. ¶ Also an oynement ruptorie for to breke fleisch þat is hool & maketh blak & brenneþ it, & wole make it 32 falle awei, & þan þer wole leue þere vlcus. Manie men vsip þis in diuers maner, for to opene an enpostym, & for to do awei superfluite of fleisch. R̄, quik lyme as miche as þou wolt, & resolute it in R̄

R̄

[² li. 285]Nota bene.
Escharotics,
medicines as
strong as fire.

R̄

A corrosive
sublimate.Nota
The process
of sublima-
tion.[⁵ li. 285, bk.]A burning
ointment
made of
quick-lime.

R̄

¹ *Hallo Table*, p. 9. *Alumen de pluma* = *Alumen Liquidum*.² a caret is placed here and this added later, but does not follow on:—

flos eris ana ʒ j ʒ

calsis viue G ʒ

argenti vii. ʒ j. [in margin.]

⁴ Castelli: "*Aludel* vel *Alutel* vocatur Vitrum sublimatorium." Arab. al-outhal (*Devic. Dict.*). A vessel used in sublimation.

strong^r lie þat is aforseid, and make þerof þe maner of an oyne-
ment, & whanne it is maad, al freisch leie it þerto, for þe more
freisch þat it is þe bettir it is / In þis maner þou schalt make þe
lie / ffile a vessel ful of askis of bene scelis, & þe .iiij. part^r of quik⁴
[² 11. 266] lyme, & poudre hem alle togidere & leie hem in ¹a vessel & presse
hem þat þei bicomē fast togidere, & make a put in þe middil aboue,
in þe same put caste hoot watir seþing, & þis vessel schal be
holowe þat þe lie mowe passe þoruȝ. & vndir þis vessel sette anopir⁸
vessel for to resseyue þe lie. ¶ Also anopir good ruptorie / R^r,
calcis viue, partem vnam, arsenici, partem ſ., poudre hem & medle
hem wiþ sope & hony, & summen doiþ þerto li .ſ. of tartre / Also
mel anacardi is swiþe strong^r for to make vlcera. & if it be do to l^r
opere medicyns it^r worchip þe more strongli / In þis maner þou
schalt do / whanne þou ne miȝt fynde mel anacardi, þan grinde
anacardos greet & leie hem in vinegre adai & anyȝt, & þan boile
hem wel, & þan presse out þe licour þerof, & þat, þat goiþ out¹
þerof is a medicyn þat wole make vlcera. / Oupir take anacardos &
seþe hem in hoot tenaclis þat smiþis vsen, & streyne hem, & þer
wole distille þerof hony. ¶ Also take þe wombis of cantarides &
grinde hem wiþ leueyne & leie hem in what place þou wolt & it²
wole make vlcera / But herof þou muste be war þat in what place
þou settist cantarides þer² wole come greet brennyngē of vrine, &
sumtyme it makip so greet brennyngē þat a mannes vrine is stoppid
þerwiþ. & þe cure þerof is þis / Seþe malue, paritorie, violet, watir-²
cressen in watir, & lete þe patient sitte þeron anoon to þe nauēle, &
herwiþ þe akynge schal be taken awei, & also he schal make vrine
liȝtlich / & herof þou schalt take hede, þat in what place of
a mannes bodi þou makist a cauterie, anoon þeraftir þou schalt leie²
a mitigatif þat schal make þe cruste falle awei þat was brent, & þou
ne schalt in no maner take awei þe cruste wiþ violence, but þou
schalt leie þerto a mitigatif, & lete þe cruste falle awei liȝtli.
¶ Medicyns þat wolen make þe cruste falle awei, & do awei þe³
aking, ben þese: ȝelkis of eiren wiþ oile of rosis, þat is þe beste
of alle medicyns / Also, take þe leeuēs & grinde wiþ grese, ouper
wiþ buttir & leie þerypon / Also grese oupir buttir is good þer-
fore. ¶ Also pultes maad of mele, oile & watir, ben good þer-
fore & accessip wel þe akynge & makip þe crustis falle. ¶ Also
[³ 11. 267] wiþ þe cauterie of an hoot iren þou miȝt³ do awei deed fleisch,
oupir wiþ oon of þe medicyns þat ben forseid. ¶ Also if þou wolt

³ MS. *de arrei*, twice, the second one marked for erasure.

R^r
A caustic
ointment
made of
quick-lime
and arsenic.

Cantarides.

[² 11. 266, bk.]
The applica-
tion of can-
tarides
excites
strangury.
dubium
Treatment.

vse medicyns for to make cauterijs, þou muste take kepe of þis
 caas / In feble men & in a litil cause þou muste vse feble medicyns,
 & þou muste be war þat þou brenne no nerue ne no greet veyne ne
 4 noon arterie wip þi cauterie, ne wip þi medicyns þat makij cauterijs. Nerves and great blood-vessels must not be cauterized.
 ¶ Also in a strong man & in a boistous man, þou miȝt worche at
 oonys þat þou muste worche at manye tymes in a feble man / ffor
 in every medicyns þat a leche doiþ he schal take kepe of the Use caustics according to the patient's strength.
 8 strenkþe & of þe vertu of þe pacient //

Of mollificatif medicyns or softenyng.

WE vsij þese medicyns þat ben .iiij. in eueri cause.¹ Oon cause
 is þis, whanne þe mater þat þou wolt resolue is swiþe hard,
 12 for þan oonli wip resolutiuis as it is aforseid þe sotil mater wole
 resolue, & þat opir part wole bicomme hard, & þan þou muste make
 mollificatiuis. ¶ The .ij. cause is þis, whanne ony lyme is to-broke
 ouþir out of þe ioyncte, þouȝ it be broȝt² yn aȝen, þe place wole be
 16 hard, & þe patient mai not meue þerwip, þan þou muste do³ þerto
 mollificatiuis til þe lyme be bettere as it is aforseid. ¶ The .iiij.
 cause is þis, whanne ony lyme þat haþ ben out of ioynct longe
 tyme, þan þou muste make þingis forto make þe place moist aȝen,
 20 þat þe boon mowe come into his ioynt aȝen. ¶ The .iiij. cause is,
 whanne a lyme is corrupt & is yuel ioyned, & makij al þe lyme foul,
 as whanne a boon is to-broken & is not ioyned, þan þou muste breke
 þe boon aȝen, & bringe it into his propre place as it schulde be /
 24 In alle þese causis we mote vse medicyns þat ben mollificatiuis, as
 ben þese: camomille, mellilotum, fenigreci, semen lini, & almaner
 fatnes, & marowe, & manie gummis, & every medicyn þat is hoot
 & moist wole make a lyme mollificatif / **A good composicioun for**
 28 **þe firste cause** / Take cold oile .iiij. partis, wex partem .j., & make
 þerof an oynement, and anoynte þerwip a lyme þat þou wolt resolue
 þe mater þat is þeron / ffor it wole make þe mater mollificatif, & An ointment of oil and wax.
 make þe poris⁴ open to resolucioun // **Anoper þat is more strong** / [4 ff. 289] A stronger emollient.
 32 Rȝ, radicis malua visci 3 .j., & kutte it to smale gobetis, & putte
 hem in a morter wip 3 .iiij. of oile of lilie. & þou schalt sett þis
 vessel of glas in hoot boilyng watir, & þere it schal stonde til þe
 iuys of þe herbe be consumed. Wip þis oile þou schalt anoynte þe
 36 place, & leie þervpon lanam succidam id est wolle vnwaichen. & þis

¹ Lat. : Mollificatiuis vtuntur medicinis in quatuor casibus.

³ do, above line.

Directions
for fomenta-
tion.

pou schalt wite, þat whanne pou wolt make þese oynementis, first pou shalt make a fomentacioun wiþ hoot watir til þe place bicomē reed. & if þe place be swithe hard, þan take a stoon þat is clepid lapis molaris, & make him hoot in þe fier, oupir a greet gobet of 4 iren, & do it in strong vinegre. & þe place of a mannes lyme þat is hard, holde ouer þe fume þat comē out of þe vinegre, & þan anoynte him aftirward / þis is þe maner for to make a lyme mollificatif, & þer ben .iij. maners.¹ þe .j. maner is þis: pou schalt make 8 a decoccioun of flouris of camomille, mellilote, fenigrec, semen lini, & rootis of malua visci, soden in water. & pou schalt ²make a fomentacioun to þe lyme in þis watir longe tyme, & frote þe lyme softli. & þan anoynte þe lyme wiþ oon of þese oynementis / R̄, 12 auxungie porci antique sine sale 3 .iij, pinguedinis anseris, anatis & galline ana 3 .j., melte hem alle togidere & cole hem, & do þerto 3 .j. of wex. þis wole make mollificatif, & restore moistnes. & if pou wolt make it for to be good for drienes of a mannes brest, & 16 good for men þat ben etik, do þerto 3 .j. of clene dragaganti, & þan it wole be a good oynement restoratif. ¶ Anopir oynement.

R̄ R̄, adipis porci antique sine sale 3 .iiij., fecis olij de semine lini, bdellij ana 3 .ij., storacis, calamite, gallani, oppopanacis, armoniaci, 20 ana 3 .j. putte þe gummys in wijn for to temperē, & whanne þei ben temperid, putte hem in a morter, & stampe hem wel, melte þe remenaunt, & do hem togidere, & medle hem togidere. ¶ Also an oynement mollificatif & confortip / R̄, auxungie porci 3 .iij., 24 pinguedinis anseris, anatis, galline, ana 3 .j. olis communis antiqui 3 .iiij. farine fenigreci, seminis lini, ana 3 .j., bdellij, oppopanacis, masticis, thuris 3 .ij., tempere þe gummis ³in wijn, & þan aftirward medle hem wiþ grese, wex, & oile, & melte hem alle togidere & cole 28 hem. & of þese þingis þat schulen be grounde make poudre þerof, & medle it þerwiþ & kepe it for þin vs. & whanne pou hast maad a stuwe as it is aforseid oupir a fomentacioun, þan anoynte him bi þe fier, & þis is clepid vnguentum Rasis. & I it haue ofte preued ouer 32 more goddis grace goinge tofore wiþout which grace is no þing ful-endid ne no sijknes do awei / But eueri good ende & eueri good dede al it comē of þe miȝt of god / And þe help of god I had in þe firste bigynnyng of þe book / ffor of goddis grace I am þat I am, 36 & goddis grace was neuere voidē in me / And þe ende of þis book was fulfillid þe noumbre of ȝeeris from goddis beyng .M.CC. nonagesimo sexto. & god of his swete grace ne wernede me not to make

¹ Lat.: modus autem mollificandi membra in 2°, 3° & 4° casu est unus.

An ointment
to be applied
on consump-
tive people.

vngm
Rasis

God has
helped me
throughout
my work,
and this book
has been
finished in
1296.

an ende of þis book. & ful ofte I haue bede goddis grace þerto /
 wherfore god haþ grauntid, & god for his blessid name blesse þis
 book & alle werkis þat ben wrouȝt in his name / <sup>God may
bless this
[11. 289, bk.]</sup> ¹ And god for his
 4 miche grace lete hem wel worche þat takip þis werk on honde, &
 bringe errouris out of her herte, & bringe hem & us to a good
 ende / To þe worschip of his blessid name & profit of his ser-
 uauntis, & me to forȝeuenes of my synnes, god it graunte et imperat
 8 per omnia secula seculorum AmeN.

Explicit.

Here endip þe book of lankfrank.²

² In red ink, but nearly erased.

I

Here bigynneþ a table of þe chapitris of þe book of
lankfrank //

[leaf 270]

The firste book conteyneþ .xv. chapitris /

- 4 The .i. c°. is maad of alle vniuersal woundis & vlcers [p. 31]
 The .ij. c°. is of woundis maad in þe fleisch / [p. 33]
 The .iiij. c°. is of woundis maad in senewis / [p. 39]
 The .iiij. c°. is of woundis maad in boonys / [p. 47]
 8 The .v. c°. is of woundis maad with strokis or kuttinge / [p. 50]
 The .vj. c°. is of woundis with postyms, & yuel discrasiam / [p. 54]
 The .vij. c°. of woundis maad of arauyschyng^t hound, or of þir
 venymous beest / [p. 59]
 12 The .viij. c°. is of curis of woundis which folowip brekyng^t of
 boonys / [p. 62]
 The .ix. c°. is of flux of blood of woundis / [p. 64]
 The .x. c°. is of dietyng^t of woundid men / [p. 72]
 16 The .xj. c°. is of vlcers / [p. 77]
 The .xij. c°. is of fistulis / [p. 89]
 The .xiiij. c°. is of cancris / [p. 92]
 The .xiiij. c°. is of causis & lettyngis of sowdyng^e of woundis &
 20 vlcers / [p. 97]
 The .xv. c°. is of spasmus aboue comynge on woundis // [p. 99]

The .ij. book conteyneþ vndir o summe .x. c°.

- The .i. c°. is of woundis of þe heed, & his anothamia / [p. 106]
 24 The .ij. c°. of curis of woundis in þe face & of membrs þat ben [leaf 270, bk.]
 conteyned in hem / [p. 141]
 The .iiij. c°. is of woundis in þe necke, and of anothamia [p. 145]
 The .iiij. c°. is of woundis of þe splet boonys of þe arme & of þe
 28 hondis, & anothami / [p. 155]
 The .v. c°. is of woundis in thoracis & membrs conteyned in
 hem / [p. 161]

The .vj. c°. is of curis of woundis of þe spine ouþir spondilium.

[p. 166]

The .vij. c°. is of woundis of þe stomac & entrailis & wombe, & anothamia /

[p. 167]

The .viij. c°. is of woundis of þe lyuere, splen, reynes, & þe bladdre & anothamie /

[p. 171]

The .ix. c°. is of woundis of þe 3erde and placis aboute it

[p. 173]

The .x. c°. is of woundis of þe haunche & grynde & feet, & anothamie /

[p. 176]

The .iiij. book conteyneþ .viij. chapitris /

The .i. c°. is of makynge of fair heer /

[p. 178]

The .ij. c°. is of lesynge of heer, or calowznes or allopucie

[p. 180]

The .iiij. c°. is of smale puschis and scalis and crustis /

[p. 188]

[leaf 271] The .iiij. c°. is of clooph and fracilis, & gowte roset & 3olowisch /

[p. 189]

The .v. c°. is of smirtyng, scabbe, & icche /

[p. 191]

The .vj. c°. is of þe morphu & impetigine /

[p. 193]

The .vij. c°. is of lepre & of domys of lepre /

[p. 196]

The .viij. c°. is of smelnes of membris & leene /

[p. 199]

The .iiij. bok þe ij doctrinis, þat is of enpostyms, & conteyneþ :

.xviij. chapitris.

The .i. c°. is of generacioun of humours and her kyndis

[p. 201]

The .ij. c°. is of enpostyms & of sermouns þat of

[p. 204]

The .iiij. c°. is of enpostyms in þe heed, & of galerynge in þe hedis of children /

[p. 214]

The .iiij. c°. is of enpostyms of rotis of þe eeris

[p. 216]

The .v. c°. is of enpostyms of þe necke, and of þe þate

[p. 217]

The .vj. c°. is of enpostym subtilite

[p. 222]

The .vij. c°. is of enpostym of þe helpeis aboute þe spondilis

[p. 223]

The .viij. c°. folowip of þe same before

[p. 224]

The .ix. c°. of enpostym appering in þe mouþ of þe stomak

[p. 226]

The .x. c°. is of an enpostym in i3e gnyne of gnylis

[p. 226]

The .xi. c°. is of enpostyme of þe haunche &

[p. 227]

The .xij. c°. is of enpostym of þe 3ole & ball

[p. 228]

The .xiiij. c°. is of serpyntis & glandulis

[p. 229]

- The .xiiij. c°. is of þe cure of þe cancre non vlcerat / [p. 231]
 The .xv. c°. is of Boos / [p. 232]
 The .xvj. c°. is of akyng^t of ioynctis. [p. 233]
 4 The .xvij. c°. is of akyng^e of haunchis / [p. 238]
 The .xviij. c°. is of dieting^t of men þatt han ache in ioynctis / [p. 240]
 The .iiij. boke and the .iiij. doctrin, and conteyneþ **xix.**
 8 chapitris //
 The .i. c°. is of egrenes of yȝen / [p. 240]
 The .ii. c°. is of egrenes of eeris / [p. 254]
 The .iiij. is of diseas of þe nose / [p. 258]
 12 The .iiij. c°. is of diseas of þe moup / [p. 260]
 The .v. c°. is of diseas of þe brest, and off swellyng^t and greetnes /
¹and coagulacion off milke.¹ [p. 265]
 The .vj. c°. is of ruptorie of þe siphac, and releuyng^e aȝen /
 16 [p. 268]
 The .vij. c°. is of hernia of þe ballokis / [p. 269]
 The .viij. c°. is of þe stoon in þe bladdre / [p. 273]
 The .ix. c°. is of an yuel þat is clepid hermafrodito²
 O The .x. c°. is of watri dropesias. [p. 281]
 The .xj. c°. is of cancer & vlcers in þe ȝerde / [p. 287]
 The .xij. c°. is of emoroidis & fistula in ano. [p. 289]
 The .xiiij. c°. is of cancrene & mormals / [p. 293]
 4 The .xiiij. c°. is of vngribus and stykyng^e in handis and feet. [leaf 272]
 ¶ Elephancia / [p. 295]
 The .xv. c°. is of wertis in handis & feet / [p. 296]
 The .xvj. c°. is of blood letyng^t / [p. 298]
 18 The .xvij. is of kutting^t & bleding^t, & water lechis [p. 303]
 The .xviij. is of cauterie large & of streite / [p. 305]
 The .iiij. book schal be algebra, & conteyneþ ij. doctrines /
 The firste doctrine of þe .iiij. book conteyneþ .viij. chapitris //
 32 The .i. c°. is of brekyng^t of boonis, or o. word ¶ for al / [p. 312]
 The .ij. c°. is of breking^t of þe face / [p. 314]
 The .iiij. c°. is of brekyng^t of þe forkid boon of þe brest / [p. 316]
 36 The .iiij. c°. is of brekyng^t of boonys off þe spaudis // [p. 317]
 The .v. c°. is of brekyng^e of þe aliutorie / [p. 318]

¹—¹ added in different hand.

² This chapter is omitted; see note 8 on p. 281.

The .vj. c°. is of brekyng^t of boonys þat is clepid coxe // [p. 320]

The .vii. c°. is of brusing^t or brekyng^t of tendir boonys wip þe
.viij. chapitre / [p. 321 & 322]

The secunde doctrine of þe fourþe book, & conteyneþ .v. 4
chapitris //

[leaf 372, bk.] The first c°. is of failyng^t of place, word for al /

The .ij. c°. is of failyng^t of place of þe chekeboon /

The .iiij. c°. is of lacking^t of place of þe spaude /¹ 8

The .iiij. c°. is of goyng^t out of þe ioynct^t of þe schuldre / [p. 323]

The .v. c°. is of þe coniunccioun of þe goyng^t out of þe haunche /
[p. 326]

The antidotarie is þe .v. book, and conteyneþ seuene 12
chapitris //

The .i. c°. is of reperiussiuus & þe maner þerof / [p. 328]

The .ij. c°. is of þe maner of resolutif medicins / [p. 333]

The .iiij. c°. is of þe .iiij. maturatiuis & þe maner þerof / [p. 336] 16

The .iiij. c°. is of mundificatiuis & þe maner þerof // [p. 339]

The .v. c°. is of regeneratiuis & consolidatiuis // [p. 342]

The .vj. c°. is of corrosiuus & cauterisatiuis // [p. 349]

The .viij. c°. is of mollificatiuis or softenyng^t medicyns // [p. 353] 20

¹ These three chapters are left out.

1

Stanford University Libraries
Stanford, California

Return this book on or before date due.

JUL 11 1972
JAN 4 1972

~~NON CIRCULATING~~

